

ZW550-6 WHEEL LOADER OPERATOR'S MANUAL

PART NO. ENMNHK-1-2

HITACHI

Reliable Solutions

Operator's Manual

ZW

550-6

Wheel Loader

 **Hitachi Construction Machinery Co., Ltd.**

URL:<https://www.hitachicm.com/global/>



PRINTED IN JAPAN (K) 2024, 06

ENMNHK-1-2

Serial No. 001001 and up

INTRODUCTION

Read this manual carefully to learn how to operate and service your machine correctly. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or machine damage.

This standard specification machine can be operated under the following conditions without being modified.
Atmospheric Temperature: -20 °C to 45 °C
Altitude: 0 m to 2000 m

In case the machine is used under conditions other than described above, consult a dealer authorized by Hitachi Construction Machinery (“Authorized Dealer”).

This manual should be considered a permanent part of your machine and should remain with the machine when you sell it.

This machine is of metric design. Measurements in this manual are metric. Use only metric hardware and tools as specified.

Right-hand and left-hand sides are determined by facing in the direction of forward travel.

Write product identification numbers in the Machine Numbers section. Accurately record all the numbers to help in tracing the machine should it be stolen. Authorized Dealer also needs these numbers when you order parts. If this manual is kept on the machine, also file the identification numbers in a secure place off the machine.

Use only diesel fuel with quality specified in JIS K-2204, EN-590 or ASTM D-975 which contents 15 ppm or lower sulfur.
Also use fuel that complies with solid contamination level of class 18/16/13 of ISO4406-1999 (solid contamination includes dust). If the fuel specified above is not used, exhaust gas that exceeds the regulation values may be discharged, causing serious problem on the engine. Consult Authorized Dealer.

Warranty is provided as a part of Hitachi Construction Machinery’s support program for customers who operate and maintain their equipment as described in this manual. The warranty is explained on the warranty certificate which you should have received from Authorized Dealer.

This warranty provides you with the assurance that Hitachi Construction Machinery will back its products where defects appear within the warranty period. In some circumstances, Hitachi Construction Machinery also provides field improvements, often without charge to the customer, even if the product is out of warranty.
Should the equipment be abused, or modified to change its performance beyond the original factory specifications, the warranty will become void and field improvements may be denied.
Setting fuel delivery above specifications or otherwise overpowering machines will result in such action.

Only qualified, experienced operators officially licensed (according to local law) should be allowed to operate the machine. Moreover, only officially licensed personnel should be allowed to inspect and service the machine.

PRIOR TO OPERATING THIS MACHINE, INCLUDING COMMUNICATION SYSTEM, IN A COUNTRY OTHER THAN A COUNTRY OF ITS INTENDED USE, IT MAY BE NECESSARY TO MAKE MODIFICATIONS TO IT SO THAT IT COMPLIES WITH THE LOCAL REGULATORY STANDARDS (INCLUDING SAFETY STANDARDS) AND LEGAL REQUIREMENTS OF THAT PARTICULAR COUNTRY. PLEASE DO NOT EXPORT OR OPERATE THIS MACHINE OUTSIDE OF THE COUNTRY OF ITS INTENDED USE UNTIL SUCH COMPLIANCE HAS BEEN CONFIRMED. PLEASE CONTACT HITACHI CONSTRUCTION MACHINERY CO., LTD. OR ANY OF OUR AUTHORIZED DISTRIBUTOR OR DEALER IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS CONCERNING COMPLIANCE.

In this manual, urea water is indicated as DEF/ AdBlue®.
“DEF” stands for the Diesel Exhaust Fluid. AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

The Bluetooth®word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Hitachi Construction Machinery Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

CALIFORNIA

Proposition 65 Warning

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.

INDEX

MACHINE NUMBERS

SAFETY

SAFETY SIGNS

COMPONENTS NAME

GETTING ON AND OFF THE MACHINE

OPERATOR'S STATION

BREAK-IN

OPERATING ENGINE

MOVING MACHINE

OPERATING MACHINE

TRANSPORTING

MAINTENANCE

MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

STORAGE

TROUBLESHOOTING

SPECIFICATIONS

OTHER ATTACHMENTS

INDEX

CONTENTS

MACHINE NUMBERS	1	Evacuating in Case of Fire.....	S-31
Aftertreatment Device.....	2	Beware of Exhaust Fumes.....	S-32
SAFETY	S-1	Precautions for Welding and Grinding	S-32
Recognize Safety Information	S-1	Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines	S-32
Understand Signal Words.....	S-1	Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids	S-33
Follow Safety Instructions.....	S-2	Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper.....	S-33
Prepare for Emergencies.....	S-3	Precautions for Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).....	S-33
Wear Protective Clothing.....	S-3	Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating.....	S-34
Inspect Machine	S-4	Beware of Asbestos and Silicon Dust and Other Contamination	S-34
General Precautions for Cab.....	S-5	Prevent Battery Explosions	S-35
Use Handrails and Steps	S-6	Service Air Conditioning System Safely	S-35
Never Ride Attachment.....	S-6	Handle Chemical Products Safely.....	S-36
Adjust Operator's Seat.....	S-6	Dispose of Waste Properly.....	S-36
Ensure Safety Before Leaving or Standing up from Operator's Seat	S-7	Notes on Aftertreatment Device	S-37
Fasten Your Seat Belt	S-7	Precautions for Communication Terminal.....	S-37
Move and Operate Machine Safely	S-8	Precautions for Communication Terminal Equipment ...	S-38
Handle Starting Aids Safely	S-8	Articulation Stopper (Lock Bar)	S-40
Operate Only from Operator's Seat	S-9	Joystick Steering System ON/OFF	S-41
Jump Starting	S-9	ROPS (Roll Over Protective Structure)	S-42
Precautions for Operations	S-9	SAFETY SIGNS	S-43
Investigate Job Site Beforehand	S-10	COMPONENTS NAME.....	1-1
Equipment of Head Guard, ROPS, FOPS.....	S-11	Name of Components	1-1
Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines....	S-11	GETTING ON AND OFF THE MACHINE	1-3
Keep Riders Off Machine	S-12	Getting ON and OFF the Machine.....	1-3
Drive Safely	S-12	OPERATOR'S STATION	1-4
Drive Machine Safely (Work Site).....	S-13	Aftertreatment Device.....	1-4
Drive Safely with Bucket Loaded	S-14	Automatic Regeneration	1-6
Drive on Snow Safely	S-14	Repeated Inhibiting of Aftertreatment Device Cleaning.....	1-7
Travel on Public Roads Safely.....	S-15	Cab Features.....	1-8
Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents.....	S-15	Front Console.....	1-9
Avoid Accidents from Backing Up and Turning	S-16	Joystick Steering	1-10
Avoid Positioning Bucket or Attachment Over Anyone.	S-17	Right Console.....	1-11
Avoid Tipping.....	S-17	Monitor Panel	1-12
Never Undercut a High Bank.....	S-18	Parking Brake Indicator (Red).....	1-13
Dig with Caution.....	S-18	Brake Oil Low Pressure Indicator (Red).....	1-13
Perform Truck Loading Safely	S-18	Hydraulic Oil Level Indicator (Red).....	1-13
Avoid Power Lines.....	S-19	Low Steering Oil Pressure Indicator (Red)	1-14
Caution with an Overhead Obstacle	S-19	Transmission Warning Indicator (Red)	1-14
Precautions for Lightning.....	S-19	Communication Error Indicator (Yellow)	1-14
Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object.....	S-20	Discharge Warning Indicator (Red)	1-14
Object Handling	S-21	Engine Warning Indicator (Red)	1-15
Park Machine Safely.....	S-22	Overheat Indicator (Red)	1-15
Store Attachments Safely	S-22	Engine Oil Low Pressure Indicator (Red)	1-15
Transport Safely	S-23	Air Filter Restriction Indicator (Red).....	1-16
Handle Fluids Safely—Avoid Fires.....	S-24	Preheat Indicator (Yellow)	1-16
Practice Safe Maintenance	S-25	Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	1-17
Warn Others of Service Work	S-26	Fuel Gauge.....	1-17
Support Machine Properly.....	S-26	Turn Signal Indicator (Green)	1-18
Stay Clear of Moving Parts	S-27	High Beam Indicator (Blue).....	1-18
Support Maintenance Properly.....	S-27	Work Light Indicator (Yellow).....	1-18
Prevent Parts from Flying	S-28		
Prevent Burns.....	S-28		
Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically.....	S-29		
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids	S-29		
Prevent Fires.....	S-30		

CONTENTS

Clearance Light Indicator (Green)	1-18	Accelerator Pedal.....	1-89
Control Lever Lock Indicator (Red).....	1-18	Brake Pedal	1-89
Multi Function Monitor.....	1-19	Service Brake	1-89
Default Setting	1-20	Clutch Cut Off Brake.....	1-89
Basic Screen.....	1-21	Joystick Steering.....	1-90
How to Use Screens.....	1-22	Joystick Steering Lever	1-90
Displaying Basic Screen.....	1-22	Forward/Reverse Switch.....	1-90
Monitor Operation	1-26	Joystick Steering System Switch	1-90
Alarm Occurrence Screen.....	1-27	Shift Switch	1-91
Remedy.....	1-29	Light Switch.....	1-92
DEF/SCR System Alarm.....	1-32	Wiper Switch	1-93
DEF/AdBlue® Level Alarm	1-32	Wiper Operation.....	1-93
Urea SCR System Malfunction.....	1-33	Front/Rear Wiper Switch.....	1-94
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration	1-34	Right Console/Switches	1-95
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Status Display.....	1-34	Loading Multi-Function Joystick Lever.....	1-96
Automatic regeneration (Auto-regeneration).....	1-35	Turn Signal Switch.....	1-97
Manual Regeneration.....	1-36	Loading Control Lever Lock Switch	1-98
Main Menu.....	1-37	Armrest Adjust Handle	1-98
Ride Control Drive Speed Setting.....	1-38	Clutch Cut Position Switch.....	1-99
Dual Lift Arm Auto-Leveler	1-39	Travel Mode Selector Switch	1-100
Height Kickout ON/OFF, Stop Height Setting.....	1-40	Power Mode Selector Switch	1-101
Lower Kickout ON/OFF, Stop Height Setting	1-41	2nd/3rd Speed Limit Switch.....	1-101
Brightness Adjustment.....	1-42	Fan Reverse Rotation Switch	1-102
Mail (Option)	1-44	OFF	1-102
Setting Menu	1-46	AUTO	1-102
Date and Time.....	1-47	Manual Operation	1-103
Time Adjustment	1-47	Emergency Steering Operation Check Switch.....	1-104
Date Adjustment.....	1-49	Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Switch.....	1-104
Display Mode Setting	1-51	Ride Control Switch	1-105
Auto Shut-Down.....	1-53	AUTO.....	1-105
Auto Shut-Down: ON/OFF	1-53	OFF.....	1-105
Acting Time Setting.....	1-54	Hold Switch	1-106
Rear View Camera Monitor	1-55	Quick Power Switch.....	1-107
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited	1-57	Right Console Slide Lever.....	1-107
Setting Procedure	1-57	DSS (Down Shift Switch).....	1-108
Transmission Setting.....	1-59	Horn Switch.....	1-109
Shift Change Delay Mode Setting	1-59	Cigar Lighter (24 V DC Electrical Outlet)	1-110
Lockup Setting	1-61	Using Cigar Lighter.....	1-110
Traction Control Setting	1-63	Ash Tray.....	1-110
Parallel/Tandem Switching Height Setting.....	1-65	Auto Air Conditioner	1-111
Warm Up Operation	1-67	Feature.....	1-111
Display Item Selection.....	1-69	Components Name	1-112
Main Menu Display Order Change.....	1-71	Controller Part Name and Function	1-113
Information Menu	1-73	Cab Heater Operation	1-115
Operation Condition	1-74	Cooling Operation.....	1-116
Fuel Consumption	1-74	Defroster Operation.....	1-117
Maintenance	1-76	Cool Head/Warm Feet Operation.....	1-117
Maintenance Notice.....	1-76	Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage	1-118
Time Remains and Maintenance Interval.....	1-78	For Rapid Cooling	1-118
Troubleshooting	1-80	When Windows Become Fogged	1-118
Monitoring.....	1-82	Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance.....	1-118
Front Console Switches, Pedals, and Joystick Steering... 1-84		Adjusting Operator's Seat (Air Suspension Type Seat) . 1-119	
Hazard Switch.....	1-85	Components Name	1-119
Work Light Switch	1-86	Rear Tray	1-120
Parking Brake Switch.....	1-87	Electric Power Output.....	1-120
Key Switch.....	1-88	Fuse Box.....	1-121

CONTENTS

Fuse Box A	1-122	Cold Weather Warm Up.....	3-13
Fuse Box B.....	1-122	Stopping Engine	3-15
Hot/Cool Box.....	1-123	MOVING MACHINE.....	4-1
Tray and Drink Holder.....	1-123	Driving the Machine.....	4-1
Outer ROPS/Cab.....	1-124	Starting to Move	4-2
Room Light	1-126	Parking Brake Switch.....	4-7
Sun Visor	1-127	Drive Speed Change (Manual Shift)	4-8
Emergency Evacuation Hammer	1-127	Changing Forward/Reverse Drive Direction.....	4-8
Coat/Hat Hook.....	1-127	Steering.....	4-9
Upper Switch Panel	1-128	Emergency Steering.....	4-10
Rotary Light Switch.....	1-128	Emergency Stop and Restart of Operation	4-11
Rear View Mirror Heater Switch.....	1-128	Precautions for Traveling	4-12
Outside Rear View Mirror.....	1-129	Precautions for Driving on Slopes	4-14
Room Rear View Mirror.....	1-129	Precautions to be Taken if Machine Failure Occurs.....	4-15
Cab Door.....	1-129	Stop	4-16
Door Lock Knob	1-130	Parking	4-18
Door Open/Close Lever.....	1-130	Emergency Stopping	4-19
Window Open/Close Levers	1-130	Auto Brake.....	4-20
Battery Disconnect Switch.....	1-131	OPERATING MACHINE	5-1
Switch Operation	1-132	Control Lever Lock	5-2
Articulation Stopper (Lock Bar)	1-133	Clutch Cut Position Switch.....	5-3
Towing Pin	1-134	Adjustment of Bucket Auto Leveler.....	5-4
Inspection/Maintenance Access Covers	1-135	Adjustment of Bucket Angle Switch.....	5-6
Rear Grille.....	1-136	Adjustment of Dual Lift Arm Auto Leveler	5-8
Steps.....	1-137	Auto Shut-Down	5-9
Tool Box	1-137	Aftertreatment Device Manual Regeneration	5-11
Vandal-Resistant Devices.....	1-138	Before Operation	5-14
Digital Radio Unit (Built-in Microphone)	1-140	Ensure Safety When Operating on Road Shoulders	5-14
Control Panel	1-140	Avoid Overloading.....	5-15
LCD Display	1-141	Avoid Rapid Steering Changes and/or Sudden	
Basic Operation	1-142	Braking.....	5-15
FM/AM Radio Operation	1-146	Avoid Operation with Loads on Only One Side.....	5-15
Control Panel	1-146	Avoid frequent bucket shaking.....	5-15
Bluetooth® Input	1-149	Excavation	5-16
USB Device Input	1-154	Grading	5-18
Setting Screens.....	1-157	Loading	5-19
Digital Radio Unit (External Microphone)	1-166	Dozing	5-22
Control Panel	1-166	Stock Piling	5-22
LCD Display	1-167	Removing Snow.....	5-23
Basic Operation	1-168	Lifting Wheel Loader	5-23
FM/AM Radio Operation	1-172	Precautions for After Operation	5-24
Control Panel	1-172	TRANSPORTING	6-1
Bluetooth® Input	1-175	Transporting by Road	6-1
Setting Screens.....	1-180	Selecting a Trailer	6-1
BREAK-IN	2-1	Loading / Unloading on Trailer.....	6-2
Break-in Period for New Machine	2-1	Fastening Machine for Transporting	6-4
Work Mode for Break-in	2-1	Transporting Wheel Loader (Urgent Situation)	6-5
OPERATING ENGINE.....	3-1	Towing Method.....	6-9
Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting	3-1	Lifting Machine	6-10
Check Before Starting.....	3-3	MAINTENANCE.....	7-1
Starting Engine	3-6	Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures.....	7-1
Starting in Cold Weather.....	3-8	Check the Hour Meter Regularly.....	7-3
Check After Starting.....	3-9	Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance	7-7
Using Booster Batteries.....	3-10	Lock Frames.....	7-10
Warm Up.....	3-12		

CONTENTS

Inspection/Maintenance Side Access Cover.....	7-11	Precautions for handling antifreeze.....	7-82
Rear Grille.....	7-12	Check Coolant Level.....	7-83
Periodic Replacement of Parts.....	7-13	Check Fan Drive Belt.....	7-84
Maintenance Guide.....	7-14	Change Coolant.....	7-86
Kind of Oils.....	7-21	Clean Radiator and Oil Cooler and Other Cooling System.....	7-89
List of Consumable Parts.....	7-24	H. Electrical System.....	7-90
A. Greasing.....	7-27	Batteries.....	7-90
B. Engine.....	7-31	Check Monitor Functions and All Other Instrument Operation.....	7-94
Check Engine Oil Level.....	7-31	Check Work Lights.....	7-95
Change Engine Oil.....	7-32	Check Horn and Reverse Buzzer.....	7-96
Replace Engine Oil Filter.....	7-34	Check Electrical Harnesses and Fuses.....	7-97
C. Power Train.....	7-36	Fuse Box A.....	7-98
Check Transmission Oil Level.....	7-36	Fuse Box B.....	7-98
Change Transmission Oil.....	7-37	I. Brake System.....	7-99
Clean Suction Strainer.....	7-37	Check Right and Left Brake Interlocking Performance.....	7-99
Change Transmission Oil Filter.....	7-37	Check Parking Brake Force.....	7-100
Clean Transmission and Torque Converter Air Breathers.....	7-40	Parking Brake Gear Oil.....	7-101
Check Axle Oil Level.....	7-41	Check Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage.....	7-103
Check Oil Level (Hub Reduction Device).....	7-42	Check Gas Pressure in Accumulator.....	7-104
Change Axle Oil.....	7-43	Check Brake Disks (Service and Parking).....	7-104
Check Around Axle and for Oil Leaks.....	7-46	J. Tire.....	7-105
D. Hydraulic System.....	7-47	Check Air Pressure.....	7-105
Inspection and Maintenance of Hydraulic Equipment... 7-47		Adjustment.....	7-105
Check Hydraulic Oil Level.....	7-49	Check Tire for Damage.....	7-106
Change Hydraulic Oil/Clean Hydraulic Oil Tank.....	7-50	Check Wheel Bolt Torque.....	7-106
Bleed Air from the Hydraulic Circuit.....	7-51	Removal and Installation of Tire.....	7-109
Clean Suction Filter.....	7-52	K. Air Conditioner.....	7-110
Clean Pilot Oil Filter (Brake Circuit).....	7-53	Clean/Replace Air Conditioner Circulation/ Fresh Air.....	7-110
Clean Pilot Oil Filter (Steering Circuit).....	7-54	Filters.....	7-110
Replace Hydraulic Tank Oil Filter (Full-Flow Filter).....	7-55	Check Air Conditioner.....	7-112
Replace Air Breather Element.....	7-57	Check Air Conditioner Piping.....	7-112
Check Pilot Circuit Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage.....	7-58	Check Air Conditioner Condenser.....	7-113
Check Ride Control Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage.....	7-59	Check Air Conditioner Compressor Drive Belt.....	7-113
Check Gas Pressure in Ride Control Accumulator.....	7-59	Check Refrigerant.....	7-114
Check Gas Pressure in Steering Accumulator.....	7-60	Replace Air Conditioner Receiver Dryer.....	7-114
Check Hoses and Lines.....	7-61	Check Compressor and Pulley.....	7-115
E. Fuel System.....	7-66	L. Miscellaneous.....	7-116
Check Fuel Level.....	7-66	Check Bucket Teeth and Cutting Edge.....	7-116
Recommended Fuel.....	7-66	Check and Replace Seat and Seat Belt.....	7-117
Refueling.....	7-67	Check ROPS cab, Resin Cab Roof, and Roof Mounting Bolts.....	7-117
Drain Water and Sediment from Fuel Tank.....	7-68	Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level.....	7-117
Drain Fuel Filter.....	7-69	Check Play Amount in Joystick Steering Movement.....	7-118
Bleed Air from the Fuel System.....	7-71	Check Accelerator Pedal Operation, and Exhaust Gas Color and Noise.....	7-119
Air Bleeding by Priming Pump.....	7-71	Check Rearview Mirror and Inside Rearview Mirror.....	7-120
Replace Fuel Main Filter Element.....	7-73	Check Steps and Handrails for Damage and Looseness.....	7-120
Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element.....	7-75	Clean Engine Compartment and Hood.....	7-121
Clean Fuel Pump Strainer.....	7-77	Check Sound Absorbing Mat Around Engine.....	7-121
Check Water Separator.....	7-78	Cleaning of Rear View Camera Lens.....	7-121
Check Fuel Hoses.....	7-80		
F. Air Cleaner.....	7-81		
Replace Air Cleaner Element.....	7-81		
G. Cooling System.....	7-82		
Coolant.....	7-82		

CONTENTS

Check and Adjust Valve Clearance.....	7-122
Check Engine Compression Pressure	7-122
Check and Clean Starter and Alternator.....	7-122
Retighten Front Axle and Rear Axle Support Mounting Bolts.....	7-122
Check Turbocharger	7-123
Check and Clean EGR Valve	7-123
Check and Clean EGR Cooler	7-123
Check Fuel Injector.....	7-123
Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts.....	7-124
M. Aftertreatment Device.....	7-133
Check and Clean Aftertreatment Device.....	7-133
N. Urea SCR System.....	7-134
Check DEF/AdBlue®	7-136
Refill DEF/AdBlue®	7-136
Replace DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module Main Filter	7-139
Check Dosing Module.....	7-140
Replace DEF/AdBlue® Tank Inlet Filter.....	7-140
MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS	9-1
Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions...	9-1
Precautions for Maintenance During Cold Weather Season.....	9-2
STORAGE	10-1
Storing the Machine.....	10-1
TROUBLESHOOTING.....	11-1
Troubleshooting	11-1
SPECIFICATIONS	12-1
OTHER ATTACHMENTS	13-1
Axle Oil Cooler (Optional).....	13-1
Check Axle Oil Level.....	13-2
Change Axle Oil	13-3
Replace Axle Oil Filter.....	13-4
Clean Axle Oil Cooler Fins	13-5
INDEX.....	14-1

CONTENTS

MEMO

MACHINE NUMBERS

The manufacturing Nos. explained in this group is the individual number (serial No.) given to each machine and hydraulic components. These numbers are requested when inquiring any information on the machine and/or components. Fill these serial Nos. in the blank spaces in this group to immediately make them available upon request.

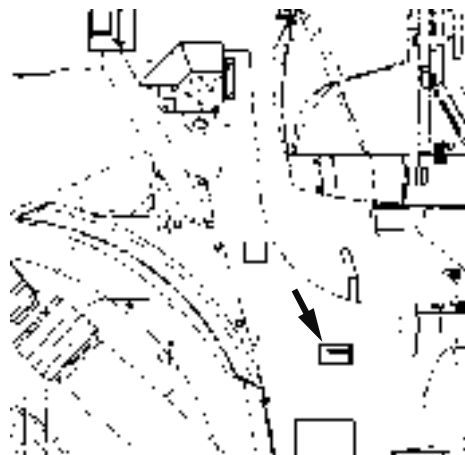
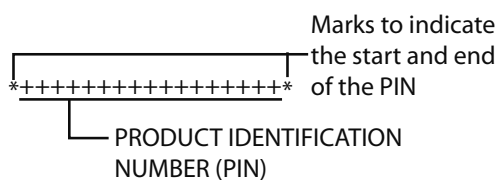
Machine

Model/type : _____

Product
Identification Number : _____



NOTE:

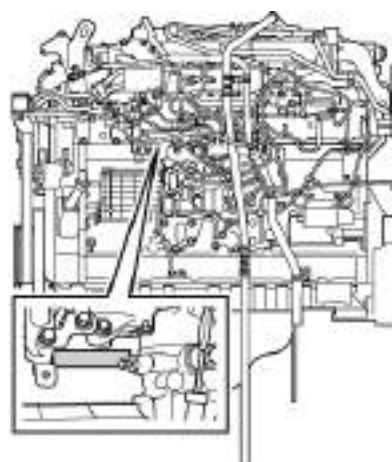


550SN_plate_US

Engine

TYPE : _____

MFG. NO. : _____



6WG1_SN

MACHINE NUMBERS

Aftertreatment Device

SCR

TYPE : _____

MFG. NO. : _____



95Z7B-SCR4

DOC

TYPE : _____

MFG. NO. : _____



95Z7B-SCR4

SAFETY

Recognize Safety Information

- These are the **SAFETY ALERT SYMBOLS**.
 - When you see these symbols on your machine or in this manual, be alert to the potential for personal injury.
 - Follow recommended precautions and safe operating practices.



SA-2644

Understand Signal Words

- On machine safety signs, signal words designating the degree or level of hazard - DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION - are used with the safety alert symbol.
 - **DANGER** indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
 - **WARNING** indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
 - **CAUTION** indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.
 - **DANGER or WARNING safety signs** are located near specific hazards. General precautions are listed on **CAUTION safety signs**.
 - Some safety signs do not use any of the designated signal words above after the safety alert symbol has been used on this machine.
- To avoid confusing machine protection with personal safety messages, a signal word **IMPORTANT** indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in damage to the machine.
-  **NOTE** indicates an additional explanation for an element of information.

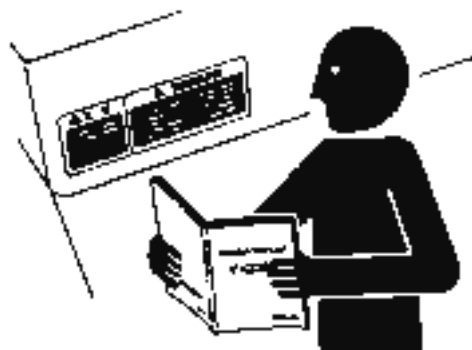


SA-1223

SAFETY

Follow Safety Instructions

- Carefully read and follow all safety signs on the machine and all safety messages in this manual.
- Safety signs should be installed, maintained and replaced when necessary.
 - If a safety sign or this manual is damaged or missing, order a replacement from Authorized Dealer in the same way you order other replacement parts (be sure to state machine model and serial number when ordering).
- Learn how to operate the machine and its controls correctly and safely.
- Allow only trained, qualified, authorized personnel to operate the machine.
- Keep your machine in proper working condition.
 - Unauthorized modifications of the machine may impair its function and/or safety and affect machine life.
 - Do not modify any machine parts without authorization. Failure to do so may deteriorate the part safety, function, and/or service life. In addition, personal accident, machine trouble, and/or damage to material caused by unauthorized modifications will void Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.
 - Never attempt to modify or disassemble the inlet/exhaust parts and the exhaust filter. Avoid giving shocks on the exhaust filter by striking elements with other objects or dropping the elements. Failure to do so may affect the exhaust gas purifying device, possibly damaging it or lowering its performance.
 - Do not use attachments and/or optional parts or equipment not authorized by Hitachi Construction Machinery. Carefully read and follow all instructions for use and safety in the operator's manual for the attachment. Failure to do so may deteriorate the safety, function, and/or service life of the machine. In addition, personal accident, machine trouble, and/or damage to material caused by using unauthorized attachments and/or optional parts or equipment will void Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.
- The safety messages in this SAFETY chapter are intended to illustrate basic safety procedures of machines. However it is impossible for these safety messages to cover every hazardous situation you may encounter. If you have any questions, you should first consult your supervisor and/or Authorized Dealer before operating or performing maintenance work on the machine.



SA-003

SAFETY

Prepare for Emergencies

- Be prepared if a fire starts or if an accident occurs.
 - Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher on hand.
 - Thoroughly read and understand the label attached on the fire extinguisher to use it properly.
 - To ensure that a fire extinguisher can be always used when necessary, check and service the fire extinguisher at the recommended intervals as specified in the fire extinguisher manual.
 - Establish emergency procedure guidelines to cope with fires and accidents.
 - Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department posted near your telephone.



SA-437

Wear Protective Clothing

- Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

You may need:

- A hard hat
- Safety shoes
- Safety glasses, goggles, or face shield
- Hand protection
- Personal fall protection equipment
- Hearing protection
- Reflective clothing
- Wet weather gear
- Respirator or filter mask.



SA-438

Be sure to wear the correct equipment and clothing for the job.

- Avoid wearing loose clothing, jewelry, or other items that can catch on steering wheel, control levers or other parts of the machine.
- Operating equipment safely requires the full attention of the operator. Do not wear radio or music headphones while operating the machine.

SAFETY

Inspect Machine

- Inspect your machine carefully each day or shift by walking around it before you start it to avoid personal injury.
- In the walk-around inspection, be sure to cover all points described in the “Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting” section in the operator’s manual.



SA-435

SAFETY

General Precautions for Cab

- Before entering the cab, thoroughly remove all dirt and/or oil such as mud, grease, soil or stones that may mess up the cab from the soles of your work boots. If any controls such as a pedal is operated while with dirt and/or oil on the soles of the operator's work boots, the operator's foot may slip off the pedal, possibly resulting in a personal accident.
- Do not mess up around the operator's seat with parts, tools, soil, stones, obstacles that may fold up or turn over, cans or lunch box. The levers or pedals become inoperable if obstacle jams in operation stroke of the accelerator pedal, brake pedals, control lever lock handle or control levers, which may result in serious injury or death.
- Avoid storing transparent bottles in the cab. Do not attach any transparent type window decorations on the windowpanes as they may focus sunlight, possibly starting a fire.
- Refrain from listening to the radio, or using music headphones or mobile telephones in the cab while operating the machine.
- Keep all flammable objects and/or explosives away from the machine.
- After using the ashtray, always cover it to extinguish the match and/or tobacco.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the cab. When the temperature in the cab increases, the lighter may explode.
- Use proper floor mat dedicated to the machine. If another floor mat is used, it may be displaced and contact with the accelerator or brake pedals during operation, resulting in serious injury or death.

SAFETY

Use Handrails and Steps

- Falling is one of the major causes of personal injury.
 - When you get on and off the machine, always face the machine and maintain a three-point contact with the steps and handrails.
- Do not use any controls as handholds.
- Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.
- Be careful of slippery conditions on platforms, steps, and handrails when leaving the machine.
- Never get on and off the machine with tools in your hands.



SA-439

Never Ride Attachment

- Never allow anyone to ride attachment or the load. This is an extremely dangerous practice.

Adjust Operator's Seat

- A poorly adjusted seat for either the operator or the work at hand may quickly fatigue the operator leading to misoperations.
 - The seat should be adjusted whenever changing the operator for the machine.
 - The operator should be able to fully depress the pedals and to correctly operate the control levers with his back against the seat back.
 - If not, move the seat forward or backward, and check again.
 - Adjust the rear view mirror position so that the best rear visibility is obtained from the operator's seat. If the mirror is broken, immediately replace it with a new one.



SA-462

SAFETY

Ensure Safety Before Leaving or Standing up from Operator's Seat

- Before leaving the Operator's Seat, be sure to first lower the front attachment to the ground and move the FNR lever to the neutral position (N), turn ON the parking switch, move the control lever lock switch or the lever locks to the LOCK position. Turn the key switch OFF to stop the engine. Leaving the Operator's Seat without stopping the engine may allow the machine to unexpectedly move when a body part unintentionally comes in contact with a steering wheel, control lever and/or pedal, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Before standing up from the operator's seat to open or close a window or to adjust the seat position and so on, be sure to first lower the front attachment to the ground and move the FNR lever to the neutral position, turn ON the parking switch, move the control lever lock switch or the lever locks to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to unexpectedly move when a body part unintentionally comes in contact with a steering wheel, control lever and/or pedal, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.
- Before leaving the machine, close all windows, doors, and access covers and lock them up.

Fasten Your Seat Belt

- If the machine should overturn, the operator may become injured and / or thrown from the cab. Additionally the operator may be crushed by the overturning machine, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Prior to operating the machine, thoroughly examine webbing, buckle and attaching hardware. If any item is damaged or worn, replace the seat belt or component before operating the machine.
- Be sure to remain seated with the seat belt securely fastened at all times when the machine is in operation to minimize the chance of injury from an accident.
- We recommend that the seat belt be replaced every three years regardless of its apparent condition.



SA-237

SAFETY

Move and Operate Machine Safely

- Bystanders can be run over.
 - Take extra care not to run over bystanders. Be advised that there may be blind spots with rear view camera. Confirm the location of bystanders before moving, swinging, or operating the machine by sight and mirrors as well as the rear view monitor.
 - Always keep the travel alarm and horn in working condition (if equipped). It warns people when the machine starts to move.
 - Use a signal person when moving, or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the machine.
 - Use appropriate illumination. Check that all lights are operable before operating the machine. If any faulty illumination is present, immediately repair it.
 - Ensure the cab door, windows, doors and covers are securely locked.
 - Check the mirrors and the monitor in the CAB for problems.
If there is, replace the problem part(s) or clean the mirror, camera and the monitor.
Refer to Rear View Monitor section on the cleaning of the camera and the monitor.



SA-398

Handle Starting Aids Safely

Starting fluid:

- Starting fluid is highly flammable.
 - Keep all sparks and flame away when using it.
 - Keep starting fluid well away from batteries and cables.
 - Remove container from machine if engine does not need starting fluid.
 - To prevent accidental discharge when storing a pressurized container, keep the cap on the container, and store it in a cool, well-protected location.
 - Do not incinerate or puncture a starting fluid container.



SA-293

SAFETY

Operate Only from Operator's Seat

- Inappropriate engine starting procedures may cause the machine to runaway, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Start the engine only when seated in the operator's seat.
 - NEVER start the engine while standing on the tire or on ground.
 - Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.
 - Before starting the engine, confirm that all control levers are in neutral.
 - Before starting the engine, confirm the safety around the machine and sound the horn to alert bystanders.



SA-431

Jump Starting

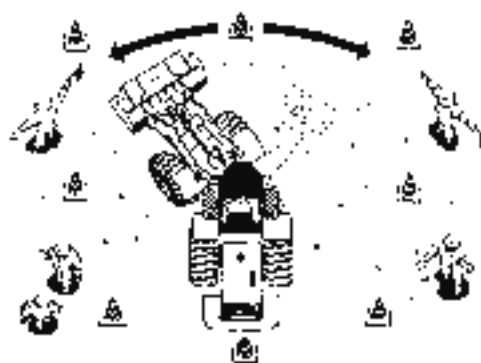
- Battery gas can explode, resulting in serious injury.
 - If the engine must be jump started, be sure to follow the instructions shown in the "OPERATING ENGINE" chapter in the operator's manual.
 - The operator must be in the operator's seat so that the machine will be under control when the engine starts. Jump starting is a two-person operation.
 - Never use a frozen battery.
 - Failure to follow correct jump starting procedures could result in a battery explosion or a runaway machine.



SA-032

Precautions for Operations

- Investigate and perform job site risk assessment before starting operations.
 - Be sure to wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate for the job, when operating the machine.
 - Keep bystanders and obstacles clear from the area of machine operation. Keep bystanders away from areas where there is risk of, such as flying objects.
 - Always be aware of the surroundings while operating.
 - When loading onto trucks, bring the bucket over the truck beds from the rear side. Take care not to swing the bucket over the cab or over any person.



SA-2868

SAFETY

Investigate Job Site Beforehand

- When working at a slope, the edge of an excavation or on a road shoulder, the machine could tip over, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
- Investigate the configuration and ground conditions of the job site beforehand to prevent the machine from tipping over and to prevent the ground, stockpiles, or banks from collapsing.
- Perform a job site risk assessment and make a work plan to perform the work in a safe way. Use machines suitable for the work and job site.
- Reinforce ground, edges, and road shoulders as necessary. Keep the machine away from the edges of excavations and road shoulders.
- Ensure that the safety provisions installed on the machine are in good condition and sufficient for the work to be performed.
- Analyze the result of job site risk assessment considering the performance limitations of the machine's operator protective structures. In case potential residual risks are foreseen in a job site, take appropriate measures to mitigate the risks.
- When the ground footing is weak, reinforce the ground before starting work.
- When working on frozen ground, be on extreme alert. As ambient temperatures rise, the ground footing becomes loose and slippery.
- Beware of the possibility of fire when operating the machine near flammable objects such as dry grass.



SA-447

SAFETY

Equipment of Head Guard, ROPS, FOPS

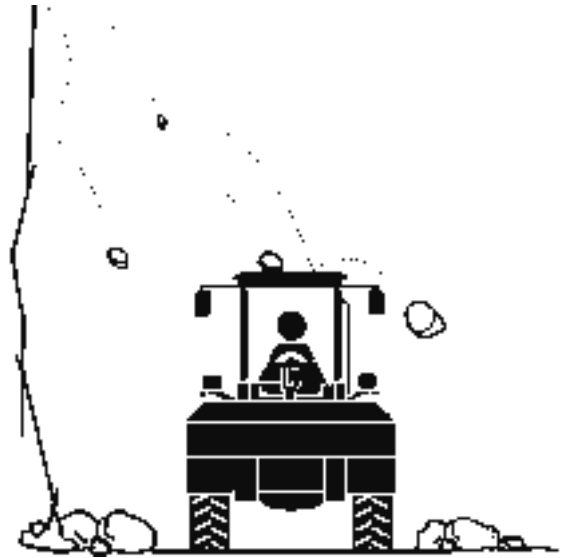
FOPS is to protect the operator from falling stones or debris. Check before operation if the level of protection of machine meets the respective on-site requirements in accordance with the job site risk assessment.

ROPS is to protect the operator in case of tip-over or roll-over. The protective structure is only effective if the operator wears the seat belt while operating the machine.

This machine is equipped with ROPS and FOPS as standard when shipped from the factory. Do not modify the ROPS and/or FOPS structure and replace if the structure is damaged as it may negatively affect its performance and the certification will lose its validity.

ROPS: Roll-Over Protective Structure

FOPS: Falling Object Protective Structure



SA-521

Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines

- For jobs involving multiple machines, provide signals commonly known by all personnel involved. Also, appoint a signal person to coordinate the job site. Make sure that all personnel obey the signal person's directions.



SA-481

SAFETY

Keep Riders Off Machine

- Riders on machine are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects and being thrown off the machine.
- Only the operator should be on the machine. Keep riders off.
- Riders also obstruct the operator's view, resulting in the machine being operated in an unsafe manner.



SA-427

Drive Safely

- Beware of the possibility of slipping and/or turning over the machine when driving on a slope.
- When driving on level ground, hold the bucket at mark (A) 545 mm above the ground as illustrated.
- Avoid traveling over any obstacles.
- Drive the machine slowly when driving on rough terrain.
- Avoid quick direction changes. Failure to do so may cause the machine to turn over.
- If the engine stops while driving, the steering function becomes inoperative. Immediately stop the machine by applying the brake to prevent personal accident.



SA-448

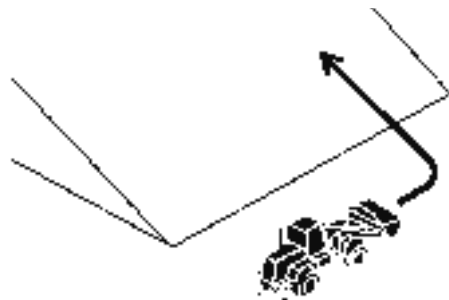
SAFETY

Drive Machine Safely (Work Site)

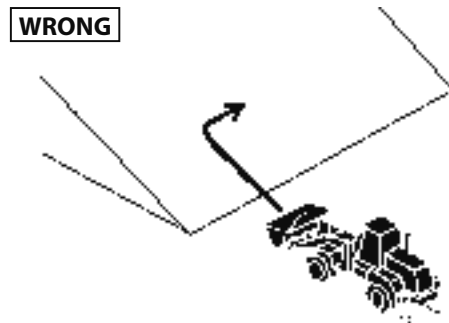
- Before driving the machine, always confirm that the steering wheel and/or joystick steering and forward/reverse lever (switch) direction corresponds to the direction you wish to drive.
- Be sure to detour around any obstructions.
- Driving on a slope may cause the machine to slip or overturn, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - When driving up or down a slope, keep the bucket facing the direction of travel, approximately 545 mm (A) above the ground.
 - If the machine starts to skid or becomes unstable, immediately lower the bucket to the ground and stop.
- Driving across the face of a slope or steering on a slope may cause the machine to skid or overturn. If the direction must be changed, move the machine to level ground, then, change the direction to ensure safe operation.



SA-449



SA-450



SA-451

SAFETY

Drive Safely with Bucket Loaded

- If the machine is operated incorrectly while driving with the bucket loaded, the machine may turn over. Be sure to follow all of the instructions indicated below.
 - When driving the machine on a job site with the bucket loaded, hold the bucket as low as possible to keep the machine balanced and to have good visibility.
 - Do not exceed the rated load capacity. Always operate the machine within the rated load capacity.
 - Avoid fast starts, stops, and quick turns. Failure to do so may result in personal injury and / or death.
 - Avoid rapid drive direction changes which could possibly cause personal injury and / or death.



SA-400

Drive on Snow Safely

- Beware of the possibility of slipping or turning over the machine when driving on frozen snow surfaces.
 - The machine may slip more easily than expected on frozen snow surfaces even if the incline is small. Reduce speed when driving. Avoid fast starts, stops and quick turns.
 - Road shoulder and / or set-up utilities covered with snow are difficult to locate. Be sure where they are before removing snow.
 - Be sure to use tire chains when driving on snow.
 - Avoid applying the brake for quick stops on snow. If a quick stop is required, lower the bucket to the ground.



SA-452

SAFETY

Travel on Public Roads Safely

- This machine is not allowed to drive on public roads with the bucket loaded.
- Be sure to empty the bucket.
- Hold the bucket at mark (A) 545 mm above the road surface as illustrated.



SA-453

Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents

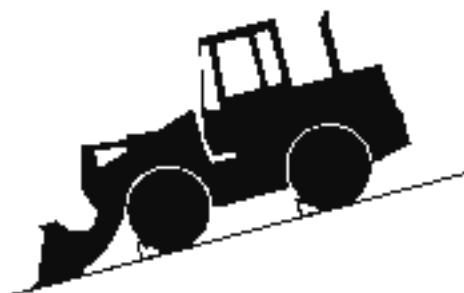
- Death or serious injury may result if you attempt to mount or stop a moving machine.

To avoid rollaways:

- Select level ground when possible to park machine.
- Do not park the machine on a grade.
- Lower the bucket to the ground.
- Put the forward / reverse lever (switch) in neutral.
- Run the engine at low idle speed without load for 5 minutes to cool down the engine.
- Turn the control lever lock switch to the lock (🔒) position.
- Turn the parking brake switch ON.
- Stop the engine and remove the key from the key switch.
- Block both tires and lower the bucket to the ground.
- Position the machine to prevent rolling.
- Park at a reasonable distance from other machines.



SA-457



SA-458

SAFETY

Avoid Accidents from Backing Up and Turning

- Make sure no one is working under or close to the machine before backing up or turning the machine to avoid personal injury and / or death by being run over or entangled in the machine.
- Keep all personnel away from the machine by sounding the horn and / or using hand signals. Use extra care to be sure no one is in from the articulation area before turning the machine.
- Keep windows, mirrors, and lights in good condition.
- Reduce travel speed when dust, heavy rain, fog, etc., reducing the visibility.
- In case good visibility is not obtained, use a signal person to guide you.



SA-383



SA-312

SAFETY

Avoid Positioning Bucket or Attachment Over Anyone

- Never allow the bucket or attachment to pass over co-workers and / or the dump truck operator's cab. Falling material from the bucket or contact with bucket or attachment may cause serious personal accidents and / or damage to the machine.
- Avoid carrying the bucket or attachment over the co-workers to ensure safe operation.



SA-518

Avoid Tipping

DO NOT ATTEMPT TO JUMP CLEAR OF TIPPING MACHINE. MACHINE WILL TIP OVER FASTER THAN YOU CAN JUMP FREE, POSSIBLY RESULTING IN SERIOUS PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH. IF TIPPING OVER OF THE MACHINE IS PREDICTED, SECURELY HOLD THE SUPPORT BAR, LEVER OR ANY FIXED EQUIPMENT TO PREVENT YOUR BODY FROM BEING THROWN OUT OF THE MACHINE.

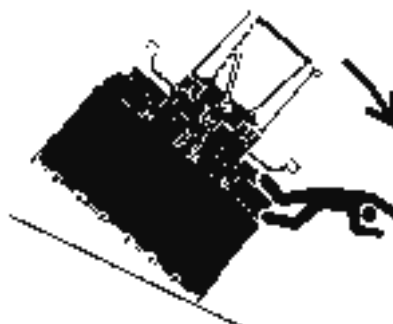
MACHINE WILL TIP OVER FASTER THAN YOU CAN JUMP FREE

FASTEN YOUR SEAT BELT

- The danger of tipping is always present when operating on a grade, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.

To avoid tipping:

- Be extra careful before operating on a grade.
 - Prepare machine operating area flat.
 - Keep the bucket low to the ground and close to the machine.
 - Reduce operating speeds to avoid tipping or slipping.
 - Avoid changing direction when traveling on grades.
 - NEVER attempt to travel across a grade steeper than 5 degrees if crossing the grade is unavoidable.
 - Reduce speed as necessary when swinging loads.
- Be careful when working on frozen ground.
 - Temperature increases will cause the ground to become soft and make ground travel unstable.



SA-463

SAFETY

Never Undercut a High Bank

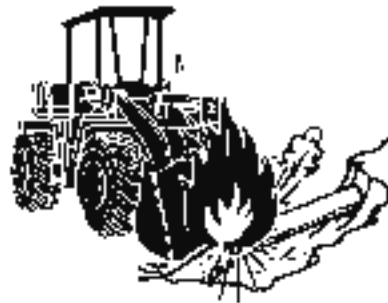
- The edges could collapse or a land slide could occur causing serious injury or death.



SA-519

Dig with Caution

- Accidental severing of underground cables or gas lines may cause an explosion and / or fire, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Before digging, check the location of cables, gas lines, and water lines.
 - Keep the minimum distance required by law, from cables, gas lines, and water lines.
 - If a fiber optic cable should be accidentally severed, do not look into the end. Doing so may result in serious eye injury.
 - Contact your local "diggers hot line" if available in your area , and / or the utility companies directly. Have them mark all underground utilities.



SA-396

Perform Truck Loading Safely

- Do not operate the machine involuntarily. Unexpected machine movement may cause personal injury and / or death.
 - Do not lower the bucket with the lift arm control lever in the FLOAT position. The bucket may free fall, possibly causing personal injury and / or death.
 - Always select a level surface for truck loading.



SA-397

SAFETY

Avoid Power Lines

Serious injury or death can result from contact with electric lines.

Never move any part of the machine or load closer to any electric line than 3 m plus twice the line insulator length.



SA-455

Caution with an Overhead Obstacle

- If the front attachment or any part of the machine comes in contact with an overhead obstacle, both the machine and the overhead obstacle may become damaged, and personal injury may result.
- Take care to avoid coming in contact with overhead obstacles with the bucket or arm during operation.

Precautions for Lightning

- The machine is vulnerable to lightning strikes.

In the event of an electrical storm, immediately stop operation, and take the following actions.

- If you are around the machine, evacuate to a safe place far away from the machine.
- If you are in the cab, stay in the cab until lightning has passed and safety is secured. Close the cab doors and windows. Lower the bucket to the ground, and stop the engine. Put your hands on your lap to avoid contact with any metal surfaces. Never go out of the cab.

After the electrical storm has passed and safety is secured, check all of the machine safety devices for any failure. If any failed safety devices are found, operate the machine only after repairing them.



M4GB-05-001

SAFETY

Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object

- During hammer operation, debris from earth, rock or metal may fly in all directions, resulting in a serious personal injury or death.
 - When driving the connecting pins in or out, wear goggle or safety glasses, hard hat and face shield.



SA-432

- During machine operation, debris from earth, rock or metal may fly off from the tire and bucket, resulting in a serious personal injury or death.
 - Ensure nobody presents in or around the work area while machine is operating.



SA-344

- Falling of accumulated earth or dirt onto people may result in a serious personal injury or death.
 - Before performing maintenance, remove accumulated debris.



SA-527

SAFETY

Object Handling

CRANING OPERATION USING THE MACHINE IS NOT ALLOWED.

- If a lifted load should fall, any person nearby may be struck by the falling load or may be crushed underneath it, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never attach a sling or chain to the bucket teeth or to the attachment (fork or grapple for example). They may come off, causing the load to fall.



SA-132

SAFETY

Park Machine Safely

To avoid accidents:

- Park the machine on a firm, level surface.
- Lower bucket to the ground.
- Put the forward / reverse lever (switch) in neutral, and turn the parking brake switch (lever) ON (parking brake) position.
- Run the engine at low idle speed without load for 3 minutes.
- Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine.
- Remove the key from the key switch.
- Turn the control lever lock switch to the lock (🔒) position.
- Close windows, roof vent, and cab door.
- Lock all access doors and compartments.



SA-456

Store Attachments Safely

- Stored attachments such as buckets, hydraulic hammers, and blades can fall and cause serious injury or death.
- Securely store attachments and implements to prevent falling. Keep children and bystanders away from storage areas.



SA-034

SAFETY

Transport Safely

- Be careful because the machine may turn over when loading or unloading the machine on or off of a truck or trailer.
 - Observe the related regulations and rules for safe transportation.
 - Select an appropriate truck or trailer for the machine to be transported.
 - Be sure to use a signal person.
 - Always follow the following precautions for loading or unloading:
 1. Select solid and level ground.
 2. Always use a ramp or deck strong enough to support the machine weight.
 3. Use a low speed gear.
 4. Never steer the machine while being on the ramp. If the traveling direction must be changed while being on the ramp, unload the machine from the ramp, reposition the machine on the ground, then try loading again.
 5. After loading, install the lock bar (articulation stopper) to securely hold the articulation mechanism.
 6. Chock the front and rear of tires. Securely hold the machine to the truck or trailer deck with heavy chains of wire cables.



SA-454

Be sure to further follow the details described in the TRANSPORTING chapter.

SAFETY

Handle Fluids Safely—Avoid Fires

- Handle fuel with care; it is highly flammable. If fuel ignites, an explosion and / or a fire may occur, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks.
 - Always stop the engine before refueling the machine.
 - Fill the fuel tank outdoors.
- All fuels, most lubricants, and some coolants are flammable.
 - Store flammable fluids well away from fire hazards.
 - Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.
 - Do not store oily rags; they can ignite and burn spontaneously.
 - Securely tighten the fuel and oil filler caps.



SA-018



SA-019

SAFETY

Practice Safe Maintenance

To avoid accidents:

- Understand service procedures before starting work.
- Keep the work area clean and dry.
- Do not spray water or steam inside cab.
- Never lubricate or service the machine while it is moving.
- Keep hands, feet and clothing away from power-driven parts.

Before servicing the machine:

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
 2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
 3. Run the engine at low idle speed without load for 3 minutes.
 4. Turn the key switch to OFF to stop engine. Wait for some seconds and turn the key switch to ON again.
 5. Relieve the pressure in the hydraulic system by moving the control levers several times.
 6. Turn the control lever lock switch to the LOCK (🔒) position.
 7. Turn the key switch to OFF, and remove the key from the key switch.
 8. Attach a "Do Not Operate" tag on the control lever.
 9. Connect the front and rear chassis with articulation stopper.
 10. Allow the engine to cool.
- Refer to page 7-7 "Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance".
 - If a maintenance procedure must be performed with the engine running, do not leave machine unattended.
 - Never work under a machine raised by the lift arm.
 - Inspect certain parts periodically and repair or replace as necessary. Refer to the section discussing that part in the "MAINTENANCE" chapter of this manual.
 - Keep all parts in good condition and properly installed.
 - Fix damage immediately. Replace worn or broken parts. Remove any buildup of grease, oil, or debris.
 - When cleaning parts, always use nonflammable detergent oil. Never use highly flammable oil such as fuel oil and gasoline to clean parts or surfaces.
 - Disconnect battery ground cable (-) before making adjustments to electrical systems or before performing welding on the machine.



SA-028



SA-312



SA-134



SA-527

SAFETY

- Sufficiently illuminate the work site. Use a maintenance work light when working under or inside the machine.
- Always use a work light protected with a guard. In case the light bulb is broken, spilled fuel, oil, antifreeze fluid, or window washer fluid may catch fire.



SA-037

Warn Others of Service Work

- Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.
- Before performing any work on the machine, attach a “Do Not Operate” tag on the control lever. This tag is available from Authorized Dealer.



SS2045102-4

Support Machine Properly

- Never attempt to work on the machine without securing the machine first.
- Always lower the attachment to the ground before you work on the machine.
- If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment. Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tires, or props that may crumble under continuous load. Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack.



SA-527

SAFETY

Stay Clear of Moving Parts

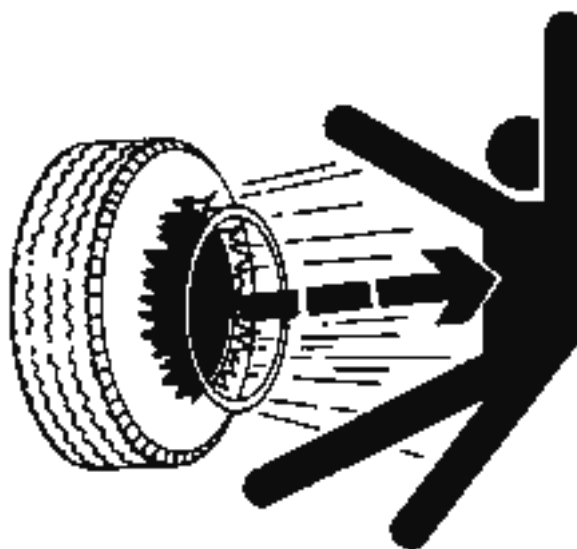
- Entanglement in moving parts can cause serious injury.
- To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, clothing, jewelry and hair do not become entangled when working around rotating parts.



SA-026

Support Maintenance Properly

- Explosive separation of a tire and rim parts can cause serious injury or death.
- Do not attempt to mount a tire unless you have the proper equipment and experience to perform the job. Have it done by Authorized Dealer or a qualified repair service.
- Always maintain the correct tire pressure. DO NOT inflate tire above the recommended pressure.
- When inflating tires, use a chip-on chuck and extension hose long enough to allow you to stand to one side and not in front of or over the tire assembly. Use a safety cage if available.
- Inspect tires and wheels daily. Do not operate with low pressure, cuts bubbles, damaged rims, or missing lug bolts and nuts.
- Never cut or weld on an inflated tire or rim assembly. Heat from welding could cause an increase in pressure and may result in tire explosion.



SA-249

SAFETY

Prevent Parts from Flying

- Travel reduction gears are under pressure.
- As pieces may fly off, be sure to keep body and face away from AIR RELEASE PLUG to avoid injury.
- GEAR OIL is hot. Wait for GEAR OIL to cool, then gradually loosen AIR RELEASE PLUG to release pressure.



SA-344

Prevent Burns

Hot spraying fluids:

- After operation, engine coolant is hot and under pressure. Hot water or steam is contained in the engine, radiator and heater lines. Skin contact with escaping hot water or steam can cause severe burns.
- Avoid possible injury from hot spraying water. DO NOT remove the radiator cap until the engine is cool. When opening, turn the cap slowly to the stop. Allow all pressure to be released before removing the cap.
- The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Again, be sure to release all pressure before removing the cap.



SA-039

Hot fluids and surfaces:

- Engine oil, gear oil and hydraulic oil also become hot during operation. The engine, hoses, lines and other parts become hot as well.
- Wait for the oil and components to cool before starting any maintenance or inspection work.



SA-225

SAFETY

Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically

- Rubber hoses that contain flammable fluids under pressure may break due to aging, fatigue, and abrasion. It is very difficult to gauge the extent of deterioration due to aging, fatigue, and abrasion of rubber hoses by inspection alone.
- Periodically replace the rubber hoses. (See the page of "Periodic replacement of parts" in the operator's manual.)
- Failure to periodically replace rubber hoses may cause a fire, fluid injection into skin, or the front attachment to fall on a person nearby, which may result in severe burns, gangrene, or otherwise serious injury or death.



SA-019

Avoid High-Pressure Fluids

- Fluids such as diesel fuel or hydraulic oil under pressure can penetrate the skin or eyes causing serious injury, blindness or death.
- Avoid this hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines.
- Tighten all connections before applying pressure.
- Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard; take care to protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids. Wear a face shield or goggles for eye protection.
- If an accident occurs, see a doctor familiar with this type of injury immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours, or gangrene may result.



SA-031



SA-292



SA-044

SAFETY

Prevent Fires

Check for Oil Leaks:

- Fuel, hydraulic oil and lubricant leaks can lead to fires.
 - Check for oil leaks due to missing or loose clamps, kinked hoses, lines or hoses that rub against each other, damage to the oil-cooler, and loose oil-cooler flange bolts.
 - Tighten, repair or replace any missing, loose or damaged clamps, lines, hoses, oil-cooler and oil-cooler flange bolts.
 - Do not bend or strike high-pressure lines.
 - Never install bent or damaged lines, pipes, or hoses.
 - Replace fuel hoses and hydraulic hoses periodically even if there is no abnormality in their external appearance.



SA-019

Check for Shorts:

- Short circuits can cause fires.
 - Clean and tighten all electrical connections.
 - Check before each shift or after eight (8) to ten (10) hours operation for loose, kinked, hardened or frayed electrical cables and wires.
 - Check before each shift or after eight (8) to ten (10) hours operation for missing or damaged terminal caps.
 - DO NOT OPERATE MACHINE if cable or wires are loose, kinked, etc.
 - Never attempt to modify electric wirings.

Clean up Flammable Materials:

- Spilled fuel and oil, and trash, grease, debris, accumulated coal dust, and other flammable materials may cause fires.
 - Prevent fires by inspecting and cleaning the machine daily, and by removing adhered oil or accumulated flammable materials immediately. Check and clean high temperature parts such as the exhaust outlet and mufflers earlier than the normal interval.
 - Do not wrap high temperature parts such as a muffler or exhaust pipe with oil absorbents.
 - Do not store oily cloths as they are vulnerable to catching fire.
 - Keep flammable materials away from open flames.
 - Do not ignite or crush a pressurized or sealed container.
 - Wire screens may be provided on openings on the engine compartment covers to prevent flammable materials such as dead leaves from entering. However, flammable materials which have passed through the wire screen may cause fires. Check and clean the machine every day and immediately remove accumulated flammable materials.

SAFETY

Check Key Switch:

- If a fire breaks out, failure to stop the engine will escalate the fire, hampering fire fighting.
Always check key switch function before operating the machine every day:
 1. Start the engine and run it at low idle.
 2. Turn the key switch to the OFF position to confirm that the engine stops.
- If any abnormalities are found, be sure to repair them before operating the machine.

Check Heat Shields:

- Damaged or missing heat shields may lead to fires.
 - Damaged or missing heat shields must be repaired or replaced before operating the machine.
 - If hydraulic hoses are broken while the engine cover is open, splattered oil on the high temperature parts such as mufflers may cause fire. Always close the engine cover while operating the machine.

Evacuating in Case of Fire

- If a fire breaks out, evacuate the machine in the following way:
 - Stop the engine by turning the key switch to the OFF position if there is time.
 - Use a fire extinguisher if there is time.
 - Exit the machine.
 - If the cab doors do not open, break them with a hammer to make an escape way.
- In an emergency, if the cab door can not be opened, break the front or rear window panes with the emergency evacuation hammer to escape from the cab. Refer to the explanation pages on the Emergency Evacuation Method.



SA-393



SS-1510

SAFETY

Beware of Exhaust Fumes

- Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.
- If you must operate in a building, be sure there is adequate ventilation. Either use an exhaust pipe extension to remove the exhaust fumes or open doors and windows to bring enough outside air into the area.
- PM (Particle Matter) combustion may generate white smoke during aftertreatment device regeneration. Do not attempt to perform aftertreatment device manual regeneration in a badly ventilated indoors.



SA-016

Precautions for Welding and Grinding

- Welding may generate gas and / or small fires.
 - Be sure to perform welding in a well ventilated and prepared area. Store flammable objects in a safe place before starting welding.
 - Only qualified personnel should perform welding. Never allow an unqualified person to perform welding.
- Grinding on the machine may create fire hazards. Store flammable objects in a safe place before starting grinding.
- After finishing welding and grinding, recheck that there are no abnormalities such as the area surrounding the welded area still smoldering.



SA-818

Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines

- Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders.
 - Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.
 - Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install temporary fire-resistant guards to protect hoses or other materials before engaging in welding, soldering, etc.



SA-030

SAFETY

Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids

- Do not weld or flame cut pipes or tubes that contain flammable fluids.
- Clean them thoroughly with nonflammable solvent before welding or flame cutting them.

Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper

High-pressure nitrogen gas is sealed in the accumulator and the gas damper. Inappropriate handling may cause explosion, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.

Strictly comply with the following items:

- Do not disassemble the unit.
 - Keep the units away from open flames and fire.
 - Do not bore a hole, do not cut by torch.
 - Avoid giving shocks by hitting or rolling the unit.
 - Before disposing the unit, sealed gas must be released.
- Consult Authorized Dealer.

Precautions for Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)

- Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF), commonly referred to as AdBlue®, is an aqueous urea solution used as a consumable in selective catalytic reduction (SCR) to lower NO_x concentration in the exhaust emissions from the engine. It is a non-flammable and non-hazardous solution, and harmful effects are not expected under normal conditions of use.
- In case of a fire, DEF/AdBlue® would decompose and generate ammonia gas when heated to 160 °C or higher. Ammonia gas may cause lung injury and potentially is fatal if inhaled. It is a corrosive gas and the liquefied gas can cause frostbite and corrosive injury to eyes and skin. In case of contact, immediately flush skin with plenty of water at least 15 minutes while removing contaminated clothing. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- DEF/AdBlue® is corrosive to steel, aluminium, copper and brass, etc. If DEF/AdBlue® is spilled on your vehicle, wipe off and rinse with water.
- For the handling of DEF/AdBlue®, follow handling precautions on Material Safety Data Sheet. Have suitable emergency equipment for fires, spills and leaks readily available. Practice good housekeeping. Maintain handling equipment. Comply with applicable regulations.

SAFETY

Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating

- Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch. If inhaled, these fumes may cause sickness.
 - Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.
 - Do all such work outside or in a well-ventilated area. Dispose of paint and solvent properly.
 - Remove paint before welding or heating:
 1. If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust. Wear an approved respirator.
 2. If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.



SA-029

Beware of Asbestos and Silicon Dust and Other Contamination

- Take care not to inhale dust produced in the work site. Inhalation of asbestos fibers may be the cause of lung cancer. Inhalation of silicon dust and other contamination may cause sickness.
 - Depending on the work site conditions, the risk of inhaling asbestos fiber, silica dust or other contamination may exist. Spray water to prevent asbestos fibers, silica dust or other contamination from becoming airborne. Do not use compressed air.
 - When operating the machine in a work site where asbestos fibers, silica dust or other contaminations might be present, be sure to operate the machine upwind, and wear a mask rated to prevent the inhalation of asbestos, silica dust or other contaminations.
 - Keep bystanders out of the work site during operation.
 - Asbestos might be present in non-genuine parts. Use only Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine parts.



SA-029

SAFETY

Prevent Battery Explosions

- Battery gas can explode.
 - Keep sparks, lighted matches, and flame away from the top of battery.
 - Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.
 - Do not charge a frozen battery; it may explode. Warm the battery to 16 °C first.
 - Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.
 - Loose terminals may produce sparks. Securely tighten all terminals.
 - Connect terminals to the correct electrical poles. Failure to do so may cause damage to the electrical parts or fire.
- Battery electrolyte is poisonous. If the battery should explode, battery electrolyte may be splashed into eyes, possibly resulting in blindness.
 - Be sure to wear eye protection when checking electrolyte specific gravity.



SA-032

Service Air Conditioning System Safely

- If spilled onto skin, refrigerant may cause a cold contact burn.
 - Refer to the instructions described on the container for proper use when handling the refrigerant.
 - Use a recovery and recycling system to avoid leaking refrigerant into the atmosphere.
 - Never touch the refrigerant.



SA-405

SAFETY

Handle Chemical Products Safely

- Direct exposure to hazardous chemicals can cause serious injury. Potentially hazardous chemicals used with your machine include such items as lubricants, coolants, paints, and adhesives.
- A Safety Data Sheet (SDS) provides specific details on chemical products: physical and health hazards, safety procedures, and emergency response techniques.
- Check the SDS before you start any job using a hazardous chemical. That way you will know exactly what the risks are and how to do the job safely. Then follow procedures and use recommended equipment.
- See Authorized Dealer for SDS's (available only in English) on chemical products used with your machine.



SA-2579

Dispose of Waste Properly

- Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment and ecology. Potentially harmful waste used with Hitachi Construction Machinery equipment includes such items as oil, fuel, coolant, DEF/AdBlue®, brake fluid, filters, and batteries.
- Use leakproof containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any water source.
- Air conditioning refrigerants escaping into the air can damage the Earth's atmosphere. Government regulations may require a certified air conditioning service center to recover and recycle used air conditioning refrigerants.
- Inquire on the proper way to recycle or dispose of waste from your local environmental or recycling center, or from Authorized Dealer.



SA-226

SAFETY

Notes on Aftertreatment Device

About Aftertreatment Device

The aftertreatment device removes particulate matter (PM) and NOx (Nitrogen Oxide) from the exhaust gas. Follow the instructions below to prevent the aftertreatment device from being damaged.

 **WARNING:** Exhaust gas from the aftertreatment device, muffler, exhaust piping and tail piping becomes hot during and right after engine running and regeneration of aftertreatment device. Keep away from the exhaust system or hot gas from the exhaust piping during regeneration. Be careful to avoid skin contact with exhaust gas. It may cause severe burns.

- White smoke may be generated during aftertreatment device regeneration. Do not attempt to perform aftertreatment device manual regeneration in a badly ventilated area.
- Ammonia odor may occur during aftertreatment device regeneration temporarily, but is not a trouble.
- Do not touch water coming directly out of the aftertreatment device. The water is mildly-acidic by oxidation catalyst mounted in the aftertreatment device. If filter water spills on your skin, immediately flush it out with clean water.

Precautions for Communication Terminal

- Electrical wave transmitted from the communication terminal may cause malfunction of other electronic devices. Inquire to the device manufacturer for information on electrical wave disturbance when using an electronic device near the communication terminal.
- Never attempt to disassemble, repair, modify or displace the communication terminal, antennas or cables. Failure to do so may result in damage and/or fire to the base machine or to the communication terminal. (When required to remove or install the communication terminal, consult Authorized Dealer.)
- Do not pinch or forcibly pull cables, cords or connectors. Failure to do so may cause a short or broken circuit that may result in damage and/or fire to the base machine or to the communication terminal.

SAFETY

Precautions for Communication Terminal Equipment

This machine is installed with a communication terminal emitting radio waves behind the operator's seat. There is a possibility that a medical device, including an implantable device such as a cardiac pacemaker, could be affected and malfunction due to the electrical waves emitted from the communication terminal.

For those who uses medical devices as above should adjust the operator's seat position to keep the distance between medical device and the communication terminal are at least 15 centimeters at all times. If this condition cannot be met, please contact Authorized Dealer and have the person in charge stop the communication terminal from functioning completely and confirm that no radio waves are emitted before operating the machine.

The effect of radio waves from communication terminal on the human body can be evaluated by measuring Specific Absorption Rate ("SAR"), which is a measure of the amount of radio frequency energy absorbed by the body when using a wireless application such as a mobile phone.

All communication terminal installed in this machine comply with technical standards and international guidelines regarding the absorption of radio waves by the human body.

There are two SAR measurement method and the safety standards, 2.0 W/kg (measured by 10 g per unit) and 1.6 W/kg (measured by 1 g per unit), either one is adopted depending on the country.

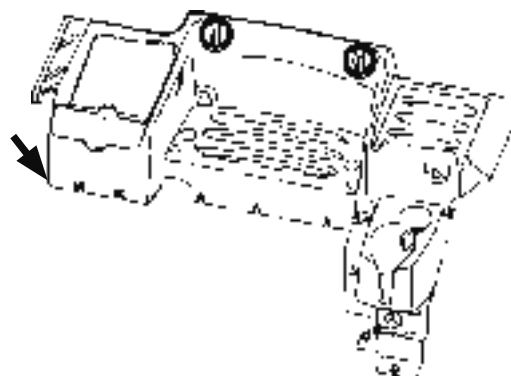
This machine is equipped with a communication terminal model HPRO-100, HPRO-4G, HPRO-4G V2 or QConnect. Consult Authorized Dealer for the model of communication terminal.

Specific Absorption Rate ("SAR") of communication terminal.
The values in () are based on Taiwanese regulations.

	HPRO-100	HPRO-4G*	HPRO-4G V2	QConnect *
1.6 W/kg (1 g/unit)	0.51 W/kg	0.91 W/kg	0.74 W/kg	-
2.0 W/kg (10 g/unit)	0.12 W/kg	0.50 W/kg (0.31 W/kg)	0.44 W/kg	- (0.25 W/kg)

This data was measured by having each type of communication terminal used with this machine, and a human body set apart by 3 centimeters.

Precautions in Taiwan*: Under the Taiwanese regulations, the maximum SAR value is set as the standard value 2 W/kg. The actual measurement value is 0.25 W/kg using QConnect, and 0.31 W/kg using HPRO-4G.



MNEC-01-046

SAFETY

- Do not attempt to disassemble, repair, modify or displace the communication terminal, antennas or cables. Failure to do so may result in damage and/or fire to the base machine or to the communication terminal. (Before removing or installing the communication terminal, consult Authorized Dealer.)
- Do not pinch or forcibly pull cables, cords or connectors. Failure to do so may cause damage or fire on the machine and the communication terminal due to short/broken circuit.

SAFETY

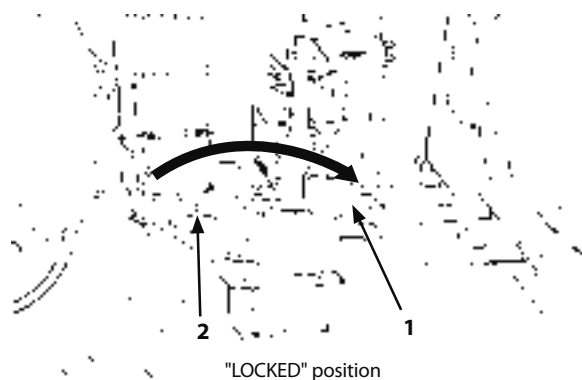
Articulation Stopper (Lock Bar)

⚠ WARNING: With articulation stopper in **LOCKED** position, machine will not steer; which, while operating, could cause an accident, injury or death. Do not lock Articulation Stopper during normal operation.

Articulation stopper locks the front and rear chassis to prevent them from sudden articulation during inspection or transportation. Refer to page 7-10.

To lock:

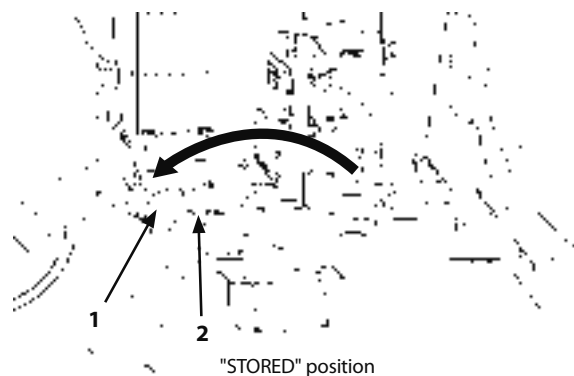
1. Align the front and rear chassis straight ahead.
2. Remove lock bolt (2) to release articulation stopper (1) from the rear chassis.
3. Turn the link and fix the end to the bracket on the front chassis (as shown).
4. Insert the pin and clip pin. (This is the **LOCKED** position.)



MNHE-07-005

To unlock:

1. Remove the clip pin and pin from the end of articulation stopper (1) on the front chassis bracket.
2. Turn the link to the rear chassis bracket.
3. Fix the end by tightening lock bolt (2). (This is the **STORED** position.)



MNHE-07-004

SAFETY

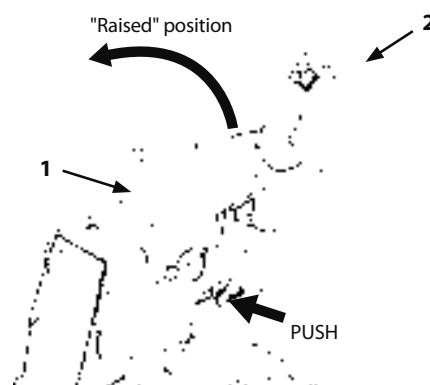
Joystick Steering System ON/OFF

WARNING: Accidental movement of the stick while getting on or off the machine may cause unexpected movement of the machine resulting in an accident, injury, or death.

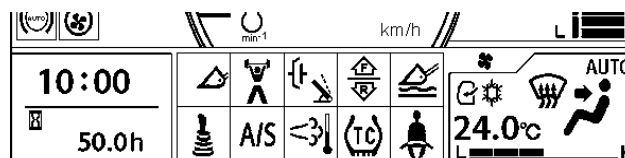
Always stop, and properly park the machine and turn off the joystick steering system while getting on or off the machine.

To turn OFF:

1. Push the lock button, hold lever (2) and lift armrest (1) to the fully raised position before getting off the machine.
2. When armrest (1) is fully raised, the joystick steering system is turned off automatically.
3. Then indicator lamp (3) on the monitor display goes out.



115Z7B-1-10-3

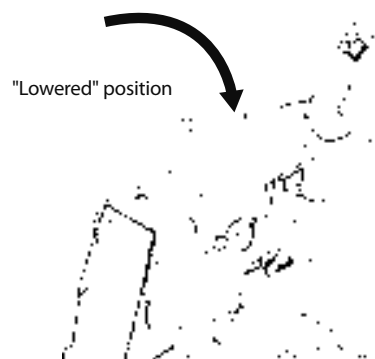


3

95Z7B-3-7-1

To turn ON:

1. Before operating the machine, lower armrest (1) back to the operating position.
2. When armrest (1) is completely lowered the joystick steering system is turned on automatically.
3. Then indicator lamp (3) on the monitor display turns on.



115Z7B-1-10-3

SAFETY

ROPS (Roll Over Protective Structure)

The Roll Over Protective Structure (ROPS) is attached to protect the cab in case of a machine rollover.

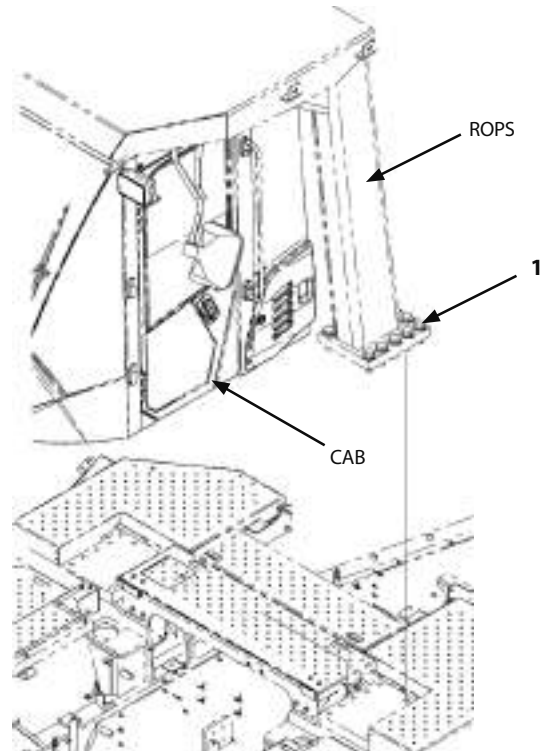
⚠ WARNING: Operating with damaged or improperly mounted ROPS could serious injury or death. Be sure to observe the following:

- Whenever seated, fasten the seat belt.
- Do not modify ROPS, such as drilling or welding.
- Do not use ROPS deformed.
- If any damage or loose bolts (1) are found, do not operate until repaired.
- Never repair or modify ROPS without manufacturer's approval and instructions.

Be sure the ROPS is:

- in place.
- properly attached (no bolts loose or missing).
- not damaged.
- not modified.

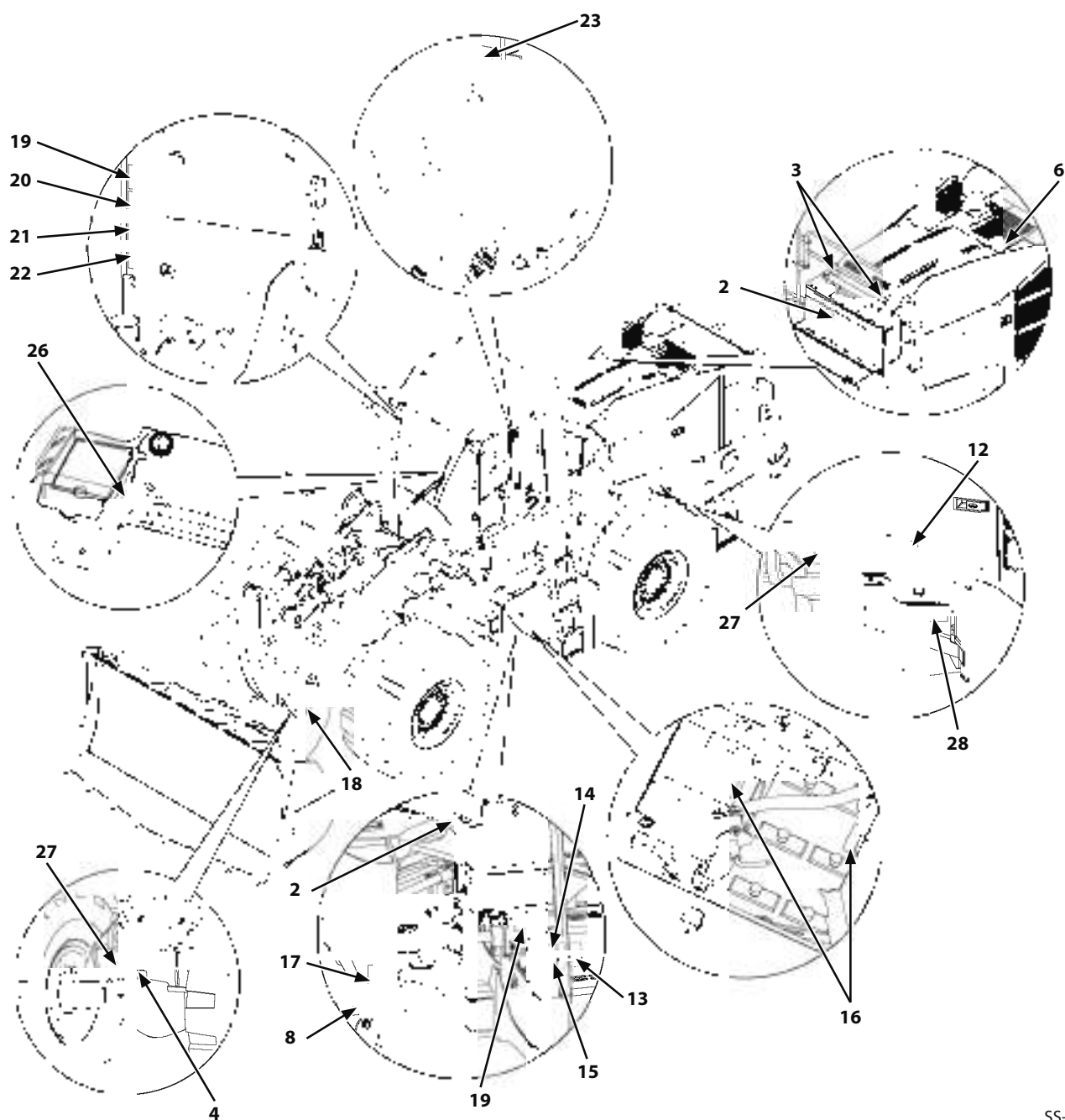
Periodically check the ROPS bolts (1) to be sure they are in place and tight.



115Z7-ROPS

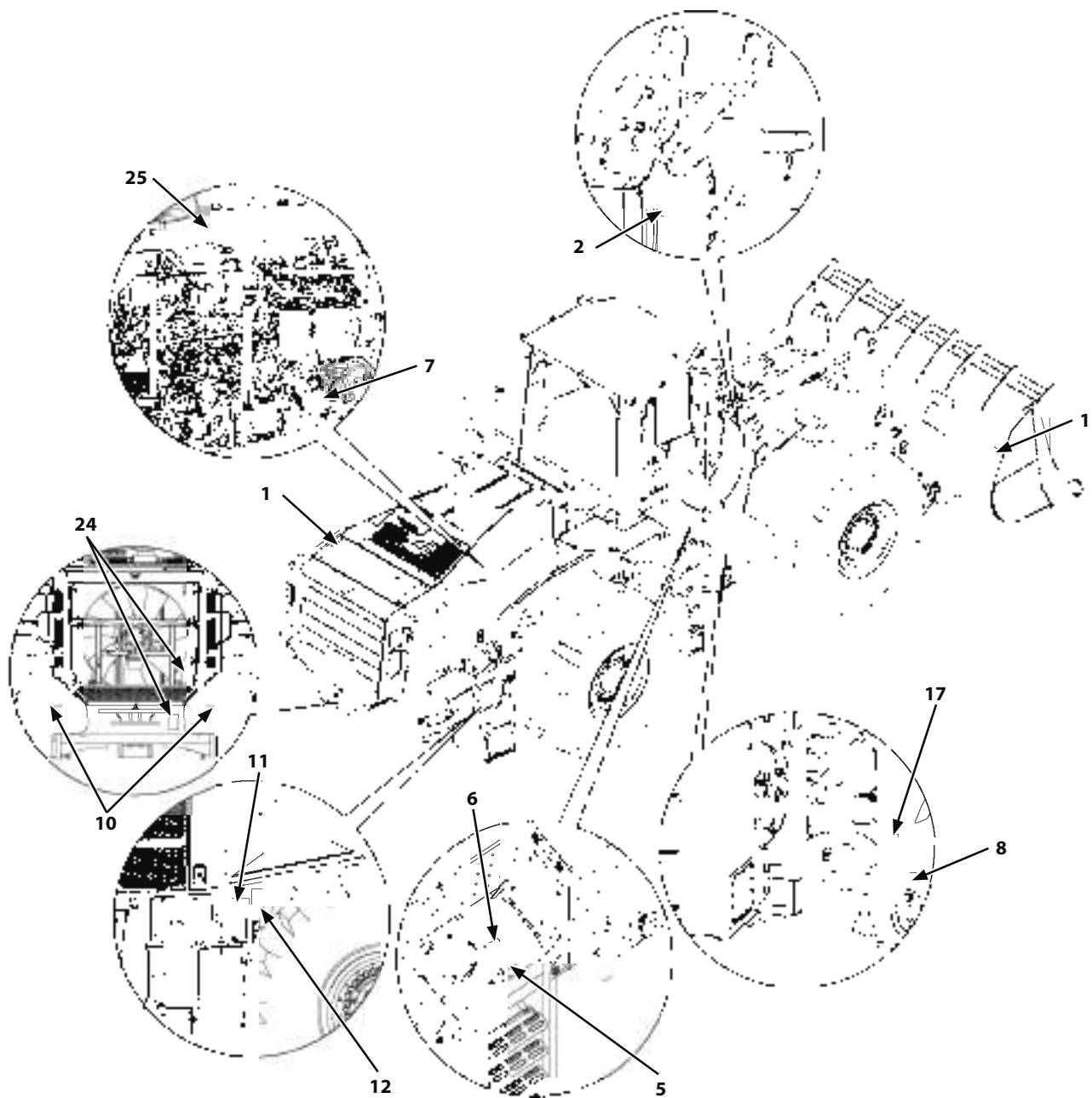
SAFETY SIGNS

All safety signs and their locations affixed on the machine are illustrated in this section. Make sure of the contents described in the safety signs by reading the actual signs affixed on the machine, to ensure safe machine operation. Always keep the safety signs clean. If a safety sign is broken or lost, immediately, obtain a new replacement and affix it again in position on the machine. Use the part number indicated under the right corner of each safety sign illustration when placing an order of it to the Authorized Dealer.



SS-4458

SAFETY SIGNS



SS-4459

SAFETY SIGNS

1. Bucket and Hood

Sign indicates a hazard of falling. Do not step on or stand in this area.



SS3092126-2

2. Accumulator residual pressure

High-pressurized gas is enclosed. Never perform welding and/or torch cutting, and keep away from open flames and heat. Do not try to disassemble it. Refer to the Operator's Manual for the correct removal/installation.



SSYA00049021

3. Both Sides of Engine Housing

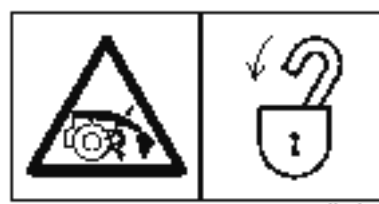
Avoid skin contact with highly heated parts such as the engine, muffler, etc. immediately after operation of the machine. Severe burns may result. Do not touch until cool.



SSYA00051986-1

4. Front Maintenance Access Cover for Front Frame

The front attachment may automatically be lowered, possibly resulting in personal injury. Lower the front attachment to the ground before inspecting/maintaining the machine. In case inspection and/or maintenance work must unavoidably be performed with the front attachment raised, lock the front attachment control levers in position. Then, securely support the front attachment with safety supports and/or blocks.



SSYA00052005

SAFETY SIGNS

5. Top of Hydraulic Oil Tank

Sign indicates a burn hazard from compressed air and spurting hot oil if the oil inlet is uncapped during or right after operation.

Read manual for safe and proper handling.



SS4459928-1

6. Top of Coolant Reservoir Tank and Hydraulic Tank

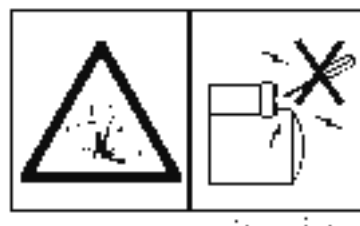
Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot water or oil if coolant reservoir or hydraulic tank is uncapped while hot. Allow radiator or hydraulic tank to cool before removing cap.



SS4420336-3

7. Side of Engine Starter

If the engine is following an incorrect method, the machine may suddenly start to move. Start the engine from the operator's seat only.



SSYA00004247-1

8. Both Sides of Front Frames

The articulation area becomes a pinch point when steering the machine.

Keep all personnel away from the articulation area during operation of the machine.



SSYA00052004

SAFETY SIGNS

9. Articulation Lock Bar

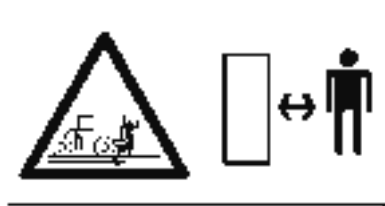
The articulation area becomes a pinch point when steering the machine. Keep all personnel away from the articulation area during operation of the machine.



SSYA00052007

10. Both Sides of Counterweight

Avoid injury from backing-over accident. Keep everyone away from the machine during operating.



SSYA00051987

11. Right Side Bottom of Rear Frame Side Cover

Sign indicates a hazard of rotating parts, such as belt. Turn off before inspection and maintenance.



SS3092127-1

SS3092127-1

12. Both Sides Bottom of Rear Frame Side Cover

Machine movement, if engine starts in gear, could result in death or serious injury.

- Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.
- Do not start engine while standing on ground.

Make sure to start engine only from operator's seat with transmission in neutral and parking brake applied.



SSYA00022481-2

SAFETY SIGNS

13. Inside Battery Box

Sign indicates an electrical hazard from handling battery terminals. Read manual for safe and proper handling.



SS4459714-1

14. Inside Battery Box

Sign indicates an explosion hazard. Keep fire and open flames away from this area.



SS4460067-2

15. Inside Battery Box

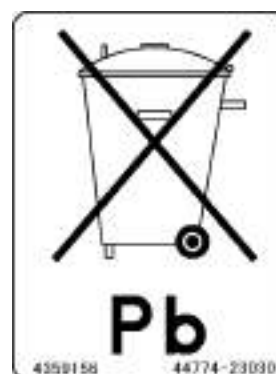
Skin contact with electrolyte will cause burns. Splashed electrolyte into eyes will cause blindness. Take care not to touch electrolyte.



SS4460056-2

16. Top of Battery

Batteries contain lead and acid. Obey all local laws and regulation on disposal of batteries and electrolyte solution.



4359156

SAFETY SIGNS

17. Both Sides of Front Frames

Pressurized system: spray of hot fluid could result in death or serious injury.

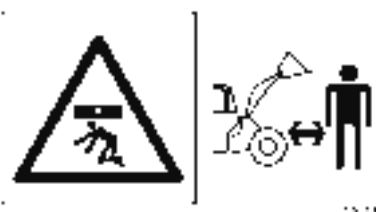
Allow system to cool and vent pressure slowly before servicing.



44787-26030

18. Both Sides of Lift Arm

During operation, loads may spill from the bucket and/or the bucket may suddenly fall. Keep everyone far away from the machine during operation.



SSYA00052006

19. Cab Inside Right Front Column (First safety sign from the top), Inside Battery Box, and Hood

Prior to operation, maintenance, disassembling, and transportation of the machine, be sure to read and understand the Operator's Manual.

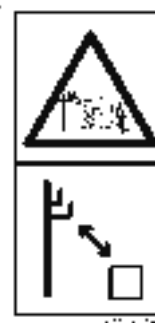


SSYA00049019

20. Cab Inside Right Front Column (2nd safety sign from the top)

Sign indicates an electrocution hazard if machine is brought too near electric power lines.

Keep a safe distance from electric power lines.



SSYA00051959

SAFETY SIGNS

21. Cab Inside Right Front Column (3rd safety sign from the top)

If the parked machine starts moving unexpectedly, personal injury or death due to entanglement in moving parts or running over by the machine may result. Before leaving the machine, lower the front attachment to the ground, lock the control levers, and remove the key from the key switch.



SSYA00049020

22. Cab Inside Right Front Column (4th safety sign from the top)

To minimize the injury due to an overturning accident, be sure to fasten the seat belt prior to operating the machine.

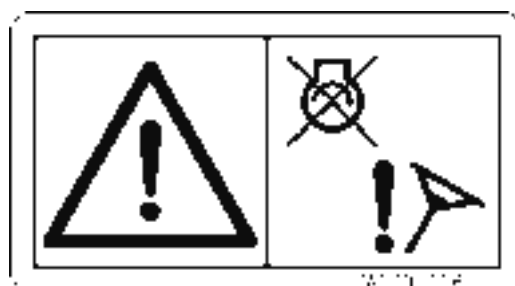


SSYA00049023

23. Cab Inside Left Rear Column

If the steering system is abnormal, the emergency steering system is activated so that steering operation can be achieved on a temporary basis. Immediately park the machine in a safe location.

If the machine is operated with the abnormal steering system, serious accident may result.



SSYA00051965

SAFETY SIGNS

24. Both Right and Left Side of Engine Housing Frame

Sign indicates a hazard of rotating parts, such as fan. Turn it off before inspection and maintenance.



44787-26020

25. EGR Cooler

Pressurized system: spray of hot fluid could result in death or serious injury.

Allow system to cool and vent pressure slowly before servicing.



44787-26240

26. Cab Inside Rear Console

To those persons fixed with any medical device. Including implantable device such as a cardiac pacemaker. Please read the instruction manual carefully and follow the instructions before using this machine.



SSYA00000341-3

SAFETY SIGNS

27. Front and Rear Frames

Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot oil if front or rear axle plug is uncapped while hot.
Allow front or rear axle to cool before removing plugs.



44787-26040

28. On Engine Oil Filter Cover

Sign indicates a hazard of falling. Do not step on or stand in this area.

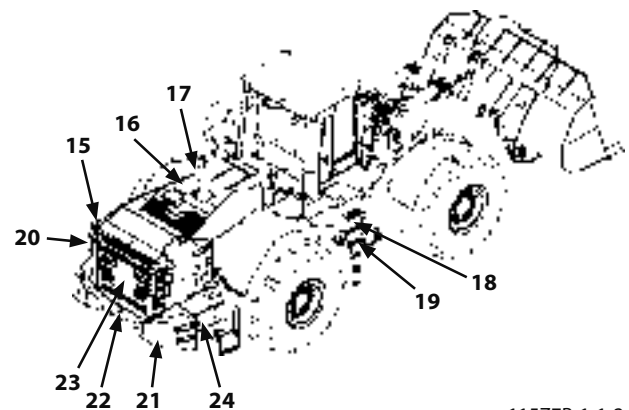
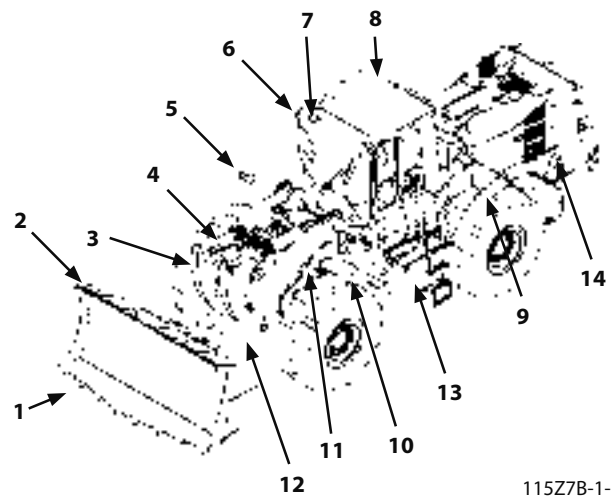


SSYA00068905

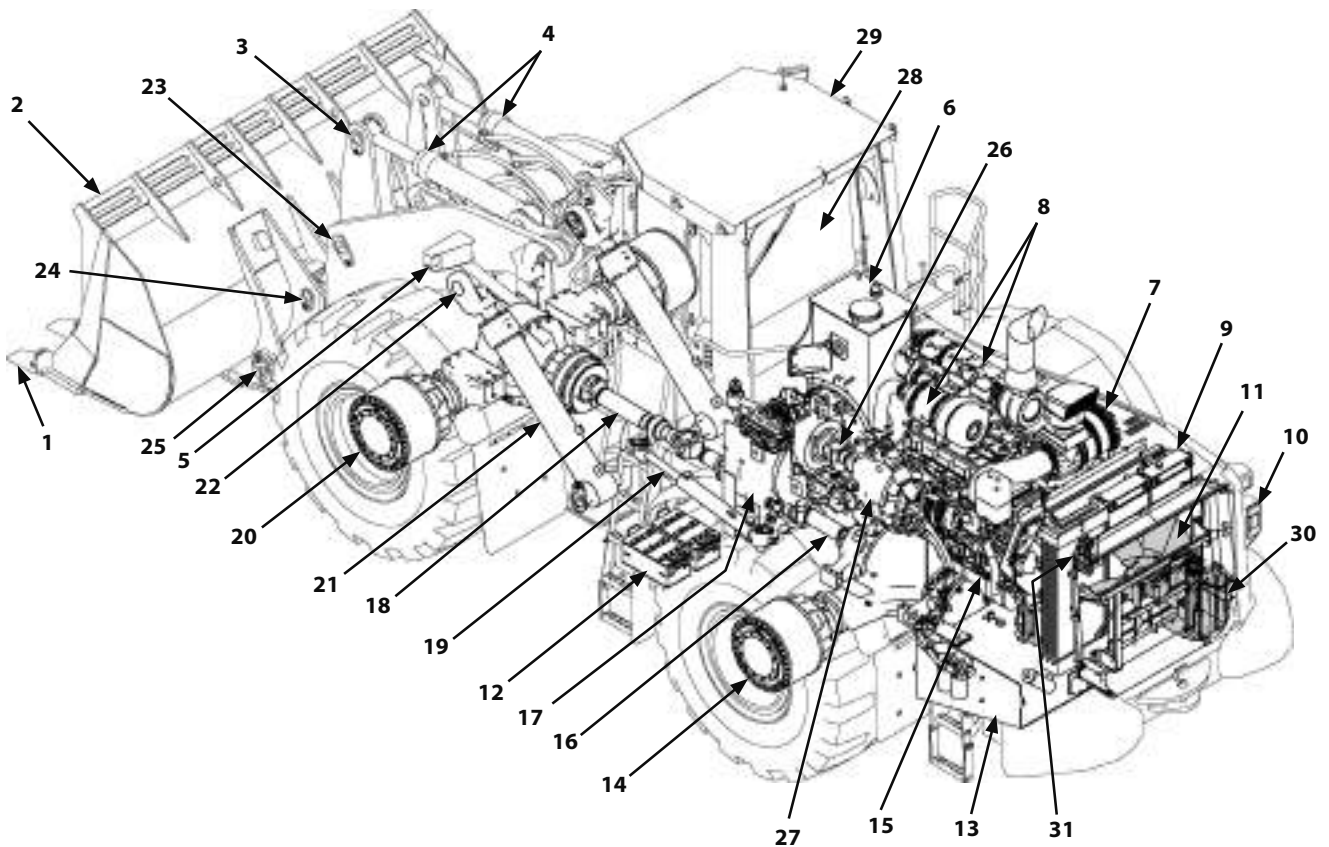
COMPONENTS NAME

Name of Components

- 1- Bucket Teeth
- 2- Bucket
- 3- Bell Crank (Lever)
- 4- Bucket Cylinder
- 5- Front Combination Light
(Headlight/Turn Signal/Clearance Light/Hazard Light)
- 6- Outside Rear View Mirror
- 7- Front Work Light
- 8- ROPS Cab
- 9- Rear Fender
- 10- Front Fender
- 11- Lift Arm Cylinder
- 12- Lift Arm
- 13- Battery (Two on the left side)
- 14- Fuel Filler Port
- 15- Rear Work Light
- 16- Aftertreatment Device
- 17- Exhaust Pipe
- 18- Hydraulic Oil Tank
- 19- Articulation Lock Bar
- 20- Rear Combination Light
(Turn Signal/Hazard Light/Tail Light/Brake Light/Backup Light)
- 21- Counterweight
- 22- Towing Pin
- 23- Cooling Unit
- 24- DEF/AdBlue®Tank



COMPONENTS NAME



115Z7B-1-2-1

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1- Bucket Teeth | 17- Transmission |
| 2- Bucket | 18- Second (Front and Center) Propeller Shaft |
| 3- Bucket Cylinder Rod Pin | 19- Steering Cylinder |
| 4- Bucket Cylinder | 20- Front Axle |
| 5- Front Combination Lamp | 21- Lift Arm Cylinder |
| 6- Hydraulic Oil Tank | 22- Lift Arm Cylinder Rod Pin |
| 7- Air Cleaner | 23- Bell Crank (Lever) Pin |
| 8- Aftertreatment Device | 24- Bucket Link Pin |
| 9- Radiator, Oil Cooler, and Other Cooling System | 25- Bucket Hinge Pin |
| 10- Rear Combination Lamp | 26- First (Main) Propeller Shaft |
| 11- Radiator Fan | 27- Torque Converter |
| 12- Battery | 28- Cab |
| 13- Fuel Tank | 29- ROPS (Roll Over Protective Structure) |
| 14- Rear Axle | 30- DEF/AdBlue® Tank |
| 15- Engine | 31- DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module |
| 16- Third (Rear) Propeller Shaft | |

GETTING ON AND OFF THE MACHINE

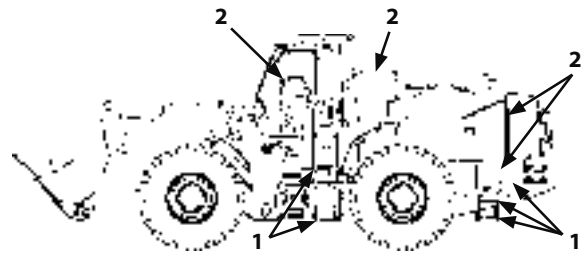
Getting ON and OFF the Machine

Footholds (1) and handrails (2) are provided around the machine for safe entry and exit to the cab. These are used to get on and off the cab safely as well as to do inspection and maintenance. Never jump on or off the machine, it is very dangerous.

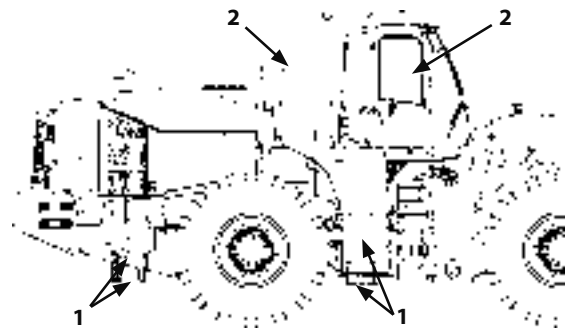
WARNING:

- When lifting the cab/main body or transporting the machine, never attach wire to footholds (1).
- The door handle (3) is not a handrail. Do not hold the door handle (3) as a handrail when getting on and off the machine.
- Do not hold the control levers when getting on and off the machine.
- For machines equipped with joystick steering put the left console in the disabled position before getting in and out of the machine.

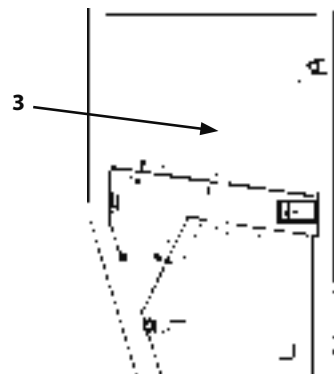
For information on operating joystick steering refer to the section "Joystick Steering" in Refer to page S-41.



115Z7B-01-01



115Z7B-01-02



MNHK-01-014

OPERATOR'S STATION

Aftertreatment Device

The machine is equipped with the aftertreatment system combining Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC) block (1) with Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) block (2) to remove nitrogen oxide (NOx) from the exhaust gas in order to meet governmental emissions regulations.

The DOC reduces harmful substances in exhaust gas by chemical reaction, then DEF is injected in dosing module (injection chamber) (3) and mixed into the exhaust stream. DEF decomposed to ammonia and CO₂. SCR catalyst converts NOx into harmless nitrogen gas and water vapor by accelerating chemical reaction with the ammonia. The remaining ammonia is decomposed into nitrogen and water by DOC in SCR block (2).

Follow the instructions below to prevent the aftertreatment device from being damaged.



95Z7B-SCR4

IMPORTANT:

- **Refer to 1-35 for further information.**
- **Exhaust gas from the aftertreatment device, and exhaust piping becomes hotter during and right after engine running and regeneration of aftertreatment device. Be careful not to let your skin contact any part of exhaust system or hot gas from the exhaust piping. It may cause severe burns.**
- **If flammable objects such as dried leaves or paper scraps are around the aftertreatment device, they may cause a fire.**
- **Before maintaining the machine, stop the engine and make sure the engine has cooled down sufficiently to prevent burns.**
- **Be sure to use fuel that complies with JIS K-2204, EN-590 and ASTM D-975 which contains 15 ppm or lower sulfur. If the fuel described above is not used, exhaust gas that exceeds the regulation values may be discharged and serious problems may arise on the engine.**

OPERATOR'S STATION

- **Refill DEF/AdBlue® which meets JIS or ISO (International Organization for Standardization). If improper liquid (diesel oil, kerosene or gasoline) is refilled in the DEF/AdBlue® tank, fire or system failure may result.**
- **Use only recommended engine oil. Using engine oil other than the recommended may result in malfunction of the aftertreatment device.**
- **Contaminated fuel, incorrect fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene or other incorrect fluids will damage the fuel injection system and will lead to engine malfunction, which is not covered by warranty. Incorrect fuels will also damage the aftertreatment device.**
Use only clean Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel without additives that contain metal elements, oil distillates or alcohol. These items will permanently damage the aftertreatment device and are not covered by warranty.
- **Do not modify the machine without authorization. Never attempt to modify the air inlet and exhaust parts such as the air duct, aftertreatment device and the exhaust outlet. Also never attempt to disassemble the aftertreatment device.**
- **Avoid giving shocks on the aftertreatment device by hitting elements with other objects or dropping the device. Failure to do so may affect the aftertreatment device, possibly damaging it or lowering its performance.**
- **It is normal to see white smoke appear during regeneration. It is not caused by a malfunction. Do not attempt to perform aftertreatment device manual regeneration indoors in an area that is not well ventilated or free from flammable materials.**
- **Ammonia odor may occur during aftertreatment device regeneration temporarily, but is not a trouble.**
- **Consult Authorized Dealer for checking or repairing the aftertreatment device.**

OPERATOR'S STATION

Automatic Regeneration

White deposition may accumulate inside the aftertreatment device. An automatic regeneration (Auto-regeneration) mode is designed to automatically clean the aftertreatment device at regular intervals. The auto-regeneration may start during operation of the machine; you can continue to operate the machine. (Refer to 1-35).

 NOTE:

- Usually, auto-regeneration starts after the previous regeneration at regular intervals (either auto or manual).
- If auto-regeneration interval becomes shorter, consult Authorized Dealer.

Auto-regeneration may be "terminated" early (inhibited) when in the presence of flammable materials, such as flammable airborne debris, wood dust, grain dust, dried leaf debris, or other flammable risks.

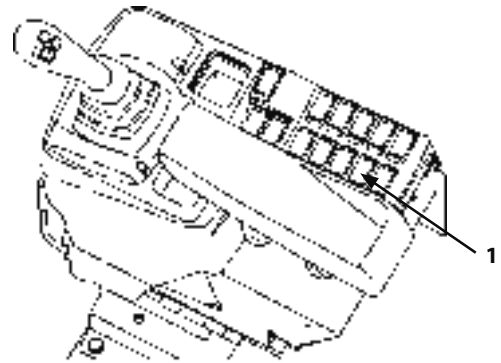
However, when "early termination" (inhibiting regeneration) happens often, the system will sense this and eventually call for a manual regeneration using manual regeneration switch (1). The regeneration request symbol will show, indicating that manual regeneration is required. Refer to page 1-36 for further information.

IMPORTANT: During aftertreatment device regeneration, do not stop the engine unless absolutely necessary.

Upon stopping the engine immediately after regeneration completes, run the engine at slow idle for 5 minutes to cool it.

If the engine is stopped suddenly and not cooled, the aftertreatment device will remain hot which may result in damage to the urea SCR system.

 **NOTE:** The auto-regeneration may be terminated depending on the machine operating condition.



MN HK-01-011

OPERATOR'S STATION

Repeated Inhibiting of Aftertreatment Device Cleaning

IMPORTANT: When the machine is operated without performing manual regeneration, the aftertreatment device may be damaged. Immediately move the machine to a safe area and perform manual regeneration.

- If auto-regeneration is inhibited or interrupted, the following auto-regeneration will be accompanied by the aftertreatment device manual regeneration request. It is required to perform manual regeneration as soon as requested.



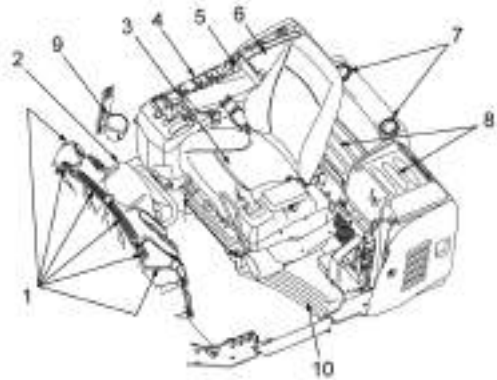
NOTE: The manual regeneration request indicator remains ON until a regeneration process completes successfully.

- When leaving machine without running aftertreatment device regeneration, gradual derate will be applied to the engine (refer to 1-36).
If manual regeneration does not work, call your local Authorized Dealer to repair the aftertreatment device.
- When SCR system errors are accompanied, take required action immediately (refer to 1-33).

OPERATOR'S STATION

Cab Features

- 1- Front Defroster
- 2- Front Console
- 3- Operator's Seat
- 4- Right Console
- 5- Document Holder
- 6- Hot/Cool Box
- 7- Rear Defroster
- 8- Glove Compartment
- 9- Cup Holder
- 10- Floor Mat

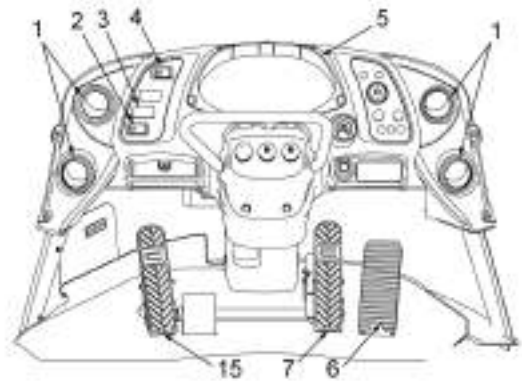


115Z7-1-7-1

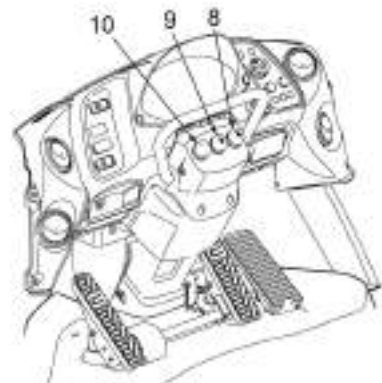
OPERATOR'S STATION

Front Console

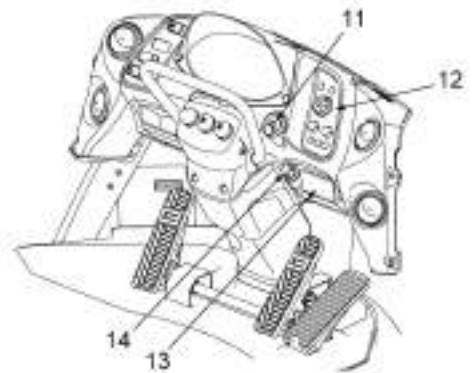
- 1- Air Conditioner Front Vent
- 2- Hazard Switch
- 3- Work Light Switch
- 4- Parking Brake Switch
- 5- Monitor Panel
- 6- Accelerator Pedal
- 7- Brake Pedal
- 8- Front Window Wiper Switch
- 9- Rear Window Wiper Switch
- 10- Light Switch
- 11- Key Switch
- 12- Multi Function Monitor/Air Conditioner Switch Panel
- 13- Ash Tray
- 14- Cigar Lighter
- 15- Brake/Clutch Cut Pedal



115Z7-1-8-1



115Z7-1-8-2

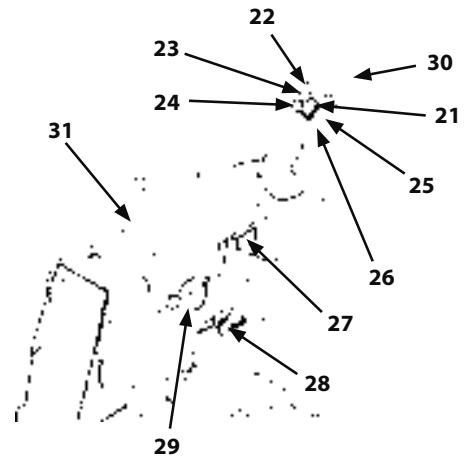


115Z7-1-8-3

OPERATOR'S STATION

Joystick Steering

- 21- Forward/Reverse Switch
- 22- Joystick
- 23- Shift Up Switch
- 24- Shift Down Switch
- 25- Hold Switch (Under the Joystick)
- 26- Horn Switch (Under the Joystick)
- 27- Joystick Steering System Switch
- 28- Armrest Lock Release Button
- 29- Armrest Adjust Handle
- 30- Support Bar
- 31- Armrest

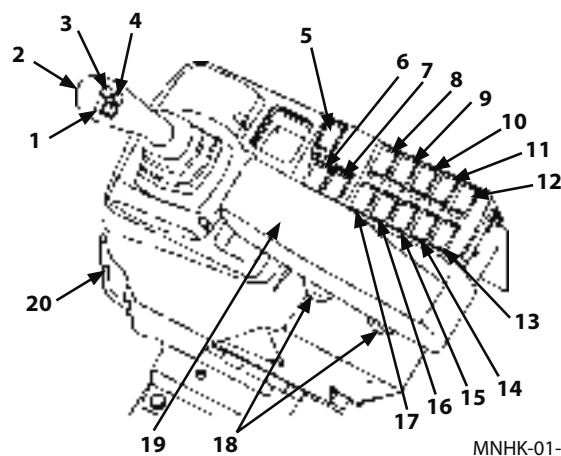


115Z7B-1-10-3

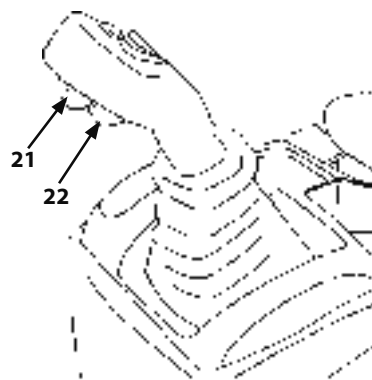
OPERATOR'S STATION

Right Console

- 1- Turn Signal Switch
- 2- Multi-Function Joystick Lever
- 3- Quick Power Switch
- 4- DSS (Down Shift Switch)
- 5- Control Lever Lock Switch
- 6- Clutch Cut Position Switch
- 7- Travel Mode Selector Switch
- 8- Power Mode Selector Switch
- 9- Auxiliary
- 10- Fan Reverse Rotation Switch
- 11- Auxiliary
- 12- Auxiliary
- 13- Emergency Steering Operation Check Switch
- 14- Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Switch
- 15- Auxiliary
- 16- 2nd/3rd Speed Limit Switch
- 17- Ride Control Switch
- 18- Armrest Adjust Handle
- 19- Armrest
- 20- Right Console Slide Lever
- 21- Hold Switch (Under the Lever)
- 22- Horn Switch (Under the Lever)



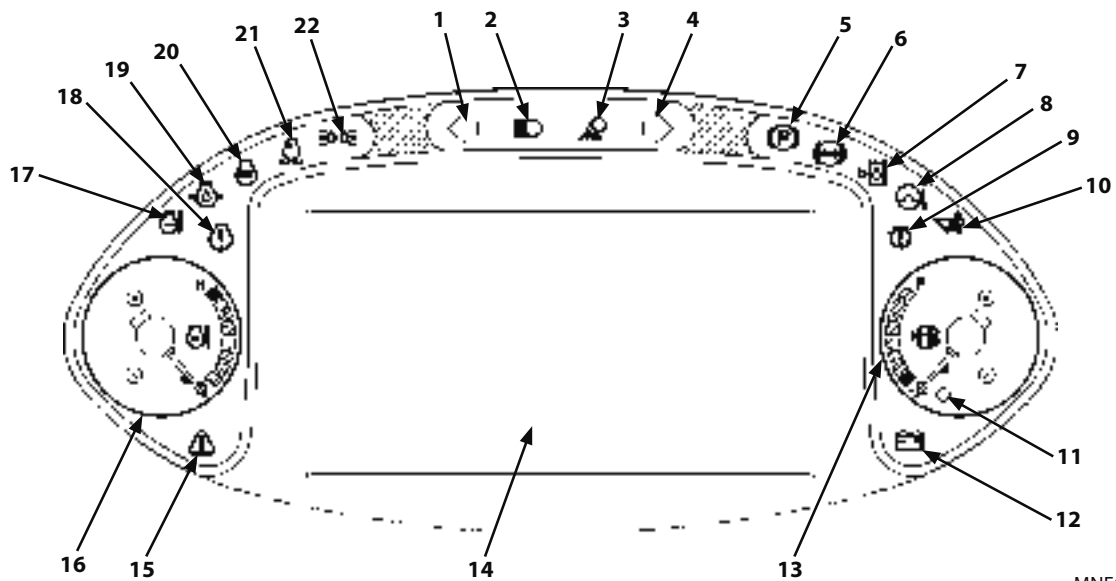
MN HK-01-011



MNEC-01-044

OPERATOR'S STATION

Monitor Panel



MNEC-01-001

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1- Left Turn Signal Indicator | 12- Discharge Warning Indicator |
| 2- High Beam Indicator | 13- Fuel Gauge |
| 3- Work Light Indicator | 14- Multi Function Monitor |
| 4- Right Turn Signal Indicator | 15- Communication System Error Indicator |
| 5- Parking Brake Indicator | 16- Coolant Temperature Gauge |
| 6- Brake Oil Low Pressure Indicator | 17- Overheat Indicator |
| 7- Hydraulic Oil Level Indicator | 18- Engine Warning Indicator |
| 8- Low Steering Oil Pressure Indicator | 19- Engine Oil Low Pressure Indicator |
| 9- Transmission Warning Indicator | 20- Preheat Indicator |
| 10- Control Lever Lock Indicator | 21- Air Filter Restriction Indicator |
| 11- Fuel Level Indicator | 22- Clearance Light Indicator |

OPERATOR'S STATION

Parking Brake Indicator (Red)

The parking brake indicator will light when the parking brake is applied.

If the forward/reverse switch (or lever) is moved to either the forward (F) or the reverse (R) position when the parking brake is applied, the alarm buzzer will sound. Return the forward/reverse switch (or lever) to neutral (N) and release the parking brake.



M4GB-01-012

Brake Oil Low Pressure Indicator (Red)

⚠ WARNING: Stop machine operation if the brake oil pressure lowers. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or death. If the indicator comes ON, immediately stop machine operation.

If the brake oil pressure lowers, the brake oil low pressure indicator and the service indicator will light, and the alarm buzzer will sound.

Immediately move the machine to a safe area, set the machine in the park position and stop the engine. Inspect the brake system for any abnormality.

When the brake oil pressure is recovered, the buzzer stops and the indicator goes off.



M4GB-01-013

Hydraulic Oil Level Indicator (Red)

⚠ WARNING: Stop machine operation if the hydraulic oil level lowers. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or death. If the red indicator comes ON, immediately stop machine operation.

If the hydraulic oil level lowers, the hydraulic oil level indicator and the service indicator will light, and the alarm buzzer will sound. Immediately move the machine to a safe area, set the machine in the park position and stop the engine. Check hydraulic oil level and any oil leaks from hydraulic circuit.



MNEC-01-057

OPERATOR'S STATION

Low Steering Oil Pressure Indicator (Red)

IMPORTANT: The emergency steering system shall only be used temporarily when the steering oil pressure has dropped. If continuously used, it may damage the system.

If the steering oil pressure decreases, the low steering oil pressure indicator and the service indicator will light, and the alarm buzzer will sound. Immediately move the machine to a safe area, set the machine in the park position and stop the engine.



M4GB-01-016

Transmission Warning Indicator (Red)

If any serious abnormality occurs in the transmission and/or transmission related parts, the red indicator will light. If the transmission warning indicator and the service indicator light, immediately move the machine to a safe area, set the machine in the park position and stop the engine. Contact Authorized Dealer for machine inspection.



M4GB-01-024

Communication Error Indicator (Yellow)

When communication system malfunction occurs, the communication error indicator lights.



M4GB-01-011

Discharge Warning Indicator (Red)

If low alternator voltage occurs, the discharge warning indicator will light. If high alternator voltage occurs, the discharge warning indicator and the service indicator will light. Inspect the alternator and the battery system.



M4GB-01-018

OPERATOR'S STATION

Engine Warning Indicator (Red)

If any serious abnormality occurs in the engine and/or engine related parts, the red indicator will light.
If the engine warning indicator and the service indicator light, immediately move the machine to a safe area, set the machine in the park position and stop the engine. Contact Authorized Dealer for machine inspection.



M4GB-01-019

Overheat Indicator (Red)

If the engine coolant temperature increases to an abnormally high range, the red indicator will light, the service indicator will flash, and the alarm buzzer will sound. Stop operation. Run the engine at slow idle speed to lower the coolant temperature.
When required, let engine cool, check coolant level, and add coolant if needed.



M4GB-01-020

Engine Oil Low Pressure Indicator (Red)

⚠ WARNING: If the engine is kept running with the engine oil pressure low, damage to the engine may result. Immediately stop machine operation and stop the engine if the indicator lights.



If the engine oil pressure becomes low, the low engine oil pressure indicator will light, the service indicator will flash, and the alarm buzzer will sound.
Immediately move the machine to a safe area, set the machine in the park position and stop the engine. Inspect the engine oil pressure system and the oil level.

M4GB-01-021

🔧 NOTE: Cold oil temperature or operating on a steep slope may also cause the indicator to light.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Air Filter Restriction Indicator (Red)

If the air cleaner element becomes clogged,, the air filter restriction indicator and the service indicator light. Immediately stop the engine and inspect the air cleaner element. Replace the element, if necessary.

 **NOTE:** This indicator may unexpectedly light when the coolant temperature gauge indicates the center or lower position.

It turns off automatically when the coolant temperature increases.



M4GB-01-023

Preheat Indicator (Yellow)

The engine is being preheated as long as the preheat indicator stays ON. When the preheat indicator goes OFF, engine preheating is completed.

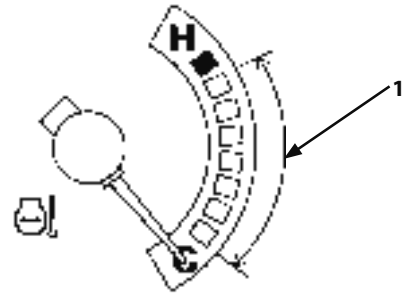


M4GB-01-031

OPERATOR'S STATION

Coolant Temperature Gauge

The engine coolant temperature is indicated with a needle. When the needle stays in the range (1) during operation, the coolant temperature is normal. If the engine coolant temperature becomes abnormally high, the service indicator will flash and the alarm buzzer will sound. Stop machine operation and run the engine at low idle to lower the coolant temperature. After the coolant temperature lowers, stop the engine for inspection. Visually inspect coolant level in reservoir. In case the needle does not move at all, error in the electrical system is suspected. Contact Authorized Dealer for machine inspection.

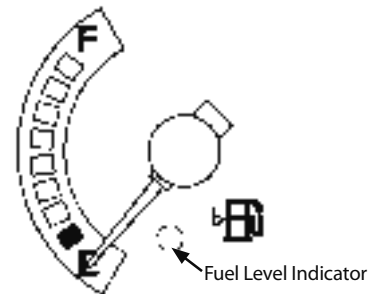


M4GB-01-028

Fuel Gauge

The fuel level is indicated by the needle. Refuel before the needle reaches in the red range "E". When the needle reaches in the red range (E), the fuel level indicator lights.

 **NOTE:** The fuel level indicator may light even if the indicator needle does not reach the red range (E), depending on the tilt angle of machine.



MNEC-01-002

OPERATOR'S STATION

Turn Signal Indicator (Green)

When the turn signal lever is operated, the turn signal and the turn signal indicator start flashing.



M4GB-01-032

High Beam Indicator (Blue)

When the head lights are used at the high beam position, the indicator will light.



M4GB-01-033

Work Light Indicator (Yellow)

When the work lights are turned ON, this indicator will light.



MNDB-01-052

Clearance Light Indicator (Green)

When the clearance lights are turned ON, this indicator will light.



M4GB-01-035

Control Lever Lock Indicator (Red)

When the control lever lock switch is in ON position, the control lever lock indicator will light.



MNEC-01-004

OPERATOR'S STATION

Multi Function Monitor

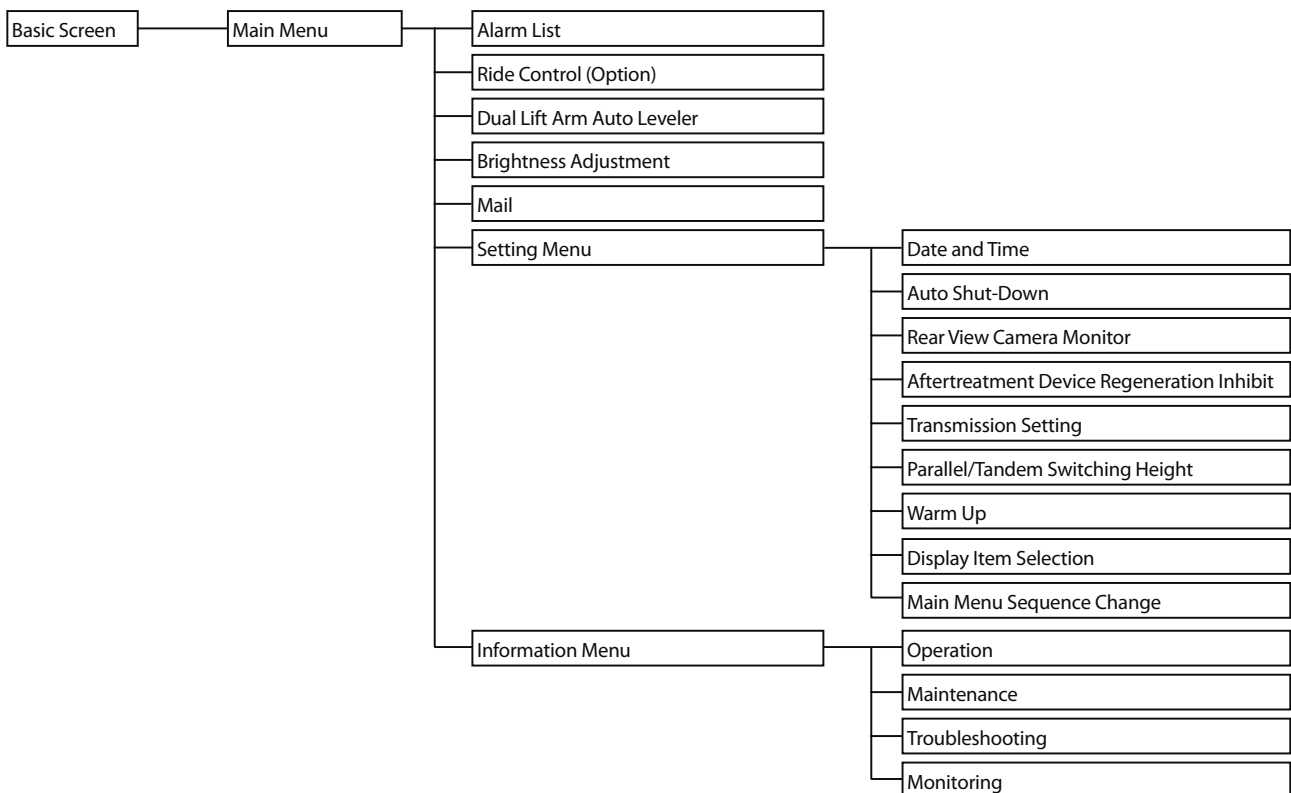
Feature

The multi function monitor displays various meters, indicators, operation mode selection and maintenance screen.

Screen Configuration

The multi function monitor consists of the following screens.

There are 7 menus, and a further 13 sub menus.



OPERATOR'S STATION

Default Setting

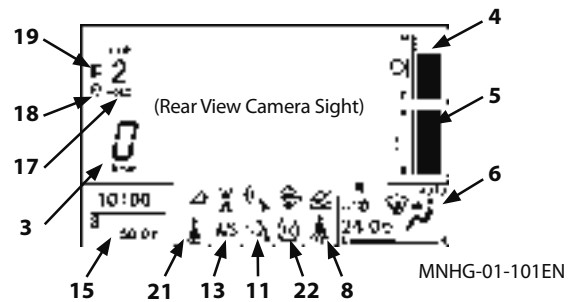
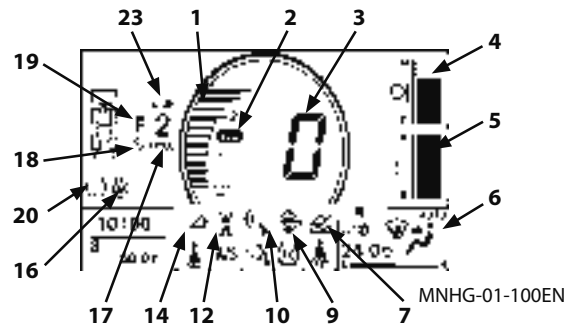
Function	Item	Default
Auto Shut-Down	ON/OFF of auto shut-down function	OFF
	Time period for auto shut-down activation	5 min
Rear View Camera Monitor	ON (Constant display) OFF (No display) AUTO (Display at reverse operation only)	AUTO
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited	Inhibit regeneration	OFF
Shift Change Delay Mode (Transmission Setting)	ON/OFF of shift (travel speed) change delay mode	OFF
Lockup	ON/OFF of transmission lock-up function	ON
Traction Control	ON/OFF of traction control	ON
Parallel/Tandem Switching Height	Height at parallel or tandem circuit operation are switched	Lift arm is level to the ground
Warm Up	Increases engine speed at engine start to help warm up in cold environment	OFF

 **NOTE:** Typical functions are shown in the table. Check the initial values of other functions on each monitor screen.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Basic Screen

- 1- Engine Tachometer
- 2- Economy (ECO) Indicator
- 3- Speedometer
- 4- Transmission Oil Temperature Gauge
- 5- DEF/AdBlue® Level Gauge
- 6- Air Conditioner Display
- 7- Ride Control Indicator
- 8- Seat Belt Indicator
- 9- Forward/Reverse Selector Switch Indicator
- 10- Clutch Cut Indicator
- 11- Aftertreatment Device Indicator
- 12- Power Mode Indicator
- 13- Auto Shut-Down Indicator
- 14- Dual Lift Arm Auto Leveler Indicator
- 15- Clock, Hour Meter, Odometer
- 16- Fan Reverse Rotation Indicator
- 17- Shift Hold Display
- 18- Transmission Auto-shifting Indicator
- 19- F-N-R/Shift Position Indicator
- 20- Auto Brake Indicator
- 21- Joystick Steering Indicator
- 22- Traction Control Indicator
- 23- Torque Converter Lock-Up Indicator



When Rear View Monitor is Operative

OPERATOR'S STATION

How to Use Screens

Displaying Basic Screen

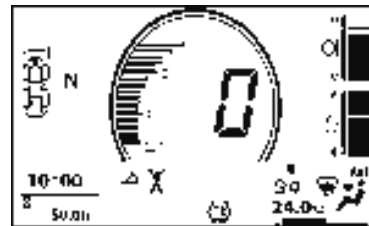
IMPORTANT: Start the engine after the basic screen is displayed.

When the key switch is turned to the ON position, the starting screen displays for about two seconds and the basic screen displays.



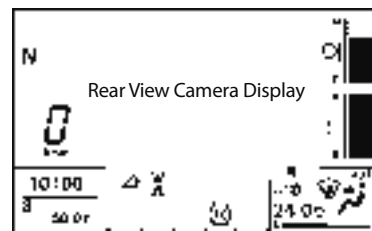
Starting Screen

MNEK-01-102EN



Basic Screen

MNHG-01-103EN



Basic Screen

MNHG-01-104EN

(When Rear View Monitor is Operative)

OPERATOR'S STATION

- **Engine Tachometer (1)**
Engine tachometer (1) indicates the speed of currently running engine in a gauge form. (200 min⁻¹ step or "RPM")
If the engine overspeeds, the color of the gauge changes.

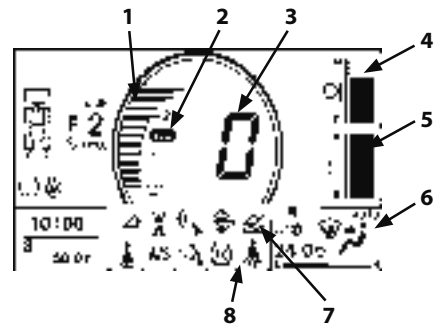
- **ECO Indicator (2)**
ECO indicator (2) lights when the engine runs in energy efficient condition.
It turns OFF when the driving speed is 2 km/h or lower or under heavy driving load.

 **NOTE:** You may push the down shift switch when the ECO indicator goes OFF while operating on a slope or operation such as snow removal. (Refer to DSS (Down Shift Switch) section)

- **Speedometer (3)**
Speedometer (3) indicates the present driving speed.
- **Transmission Oil Temperature Gauge (4)**
Transmission Oil Temperature Gauge (4) depicts transmission oil temperature as a gauge. When the bar reaches the red range, the oil temperature is abnormal.
If the oil temperature becomes abnormally high, the alarm buzzer will sound and the warning indicator will be displayed.
- **DEF/AdBlue® Level Gauge (5)**
DEF/AdBlue® level gauge (5) displays the remaining DEF/AdBlue® amount. When DEF/AdBlue® level becomes low, the last segment turns yellow.

IMPORTANT: If the engine runs with low DEF/AdBlue® level, the engine power reduces gradually. When the gauge turns yellow, immediately refill DEF/AdBlue®. (See page 1-34 for the alarm level.)

- **Air Conditioner Display (6)**
Air conditioner display (6) displays operating condition of the air conditioner.
- **Ride Control Indicator (7)**
Ride control indicator (7) is displayed when the ride control switch is in ON position.
- **Seat Belt Indicator (8)**
The indicator turns ON when the key switch is turned ON, and turns OFF 5 seconds after the engine starts.

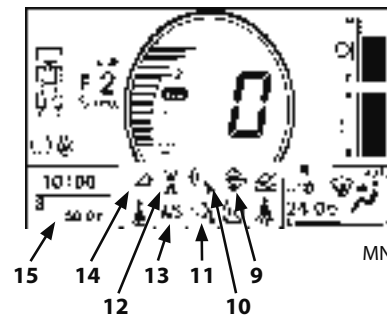


MNHG-01-100EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

- Forward/Reverse Selector Switch Indicator (9)
The forward/reverse indicator lights when the forward/reverse switch on the joystick steering is usable by turning on the joystick steering system switch. (Refer to OPERATING ENGINE.)
- Clutch Cut Indicator (10)
The clutch cut indicator lights when the clutch cut position switch on the right console is in ON position.
- Aftertreatment Device Indicator (11)
Displays condition of the aftertreatment device.
- Power Mode Indicator (12)
Power mode indicator shows symbol () when the power mode is activated (ON).
- Auto Shut-Down Indicator (13)
When the auto shut-down is turned ON from the menu screen, the auto shut-down indicator is displayed.
When the key switch is turned ON while the auto shut-down is enabled, the auto shut-down indicator blinks for 10 seconds.
- Dual Lift Arm Auto Leveler Indicator (14)
When the height kickout is ON (enabled),  is displayed.
When the lower kickout is ON,  is displayed.
- Clock, Hour Meter, Odometer (15)

Clock	:	Indicates the present time. 24-h/12-h display can be selected. (Refer to "Date and Time" for switching the display mode.)
Hour Meter	:	Total (accumulated) machine operation hours counted since the machine started working, are displayed in hours (h). One digit after the decimal point indicates tenths of an hour (6 minutes).
Odometer	:	Total machine traveling distance is indicated by changing display mode.



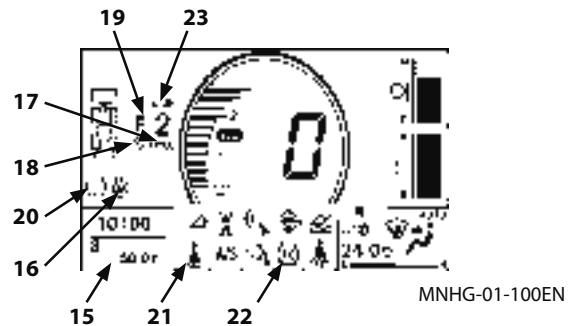
MNHG-01-100EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

- Fan Reverse Rotation Indicator (16)
Displays rotating direction of the fan.
Normal Rotation → The icon is not displayed.
Changing Rotational Direction → The icon blinks.
Reverse Rotation → The icon lights ON.
- HOLD Display (17)
Hold display (17) is displayed when the hold switch on the side console is in ON position.
- Transmission Auto-shifting Indicator (18)
Transmission auto-shifting indicator (18) displays condition of the travel mode switch. It is not displayed at manual mode.
- F-N-R/Shift Position Indicator (19)
F-N-R/Shift Position Indicator (19) displays machine operating condition (status of the transmission).

F-N-R Display
F-N-R indicator displays status of the transmission.
Forward → F
Neutral → N
Reverse → R

Shift Position Indicator
It displays currently engaged gears. It is not displayed at neutral position.
Forward : 1st - 4th
Reverse : 1st - 3rd
- Auto Brake Indicator (20)
Auto brake indicator (20) appears when the auto brake works due to excessive machine speed or when direction is changed while running at the specified speed or faster. It automatically turns off when the machine speed decreases below within the safety speed limit. Refer to Auto Brake in "MOVING MACHINE" section.
- Joystick Steering Indicator (21)
Joystick steering indicator appears when the joystick steering is made effective by turning on the armrest switch. Refer to "OPERATING ENGINE".
- Traction Control Indicator (22)
Traction control indicator (22) appears when the traction control is turned ON by the setting menu. Refer to page 1-63.
- Torque Converter Lock-Up Indicator (23)
T/C lock-up indicator (23) appears during the lockup shifting. Refer to page 4-5.



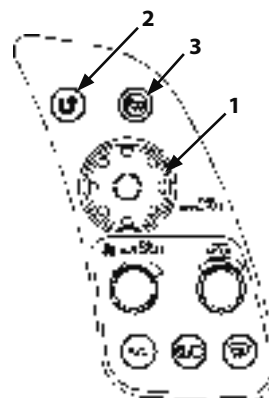
OPERATOR'S STATION

Monitor Operation

- Select/Confirm Knob (1)

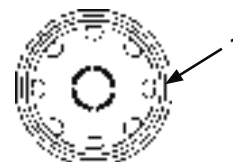
Push : Push this switch while the basic screen is displayed, the Main Menu Screen opens. Push this switch after the menu screen, the action is confirmed.

Rotate : Cursor moves.



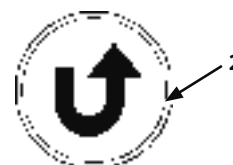
MNEC-01-006

Multi Function Monitor/Air Conditioner Switch Panel



MNEC-01-078

- Return to Previous Screen (2)
Push this switch to return to the previous screen.



MNEC-01-079

- Return to Basic Screen (3)
Allows any screen to return to the basic screen.

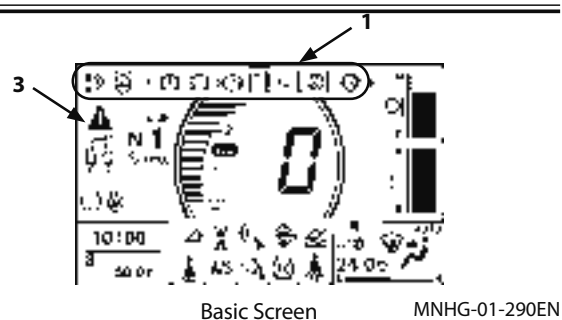


MNEC-01-080

OPERATOR'S STATION

Alarm Occurrence Screen

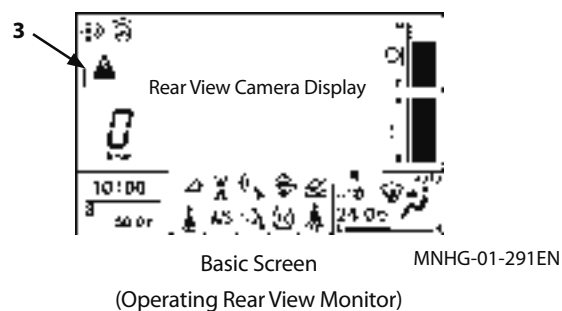
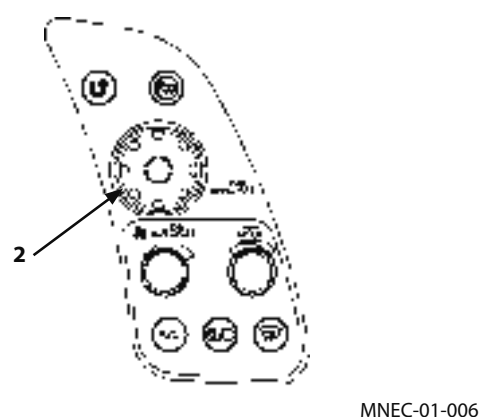
In case any abnormality occurs, alarm symbols (1) and service indicator (3) are displayed on the basic screen.



If 8 or more alarms are generated, the alarm symbols (1) can be scrolled by rotating selector knob (2).

When the rear view monitor is operating, service indicator (3) is displayed.

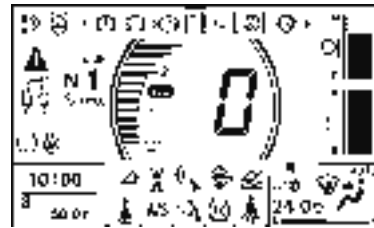
 **NOTE:** When any of the warning indicators light on, service indicator (3) also appears.



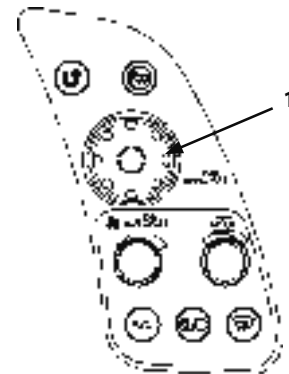
OPERATOR'S STATION

Follow the procedure below to display detailed information for an alarm.

Push selector knob (1) on the basic screen to display the main menu.



MNHG-01-290EN



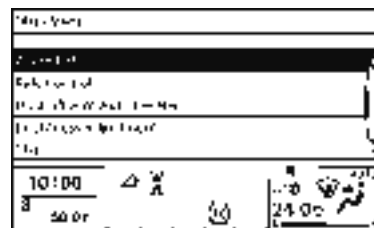
MNEC-01-006

Rotate selector knob (1) to select the alarm list, and push selector knob (1).

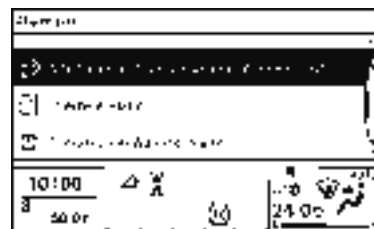
NOTE: The main menu displays the alarm list (faults) only when an alarm occurs.

Rotate selector knob (1) to select a required alarm from the alarm list, and push selector knob (1).

NOTE: The alarm list contains only active faults or alarms.

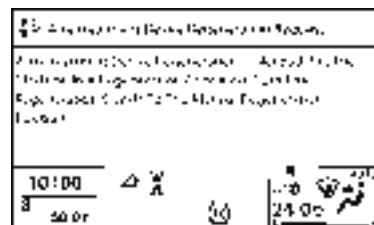


MNHG-01-105EN



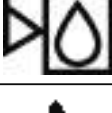
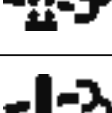
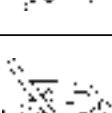
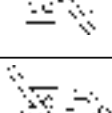
MNHG-01-106EN

Detailed information of the selected alarm will be displayed.



MNHG-01-107EN

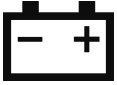
OPERATOR'S STATION

Remedy		
Display	Contents of Alarms	Remedy
	System Failure Alarm	Communication system is abnormal. Consult Authorized Dealer.
	Brake Oil Pressure Alarm	Brake oil pressure has decreased. Immediately stop the machine and check the brake system.
	Low Steering Oil Pressure Alarm	Steering oil pressure has decreased. Immediately stop the machine and check the steering system.
	Emergency Steering Alarm (Blinking)	The emergency steering oil pressure does not reach the specified pressure. Inspect the emergency steering system.
	Hydraulic Oil Level Alarm	Hydraulic oil level is low. Immediately stop the machine, check hydraulic oil level and any oil leaks from hydraulic circuit.
	Urea Alarm	DEF/AdBlue® level is low or urea SCR system is abnormal. Refill DEF/AdBlue® if level is low. Contact Authorized Dealer for system malfunction.
	Engine Output Restriction	Engine output is restricted.
	Aftertreatment Device Alarm (Blinking) (Red)	Aftertreatment device is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in the park position, stop the engine, apply parking brake, and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Aftertreatment Device Regeneration System Failure	Aftertreatment device is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in the park position, stop the engine, apply parking brake, and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Request (Blinking) (Yellow)	The aftertreatment device needs regeneration. Apply control lever lock and run the engine at slow idle speed. Make the machine possible to perform regeneration, and set the aftertreatment device switch to the regeneration position.
	Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibit Alarm (Lighting) (Yellow)	Manual regeneration was tried but not possible as it is inhibited by setting. Move the machine to a safe area, turn regeneration inhibition OFF, and perform manual regeneration. Refer to page 1-57 to turn regeneration inhibition OFF.
	Aftertreatment Device Auto Regeneration Inhibit Alarm (Lighting) (Yellow)	Auto regeneration was tried but not initiated as it is inhibited by setting. Refer to page 1-57.
	Engine Overheat Alarm	Coolant temperature is above normal. Stop operation. Run the engine at slow idle speed to lower the coolant temperature. When needed, add coolant.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Display	Contents of Alarms	Remedy
	Hydraulic Oil Overheat Alarm	Hydraulic oil temperature is above normal. Stop operation. Run the engine at slow idle speed to lower the oil temperature.
	Axle Oil Temperature Alarm	Axle oil temperature is above normal. Check if the service brake drags.
	Transmission Oil Temperature Alarm	Transmission oil temperature is above normal. Stop operation. Run the engine at slow idle speed to lower the oil temperature. Use correct range for machine operation, and do not stall torque converter.
	Engine Trouble Alarm	Engine or engine related parts are abnormal. Immediately set the machine in the park position, apply parking brake, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Transmission Alarm	Transmission or transmission related parts are abnormal. Immediately set the machine in the park position, apply parking brake, stop the engine and contact Authorized Dealer.
	Engine Oil Pressure Alarm	Engine oil pressure has decreased. Immediately stop the engine, and apply parking brake. Check the engine oil system and oil level.
	Boost Temperature Rise Alarm	Intake air temperature is abnormally high. Stop operation. Check intercooler for clogging and intake air piping connections.
	Auto Brake Warning Alarm	Auto brake system is abnormal. Safely park the machine and stop the engine immediately. Check hydraulic oil level and auto brake system for damages and leaks.
	Transmission Filter Clogging	Transmission filter elements are clogged. Replace transmission oil filter following the instruction in the operator's manual.
	Transmission Oil Pressure Alarm	Transmission oil pressure is too low. Safely park the machine. Check transmission oil level and check for leaks.
	Main Pump Oil Pressure Alarm	Main pump oil pressure has decreased. Stop machine operation, and apply parking brake. Check the piping of front attachment for oil leaks.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Display	Contents of Alarms	Remedy
	Exhaust Temperature Rise Alarm	Exhaust temperature is abnormally high. Stop machine operation, apply parking brake, and check the exhaust lines.
	Intake Air Temperature Rise Alarm	Intake air temperature is abnormally high. Stop machine operation and apply parking brake. Check for any abnormality such as disconnected intake air piping.
	Battery Charge Alarm	Electrical system charge is abnormal. Inspect the alternator and the battery system.
	Fuel Temperature Alarm	Fuel temperature is abnormally high. Stop machine operation and apply parking brake. Run the engine at slow idle speed to lower the fuel temperature.
	Air Cleaner Clogging	Air filter elements are clogged. Replace air cleaner element.
	Fuel Filter Restriction Alarm	Fuel filter is clogged. Replace fuel filter element.
	EGR Gas Temperature Alarm	EGR gas temperature is abnormally high. Stop operation, apply parking brake, and check EGR cooler, EGR cooler coolant circulation circuit, coolant level and intake air and exhaust piping for any abnormality.

OPERATOR'S STATION

DEF/SCR System Alarm

When the DEF/AdBlue® level becomes low and/or the Urea SCR system malfunctions, the engine performance is controlled depending on the status.

The operator is alerted with alarm indicators.

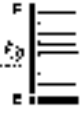
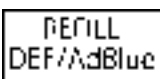
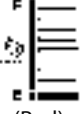
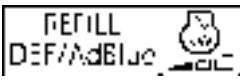
Move and park the machine in a safe place and follow the displayed message, or troubleshooting guide for the accompanied alarms.

DEF/AdBlue® Level Alarm

Display of the DEF/AdBlue® gauge changes depending on the DEF/AdBlue® level.

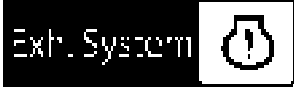
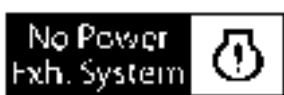
The engine speed and output level control is as follows.

 **NOTE:** Set the FNR controller to neutral or apply the parking brake to show the alarm message on the monitor.

Level Gauge	Alarm Indicator		Status/Inducement
 (Yellow)	 (Red, light)		DEF/AdBlue® level is low. Refill DEF/AdBlue®.
 (Red)	 (Red, slow blink)		DEF/AdBlue® is insufficient. Refill DEF/AdBlue®. Engine output is restricted.
 (Red)	 (Red, fast blink)		DEF/AdBlue® tank is empty. Refill DEF/AdBlue®. Engine output and speed are restricted.

 **CAUTION:** When DEF/AdBlue® tank becomes empty, the engine runs but machine operation is disabled until DEF/AdBlue® is supplied.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Urea SCR System Malfunction		
Alarm Indicator		Status/Inducement
 (Red, light)		Urea SCR system is broken.
 (Red, slow blink)		Urea SCR system is broken. Engine output is restricted.
 (Red, fast blink)		Urea SCR system is broken. Engine output and speed are restricted. Contact Authorized Dealer for service.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Aftertreatment Device Regeneration

To keep the system working correctly, periodically, the collected deposit is removed by purging it at a high temperature. This process is known as "regeneration".

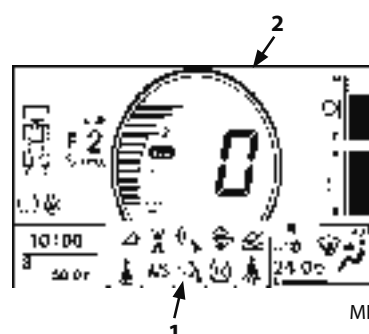
The regeneration is done in three ways; automatic regeneration (abbreviated as auto-regeneration), manual regeneration, and service regeneration.

Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Status Display

Aftertreatment device display (1) displays the regeneration level of the aftertreatment device.



This symbol indicates that the exhaust temperature is higher than normal during the aftertreatment device regeneration. It lights while auto-regeneration or manual regeneration is in process.)



MNHG-01-100EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Automatic regeneration (Auto-regeneration)

The machine automatically increases the exhaust temperature during normal operation to purge the deposit.

There are no actions on the part of the operator when auto-regeneration is performed.

- *Auto-regeneration may start while operating the machine, and there is no need to stop the machine when this happens.*
- *Engine speed may change and white smoke may occur. This is not abnormal.*
- *Auto-regeneration is a normal maintenance process, and is not a malfunction.*

IMPORTANT: During aftertreatment device regeneration, do not stop the engine unless absolutely necessary.

Upon stopping the engine immediately after regeneration completes, run the engine at slow idle for 5 minutes to cool it.

If the engine is stopped suddenly and not cooled, the aftertreatment device will remain hot which may result in damage to the urea SCR system.

Auto-regeneration may not be completed due to system limitations while operating the machine. If this occurs, the aftertreatment device regeneration request will appear on the monitor panel. Refer to page 5-11 to perform manual regeneration.

If the following conditions are met when the machine is stopped, increase the engine idle speed to accelerate aftertreatment device regeneration.

Accelerator Pedal	: OFF
Forward/Reverse Lever (Switch)	: Neutral
Parking Brake Switch	: ON
Control Lever Lock Switch	: Neutral or LOCK Position

Bucket to the Ground



This symbol indicates that the aftertreatment device regeneration is set to the "inhibited" position. Regeneration can not be performed while this indicator is shown.

IMPORTANT: Set the aftertreatment device regeneration to "inhibited" while operating in a flammable environment (Refer to page 1-57).

OPERATOR'S STATION

Manual Regeneration

When the deposit level increases to a level that is more than an auto-regeneration can remove, a manual regeneration is required.

The yellow regeneration symbol (shown below)(1) and service indicator (2) appear to make the operator aware that this is required.



(Blinking,
Yellow)

This symbol indicates that the aftertreatment device manual regeneration is required.

Perform manual regeneration (Refer to page 5-11 for the procedure.)



(Lighting,
Yellow)

This symbol indicates that the aftertreatment device regeneration is inhibited.

It is displayed when the manual regeneration is requested while regeneration "inhibited" feature has been applied.

Move the machine to a safe place.

Perform manual regeneration by pressing manual regeneration switch (3).

(Refer to page 1-57 for more information.)

The manual regeneration must be performed as soon as possible, and it will take the loader out of service for about 10~20 minutes.

Refer to page 5-11 for the manual regeneration procedure.

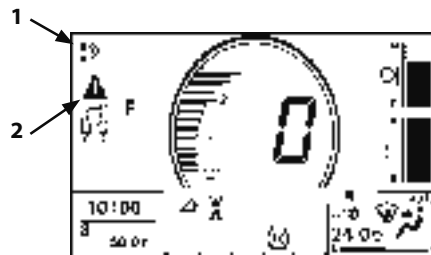
NOTE: When the manual regeneration starts, regeneration indicator (4) turns ON. If it does not appear when pressing switch (3), the manual regeneration is not activated. Contact Authorized Dealer for repair.



(Lighting,
Yellow)

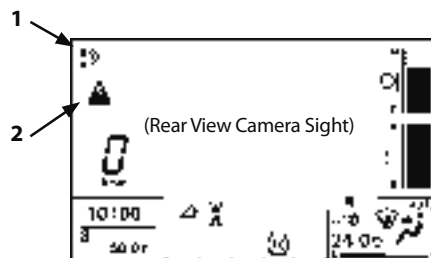
The engine trouble alarm (in yellow) may occur if the machine is being operated without performing a manual regeneration. It may be necessary to clean, repair or replace the aftertreatment device after removing the device depending on its condition.

Immediately set the machine in the park position, apply parking brake, stop the engine and consult Authorized Dealer.



Basic Screen

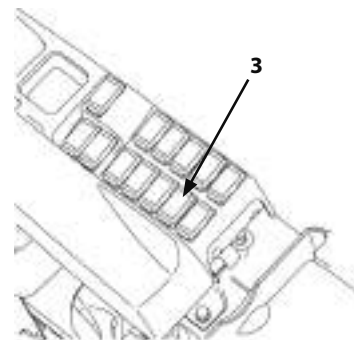
MNHG-01-280EN



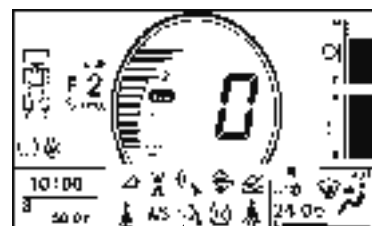
Basic Screen

MNHG-01-281EN

(Operating Rear View Monitor)



115MNEC-07-01



4

MNHG-01-100EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

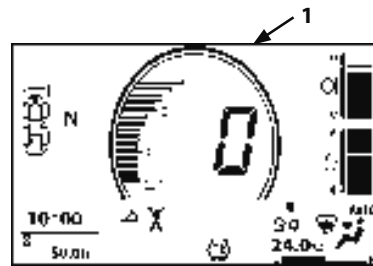
Main Menu

IMPORTANT: If the forward/reverse lever is in the forward or reverse position, the basic screen is displayed. (You can not change to the other screen.) When the forward/reverse lever is changed to forward or reverse position while displaying the main menu screen, the screen changes back to the basic screen.

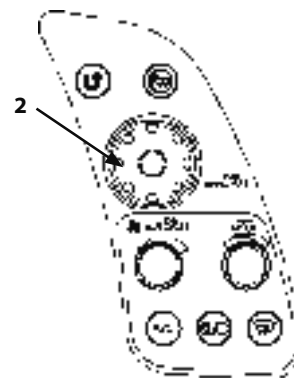
Press selector knob (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

The main menu screen contains the items shown in the figure to the right. The alarm list is displayed only when an alarm is generated.

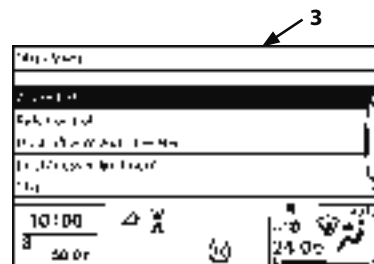
Ride control (option) and Mail (option) menus will not be displayed unless they are set beforehand.



MNHG-01-103EN



MNEC-01-006

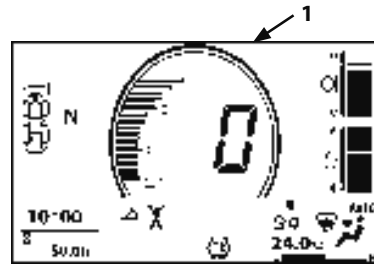


MNHG-01-105EN

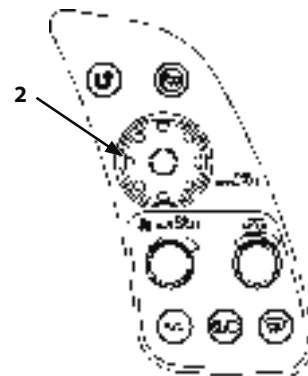
OPERATOR'S STATION

Ride Control Drive Speed Setting

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

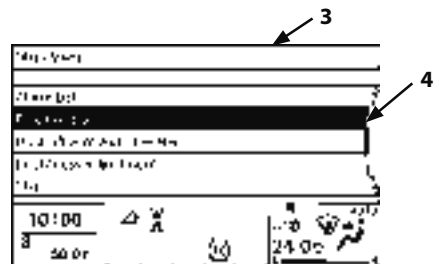


MNHG-01-103EN



MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Ride Control (4).

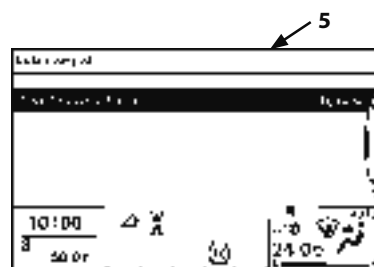


MNHG-01-108EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Ride Control Drive Speed Setting screen (5).

4. Press selector knob (2) once and then rotate it clockwise to increase set speed at 1 km/h interval. Rotate the selector knob (2) counterclockwise to decrease set speed at 1 km/h interval.

(The set vehicle speed can be changed within the set range.)



MNHG-01-109EN

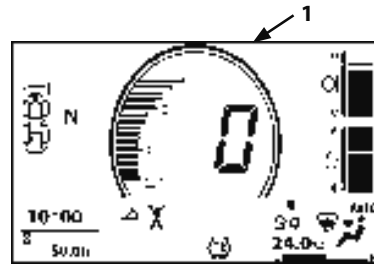
NOTE: When the speed is at 0 km/h, the ride control function is constantly ON.

5. Press selector knob (2) to complete the changes of setting.

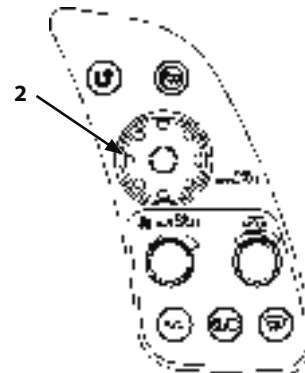
OPERATOR'S STATION

Dual Lift Arm Auto-Leveler

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

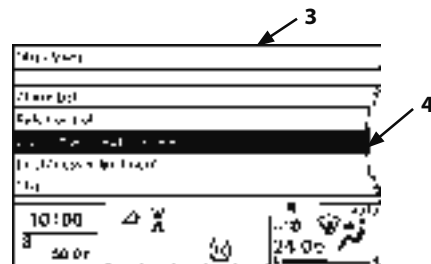


MNHG-01-103EN



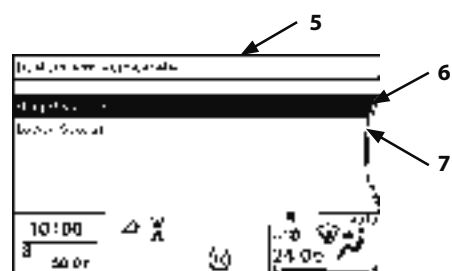
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Dual Lift Arm Auto-Leveler (4).



MNHG-01-110EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Dual Lift Arm Auto-Leveler screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to select Height Kickout (6) or Lower Kickout (7).
5. Press selector knob (2).



MNHG-01-111EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Height Kickout ON/OFF, Stop Height Setting

- Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ON (8).
- ON/OFF Selection

Press selector knob (2) to turn ON (enabled).
(A box next to ON turns green.)

This enables the setting of the lift arm height.

Press selector knob (2) again to turn OFF (disabled).

When the height kickout is ON (enabled), indicator  (12) will be displayed on the monitor.

- Display content

Segment (10) indicates current set value of the height kickout.

Segment (11) indicates current height of the lift arm.

- Setting Operation

When the height kickout is ON (enabled), the lift arm stop height can be set.

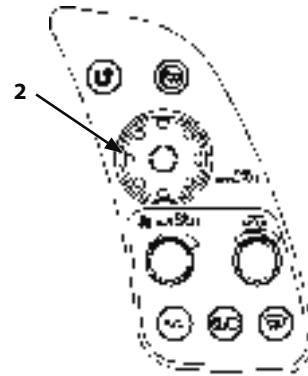
When the lift arm height changes by operating the lift arm control lever, the height is displayed on segment (11).

When the lift arm height is within the setting range, the mark  (9) will be displayed.

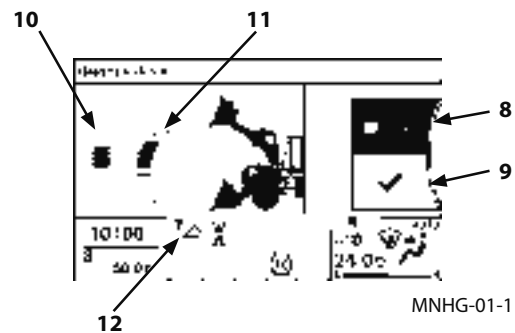
Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight  (9).

Press selector knob (2) to change the height kickout setting value.

When the height kickout set value changes, the value displayed on segment (10) will change accordingly.



MNEC-01-006



MNHG-01-112EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Lower Kickout ON/OFF, Stop Height Setting

- Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ON (8).
- ON/OFF Selection

Press selector knob (2) to turn ON (enabled).
(A box next to ON turns green.)

This enables the setting of the lift arm height.

Press selector knob (2) again to turn OFF (disabled).

When the lower kickout is ON (enabled), indicator  (12) will be displayed on the monitor.

- Display content

Segment (10) indicates current set value of the lower kickout.

Segment (11) indicates current height of the lift arm.

- Setting Operation

When the lower kickout is ON (enabled), the lift arm stop height can be set.

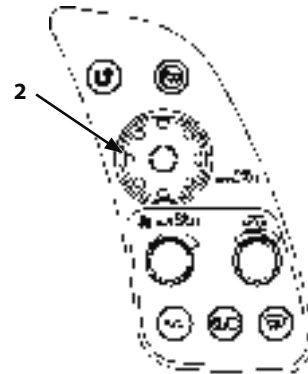
When the lift arm height changes by operating the lift arm control lever, the height is displayed on segment (11).

When the lift arm height is within the setting range, the mark  (9) will be displayed.

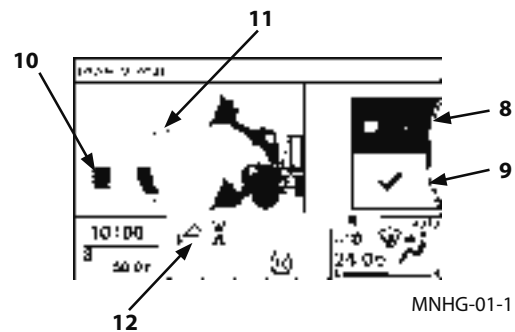
Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight  (9).

Press selector knob (2) to change the lower kickout setting value.

When the lower kickout setting value changes, the value will be displayed on segment (10).



MNEC-01-006

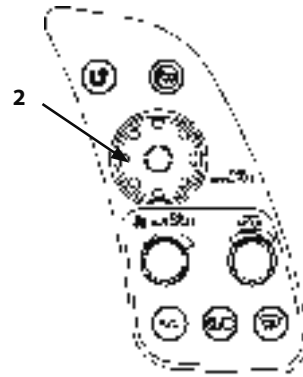


MNHG-01-113EN

Brightness Adjustment

OPERATOR'S STATION

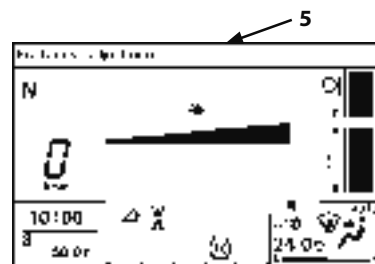
- Press selector knob (2) to display Brightness Adjustment screen (5).



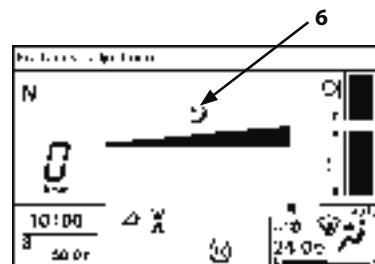
MNEC-01-006

- Rotate selector knob (2) clockwise to make the screen brighter, counterclockwise to make the screen darker.

 **NOTE:** When the machine's head light switch is turned ON, the monitor screen changes to night mode and mark (6) is displayed. Brightness can be adjusted for day mode and night mode respectively.



MNHG-01-121EN



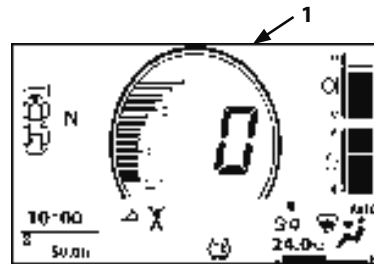
MNHG-01-122EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

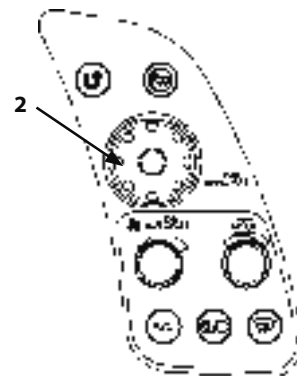
Mail (Option)

IMPORTANT: This function is available only to a machine equipped with a communication terminal.
When using the mail function, consult Authorized Dealer.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

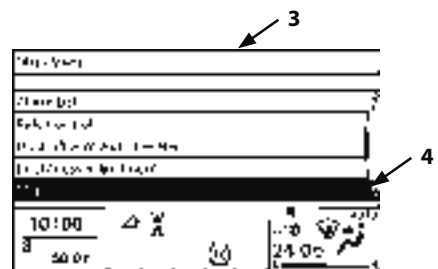


MNHG-01-103EN



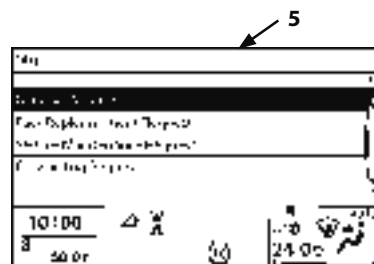
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Mail (4).



MNHG-01-130EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Mail screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight desired request.
5. Press selector knob (2) to send mail information to the communication terminal.



MNHG-01-131EN

- General Request
- Fuel Replenishment Request
- Service Maintenance Request
- Forwarding Request

OPERATOR'S STATION

6. While mail information is sent to the communication terminal, the message "Wait." is displayed on the screen.



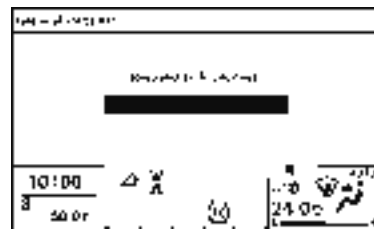
MNHG-01-132EN

7. When the communication terminal completes receiving mail information, the message "Request Was Accepted." is displayed on the screen.

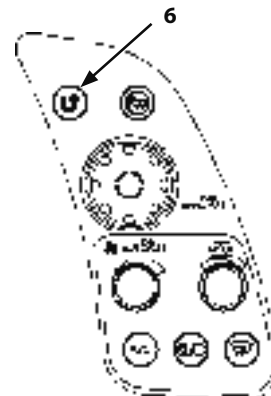
Push back key  (6) to return to the Mail screen.

8. Then, a mail is sent from the communication terminal to the central server.

 **NOTE:** Depending on the machine's operating environment or signal strength, the mail may not be sent.



MNHG-01-133EN



MNEC-01-006

 **NOTE:** When the communication terminal could not receive the mail, the message "Failed." is displayed on the screen.



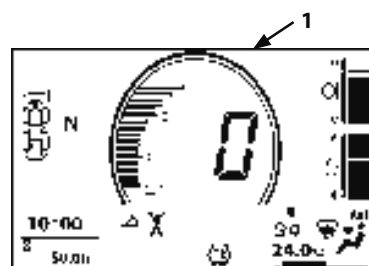
MNHG-01-134EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

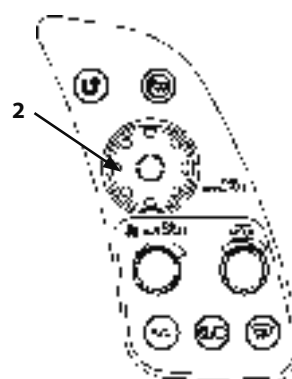
Setting Menu

Setting menu consists of date and time setting, auto shut-down setting, and rear view camera monitor setting.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

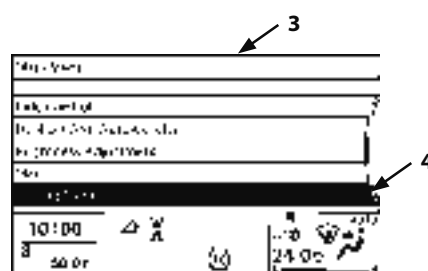


MNHG-01-103EN



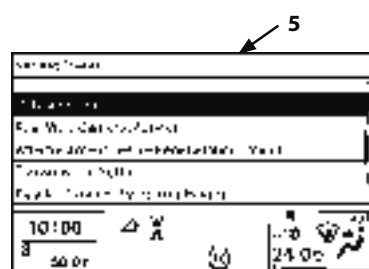
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



MNHG-01-141EN

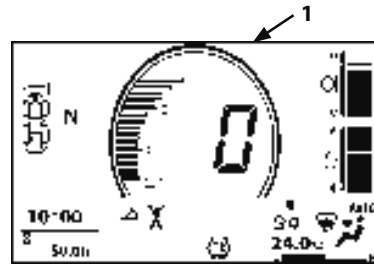
OPERATOR'S STATION

Date and Time

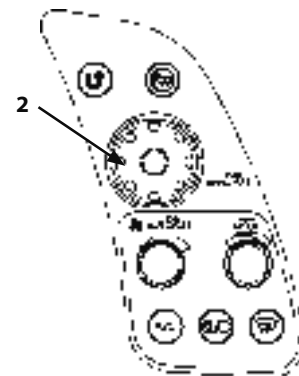
Time, date and display mode can be set on this screen. Year-month-day format and 24h/12h display mode are selected in the display setting.

Time Adjustment

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

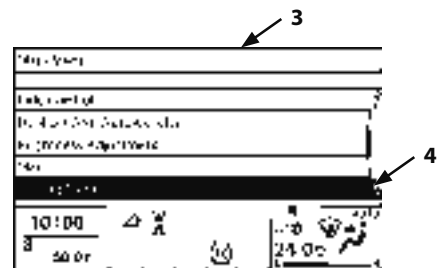


MNHG-01-103EN



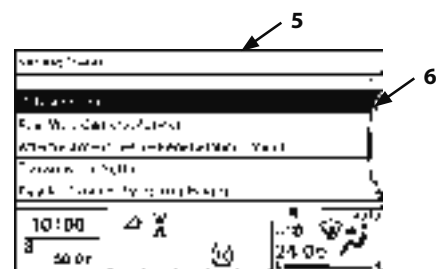
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

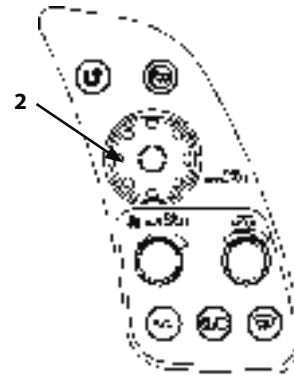
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date and Time (6).



MNHG-01-141EN

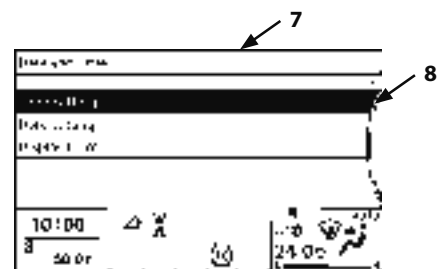
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Date and Time screen (7).



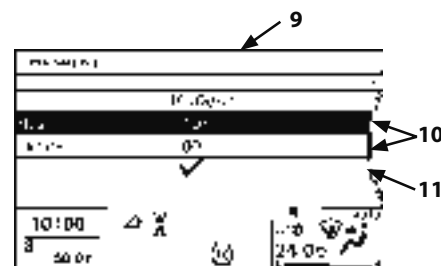
MNEC-01-006

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Time Setting (8).
7. Press selector knob (2) to display Time Setting screen (9).



MNHG-01-142EN

8. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Hour or Minute and push selector knob (2).
9. Rotate selector knob (2) to adjust the clock. Rotate clockwise to adjust the number upwards, and counterclockwise to decrease it.
10. Push selector knob (2) to end the time setting procedure.
11. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ✓ (11). Push selector knob (2) to make the change.



MNHG-01-143EN

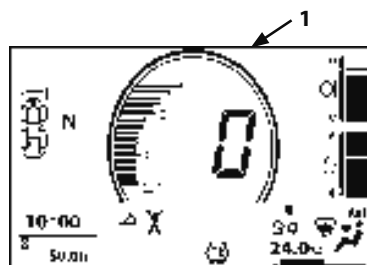


MNHG-01-144EN

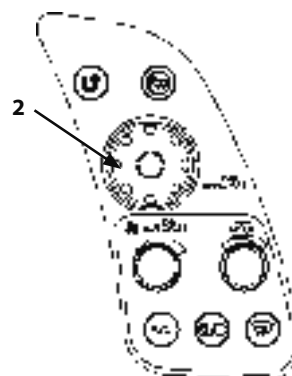
OPERATOR'S STATION

Date Adjustment

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

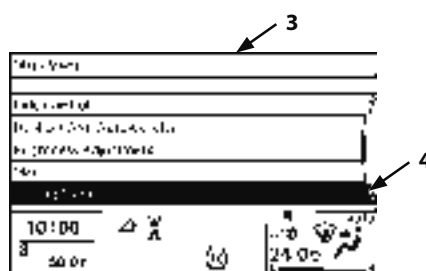


MNHG-01-103EN



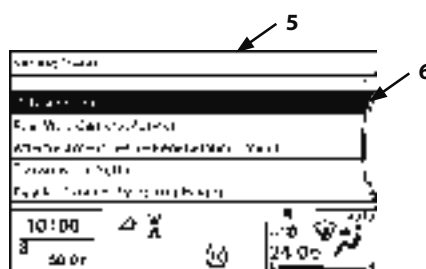
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).

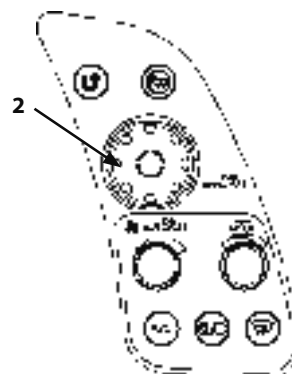


MNHG-01-141EN

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date and Time (6).

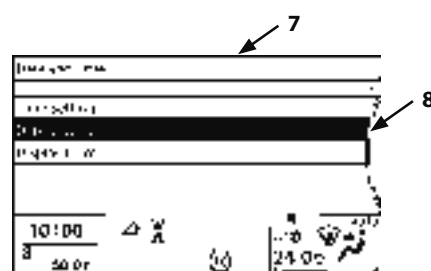
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Date and Time screen (7).



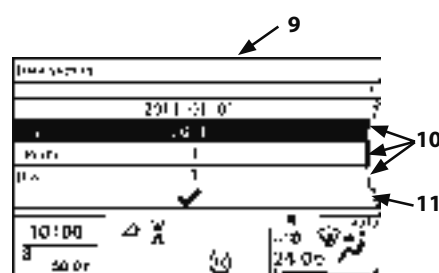
MNEC-01-006

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date Setting (8).
7. Press selector knob (2) to display Date Setting screen (9).



MNHG-01-145EN

8. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Year, Month or Day and push selector knob (2).
9. Rotate selector knob (2) to adjust the date. Rotate clockwise to adjust the number upwards, and counterclockwise to decrease it.
10. Push selector knob (2) to end the date setting procedure.
11. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ✓ (11). Push selector knob (2) to make the change.



MNHG-01-146EN

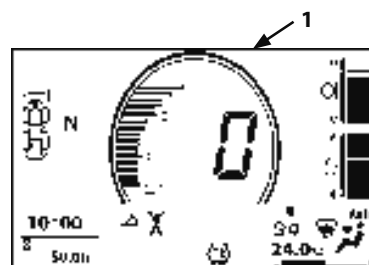


MNHG-01-147EN

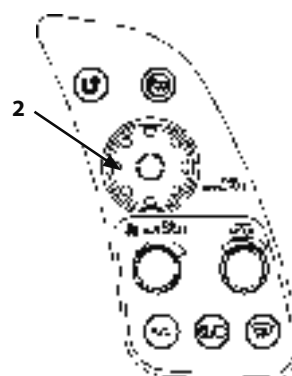
OPERATOR'S STATION

Display Mode Setting

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

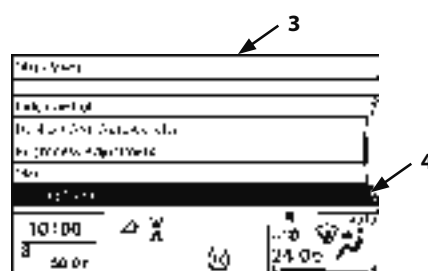


MNHG-01-103EN



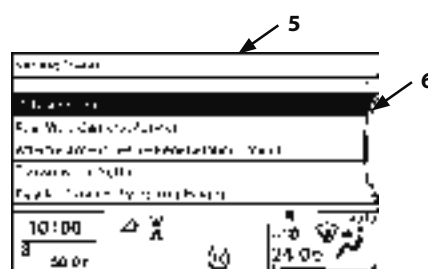
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

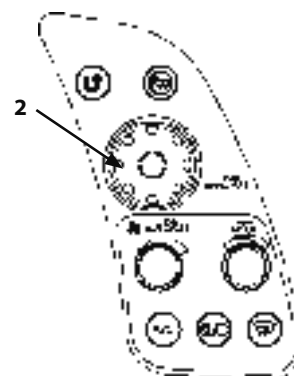
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date and Time (6).



MNHG-01-141EN

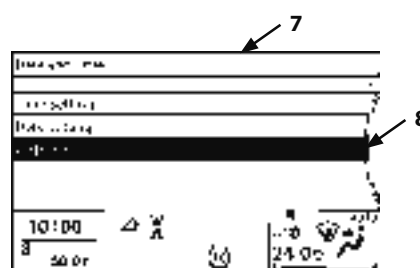
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Date and Time screen (7).



MNEC-01-006

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Display Form (8).



MNHG-01-148EN

7. Press selector knob (2) to display Display Form screen (9).



MNHG-01-149EN

8. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date (10) and push selector knob (2).

Date : Each time selector knob (2) is pushed, the date format is changed as follows: YYYY/MM/DD → MM/DD/YYYY → DD/MM/YYYY → YYYY/MM/DD.



MNEK-01-302EN



MNEK-01-303EN



MNEK-01-304EN

Time : Each time selector knob (2) is pushed, the time format is changed as follows: 12 h → 24 h → 12 h.



MNEK-01-300EN



MNEK-01-301EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Auto Shut-Down

WARNING: This function automatically idles, then stops the engine. Take extra care on the work and environment when using this function.

The auto shut-down function can be set in this screen. Set the auto shut-down time and enable the function beforehand (set to ON).

The engine automatically stops after the preset time when machine is parking under the following conditions:

- Parking brake switch: ON (parking brake is applied)
- Service brake pedal: released (service brake pedal is not applied)
- Throttle pedal: released
- Transmission position: Neutral
- No joystick steering operation
- No loading lever operation

30 seconds before the engine stops, the monitor displays a message that the engine will be stopped and the indicator (7) starts flashing.

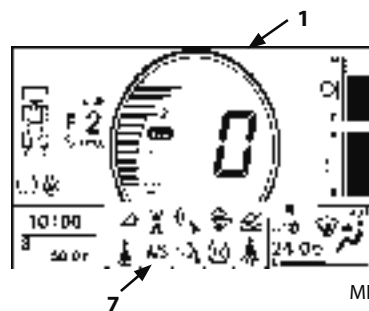
The buzzer also sounds. The buzzer sounds once at 30 seconds before, intermittently sounds from 15 seconds, and then stops after 15 seconds.

When the machine is in the operating state or any of the above listed conditions is not satisfied before stopping the engine, the auto shut-down is disabled and the engine will not stop.

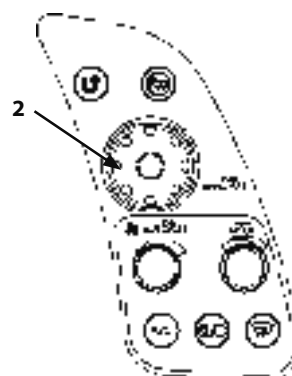
IMPORTANT: Do not leave the machine after auto shut-down. Failure to do so may discharge the batteries.

Auto Shut-Down: ON/OFF

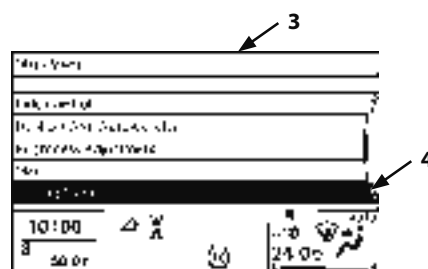
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Auto Shut-Down (6).



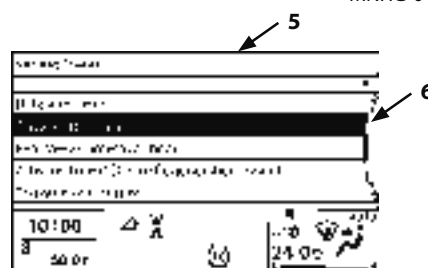
MNHG-01-100EN



MNEC-01-006



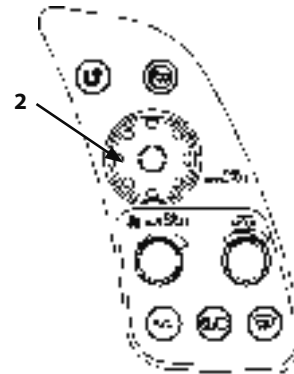
MNHG-01-140EN



MNHG-01-150EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

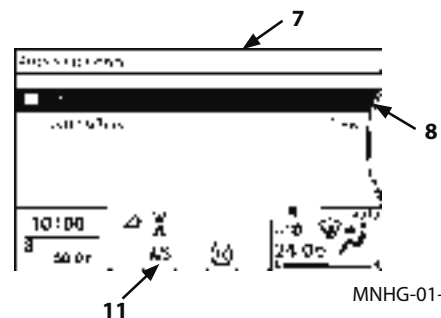
- Press selector knob (2) to display Auto Shut-Down screen (7).



- Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ON (8).
- Press selector knob (2) to set the auto shut-down function ON and indicator (11) will be lit. Press selector knob (2) again to set the auto shut-down function OFF and indicator (11) goes off.

MNEC-01-006

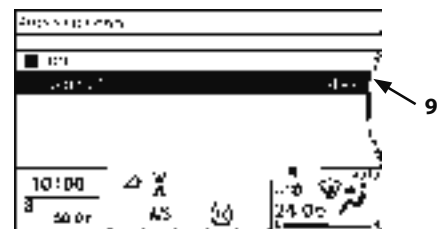
NOTE: When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.



MNHG-01-151EN

Acting Time Setting

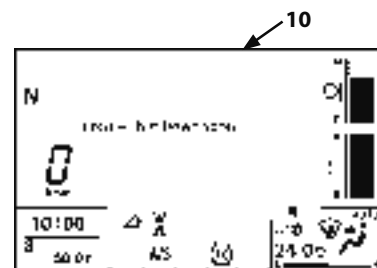
- On the Auto Shut-Down screen, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Time (9) and push selector knob (2).
- Rotate selector knob (2) clockwise to extend idle time by 1 minute steps.
Rotate selector knob (2) counterclockwise to decrease idle time by 1 minute steps.
- Press selector knob (2) to make the change.



MNHG-01-152EN

NOTE: The idle time can be set to 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 10, 15, 20, 25 or 30 minutes. Observe local and federal engine idling regulations.

NOTE: 30 seconds before the engine stops, the monitor will display "Engine Shut-Down Soon." message (10).

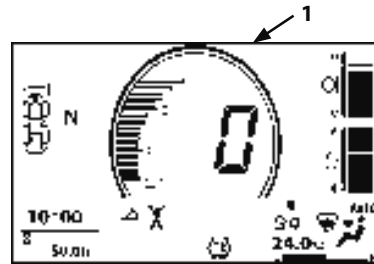


MNHG-01-153EN

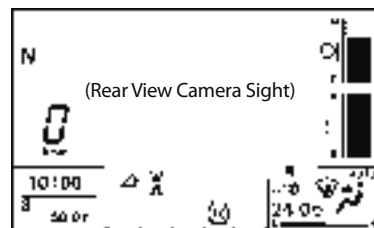
OPERATOR'S STATION

Rear View Camera Monitor

IMPORTANT: The image displayed on the rear view monitor is meant only as an aid. Actual position and distance of people and objects in the rear view monitor will be different from the actual view. When operating the machine, pay thorough attention to the surroundings with use of mirrors and windows.

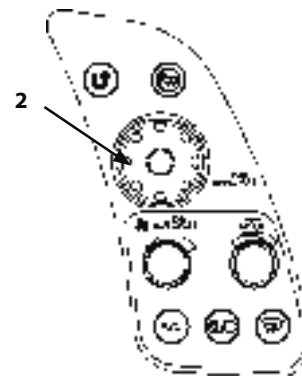


MNHG-01-103EN



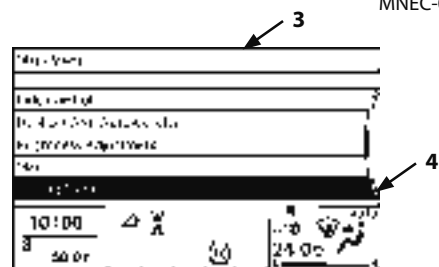
Operating Rear View Monitor MNHG-01-104EN

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).



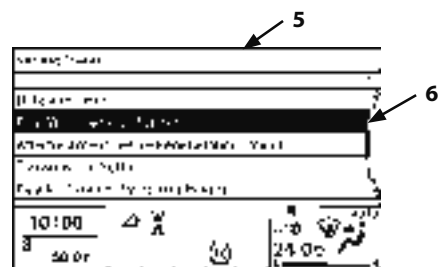
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).

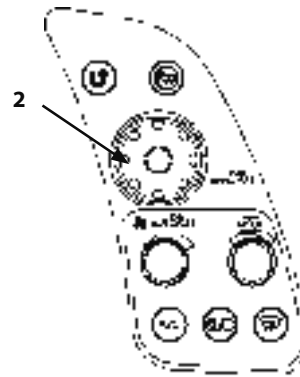


MNHG-01-160EN

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Rear View Camera Monitor (6).

OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Rear View Camera Monitor screen (7).

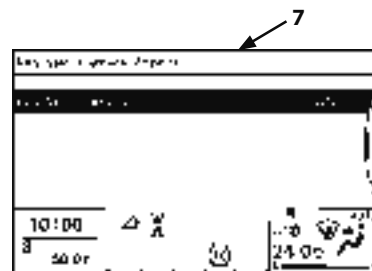


6. Press selector knob (2) to turn the rear view camera monitor ON/OFF/AUTO.
7. When the rear view camera monitor is ON, rear view image is continuously displayed on the basic screen.

When the rear view camera monitor is AUTO, rear view image is displayed on the basic screen only at reverse travel.

When the rear view camera monitor is OFF, rear view image is not available.

MNEC-01-006



MNHG-01-161EN

IMPORTANT: In order to obtain a clear image, clean the camera lens and the monitor display before operating the machine. In bad weather or extreme dust, more frequent cleaning will be required.

 **NOTE:** The monitor and camera lens surface is a resin (plastic) product. Lightly wipe the surface with a wet clean cloth. Never use an organic solvent.



MNHG-01-162EN



MNHG-01-163EN

IMPORTANT:

- Never attempt to change the mounting position of the rear view camera.
- Consult Authorized Dealer if any abnormality is found on the rear view image.

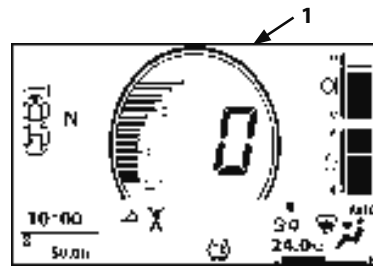
OPERATOR'S STATION

Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited

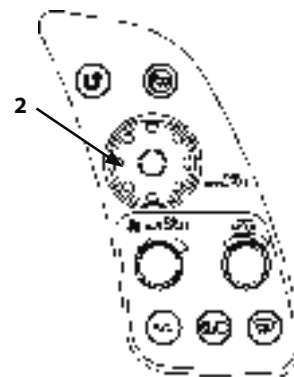
IMPORTANT: The aftertreatment device regeneration can be inhibited at this screen to prevent auto regeneration while operating the machine in a flammable area or indoors.

Setting Procedure

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

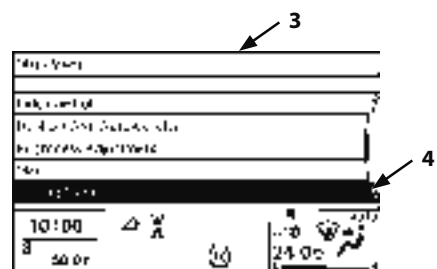


MNHG-01-103EN



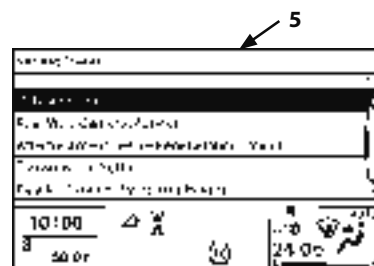
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

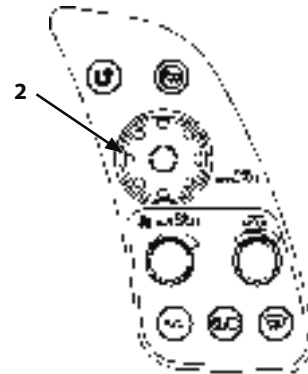
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



MNHG-01-141EN

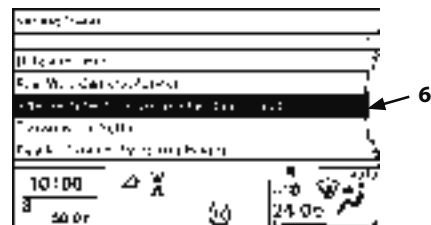
OPERATOR'S STATION

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited (6).



MNEC-01-006

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited screen (7).



MNHG-01-170EN

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ✓ (8), and press selector knob (2) to display Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited screen (9).



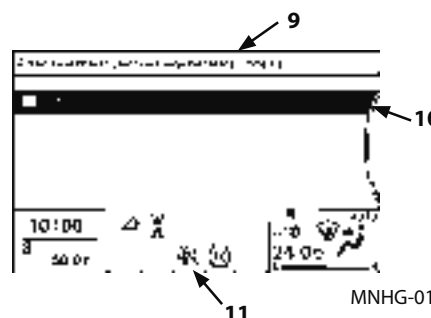
MNHG-01-171EN

7. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ON (10). Confirmation screen is added.

Press selector knob (2) to turn Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited ON. Press selector knob (2) again to turn Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited OFF.

When ON is selected, regeneration inhibited icon (11) will be displayed on the monitor.

NOTE: When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.



MNHG-01-172EN

IMPORTANT: This procedure will inhibit both automatic and manual regeneration.
When the machine is operated with the aftertreatment device regeneration inhibited, the aftertreatment device becomes clogged more quickly than expected. When the aftertreatment device regeneration request is displayed, move the machine to a safe place. Perform the manual regeneration following the specified procedure. Failure to do so may damage the aftertreatment device. Refer to page 5-11 for the manual regeneration.

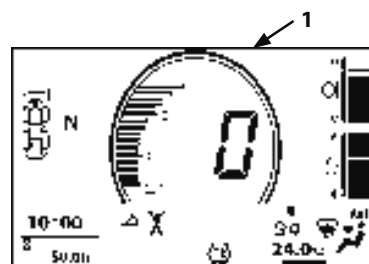
OPERATOR'S STATION

Transmission Setting

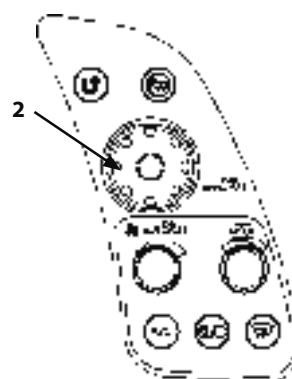
Shift Change Delay Mode Setting

Refer to page 4-6 for Shift Change Delay Mode.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

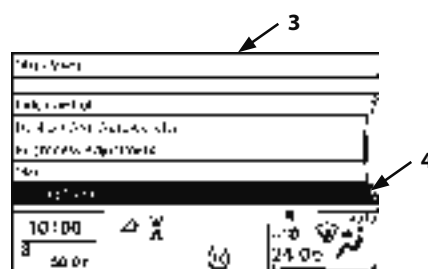


MNHG-01-103EN



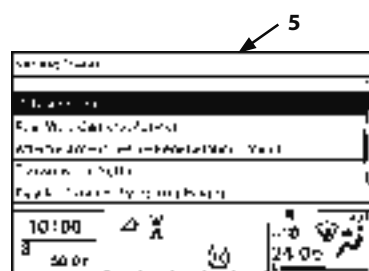
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

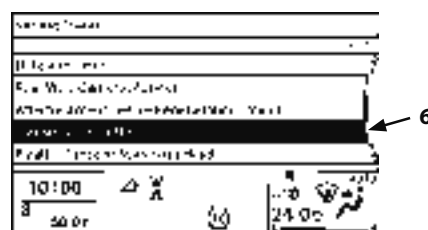
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



MNHG-01-141EN

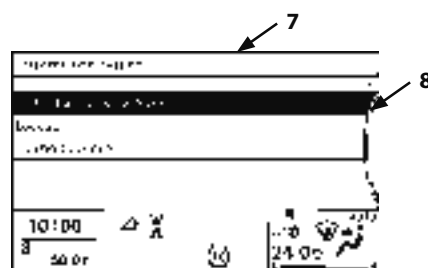
OPERATOR'S STATION

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Transmission Setting Menu (6).



MNHG-01-180EN

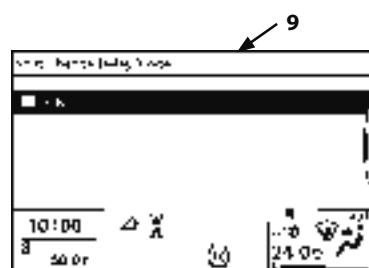
5. Press selector knob (2) to display Transmission Setting screen (7).



MNHG-01-181EN

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Shift Change Delay Mode (8).

7. Press selector knob (2) to display Shift Change Delay Mode screen (9).



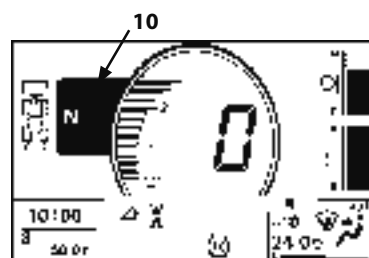
MNHG-01-182EN

8. Press selector knob (2) to turn ON (enabled).

When ON (enabled) is selected, background of the Speed Gear Stage display (10) turns blue.

Press selector knob (2) again to turn OFF (disabled).

 **NOTE:** When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.



MNHG-01-183EN

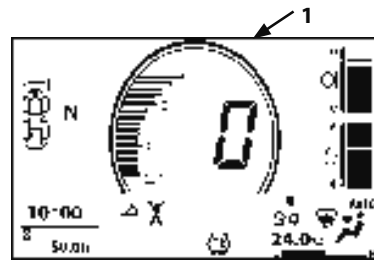
OPERATOR'S STATION

Lockup Setting

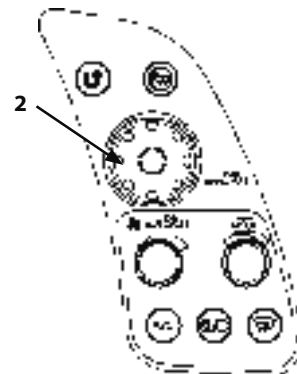
Lock-up clutch is provided for efficient power transmission from the engine, that helps to improve fuel efficiency and have higher ground speed. Use this setting to activate the lockup shifting (refer to page 4-5).

 **NOTE:** The lock-up control directly links the transmission to the engine when the Auto Shift Mode 1 or 2 is selected.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

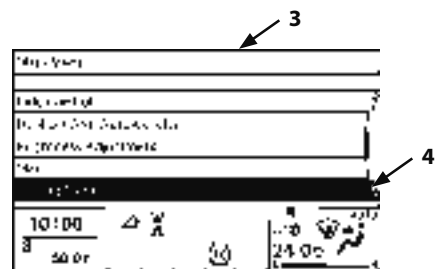


MNHG-01-103EN



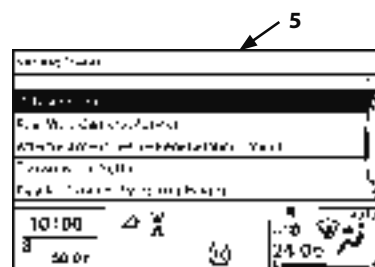
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



MNHG-01-141EN

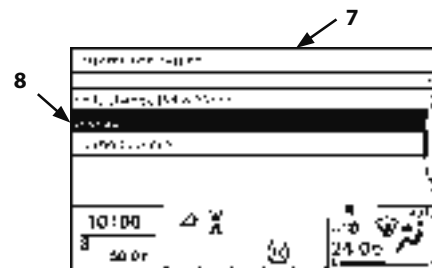
OPERATOR'S STATION

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Transmission Setting Menu (6).



MNHG-01-180EN

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Transmission Setting screen (7).



MNHG-01-184EN

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Lockup (8).

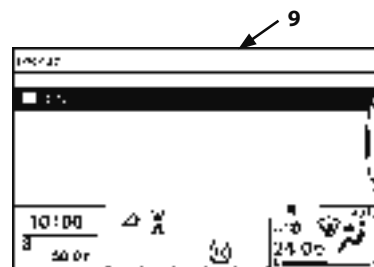
7. Press selector knob (2) to display Lockup setting screen (9).

8. Press selector knob (2) to turn ON.

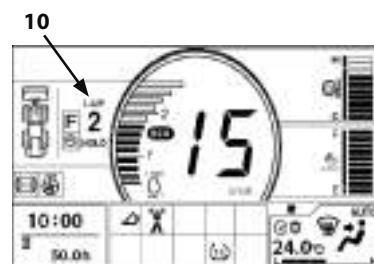
When ON is selected, "L-UP" indicator (10) turns ON when the lockup clutch is engaged.

Press selector knob (2) again to turn OFF (disabled).

NOTE: When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.



MNHG-01-185EN



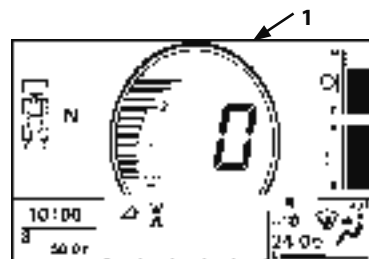
95Z7B-1-60-4

OPERATOR'S STATION

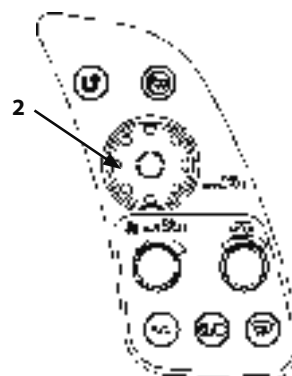
Traction Control Setting

If the tire is ready to spin, by keeping the traction control function ON, the engine speed is temporarily slowed down and tire spin is reduced. This increases tire life.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

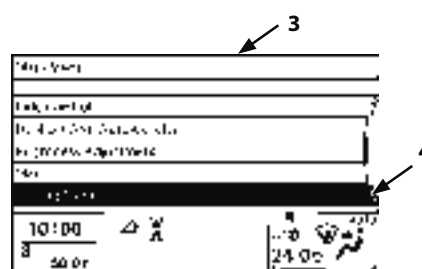


MNEK-01-103EN



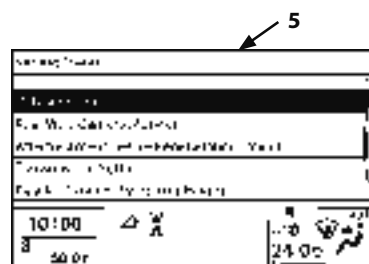
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNEK-01-140EN

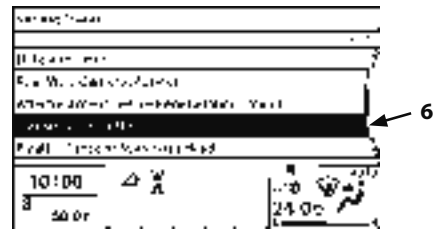
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



MNEK-01-141EN

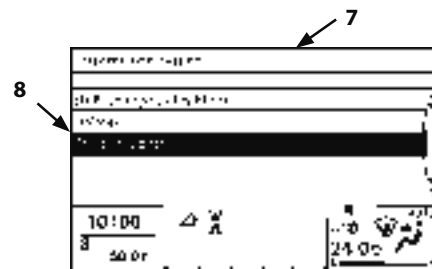
OPERATOR'S STATION

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Transmission Setting Menu (6).



MNEK-01-180EN

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Transmission Setting screen (7).



95Z7-01-05

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Traction Control (8).

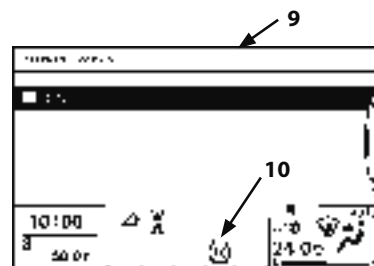
7. Press selector knob (2) to display Traction Control screen (9).

8. Press selector knob (2) to turn ON.

When ON is selected, traction control indicator (10) appears on the monitor.

Press selector knob (2) again to turn OFF.

NOTE: When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.



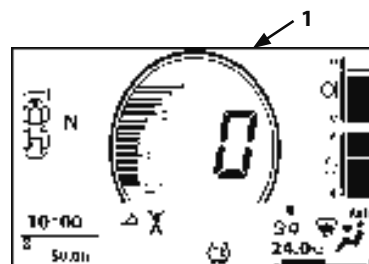
MNHG-01-187EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

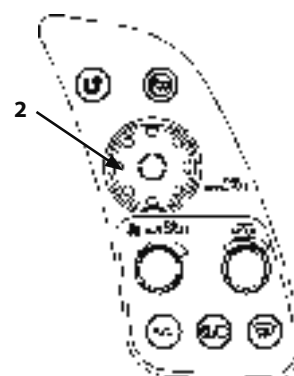
Parallel/Tandem Switching Height Setting

With parallel/tandem circuits, the lift arm and bucket can be operated at the same time, under a set height. This setting is adjustable.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display main menu screen (3).

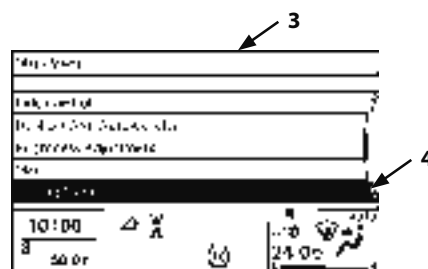


MNHG-01-103EN



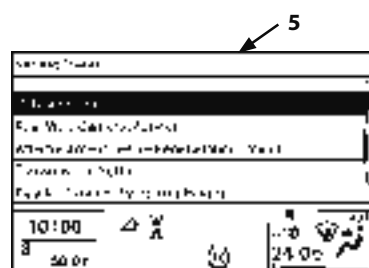
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

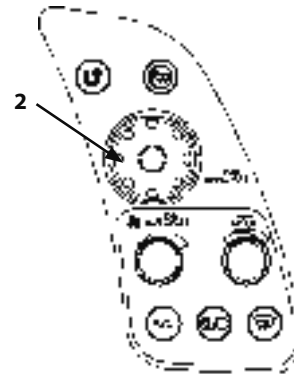
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



MNHG-01-141EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Parallel/Tandem Switching Height (6).

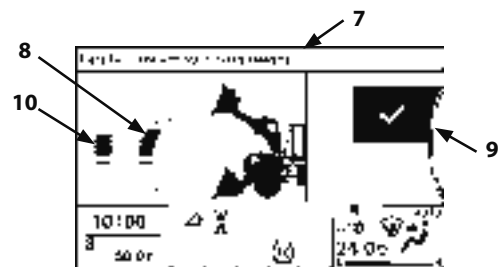


MNEC-01-006

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Parallel/Tandem Switching Height screen (7).
6. When the lift arm height changes by operating the lift arm control lever, the height is displayed on segment (8).
7. When the lift arm height is within the setting range, mark ✓ (9) will be displayed.
8. Press selector knob (2) to change parallel/tandem control height setting value.
9. When the parallel/tandem control height setting value changes, the value will be displayed on segment (10).



MNHG-01-190EN



MNHG-01-191EN

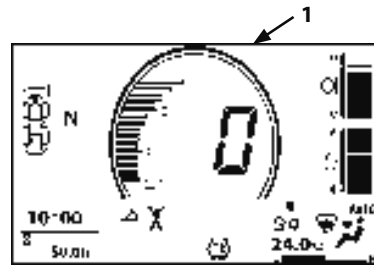
NOTE: Under the set value, the lift arm and bucket can be operated at the same time (parallel operation circuit). Over the set value, the bucket operation has priority (tandem operation circuit).

OPERATOR'S STATION

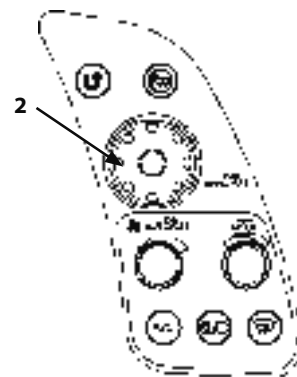
Warm Up Operation

Refer to "Cold Weather Warm Up" (page 3-13) for the operation when using this setting.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display main menu screen (3).

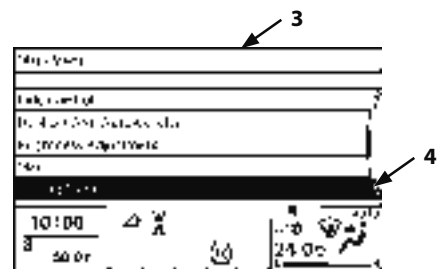


MNHG-01-103EN



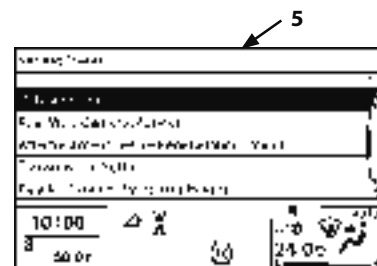
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

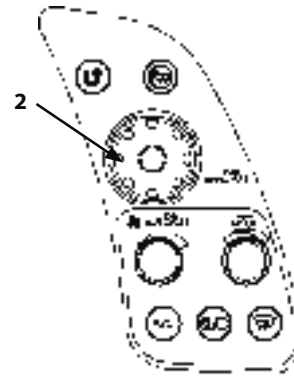
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



MNHG-01-141EN

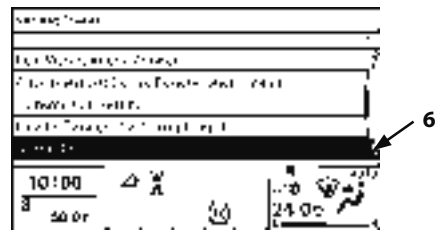
OPERATOR'S STATION

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Warm Up (6).



MNEC-01-006

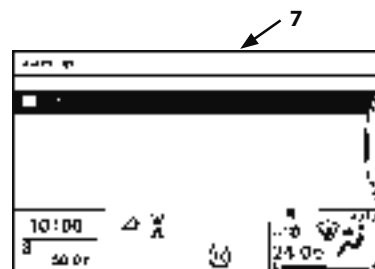
5. Press selector knob (2) to display Warm Up Setting screen (7).



MNHG-01-200EN

6. Press selector knob (2) to turn ON (enabled).
Press selector knob (2) again to turn OFF (disabled).

 **NOTE:** When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.



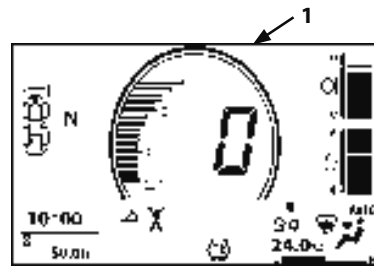
MNHG-01-201EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

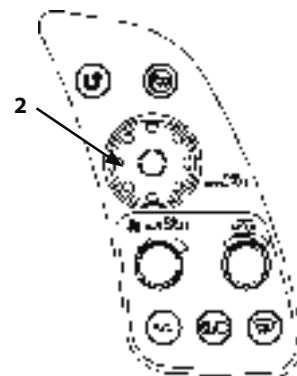
Display Item Selection

Unit system displayed on the monitor can be selected in this screen.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display main menu screen (3).

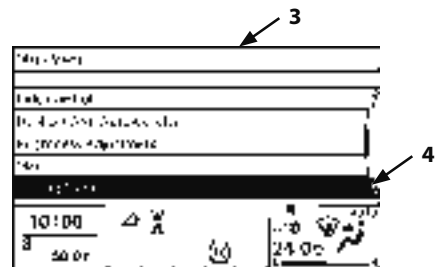


MNHG-01-103EN



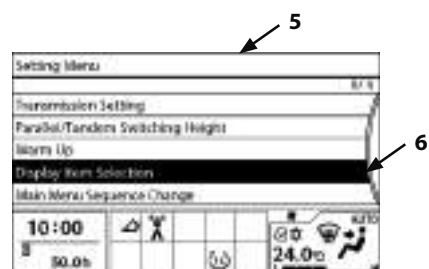
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MNHG-01-140EN

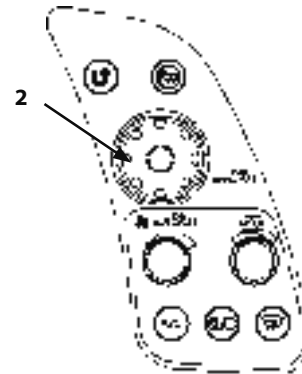
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Display Item Selection (6).



MNHG-01-220EN-KC

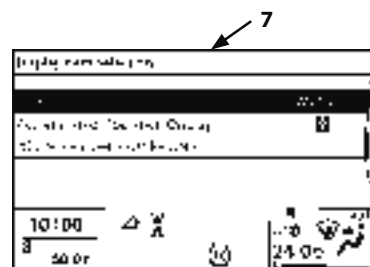
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Display Item Selection screen (7).



MNEC-01-006

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Unit. Press selector knob (2) to set the unit (Metric or US system).
7. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Accumulated Operation Display. Press selector knob (2) to set the display (hour meter) or ODO (odometer).

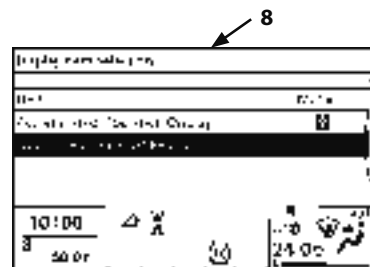


MNHG-01-221EN

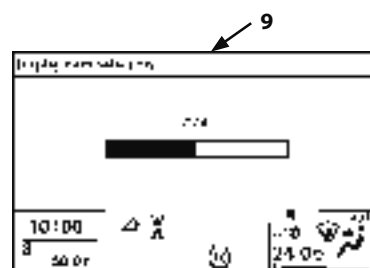
8. Before changing °C and °F, turn the blower of the air conditioner ON.

Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight desired unit system (°C or °F) (8). Press selector knob (2) to set the unit.

When pressing selector knob (2), "Wait." will be displayed (9) and then the change will be completed.



MNHG-01-222EN



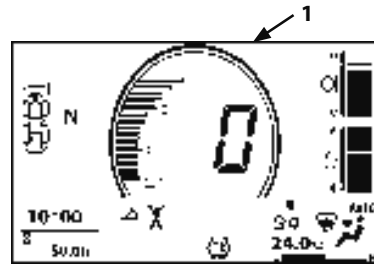
MNHG-01-223EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

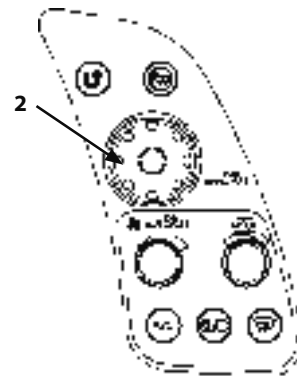
Main Menu Display Order Change

Menu sequence of "Ride Control", "Dual Lift Arm Auto Leveler", "Brightness Adjustment" and "Mail" can be changed in this screen. Frequently used menu can be located on top of the screen.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

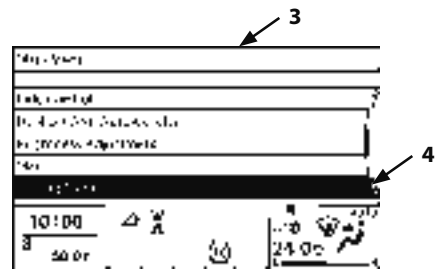


MNHG-01-103EN



MNEC-01-006

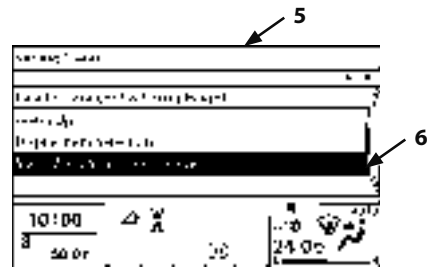
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



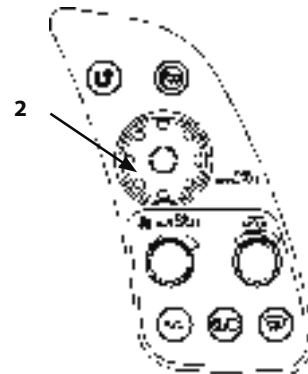
MNHG-01-140EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Main Menu Sequence Change (6).

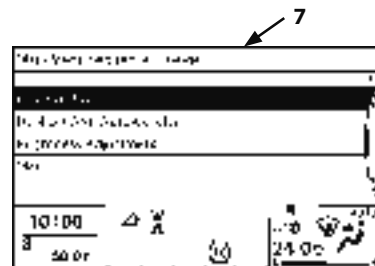


MNHG-01-230EN-KC



5. Press selector knob (2) to display Main Menu Sequence Change screen (7).
6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight a menu to be on the top of the screen. Press selector knob (2) to set the menu to the top of the screen.

MNEC-01-006



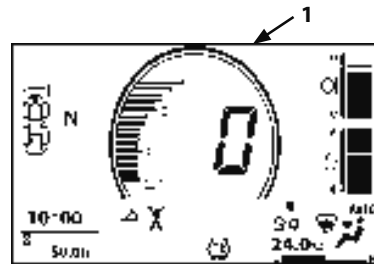
MNHG-01-231EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

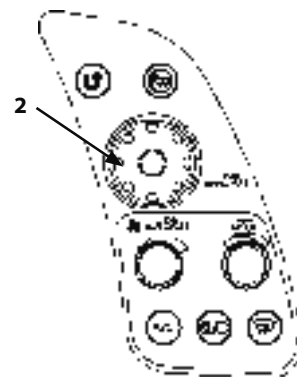
Information Menu

The information menu includes Operation, Maintenance, Troubleshooting and Monitoring.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

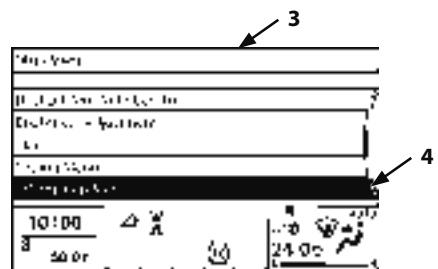


MNHG-01-103EN



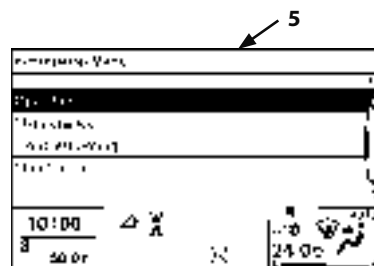
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).



MNHG-01-240EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).



MNHG-01-241EN-KC

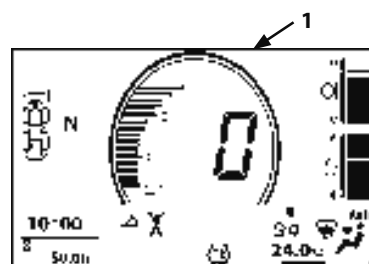
OPERATOR'S STATION

Operation Condition

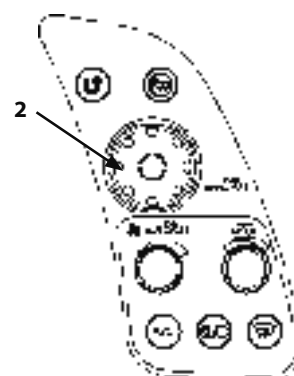
The Operation screen displays fuel consumption, operating hours, and fuel consumption rate from resetting of the monitoring unit.

Fuel Consumption

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

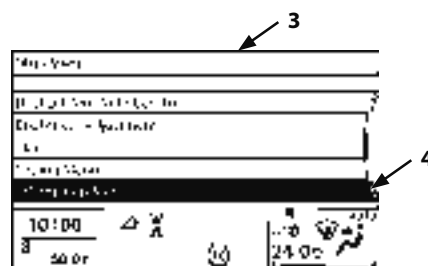


MNHG-01-103EN



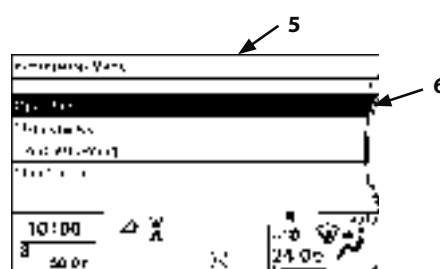
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).



MNHG-01-240EN

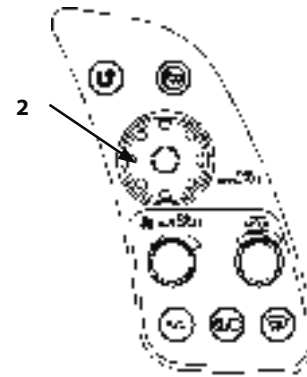
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Operation (6).



MNHG-01-241EN-KC

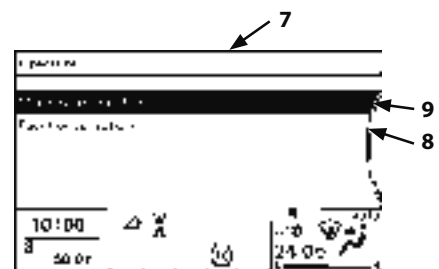
OPERATOR'S STATION

- Press selector knob (2) to display Operation screen (7).



MNEC-01-006

- Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Fuel Consumption (8) or Machine Information (9).

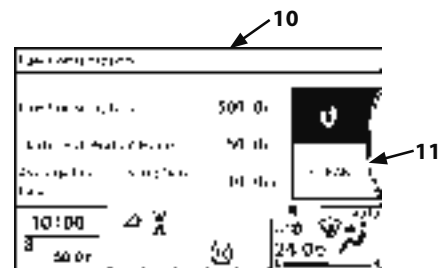


MNHG-01-242EN

- Press selector knob (2) while selecting Fuel Consumption (8) to display Fuel Consumption screen (10).

The Machine Operation Hours, Fuel Consumption, and Average Fuel Consumption Rate can be checked on Fuel Consumption screen (10).

Push selector knob (2) to return the previous screen.
To clear the fuel consumption and machine operation hours, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight CLEAR (11), and then press selector knob (2).



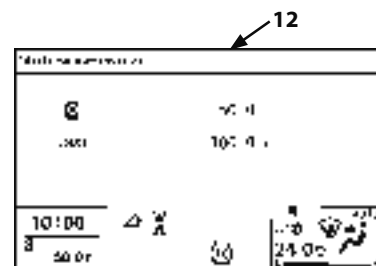
MNHG-01-243EN

IMPORTANT: Total fuel consumption and fuel consumption rate depend on the operating environment and the operation method of the machine.

The values shown on the screen are just for reference.

A difference could arise between actual fuel consumption and fuel consumption as displayed on the monitor unit.

- Press selector knob (2) while selecting Machine Information (9) to display Machine Information screen (12).



MNHG-01-244EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Maintenance

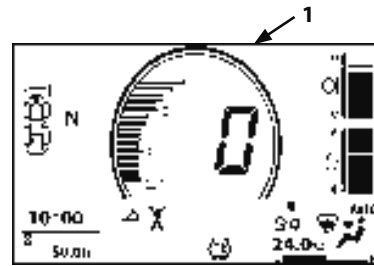
The maintenance screen includes maintenance notice, remaining hours until the next maintenance, and maintenance intervals.

Maintenance Items

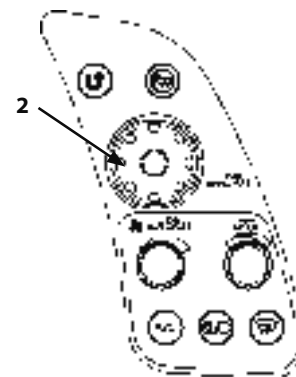
- Engine Oil
- Engine Oil Filter
- Hydraulic Oil
- Hydraulic Oil Pilot Filter
- Hydraulic Oil Return Filter
- Transmission Oil
- Transmission Oil Filter
- Front Axle Oil
- Rear Axle Oil
- Air Cleaner Filter Element
- Fuel Filter
- Air Conditioner Filter
- DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module Main Filter
- Water Separation Filter
- User Setting 1
- User Setting 2

Maintenance Notice

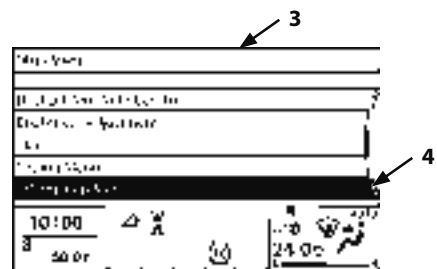
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Maintenance (6).



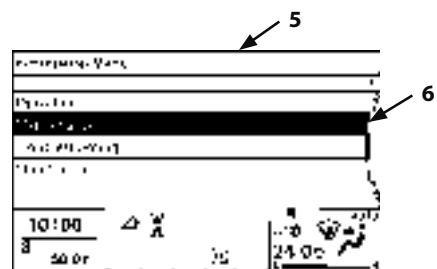
MNHG-01-103EN



MNEC-01-006



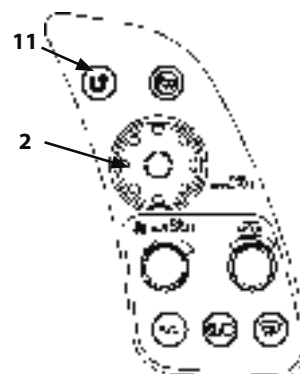
MNHG-01-240EN



MNHG-01-245EN-KC

OPERATOR'S STATION

- Press selector knob (2) to display Maintenance screen (7).



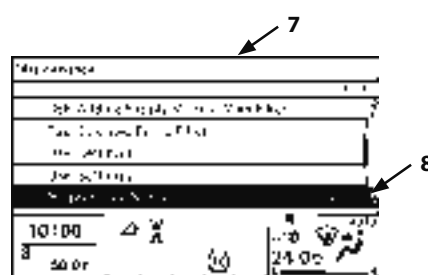
- Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Maintenance Notice (8).

MNEC-01-006

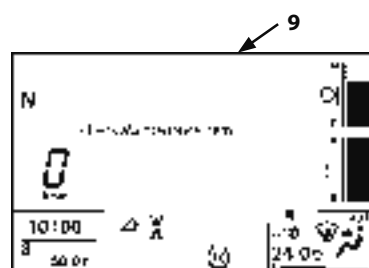
- Press selector knob (2) to turn the Maintenance Notice ON. Press selector knob (2) again to turn the Maintenance Notice OFF.

ON : When the required interval is reached, an information message is displayed on the screen.
OFF : No notification message is displayed.

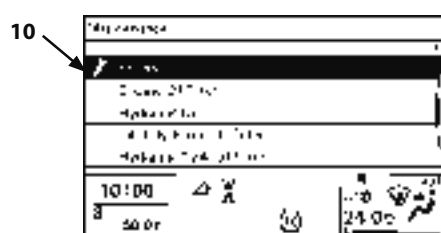
NOTE: When the required interval for an item is reached, screen (9) is displayed for 10 seconds when the key is switched ON. Press Return button  (11) to delete the notification. When checking the maintenance items from the menu, an item where the set time has been reached are marked with a wrench (10).



MNHG-01-246EN



MNHG-01-247EN

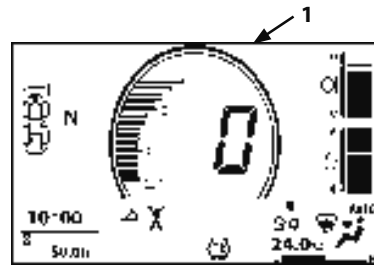


MNHG-01-248EN

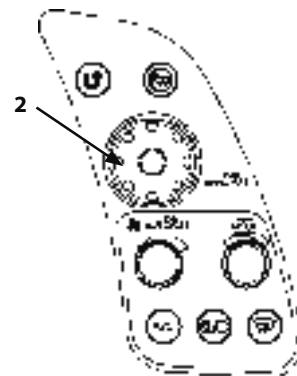
OPERATOR'S STATION

Time Remains and Maintenance Interval

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

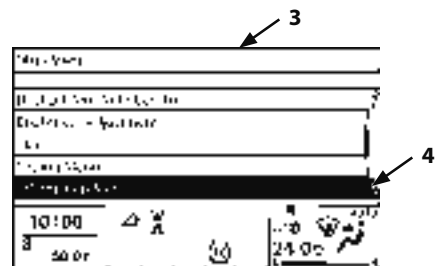


MNHG-01-103EN



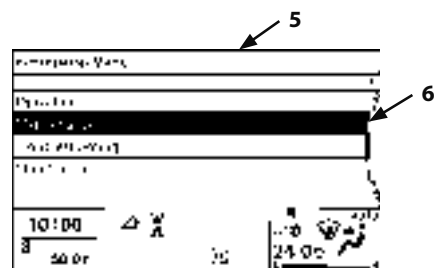
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).



MNHG-01-240EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Maintenance (6).



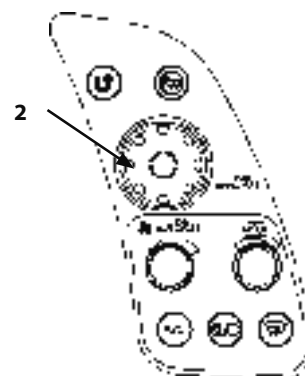
MNHG-01-245EN-KC

OPERATOR'S STATION

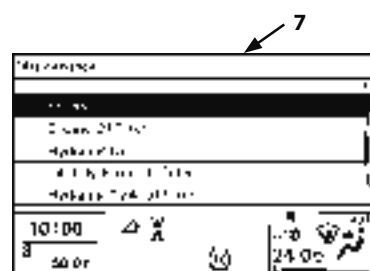
5. Press selector knob (2) to display Maintenance screen (7).

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight a maintenance item to be checked (8). (In the right example, Engine Oil is selected.)

7. Press selector knob (2) to display the time remaining for the selected maintenance item.



MNEC-01-006



MNHG-01-251EN

Resetting Data

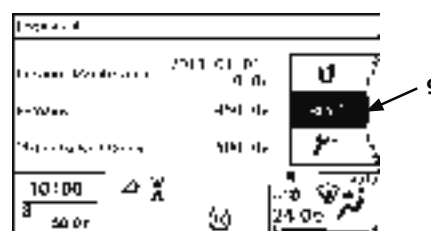
To reset the remaining time data, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight RESET (9), and then push selector knob (2).

The value of the remaining hours is reset to that of the maintenance interval. The previous change date/hour is updated with the current date and time.

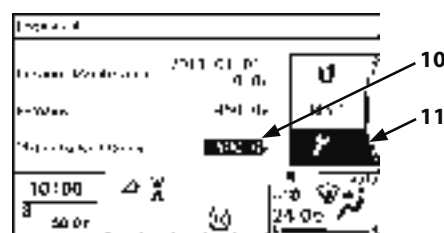
Maintenance Interval Setting

To change the maintenance interval, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight  (11), and then press selector knob (2).

The background color of Maintenance Interval (10) changes, then turn selector knob (2) to adjust the time, and then push selector knob (2) to enable the change.



MNHG-01-249EN



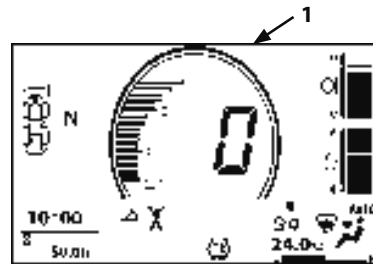
MNHG-01-250EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

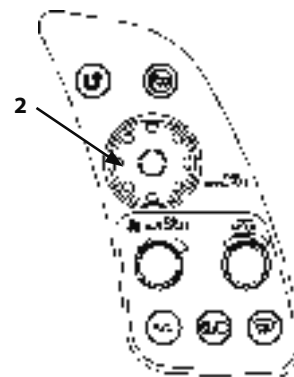
Troubleshooting

An active fault code generated by the controller connected to the controller area network is displayed on this screen.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

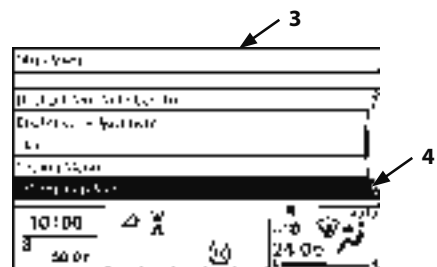


MNHG-01-103EN



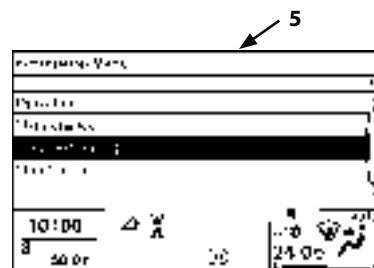
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).



MNHG-01-240EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).



MNHG-01-260EN-KC

OPERATOR'S STATION

4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Troubleshooting (6).



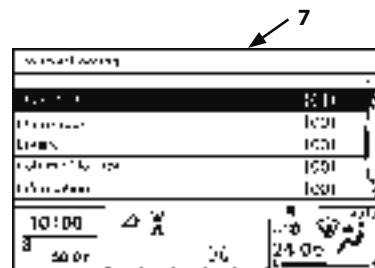
MNHG-01-260EN-KC

5. Press selector knob (2) to start troubleshooting. After displaying "Wait." message, the screen displays controller troubleshooting (7).



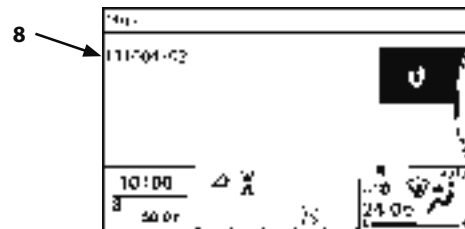
95MNEC-01-261EN

6. Active fault codes are displayed at the right side of each item. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight an item displaying the fault codes.
7. Press selector knob (2) to display active fault code (8).
Up to 20 fault codes can be displayed.



95MNEC-01-262EN

IMPORTANT: Send the troubleshooting result to authorized service representative as soon as possible.

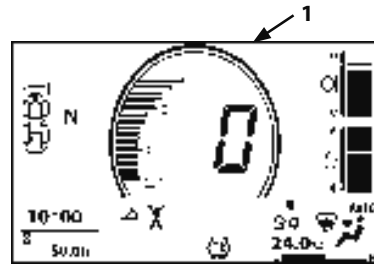


95MNEC-01-263EN

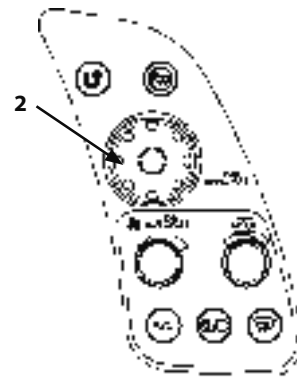
OPERATOR'S STATION

Monitoring

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

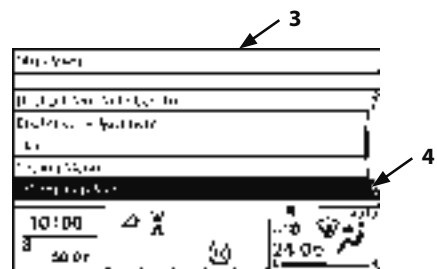


MNHG-01-103EN



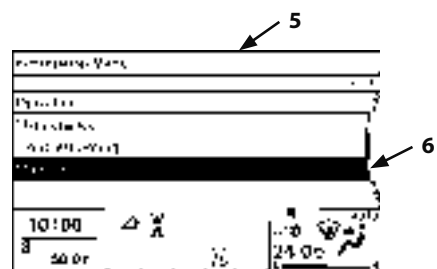
MNEC-01-006

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).



MNHG-01-240EN

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Monitoring (6).



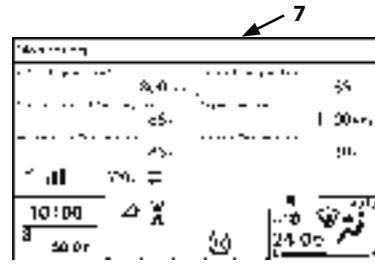
MNHG-01-270EN-KC

OPERATOR'S STATION

- Press selector knob (2) to display Monitoring screen (7).

 NOTE:

- When the "PM Accumulation" bar reaches the right end, auto-regeneration takes place. However, auto-regeneration may not be performed depending on the machine condition.
- The PM Accumulation is not displayed during regeneration.

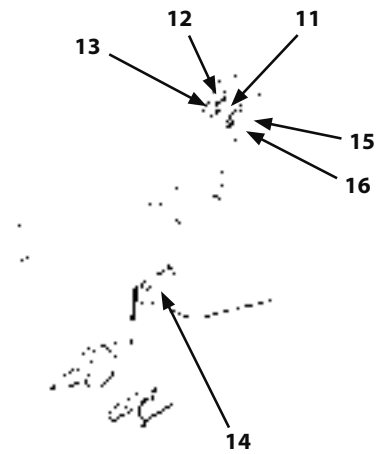
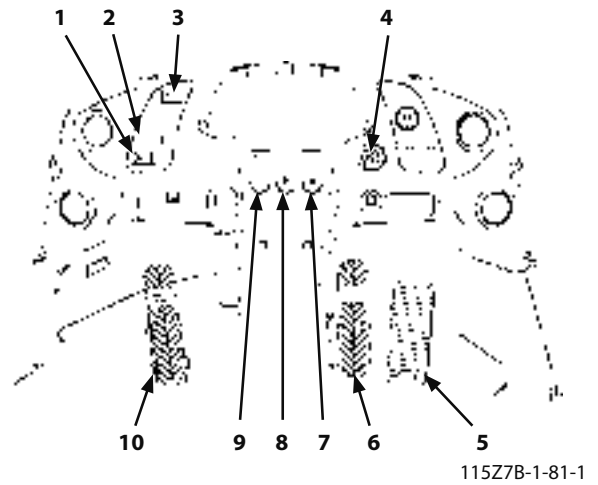


MNHG-01-271EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Front Console Switches, Pedals, and Joystick Steering

- 1- Hazard Switch
- 2- Work Light Switch
- 3- Parking Brake Switch
- 4- Key Switch
- 5- Accelerator Pedal
- 6- Brake Pedal
- 7- Front Window Wiper Switch
- 8- Rear Window Wiper Switch
- 9- Light Switch
- 10- Brake/Clutch Cut Pedal
- 11- Forward/Reverse Switch
- 12- Shift Up Switch
- 13- Shift Down Switch
- 14- Joystick Steering System Switch
- 15- Horn Switch
- 16- Hold Switch



OPERATOR'S STATION

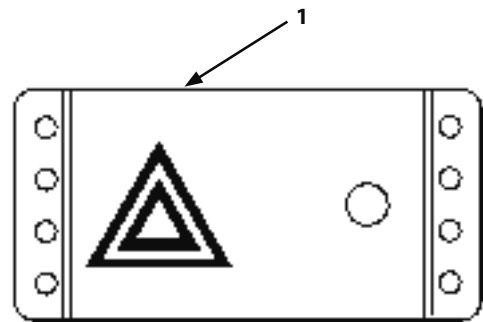
Hazard Switch

IMPORTANT: Do not leave the hazard switch (1) in the "▲" or "ON" position for a long time with the engine stopped. The batteries will become discharged.

When a machine failure occurs, use this switch to inform other vehicles that the machine is in an emergency situation.

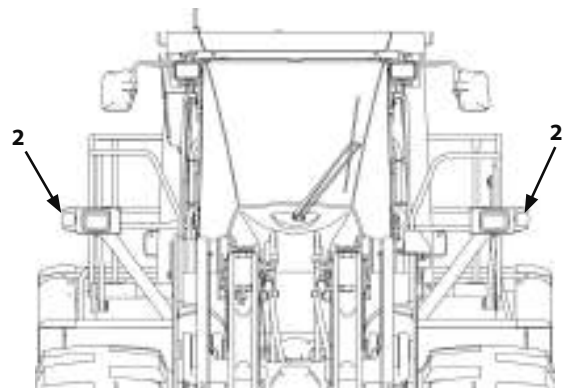


115Z7B-1-81-1

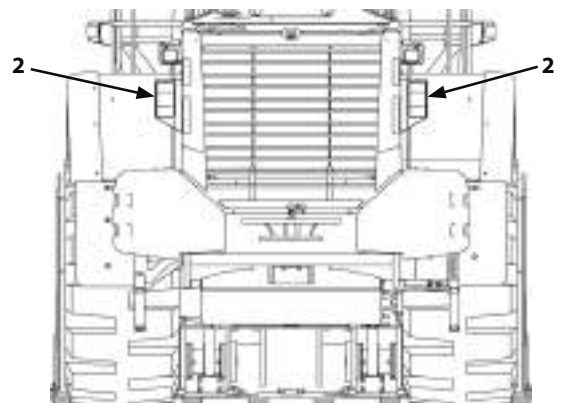


M4GB-01-065

When the "▲" on hazard switch (1) is pressed, front and rear turn signals (hazard light) (2) on both right and left sides start flashing. Press the opposite side of hazard switch (1) to turn the hazard signals OFF.



115Z7_front



115Z7_rear

OPERATOR'S STATION

Work Light Switch

Press the mark  on switch (1) while the light switch is in tail, low, or high position to turn front work lights (2) ON. Rear work lights (3) stay OFF.

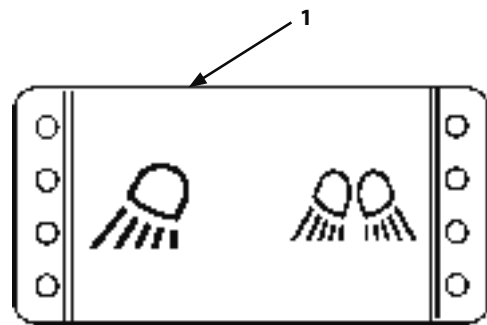
 **NOTE:** Refer to page 1-92 for the light switch position.



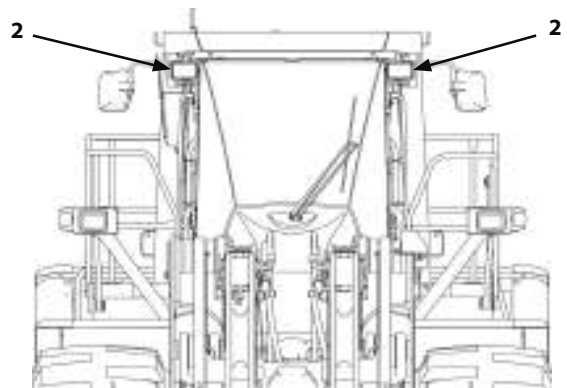
115Z7B-1-81-1

When the side with mark  on switch (1) is pressed, both front work lights (2) and rear work lights (3) are turned ON.

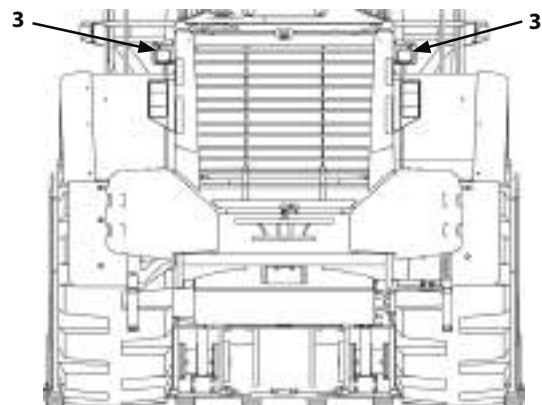
 **CAUTION:** Do not turn the work lights ON while driving on a public road.



M4GB-01-067



115Z7_front



115Z7_rear

OPERATOR'S STATION

Parking Brake Switch

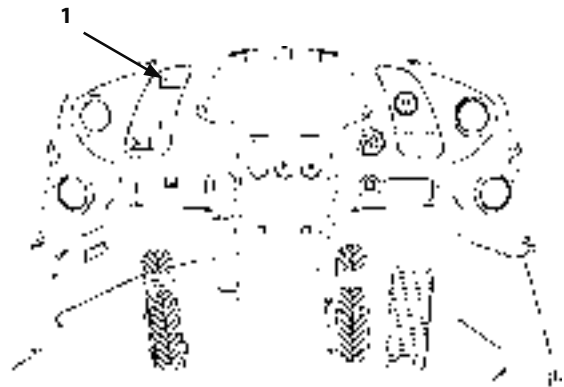
WARNING:

- To prevent accidents due to rolling away of the machine, after parking the machine or before leaving the machine, be sure to apply the parking brake.
- Never apply the parking brake while the machine is moving except in an emergency.
- Apply the parking brake only after the machine has stopped.
- Failure to do so may cause sudden deceleration of the machine travel speed, possibly creating a dangerous situation. Also, premature wear and/or damage to the parking brake may result. After the parking brake has been applied in an emergency while traveling the machine, have the parking brake checked at Authorized Dealer.

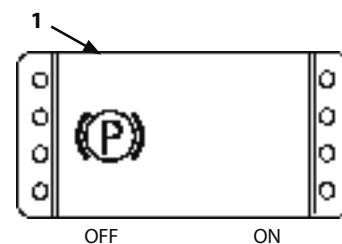
When parking brake switch (1) is turned ON, the parking brake is applied; parking brake indicator (2) will be shown. Press the OFF side of parking brake switch (1) to release the parking brake. Check that parking brake indicator (2) goes OFF by pressing the switch firmly clicks.

NOTE:

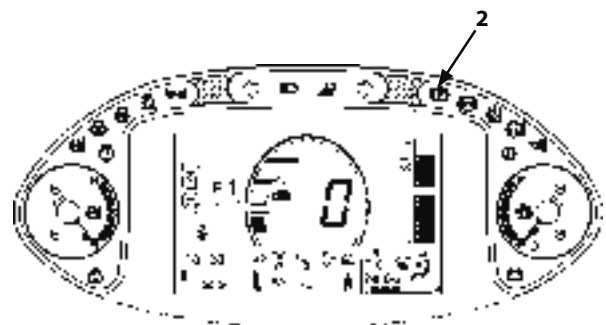
- The parking brake is released by hydraulic pressure only when the engine is running.
- To ensure safe operation, the machine should not travel when the parking brake is applied, even if forward/reverse switch (3) of the joystick steering is set to the forward (F) or reverse (R) position.
- To ensure safe operation, when the engine is stopped, the parking brake is applied even if parking brake switch (1) is in the OFF or released position. Before restarting the engine, ensure the forward/reverse switch (3) is in "neutral" position for safety.
- The parking brake will be applied when the key is turned OFF.



115Z7B-1-81-1



MNEC-01-058



MNEK-01-500



115Z7B-4-4-1

OPERATOR'S STATION

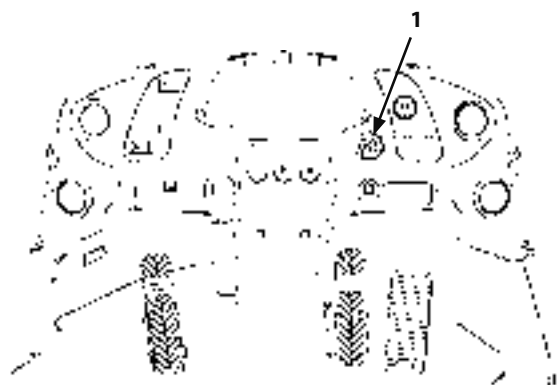
Key Switch

WARNING: Before starting the engine, return the forward/reverse switch (or lever) to neutral (N), apply the parking brake, lock the neutral lever lock, and lock the control lever. Refer to the descriptions in the OPERATING ENGINE section for the detail information.

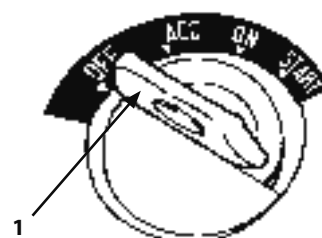
WARNING: Never turn key switch (1) OFF while moving the machine. Failure to do so will result in inoperable steering and brake pedal functions, and the parking brake will suddenly apply.

OFF- Engine Off
ACC- Radio
ON- Power ON
START- Engine Start

NOTE: Engine pre-heating is controlled automatically by the engine control system.



115Z7B-1-81-1



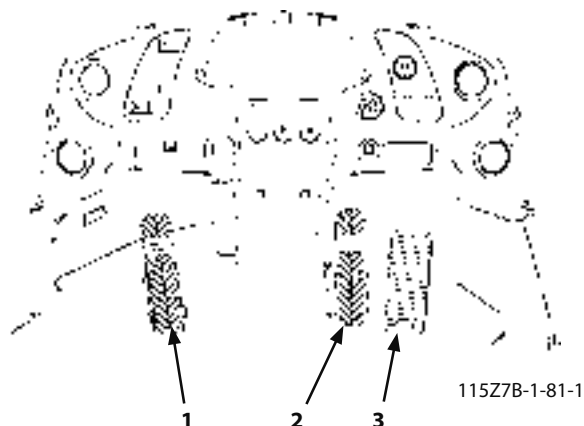
MPD8-01-307

OPERATOR'S STATION

Accelerator Pedal

When accelerator pedal (3) is applied, the engine speed increases. When released, the engine speed decreases.

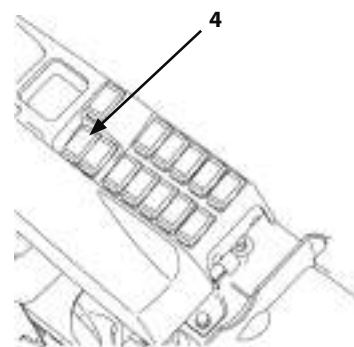
 **NOTE:** The engine speed may change due to the machine control regardless of the operation of the accelerator pedal.



Brake Pedal

WARNING:

- **Avoid sudden brake application when moving machine, possibly creating a hazardous situation. The machine may lose its balance.**
- **Unless necessary, do not rest your foot on the brake pedal to prevent the brake pads, discs, and clutch from wearing out prematurely.**
- **Keep the areas around the brake pedals clean to prevent dust and/or grit from accumulating. The brake may not be fully released and become inoperable.**



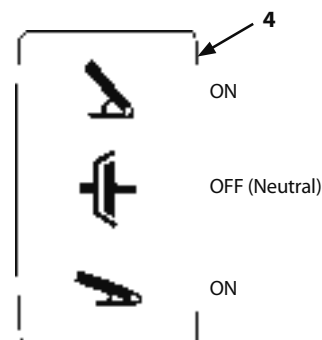
Left and right brake pedals (1), (2) can function as the service brake. Left pedal (1) also functions as clutch cut brake by switching clutch cut position switch (4).

Service Brake

Brake pedals (1), (2) function as normal brake by setting clutch cut position switch (4) to OFF (Neutral) position. Be sure to turn clutch cut position switch (4) OFF (Neutral) before traveling down or on a slope.

Clutch Cut Off Brake

Brake pedal (1) functions as a clutch cut off brake by setting clutch cut position switch to the ON . Use this mode when performing loading work or while stopping machine.



OPERATOR'S STATION

Joystick Steering

Joystick steering system allows quick easy steering on one joystick type lever. The transmission forward and reverse changeover switch and the shift up/down buttons are built into the joystick steering. This allows the operator to change the direction and speed of the machine without releasing the joystick steering.

Joystick Steering Lever

When joystick steering lever (1) is moved from the neutral (centered) to the right or left, the machine articulates (steers) right or left. Refer to page 4-9 for the steering.

Forward/Reverse Switch

Changes the machine drive direction from forward to reverse and vice versa.

Set forward/reverse switch (2) to the F position to travel the machine forward.

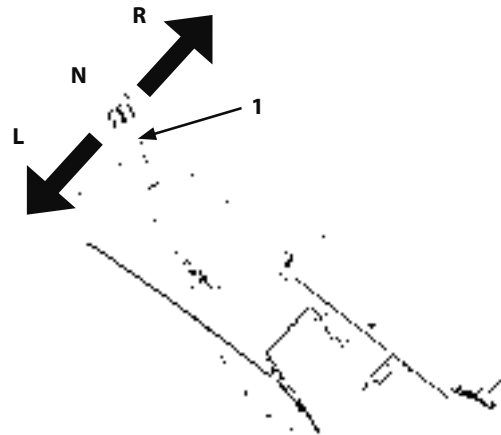
Set forward/reverse switch (2) to the R position to drive the machine in reverse.

IMPORTANT: Never attempt to shift forward/reverse switch (2) while letting the machine travel at high speed (3 or 4 speed). Failure to do so will cause engine to have excessively high RPM's, leading to hazardous situation. Also, it may cause damage to the transmission.

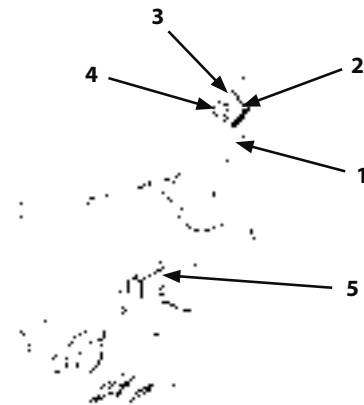
 **NOTE:** The engine will not be started unless the forward/reverse switch (2) is in the neutral position.

Joystick Steering System Switch

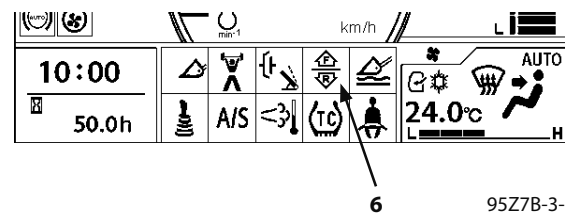
When pressing joystick steering system switch (5), F/R selector switch indicator (6) turns ON, and the machine can move forward/reverse using forward/reverse switch (2). Refer to OPERATING ENGINE.



115Z7B-1-91-1



115Z7B-1-81-2



95Z7B-3-7-1

OPERATOR'S STATION

Shift Switch

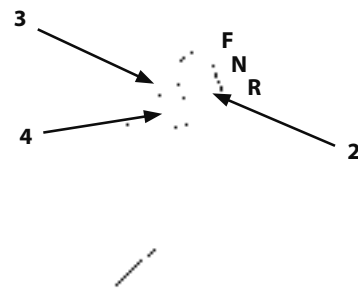
Press shift switch (3) to shift up the gear.

Press shift switch (4) to shift down the gear.

Select a proper shift for the work.

IMPORTANT: The joystick steering lever and switches are designed to operate with low effort.

Do not press and twist the lever and switches firmly. Damage to them may result.



115Z7B-4-4-1

OPERATOR'S STATION

Light Switch

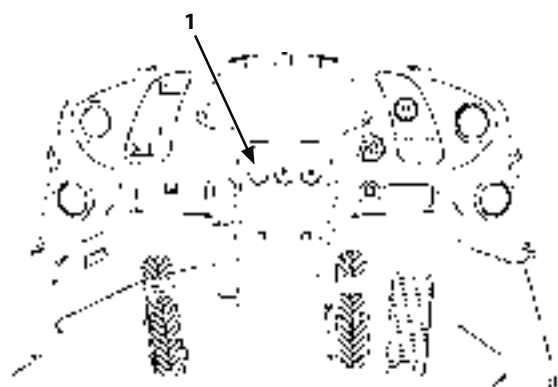
Light switch (1) has four positions; OFF, tail, high and low. As shown below, each light comes ON (☀) or OFF (X) according to the selected position of the light switch.

- 2- Headlight
- 3- Clearance Light
- 4- Tail Light

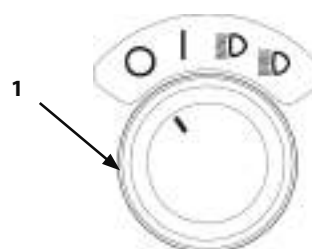
Light Switch Position	Headlight		Clearance Light	Tail Light	Monitor Panel Light
	High	Low			
○ (OFF)	X	X	X	X	X
⏏ (Tail)	X	X	☀	☀	☀
☐ (Low)	X	☀	☀	☀	☀
☐ (High)	☀	X	☀	☀	☀

NOTE: The light switch position ⏏ (Tail) keeps lit even if the key switch is turned OFF. It is used as a parking light when parking the machine by a public road.

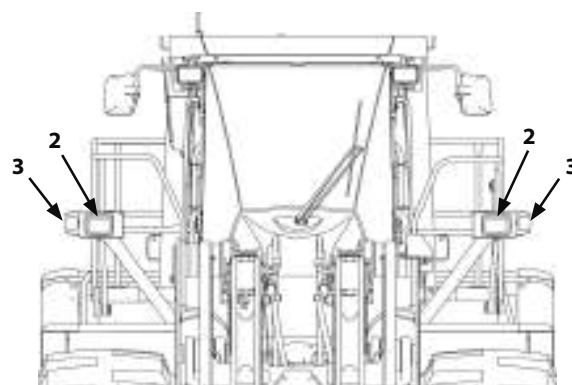
IMPORTANT: Do not hold the switch position at "ON" for a long time with the engine stopped. The batteries will become discharged.



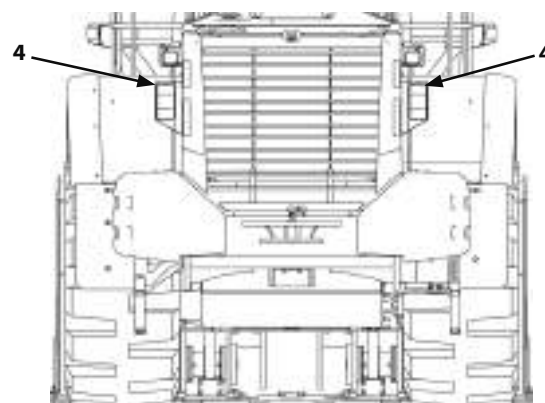
115Z7B-1-81-1



115Z7-AK-Light SW



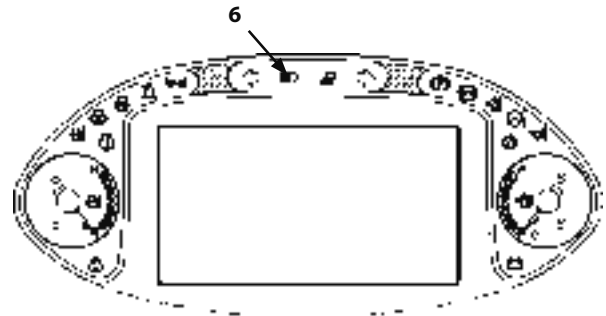
115Z7_front



115Z7_rear

OPERATOR'S STATION

 **NOTE:** When the light switch position (high) is selected, high beam indicator (6) comes ON.



MNEC-01-073

Wiper Switch

Wiper Operation

IMPORTANT: The windshield surface, the wiper blade, the wiper motor and the relay may be damaged due to dry or frozen condition of the wiper blade and the windshield.

- Before operating the windshield wiper, remove snow, ice or dust heavy debris from the windshield surface. If the windows are frozen over, defrost them.
- Use anti-freeze type washer fluid in freezing weather.
- Squirt windshield washer fluid on the dry windshield before operating the wiper. Besides, continuous operation of the wiper with windshield at semiarid condition (sprinkling of snow or rain) may cause failure of the wiper. Use wiper intermittently to protect it from damage.
- In case of machine equipped with hot-wire heater (for windshield), continuous operation of the windshield wiper with the heater switch kept ON for a long time may cause the wiper blades to be burnt damaged by heat.
- Inspect the wiper blades weekly. Replace as necessary.

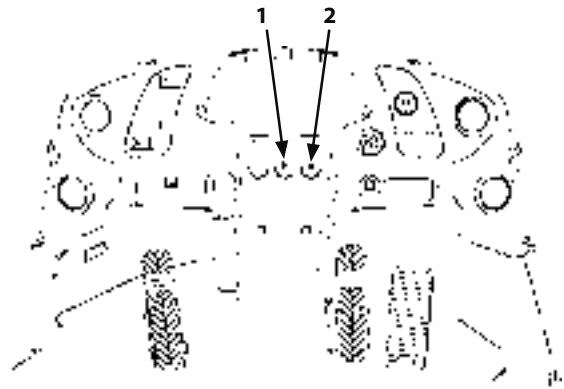
OPERATOR'S STATION

Front/Rear Wiper Switch

Operate wiper switches (1)(2) to move the front and rear windshield wipers.

IMPORTANT: The washer motor may become damaged if washer fluid is continuously used for more than 20 seconds or the washer motor pump switch is operated with no fluid in the washer tank. Take care about the switch operation time and the fluid level in the washer tank.

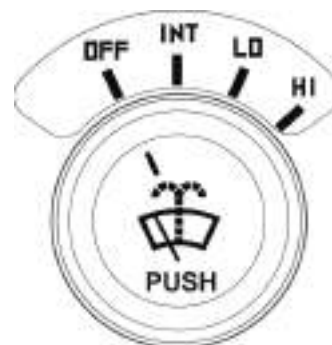
Do not operate the washer motor for too long and keep the washer fluid at the correct level. In freezing weather, use windshield washer solvent that will not freeze.



115Z7B-1-81-1

Front Window Wiper Switch

- HI : The front windshield wiper operates at fast speed.
- LO : The front windshield wiper operates at slow speed.
- INT : The front windshield wiper intermittently operates.
- OFF : The front windshield wiper stops moving and the wiper blade is returned to the pre-start position.
- (Push) : Washer fluid squirts from the front nozzle and the front windshield wiper operates.

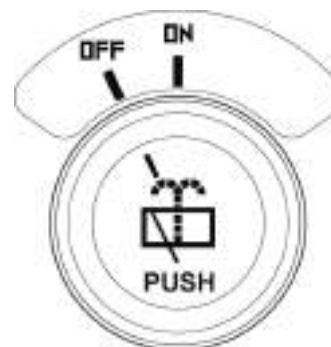


Front Window Wiper Switch

115Z7-AK-F Wiper SW

Rear Window Wiper Switch

- ON : Rear windshield wiper operates.
- OFF : The rear windshield wiper stops moving and the wiper blade is returned to the pre-start position.
- (Push) : Washer fluid squirts from the rear nozzle and the rear windshield wiper operates.



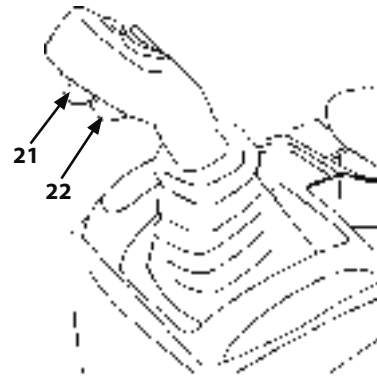
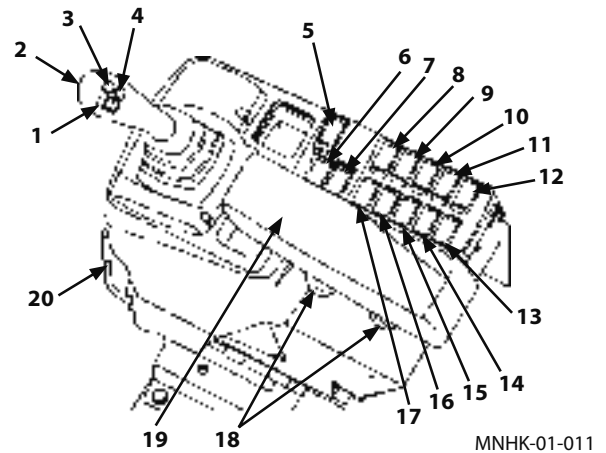
Rear Window Wiper Switch

115Z7-AK-R Wiper SW

OPERATOR'S STATION

Right Console/Switches

- 1- Turn Signal Switch
- 2- Multi-Function Joystick Lever
- 3- Quick Power Switch
- 4- DSS (Down Shift Switch)
- 5- Control Lever Lock Switch
- 6- Clutch Cut Position Switch
- 7- Travel Mode Selector Switch
- 8- Power Mode Selector Switch
- 9- Auxiliary
- 10- Fan Reverse Rotation Switch
- 11- Auxiliary
- 12- Auxiliary
- 13- Emergency Steering Operation Check Switch
- 14- Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Switch
- 15- Auxiliary
- 16- 2nd/3rd Speed Limit Switch
- 17- Ride Control Switch
- 18- Armrest Adjust Handle
- 19- Armrest
- 20- Right Console Slide Lever
- 21- Hold Switch (Under the Lever)
- 22- Horn Switch (Under the Lever)

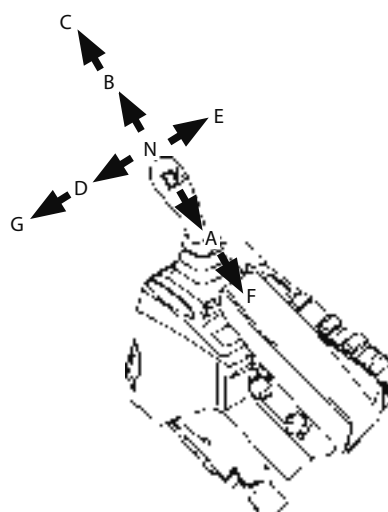


OPERATOR'S STATION

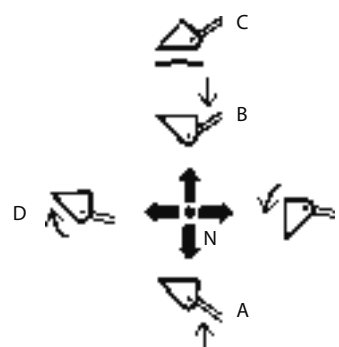
Loading Multi-Function Joystick Lever

The multi-function joystick lever is used to operate the lift arm and/or bucket.

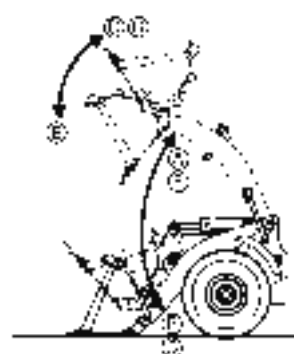
Lever Position	Bucket Operation
C	Float (Detent): The lift arm free falls and can be moved as loads are applied. The lever is held in this position.
B	Lift Arm Lower
N	Hold: The lift arm is stopped and held in that position.
A	Lift Arm Raise
F	Detent: The lift arm is held in the raise position.
G	Detent: When the multi-function joystick lever is moved from the bucket dump position to the bucket tilt position, the multi-function joystick lever is maintained in this position.
D	Bucket Tilt: The bucket is tilted back, taking the transportation position.
N	Hold: The bucket is stopped and held in that position.
E	Bucket Dump: The bucket is tilted forward to dump the bucket load.



MN HK-01-012



M4GB-01-074



M4GB-01-073

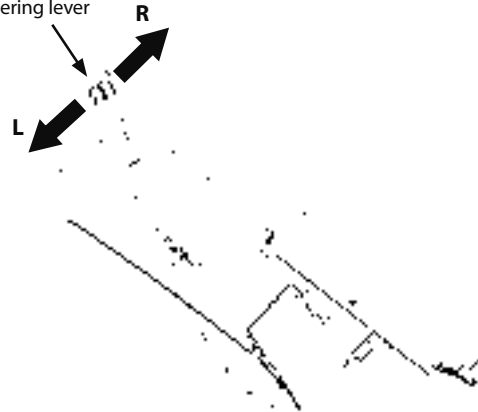
OPERATOR'S STATION

Turn Signal Switch

Indicates the drive change direction to persons and/or other vehicles by operating turn signal switch (4).

 **NOTE:** This switch (4) does not return automatically to neutral when the joystick steering lever is returned to center.

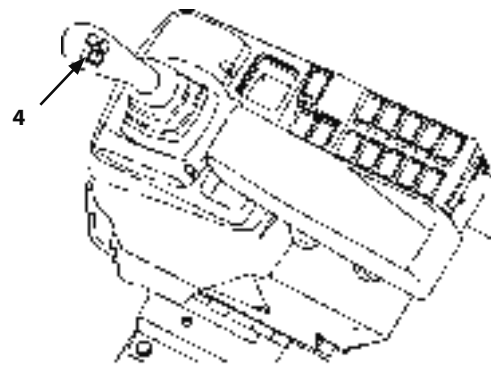
Joystick
steering lever



L- Left Turn

R- Right Turn

115Z7B-1-91-1



MN HK-01-011

OPERATOR'S STATION

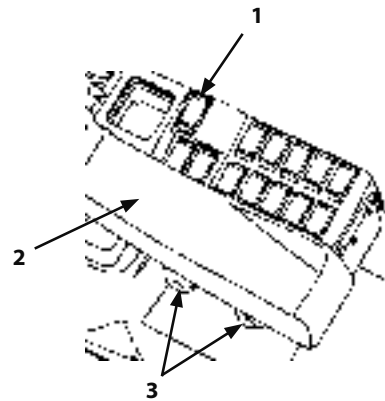
Loading Control Lever Lock Switch

WARNING:

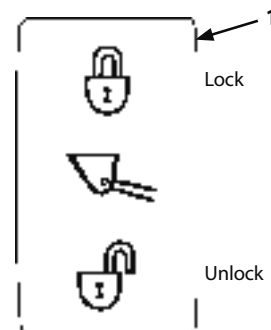
- Before leaving the operator's seat, be sure to stop the engine. Place the boom and bucket in a level, safe position. Then, set control lever lock switch (1) to the lock (🔒) position.
- Always check to be sure that the control lever lock switch is set in the lock (🔒) position before transporting the machine or leaving the machine at the end of the shift.

Refer to section 5-2 for details.

Control lever lock switch (1) is provided to prevent unexpected machine operation, if the operator mistakenly comes in contact with the bucket and/or lift arm control lever when getting on or off the machine. When control lever lock switch (1) is placed to unlock (🔓) position, the loading control lever becomes operable.



115Z7B-07-01



MNEC-01-015

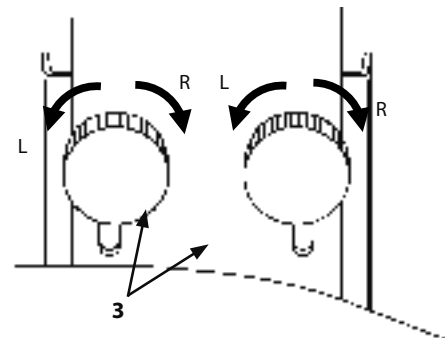
Armrest Adjust Handle

The armrest is provided so that the operator can operate the lever with an arm on the armrest, for comfort and ease.

Loosen handle (1) and position the armrest height to fit the operator's preference, tighten handle (1) to fix the armrest.

L : Loosen

R : Tighten



M4GB-01-077

OPERATOR'S STATION

Clutch Cut Position Switch

Clutch Cut position switch (2) changes the function of left brake pedal.

Operating clutch cut position switch (2) turns the clutch cut function ON and OFF.

- Clutch Cut ON

By depressing left brake pedal, the clutch is disengaged and brake is applied without transmitting the drive power to the tires.



: Clutch disengages while lightly depressing the left brake pedal: (Suitable for loading work on a level surface.)



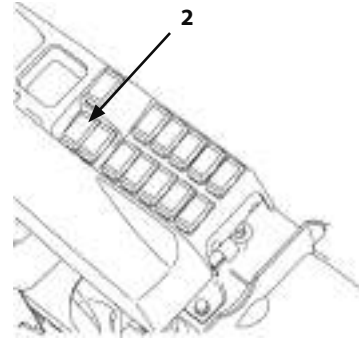
: Clutch disengages while deeply depressing the left brake pedal: (Suitable for work on a slope.)

- Clutch Cut OFF

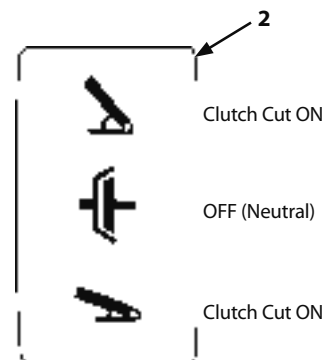
When depressing left or right brake pedal, brake is applied while driving power is transmitting to the tires.



NOTE: When starting to ascend a slope, turn clutch cut position switch (2) OFF (neutral), depress the left brake pedal. Gradually release the left brake pedal while depressing the accelerator pedal to easily start ascending the slope.



115MNEC-07-01



MNEC-01-025

OPERATOR'S STATION

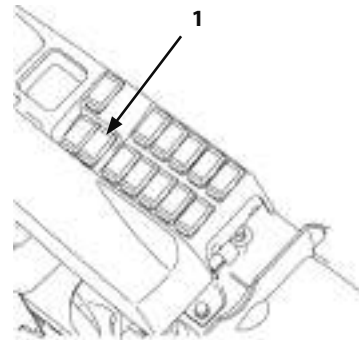
Travel Mode Selector Switch

Travel mode selector switch (1) selects the travel mode. Selecting the manual mode "⚙" by using travel mode selector switch (1) switch 1 sets the transmission to manual mode, which allows manual shift change by using shift switch (2). AUTO 1 and AUTO 2 are choices selectable at auto-shift mode. Select the most efficient mode for the travel and work condition.

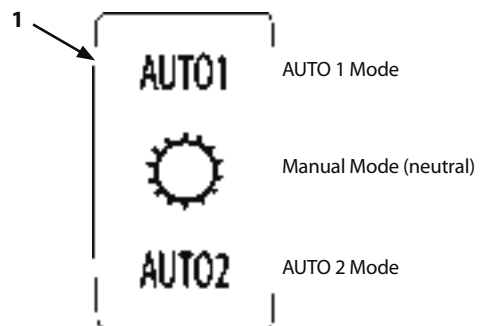
Be sure to stop the machine and set forward/reverse switch (3) in the neutral (N) position before operating travel mode selector switch (1).

- Manual Mode : Manual gear shift (The gear shifts according to the shift switch.)
- AUTO 1 Mode : Starts out traveling at 2nd speed. When traveling load increases, it automatically shifts from 2nd to 1st speed. (Auto DSS function)
This mode is suited for heavy digging work or climbing a slope.
- AUTO 2 Mode : Starts out traveling at 2nd speed. This mode shifts between 2nd ~ 3rd ~ 4th speeds.
This mode is suited for loading loose material, removing snow or a similar application.

Refer to "MOVING MACHINE" section.



115MNEC-07-01



MNEC-01-024



95Z7-1-85-1

OPERATOR'S STATION

Power Mode Selector Switch

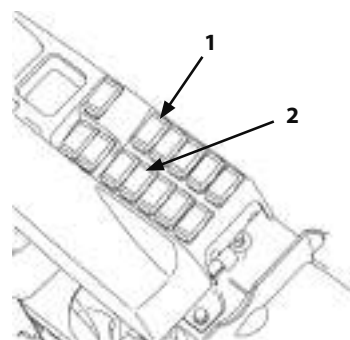
Two operation modes are available and can be selected by power mode selector switch (1) depending on the applications.

Each time the switch is pressed, the power mode is activated (ON) and deactivated (OFF) alternately.

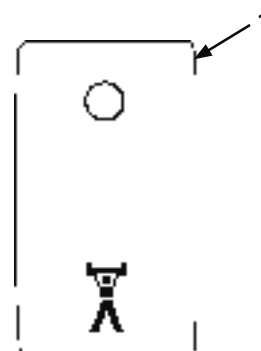
Power mode (ON) : The power mode is suitable for heavy digging work prioritizing work effectiveness.
Under auto shifting mode, the gear is shifted in regular engine RPM's (min^{-1}) and shift mapping.

Power mode (OFF) : When the power mode is turned OFF, the machine operates putting more emphasis on lowering fuel consumption.
Under auto shifting mode, the gear is shifted with lower engine RPM's (min^{-1}) and shift mapping.

When the power mode is activated, the symbol () is displayed on the power mode indicator of the monitor screen.



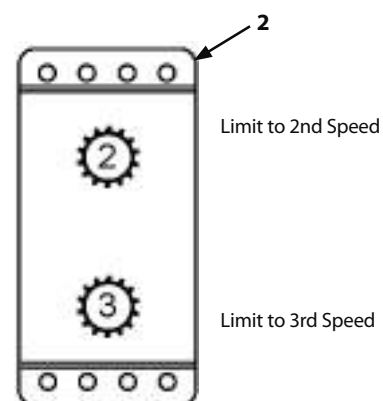
115MNEC-07-01



MNEC-01-016

2nd/3rd Speed Limit Switch

A three-position switch (1) is provided to enable the operator to limit the maximum gear to 2nd or 3rd range while driving in auto shift mode. This is used exclusively with the optional joystick steering without the steering wheel/shift lever.



95Z7B-1-112-1

OPERATOR'S STATION

Fan Reverse Rotation Switch

Fan reverse rotation switch (1) reverses the hydraulic driven fan. In case the radiator is clogged, rotate the hydraulic driven fan in reverse direction to blow out the clogged dust. It is recommended to carry out the fan reverse rotation regularly to prevent the cooling system from clogging.

OFF

When fan reverse rotation switch (1) is set to OFF position, the fan turns in normal direction.

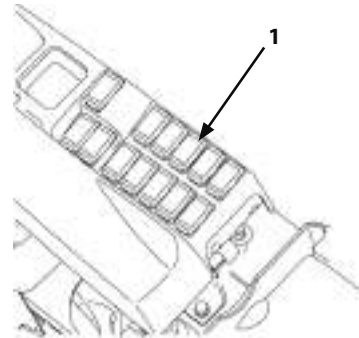
AUTO

When fan reverse rotation switch (1) is set to AUTO position, the fan rotates in the normal direction for 10 minutes for the first time. Then, the fan automatically reverses rotation and again return to the normal direction. (Normal rotation → Reverse rotation → Normal rotation →)

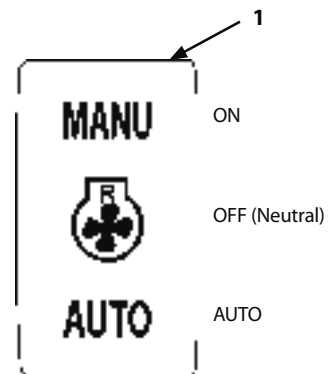
After that it keeps normal rotation for 30 minutes. The reverse rotation time is 60 seconds (1 minute). (90 seconds (1.5 minutes) at low temperature)

In case abnormal situation occurs such as engine coolant overheating or high refrigerant pressure of the air conditioner, the duration time of reverse rotation may be shortened to protect devices from damage.

 **NOTE:** After depressing the AUTO side of this switch, the fan auto-reversing function remains activated as the switch position is kept being depressed until it is manually returned to OFF or ON position.



115MNEC-07-01



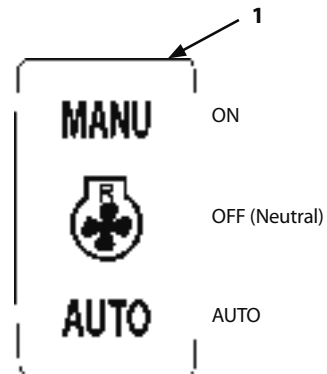
MNEC-01-019

OPERATOR'S STATION

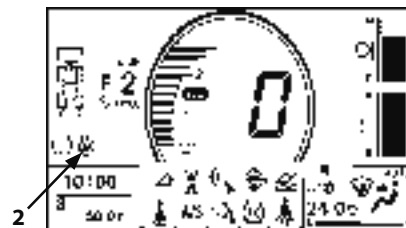
Manual Operation

IMPORTANT:

- Fan rotating direction can be manually changed when the engine is running. Each time the ON side of fan reverse rotation switch (1) is pressed, the fan's rotating direction switches alternatively. While switching the fan rotating direction, fan reverse rotation indicator (2) flashes. When the fan rotates in reverse direction, indicator (2) stays ON. When fan reverse rotation switch (1) is pressed while fan reverse rotation indicator (2) turns ON, indicator (2) starts flashing. When the fan rotates in normal direction, fan reverse rotation indicator (2) goes OFF. Do not press fan reverse rotation switch (1) while indicator (2) is flashing.
- Always operate the switch while parked with the parking brake. When the parking brake is released, the fan reverse condition is automatically canceled after 1 minute. In case abnormal situation occurs such as engine coolant overheating, reverse rotation may forcibly be stopped, or fan reverse rotation switch may be disabled.



MNEC-01-019



MNHG-01-100EN

1. Close the side cover and the rear grille before operating the switch.
2. Start the engine. Be sure to confirm that the parking brake is applied. Press ON side of fan reverse rotation switch (1) once. Fan reverse rotation indicator (2) should start flashing. Approximately 1 minute later, the fan rotates in reverse direction, and fan reverse rotation indicator (2) stays ON.
3. After operation, press fan reverse rotation switch (1) again to return the fan rotation to the normal direction.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Emergency Steering Operation Check Switch

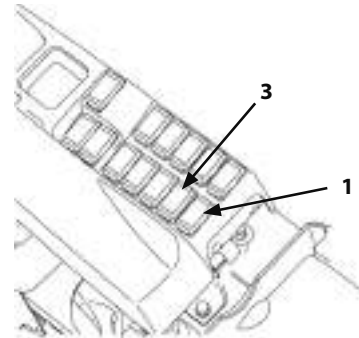
IMPORTANT: Conduct test only within 2 second.

Use this switch to check if the emergency steering pump is operable.

While the ON side of switch (1) is being pressed, emergency steering pump operates.

Emergency steering indicator (2) lights ON while the pump is operating.

After checking, release switch (1) to turn it OFF.

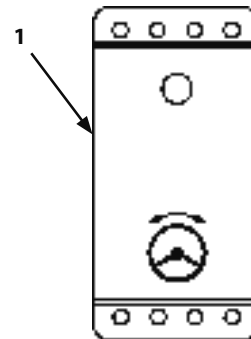


115MNEC-07-01

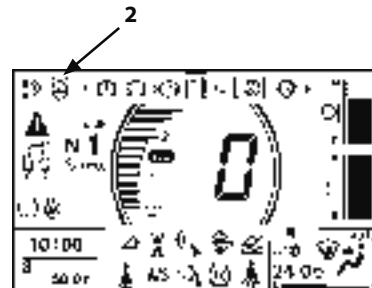
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Switch

Use this switch (3) to start the aftertreatment device manual regeneration procedures when it is requested.

Refer to page 5-11 for details.



M4GB-01-088



MNHG-01-290EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Ride Control Switch

WARNING:

- To ensure safety, operate the ride control switch only after parking the machine with the bucket lowered to the ground.
- When operating the machine with the front attachment in the float position (scooping, grading, or snow removal), always turn the ride control switch OFF. Failure to do so may allow the front attachment to unexpectedly move up or down when the ride control system is activated.
- When operating the machine with the ride control ON, control the machine speed so as not to cause sudden impacts to the machine. Ride control accumulator will carry high pressure causing gas leakage.

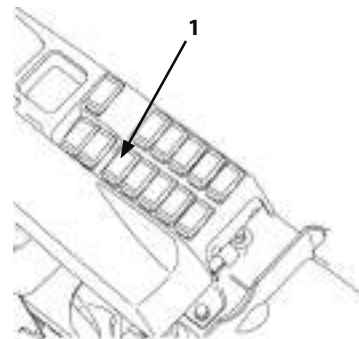
The ride control system dampens the vertical movement of the front attachment during operation so that comfortable machine ride quality is obtained. As stable drive operation is achieved, bucket load spill can be lessened.

AUTO

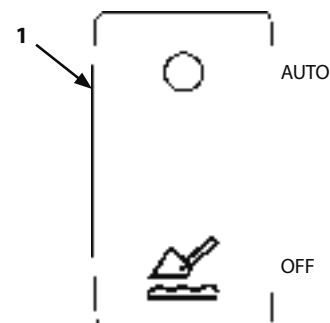
When ride control switch (1) is turned to AUTO, the drive speed sensor and the controller is activated. Then, when the drive speed increases above the preset travel speed, the ride control system automatically operates. When the drive speed decreases below the preset travel speed, the ride control system becomes inoperable. When ride control switch (1) is turned to AUTO mode, the ride control indicator (2) on the monitor display comes ON.

OFF

When ride control switch (1) is turned OFF, ride control indicator (2) on the monitor display goes OFF and the ride control system becomes inoperable. When the key switch is in the OFF position, the ride control system does not operate even if ride control switch (1) is in the AUTO position. When the engine is stopped while ride control switch (1) is in AUTO, the ride control is turned OFF.

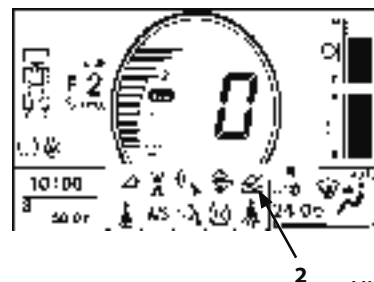


115MNEC-07-01



Only AUTO is provided

MNEC-01-022



MNHG-01-100EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

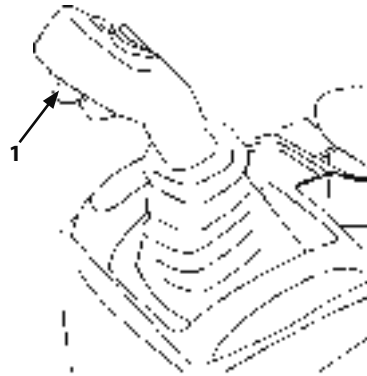
Hold Switch

Press hold switch (1) while letting the machine travel in the auto shift mode, and the machine holds the speed gear range that is currently displayed on the monitor.
Operate one of the following to release the hold function:
Press the hold switch again, Change the gear range, Change the travel mode, or Press DSS (down shift switch).

 **NOTE:** Lockup clutch does not function while holding the speed range.



95Z7-1-85-1



MNEC-01-044

OPERATOR'S STATION

Quick Power Switch

By pressing quick power switch (1) when the power mode is OFF, the power mode is temporarily activated. (The power mode indicator on the monitor shows symbol ().)

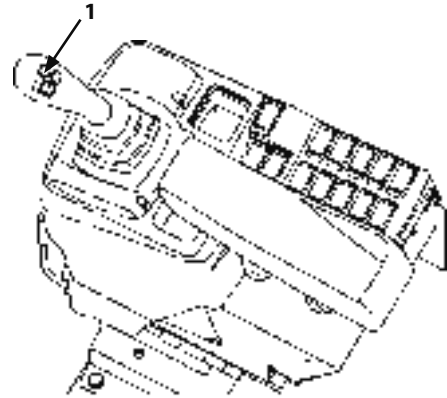
 **NOTE:** The quick power switch is operable only in the following cases.

- An added push is needed during digging (tractive) operation.
- Need a little more acceleration or travel speed while ascending on a slope.

When operating under low load or the forward/reverse switch is in "Neutral" (N) position, the mode will not change to power mode even if quick power mode switch is pressed. The switch selection is ruled invalid.

Also, even if the machine is in the power mode, it is canceled when the following conditions are met.

- When operating load is decreased while digging.
- When the quick power mode switch is pressed.
- The forward/reverse switch is operated.
- While driving in the auto-shift mode, the gear shifts up to the selected gear stage.



MN HK-01-011

Right Console Slide Lever

Adjust the position of the right console as follows.

1. While tilting lever (2) to the right, adjust the position of the right console by sliding it back or forth. Holding and moving armrest (3) maybe easier to move the console.

Slide quantity: 90 mm

2. After the adjustment, put back lever (2) to the original position.



115MNEC-01-043

OPERATOR'S STATION

DSS (Down Shift Switch)

Press DSS (1) to down shift the gear.

Set the shift gear to 2nd speed for normal operation.

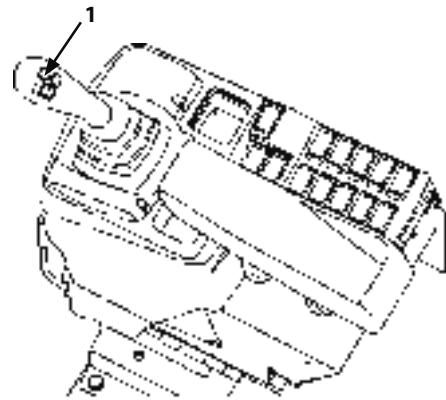
By pressing DSS (1) while digging with the machine in forward, the gear automatically shifts to 1st speed, which increases drive force and digging force.

Once forward/reverse switch (2) is set to reverse (R), the gear returns to 2nd speed.

Press DSS (1) when ECO indicator (3) turns OFF while operating on a slope or during snow removal. In this case, the gear temporarily shifts down to 1st speed by pressing DSS (2), but it automatically returns to 2nd speed when traveling load is reduced.

NOTE:

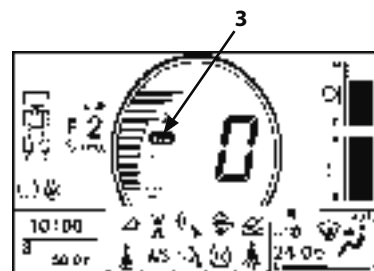
- When in auto shift mode or manual shift mode, each time DSS (1) is pressed, the gear down shifts to 1st speed. When in auto shift mode, press and hold DSS (1) to down shift from 4th speed, 3rd speed, 2nd speed, and then to 1st speed.
- When DSS (2) is pressed during lockup shift range, the speed range is down shifted by one. (Pressing DSS during 4th L-UP moves down to 3rd shift range.)
- This switch (2) works only in Manual traveling mode; has no function in AUTO1 or AUTO2 mode.



MN HK-01-011



95Z7-1-85-1



MN HG-01-100EN

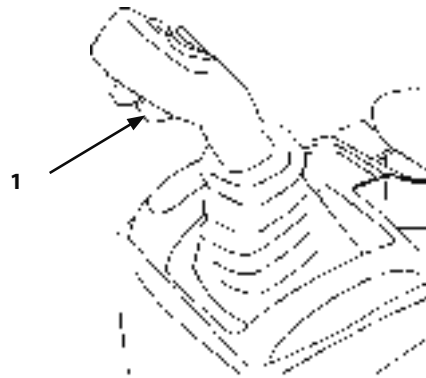
OPERATOR'S STATION

Horn Switch

Press horn switch (1) to sound the horn.
The horn switches are provided on the control lever and the joystick steering to improve operator comfort.



95Z7-1-85-1



MNEC-01-044

OPERATOR'S STATION

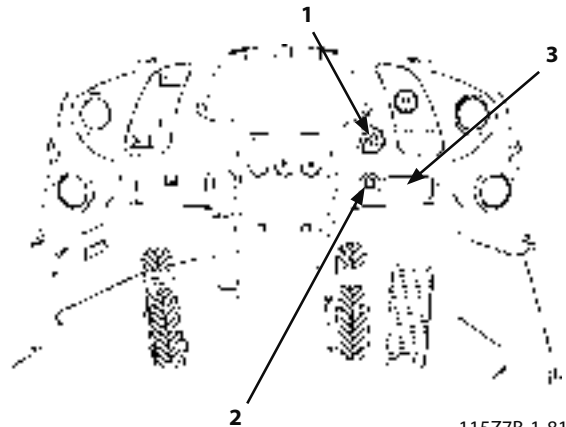
Cigar Lighter (24 V DC Electrical Outlet)

Using Cigar Lighter

WARNING: Never touch other than insulated the knob part. Otherwise, it may result in severe burns.

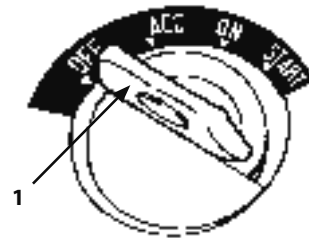
CAUTION: Do not power anything other than a genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery electrical device from the cigar lighter port.

IMPORTANT: In case the cigar lighter does not pop out automatically after 30 seconds after pushing the cigar lighter in, pull out the cigar lighter manually. Then, consult the Authorized Dealer.



115Z7B-1-81-1

1. Turn the key switch (1) ON.
2. Press and release the lighter knob (2).
3. The cigar lighter knob will return to the original position when the lighter becomes hot. Pull the cigar lighter out to use.
4. After using the cigar lighter, insert the cigar lighter into the panel until the knob is seated in the original position and not pressed in.



MPD8-01-307

Ash Tray

WARNING: Take precautions against fires.

Use this ash tray (3) when smoking in the cab.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Auto Air Conditioner

Feature

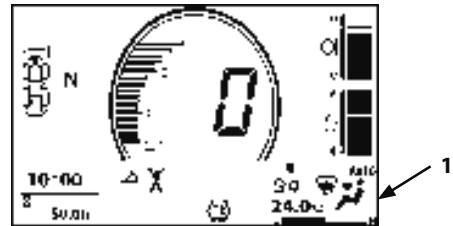
- Full Auto-Temperature Control:
Automatically controls the cab temperature to maintain the temperature set by the temperature control switch regardless of outside air temperature and insolation.
- Max. Cooling and Heating:
Maximum cooling or heating can be obtained by rotating the temperature control switch clockwise (32°C) or counterclockwise (18°C) respectively.
- Preheating:
During preheating the cab in winter with the foot vent selected, the air volume is reduced to Low until the coolant temperature rises to prevent cool air from entering the cab.

 **NOTE:** *Even in the summer season, the engine high idle speed may be higher when cool than the normal operating temperature speed due to quick warm-up mode.*

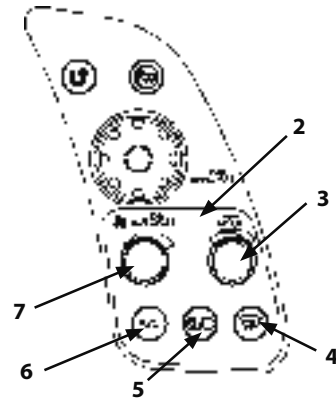
OPERATOR'S STATION

Components Name

- 1- Monitor
- 2- Control Panel
- 3- Temperature Control Switch (Rotate)/Mode Switch (Press)
- 4- Defroster Switch
- 5- Circulation/Fresh Air Switch
- 6- Air Conditioner ON/OFF Switch
- 7- Fan (Rotate)/Auto Switch (Press)



MNHG-01-103EN

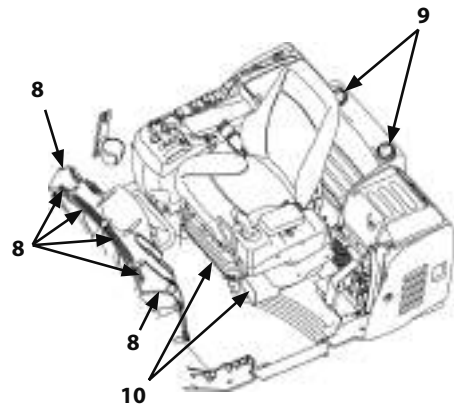


MNEC-01-006

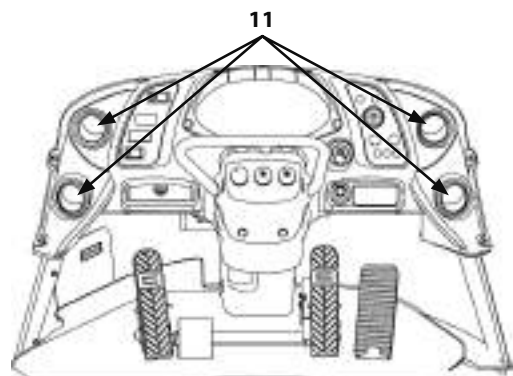
- 8- Defroster Vent
- 9- Rear Vent
- 10- Foot Vent
- 11- Air flows out of front vent and the defroster vents.

NOTE:

- Except for the foot vent (10) and defroster vent (8), all vents are provided with louvers to adjust the air flow direction.
- In addition, the louvers on front vent (11) and rear vent (9) can be completely opened and closed by hand.



115Z7-1-115-3



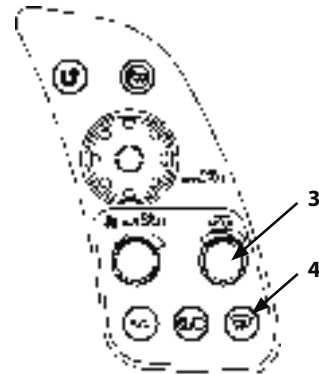
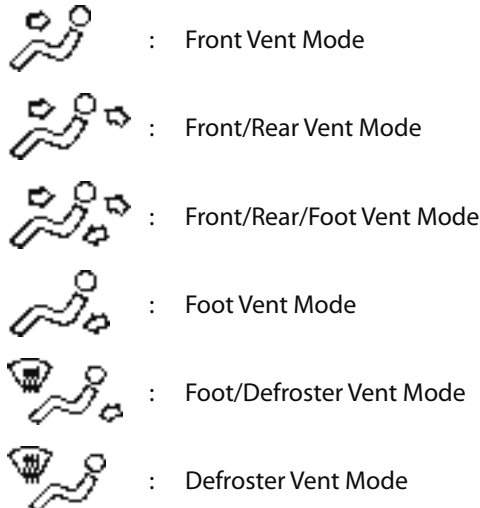
115MNEC-01-37

OPERATOR'S STATION

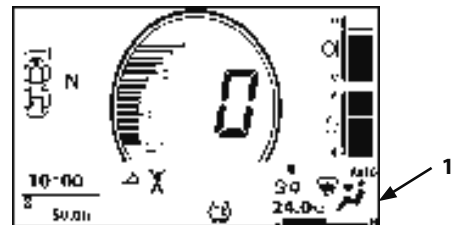
Controller Part Name and Function

Mode/Temperature Control Switch

- Mode Switch (3)
Selects the air vent. The selected air vent is indicated on monitor (1).

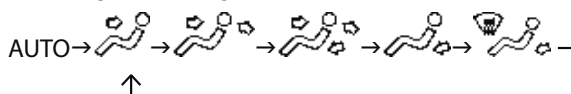


MNEC-01-006



MNHG-01-103EN

Each time mode switch (3) is pressed, the vent location can be changed in 6 stages as illustrated below.



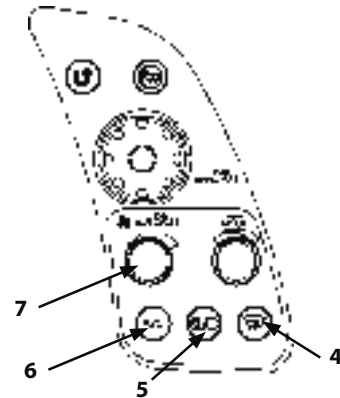
Press defroster switch (4) to change defroster vent mode.

- AUTO mode
The air vent location is automatically selected.
- Temperature Control Switch (3):
Sets temperature in the cab.
Temperature in the cab can be set from 18.0 to 32.0 °C by rotating temperature control switch (3). Temperature can be set by 0.5 °C increments.
The set-temperature is displayed on monitor (1).

OPERATOR'S STATION

Fan/AUTO Switch

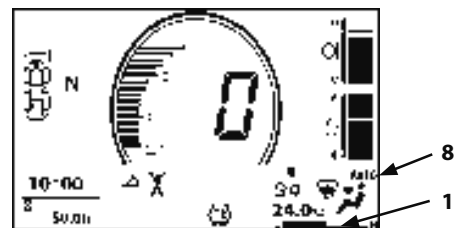
- Blower Switch (7)
 - When the AUTO indicator (8) is ON, the blower speed is automatically controlled.
 - When AUTO indicator (8) is OFF, the blower speed is controlled in 6 steps.
Rotate blower switch (7) clockwise to increase blower speed. Rotate blower switch (6) counterclockwise to decrease blower speed.
The monitor (1) indicates the corresponding blower fan speed.
- AUTO Switch (7)
Press AUTO Switch (7) while the air conditioner OFF, it turns AUTO. Press AUTO switch (7) while operating the air conditioner, it stops operation.



MNEC-01-006

Air Conditioner ON/OFF Switch (6)

The air conditioner (cooling, dehumidifying) will turn on and the air conditioner indicator  will be displayed on the monitor when air conditioner ON/OFF switch (6) is pressed.



MNHG-01-103EN

Circulation/Fresh Air Switch (5)

It switches over the air intake port to recirculation mode and fresh air mode.
Icon of the selected mode will be displayed on the monitor. Recirculation mode , Fresh air mode: .

IMPORTANT:

- **When running the air conditioner for a long time, turn the lever to Fresh position once an hour to perform ventilation and cooling.**
- **If you smoke when the air conditioner is on, the smoke may hurt your eyes. In such a case, open the window and turn the lever to Fresh for a while for ventilation and cooling to drive smoke out.**

Defroster Switch (4)

Press defroster switch (4) to select defroster vent mode and the icon  will be displayed on the monitor.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Cab Heater Operation

1. AUTO switch (7):

According to signals sent from various sensors, the air conditioner amplifier automatically selects the air flow inlet ports, and air temperature, and controls the blower speed.

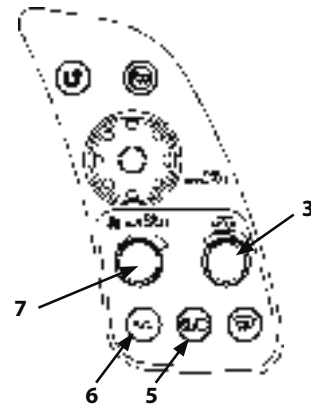
2. Temperature Control Switch (3):

Adjust the temperature in the cab by using temperature control switch (3).

3. Other Functions and Operations

- Operate Mode switch (3) to manually select the air vent.
- Operate blower switch (7) to manually control the blower speed.
- Operate circulation/fresh air switch (5) to maintain the air vent in the fresh air mode or circulation mode.

Usually the cab heater turns the dehumidifier function OFF, however, it turns ON by turning A/C ON by using air conditioner ON/OFF switch (6).



MNEC-01-006

OPERATOR'S STATION

Cooling Operation

1. AUTO switch (7):

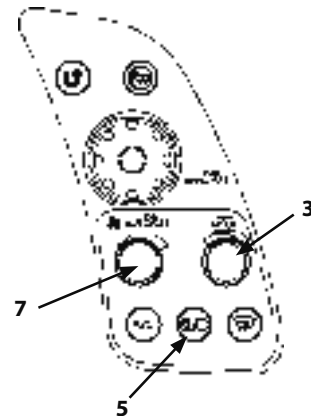
Press AUTO switch (7) to set the air conditioner AUTO mode. According to signals sent from various sensors, the air conditioner amplifier automatically selects the air flow-in vents, air suction ports, and air flow-in temperature at the vent, and controls the blower speed.

2. Temperature Control Switch (3):

Adjust the temperature in the cab by using temperature control switch (3).

3. Other Functions and Operations

- Operate Mode switch (3) to manually select the air vent.
- Operate blower switch (7) to manually control the blower speed.
- Operate circulation/fresh air switch (5) to maintain the air vent in the fresh air mode or circulation mode.

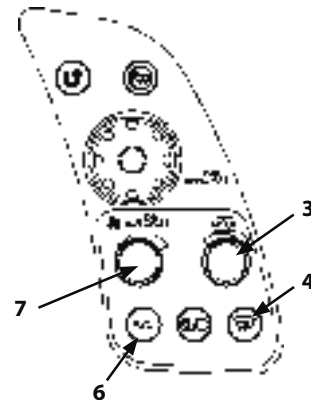


MNEC-01-006

OPERATOR'S STATION

Defroster Operation

1. Press defroster switch (4) to change defroster  vent mode; the fresh air mode and air conditioner will turn ON.
2. Temperature in the cab can be adjusted by operating temperature control switch (3).
3. Operate fan switch (7) to adjust flow.
4. Operate mode switch (3) to change  foot/defroster mode.



MNEC-01-006

Cool Head/Warm Feet Operation

Cool and warm air is simultaneously supplied to the head vents and feet vents respectively.

1. Rotate blower switch (7) to adjust the blower speed.
2. Press MODE switch (3) to display the front and rear vent mark  on the monitor.

Turn A/C ON by using air conditioner ON/OFF switch (6).

Control air temperature inside the cab by using temperature control switch (3).

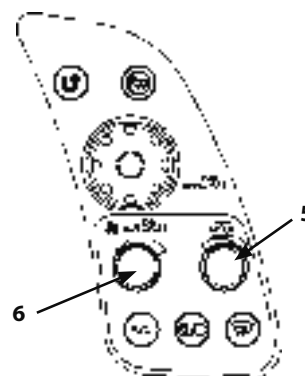
OPERATOR'S STATION

Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage

For Rapid Cooling

Temperature in the cab may rise over 80 °C when the machine is exposed to sun light in the summer. In this case, ventilate air in the cab first by opening the windows for rapid cooling.

After starting the engine, press AUTO switch (6). Set temperature to "18.0" on the monitor by using temperature control switch (5). Turn circulation mode ON from air conditioner setting screen on the monitor. Close the window when the cab cools down to the ambient temperature.



MNEC-01-006

When Windows Become Fogged

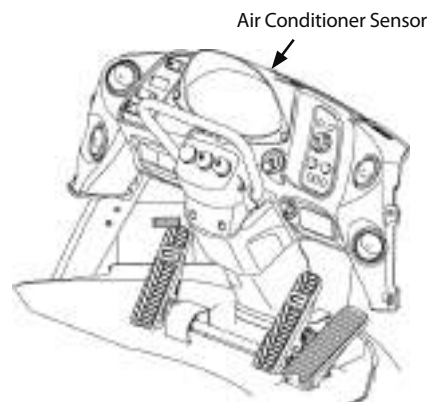
If the insides of the windows become fogged during rainy weather or on humid days, operate the air conditioner to aid in keeping the windows clear. When the atmosphere is very damp, and if the air conditioner has run excessively, the outside of the windows may become fogged. If this happens, turn up the air temperature selection to adjust the temperature in the cab.

Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance

To protect each part of the compressor from a lack of lubricant, operate the air conditioner at least once a month for several minutes with the engine running at a slow speed during off-season.

IMPORTANT:

- Refer to the item "Check Air Conditioner Filter" in the Maintenance Section for maintenance of the air conditioner filters.
- Always clean the auto air conditioner sensor for effective air conditioner performance. Avoid placing any obstructions around the sensor.



115Z7-1-121-2

OPERATOR'S STATION

Adjusting Operator's Seat (Air Suspension Type Seat)

Adjust the seat for comfort and so that the pedals may be pushed fully down when the operator's back is fully against the seat back.

Components Name

- 1- Lumbar Support Adjustment
- 2- Reclining Angle Adjustment
- 3- Damper Adjustment
- 4- Fore-Aft Position Adjustment



115Z7-1-117-2

1. Turn adjustment knob (1) for desired lumbar support.
2. Lift handle (2) and allow the back cushion to angle forward, or lean backward into the cushion. Release the handle at desired position.
3. With the key turned "ON" push the knob (3) to increase the air pressure. This will raise the seat and make a firmer ride. Pull the knob (3) to reduce the air pressure (air will be vented). This will lower the seat and make a softer ride.

When properly adjusted the seat will not "bottom out" over rough terrain.

4. Lift handle (4) and move the seat forward or backward.

Release handle (4) at one of the several positions.

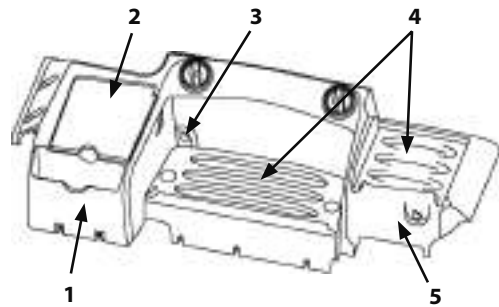


115Z7-1-117-1

OPERATOR'S STATION

Rear Tray

- 1- Document Holder
- 2- Hot/Cool Box
- 3- Electric Power Output
- 4- Glove Compartments, Tray
- 5- Fuse Box



115MNEC-01-46

Electric Power Output

12 V DC electric power is available from electric power output (3). The maximum current is 5 A (60 W). Use the electric power output to supply power to lighting equipment for servicing the machine.

IMPORTANT: DC 12 volt electric power can be utilized. Never connect accessories that use power other than 12 V. Damage to the batteries and accessories may result. Do not supply power to accessories for a long time without running the engine. The batteries may be discharged.



MPD8-01-307

1. Remove the cover.
2. Insert the socket of the accessory to be used into the electric power output port.
3. Turn the key switch (6) ON. Power is supplied to the connected accessory.
4. After completing operation of the accessory, disconnect the accessory. Reinstall the cover.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Fuse Box

IMPORTANT: If a fuse blows, turn the key switch OFF.
After checking and correcting the cause of the trouble, replace the fuse with a new one.

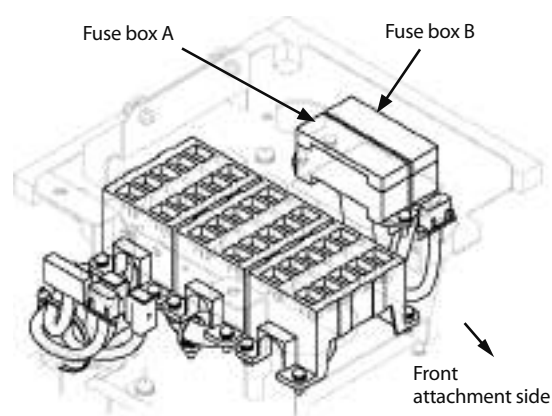
The slow blow fuses (1 and 2) function as a "safety valve" to prevent excess current from flowing through, and to protect the electrical system.

The fuse capacity varies depending on its corresponding circuit. Be sure to replace the blown fuses only with the specified one.

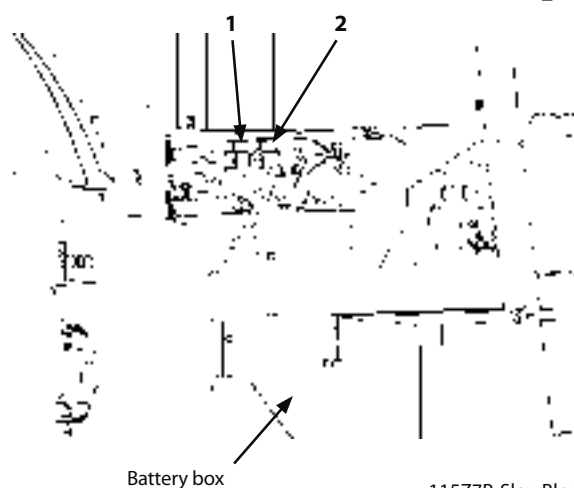
When checking fuses, check the fuse A, B and slow blow fuses in the battery box (1 and 2) in this order.

1- 140 A x 2

2- 70 A x 2



FuseBox_550

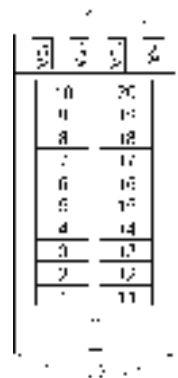


115Z7B-SlowBlow

OPERATOR'S STATION

Fuse Box A

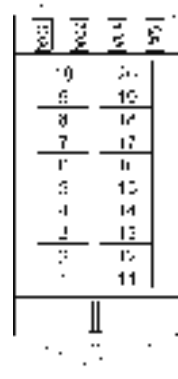
- | | |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10- Parking solenoid
5 A 9- Air conditioner 1
10 A 8- Stop lamp, Turn signal
5 A 7- Back lamp, Back buzzer
5 A 6- Head lamp (left)
5 A 5- Working lamp (front)
20 A 4- Front wiper
15 A 3- 24 V cigar lighter
20 A 2- Head lamp (right)
5 A 1- CONTROLLER (SUB)
10 A | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 20- Option 4 (Joystick steering)
(5 A) 19- Option 3 (Accessory)
15 A 18- SCR DCU
20 A 17- ECM DCU (POWER ON)
10 A 16- SCR sensor
20 A 15- Air conditioner 2
20 A 14- Starter key SW
10 A 13- Seat heater
15 A 12- Option 2 (Rear view mirror heater)
(20 A) 11- Radio (USA)
10 A |
|---|---|



90Z7B-FuseBoxA

Fuse Box B

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10- ECM
30 A 9- CONTROLLER (SUB)
10 A 8- Main controller, DSZ, Monitor,
Load dump relay, GPS, GSM, OPT C/U
10 A 7- Flasher unit
10 A 6- Horn
10 A 5- Option CAN
5 A 4- Option 1 (Rear view mirror heater)
(15 A) 3- Cab room lamp
20 A 2- Lighting switch
10 A 1- Radio(JAPAN, EU)
5 A | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 20- Emergency steering
5 A 19- High beam
10 A 18- Rear wiper
10 A 17- Working lamp (rear)
20 A 16- Loader control
5 A 15- MC solenoid power
10 A 14- Parking relay
5 A 13- Power ON
10 A 12- Position 2
5 A 11- Position 1
5 A |
|---|---|



90Z7B-FuseBoxB

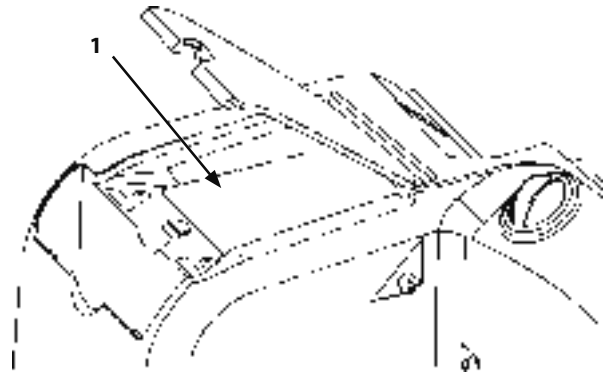
OPERATOR'S STATION

Hot/Cool Box

Cool or warm air from the air conditioner or heater is routed to hot & cool box (1) so that food or a drink can be temporarily stored.

Use a container with a tight cap in the hot/cool box.

- If the A/C is on, cool air is sent into the box.
- If the heater is on, warm air is sent into the box.



MNEC-01-048

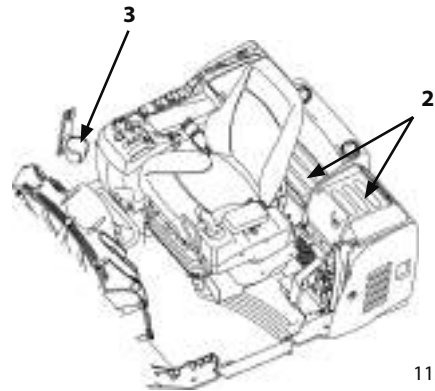
Tray and Drink Holder

IMPORTANT: Tray (2) is not waterproof type. Be careful not to spill liquid on the tray.

Place a bottle with a plug or cap on drink holder (3).

Wipe up any spills with a damp cloth.

Secure anything stored in this area to avoid loose objects in the cab.

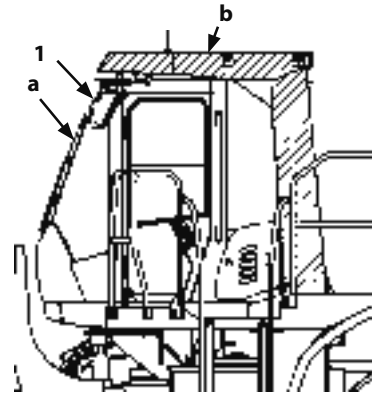


115Z7-1-126-2

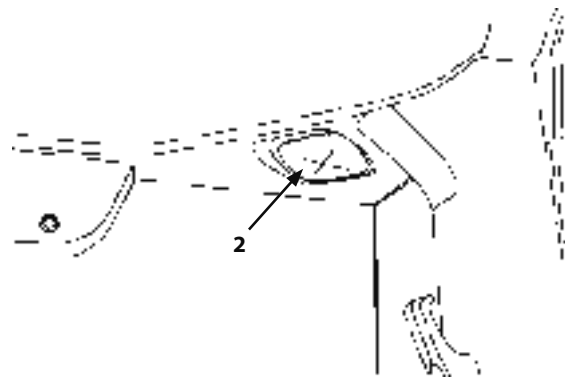
OPERATOR'S STATION

Outer ROPS/Cab

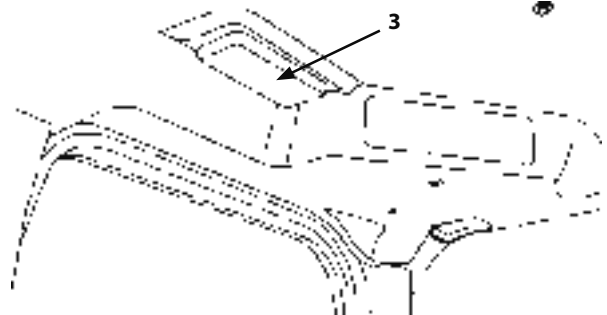
- 1- Outer ROPS/Cab
 - a- Cab
 - b- Outer ROPS
- 2- Speakers
- 3- Front Room Light
- 4- Sun Visor



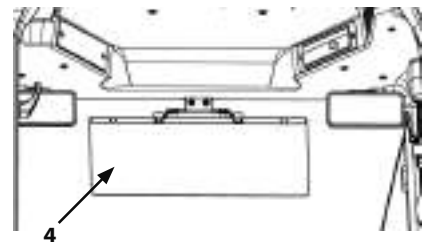
MNHE-01-315



MNEC-01-050



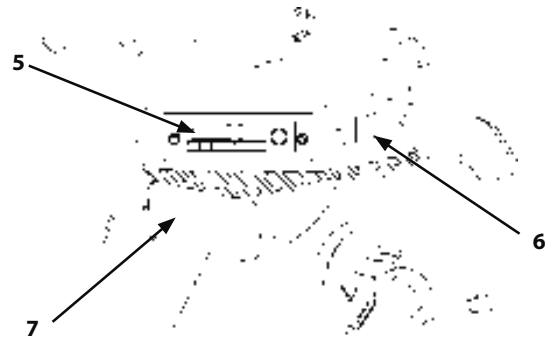
MNEC-01-051



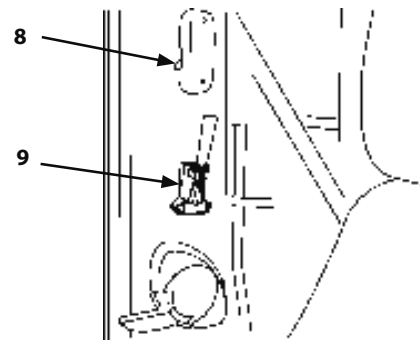
MNHK-01-010

OPERATOR'S STATION

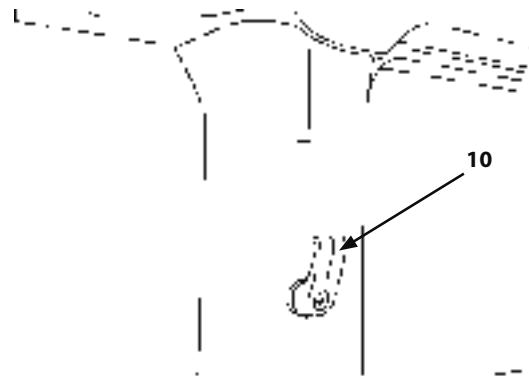
- 5- Radio
- 6- Cab Switch Panel (Option)
- 7- Room Rear View Mirror
- 8- Rear Room Light
- 9- Emergency Evacuation Hammer
- 10- Coat/Hat Hook



M4GB-01-116



M4GB-01-117



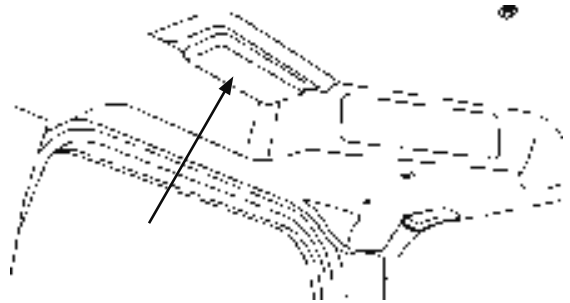
MNEC-01-053

OPERATOR'S STATION

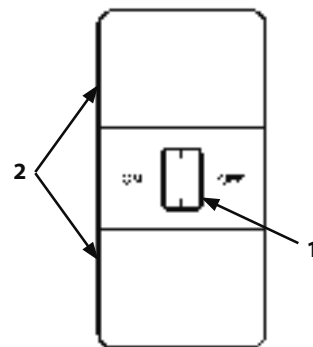
Room Light

Press ON side of switch (1) to turn the front room light ON.
The front room light switch has three operation positions.

- ON: The light (2) comes and stays ON.
- Neutral: When the cab door is opened, the light (2) comes ON. When closed, the light (2) goes OFF.
- OFF: The light (2) goes OFF.

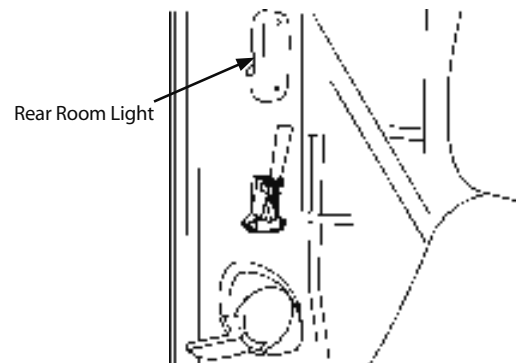


MNEC-01-051

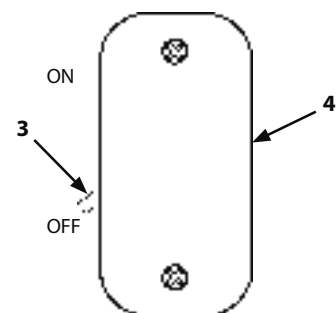


M4GB-01-119

Switch (3) ON: Rear room light (4) comes and stays ON.
Switch (3) OFF: Rear room light goes OFF.



M4GB-01-117

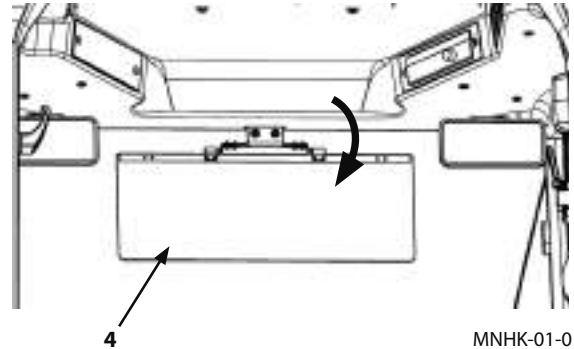


M4GB-01-120

OPERATOR'S STATION

Sun Visor

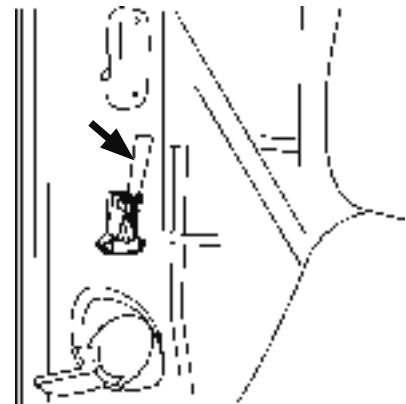
When sunlight is strong, use sun visor (4) by hanging its edge from the cab top down to a desired hook preset.



MNHK-01-010

Emergency Evacuation Hammer

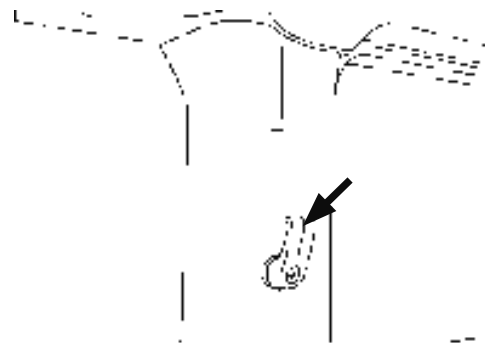
In case the cab door becomes difficult or impossible to open if an emergency situation occurs, evacuate from the machine by breaking the windowpane using the provided hammer.



M4GB-01-117

Coat/Hat Hook

Use to hang your coat, hat, etc.

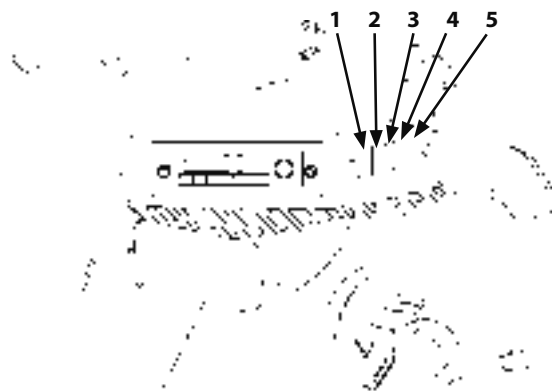


MNEC-01-053

OPERATOR'S STATION

Upper Switch Panel

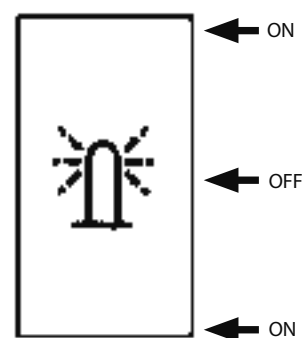
- 1- Rotary Light Switch
- 2- Rear View Mirror Heater Switch
- 3- Auxiliary
- 4- Auxiliary
- 5- Auxiliary



M4GB-01-116

Rotary Light Switch

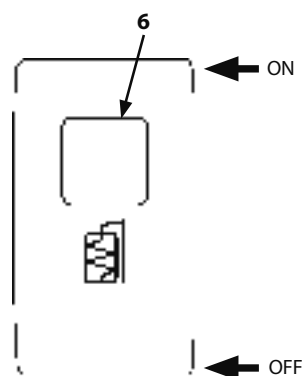
Press either upper part or lower part of the switch to turn the rotary light ON. Press middle part of the switch to turn OFF.



M4GB-01-125

Rear View Mirror Heater Switch

Press the upper part of the switch to turn ON the rear view mirror heater. While operating the heater, indicator (6) lights. Press the lower part of the switch to turn OFF the heater and indicator (2).



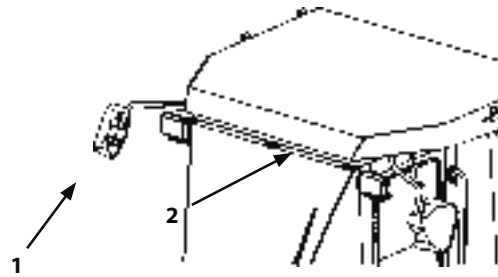
MNEC-01-539

OPERATOR'S STATION

Outside Rear View Mirror

WARNING: Do not travel the machine in reverse by relying on only the range of vision the rear view mirror (1) provides. Use the rear view mirror only as an assistant during travel operation. Be sure to confirm the safety by using your own visibility when traveling the machine in reverse.

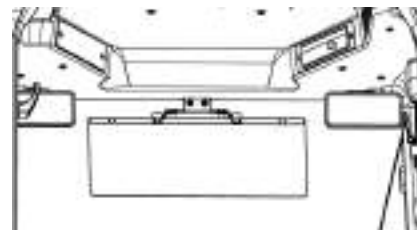
After taking the seat, adjust the rear view mirror so that the good rearward visibility can be obtained. Adjust the mirrors so that persons standing on left and right back-end of the machine (or object with height of 1 m and 30 cm in diameter) can be recognized from the operator's seat. Always keep the mirrors clean.



MNHE-01-316

Room Rear View Mirror

Always keep room rear view mirrors (2) clean.



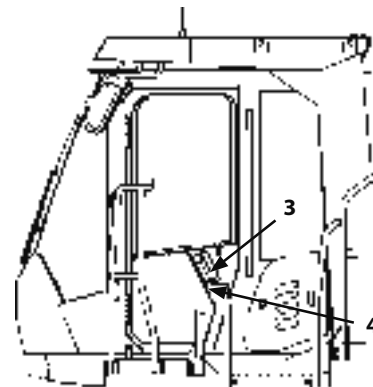
MNHK-01-010

Cab Door

CAUTION: When closing the door, securely close the door. Before leaving the operator's seat, securely close the door.

NOTE: Unless the cab door is securely closed, the room light switch keeps the room light ON. Securely close the cab door.

- 3- Door Lock (Starter key is used)
- 4- Door Open/Close Lever



MNHE-01-317

OPERATOR'S STATION

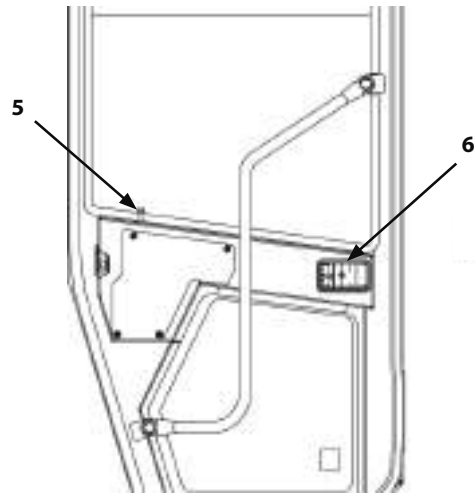
Door Lock Knob

CAUTION: After closing the door, always check that the door lock is securely engaged.

Depress door lock knob (5) to engage the door lock.

Door Open/Close Lever

When opening the door, while lifting door lock knob (5), pull lever (6) to disengage the door lock.

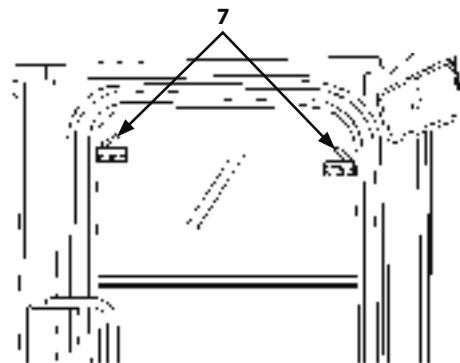


92Z7-1-130-1

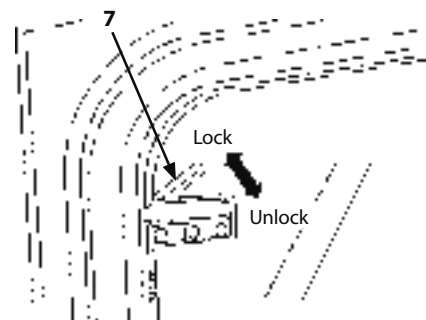
Window Open/Close Levers

When window open/close levers (7) on both sides are simultaneously pressed, the window is unlocked, allowing the windowpanes to move.

When window open/close levers (7) are released, stoppers are engaged in the nearest steps so that the window is locked in that position.



M4FJ-01-016



M4EK-01-048

OPERATOR'S STATION

Battery Disconnect Switch

IMPORTANT: Never attempt to turn the battery disconnect switch OFF while engine running. Failure to do so may damage the electrical system.

⚠ WARNING: After stopping the engine, the DEF/AdBlue® pump keeps operating to return the DEF/AdBlue® in piping to the DEF/AdBlue® tank. Do not turn the battery disconnect switch OFF while pump running. Failure to do so may damage the SCR system.

The battery disconnect switch is different from the engine start key switch. When the battery disconnect switch is turned OFF, the electrical system will completely be isolated from the battery. No current will flow through the entire electrical system.

Before turning the battery disconnect switch OFF, be sure to turn the key switch OFF and wait 5 minutes or more after the engine stops before turning battery disconnect switch. Because controllers communicate with each other and record information after the engine stops, battery power is required for a minimum of 5 minutes.

Use the battery disconnect switch only for the following purposes; otherwise, turn it ON.

- Before maintaining and repairing the electrical system
- Before storing the machine for long period
- Theft prevention after use.

Turn the battery disconnect switch ON before starting the engine.

The battery disconnect switch is located inside of the battery box.

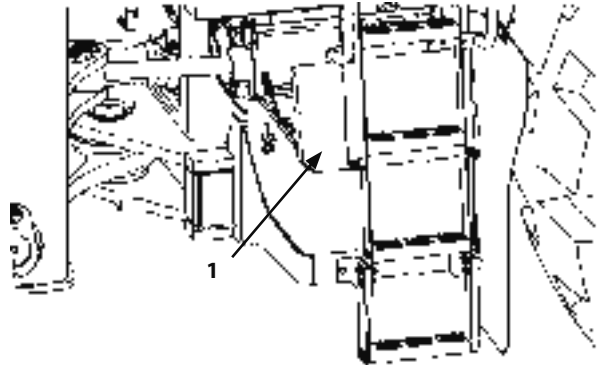


115Z7-batterySW2

OPERATOR'S STATION

Switch Operation

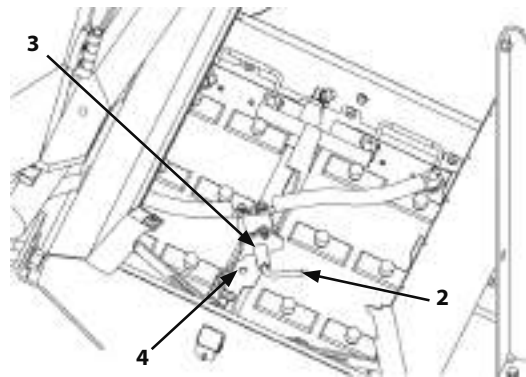
1. Open battery box cover (1).



115Z7-BatterySW1

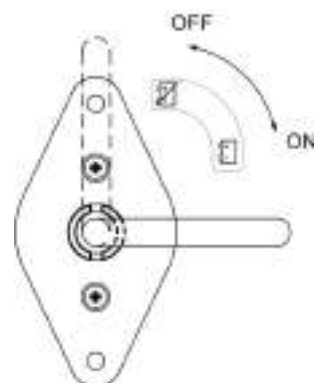
2. When lever (2) is parallel to the ground, battery disconnect switch (3) turns ON. The lever can not be removed when lever (2) points right.

When operating the machine with battery disconnect switch (3) ON, close cover (1).



115Z7-batterySW

3. When turning lever (2) 90° counterclockwise (the lever points down to the ground), battery disconnect switch (3) turns OFF. Lever (2) can be removed from battery disconnect switch (3) when it is in OFF position.
4. Insert lever (2) removed from switch (3) into hole (4) of the holder.
5. Close cover (1).



115Z7-batterySW ON-OFF

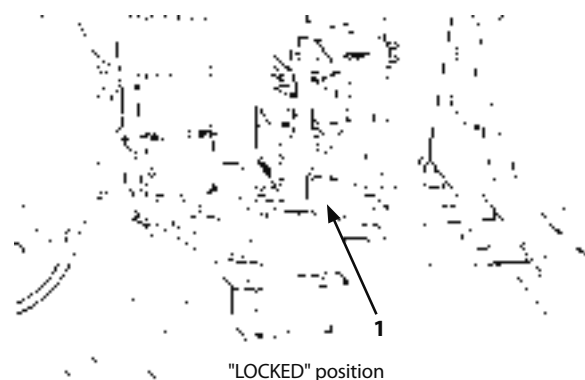
OPERATOR'S STATION

Articulation Stopper (Lock Bar)

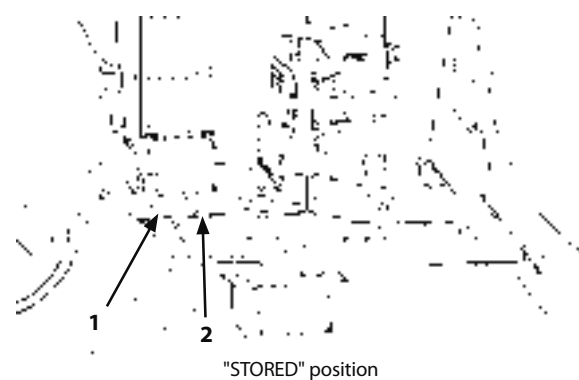
WARNING:

- Before servicing or transporting the machine, be sure to engage lock bar (1).
- Before driving the machine, be sure to disengage the lock bar (1) from the front chassis and fasten the lock bar to the rear chassis with lock bolt (2).

Articulation lock bar (1) locks the front and rear chassis to prevent articulation between the front and rear chassis when servicing or transporting the machine. Refer to page S-40 for details.



MNHE-07-005



MNHE-07-004

OPERATOR'S STATION

Towing Pin

WARNING: Since towing is a potentially dangerous operation, perform only when there is an emergency or crisis situation.

IMPORTANT: To prevent excessive wear of tires and for safety, avoid towing requiring more than the available towing force, and keep the specified speed during towing.

Available towing force (Power Mode ON):
352 kN (35950 kgf)

Towing speed: 10 km/h or less

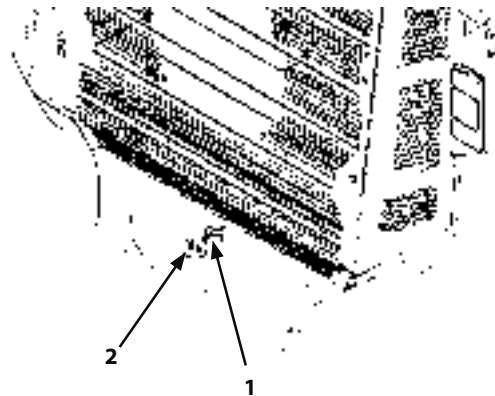
Towing pin (2) is located on the back end of the machine. It is used for towing another machine, being towed from the rear side, or fastening the machine on a trailer deck for transportation.

Pull up the front end, or push down the rear end, of stopper (1) to pull out towing pin (2).

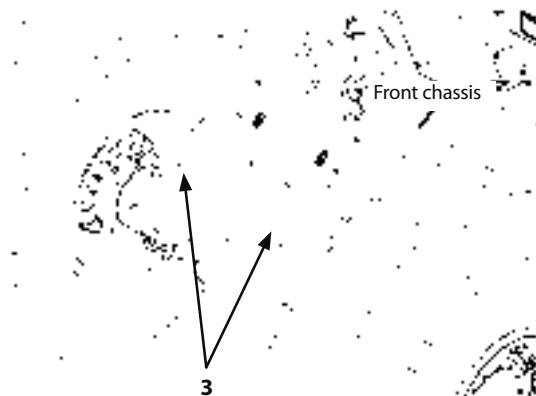
Tie or loop the towing rope, strap, or cable and let it pass through the hole.

IMPORTANT: DO NOT use eye plate (3) on the rear chassis when pull out or rescue this machine from the rear side.

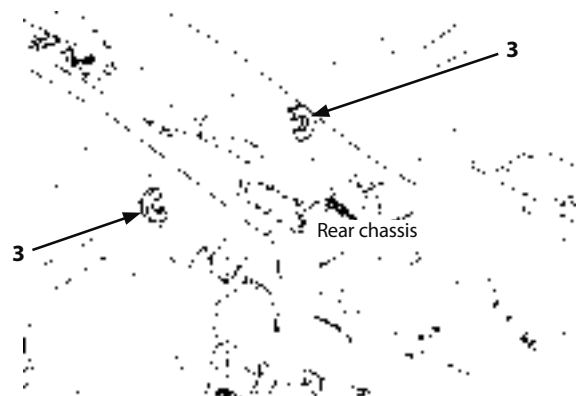
Use eye plates (3) on the front chassis when pull the machine from the front side. Contact Authorized Dealer for the necessary information or assistance.



115Z7B-1-141-4



115Z7B-1-141-2



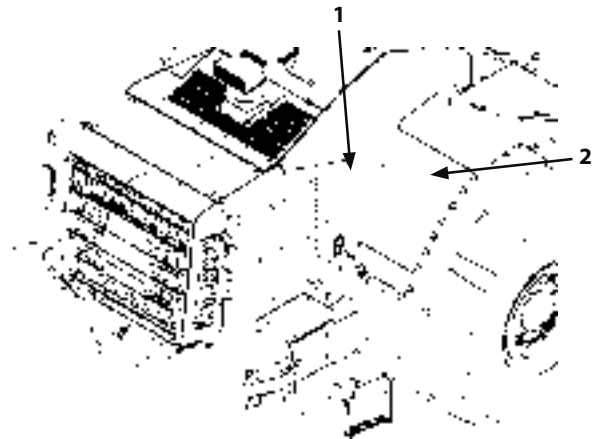
115Z7B-1-141-3

OPERATOR'S STATION

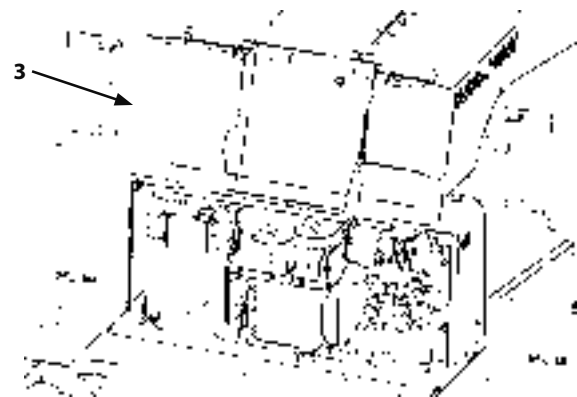
Inspection/Maintenance Access Covers

CAUTION:

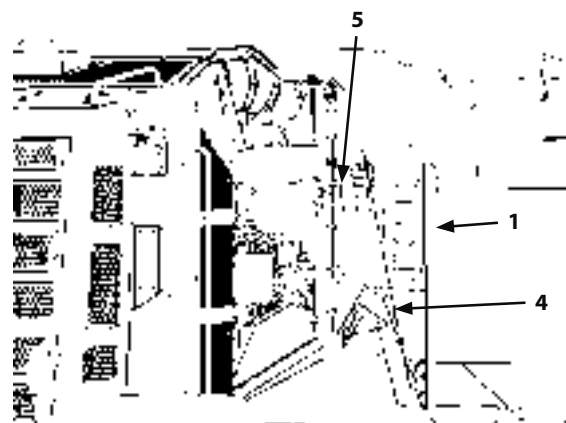
- Always close side covers (1) and top cover (3) when moving and/or operating machine.
- Do not keep the side cover open on a slope or when a strong wind is blowing. Failure to do so may be dangerous because the side cover may unexpectedly move or close.
- Take care not to pinch fingers when opening/closing side cover (1) and/or top cover (3).
- When fully opening side cover (1), lock lever (5) automatically slides and is positioned in the lock position. Make sure that lock bar (5) is firmly positioned to lock the cover. To release the lock, pull wire (4) and release the end of lock bar (5) from the lock position.
- Never attempt to stand on fender (2) if side cover (1) is provided with fender (2).



115Z7B-1-142-1



115Z7B-1-142-2



115Z7B-1-142-3

OPERATOR'S STATION

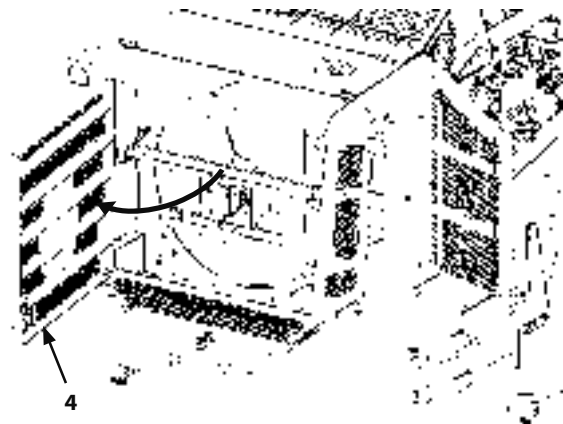
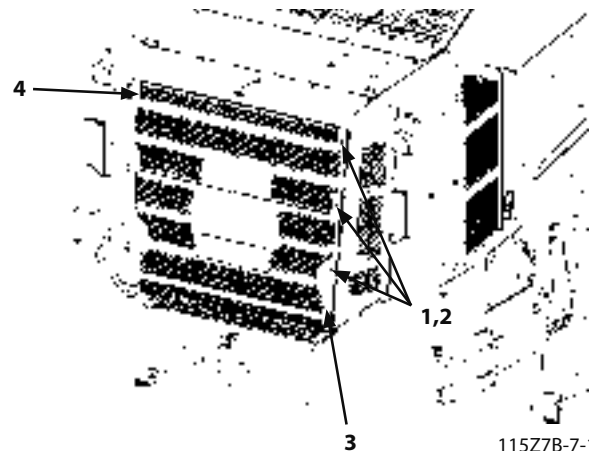
Rear Grille

WARNING: Open or close rear grille (4) only after stopping the engine. It is very dangerous if you are entangled in the cooling fan. Before operating the machine, always check that the rear grille is well latched.

NOTE: The starter key cannot be removed from latch (3) while rear grille (4) is being opened.

Remove bolt caps (1) and bolts (2). Release latch (3) with the starter key to unlock rear grille (4). The rear grille opens and the cooling fan can be cleaned.

After closing rear grille (4), turn and remove starter key (3) to lock rear grille (4). Tighten bolts (2) and install caps (1).



OPERATOR'S STATION

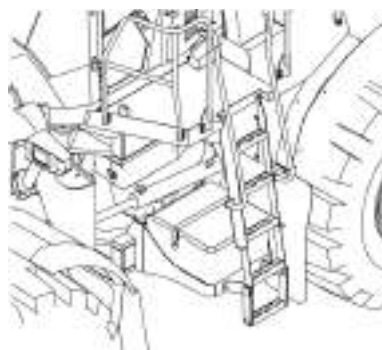
Steps

⚠ WARNING: When getting on and off the machine, use steps and handrails to support your body with at least three points of contact. Getting on and off the machine with less than three support points may cause you to slip, possibly resulting in a falling accident.

Although the steps are provided on both sides of the machine, only use the steps on the left side for cab entry. The control levers are located on the right side, obstructing easy access.

Right side steps are for emergency exit only.

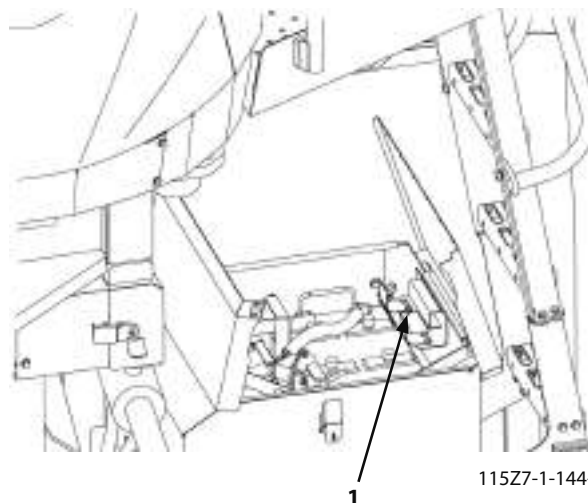
Inspect the steps and handrails daily. Immediately repair or replace any that are missing, loosen or damaged. Clean the steps of any mud, snow or ice before entering or exiting the cab.



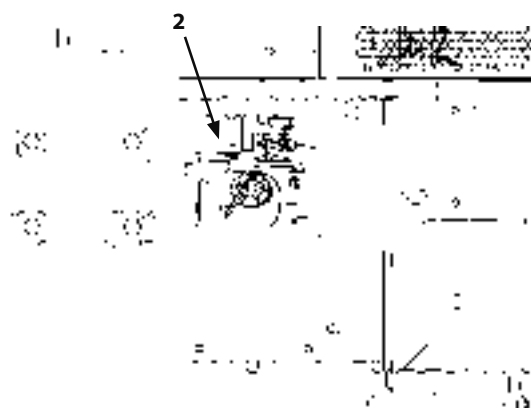
115Z7-1-144-1

Tool Box

There is a grease gun holder (1) in the battery box. Use pocket (2) in the urea tank box to store tools.



115Z7-1-144-2

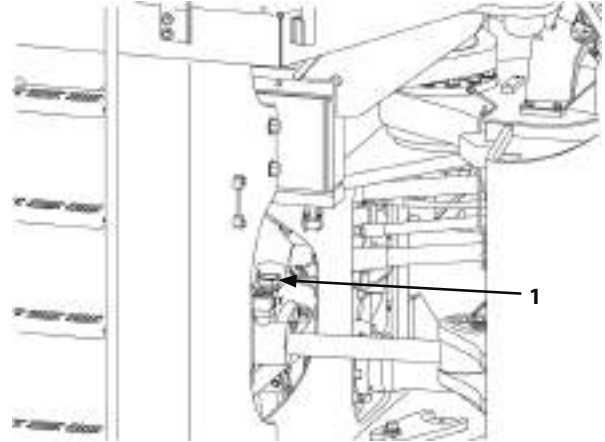


115Z7B-1-144-3

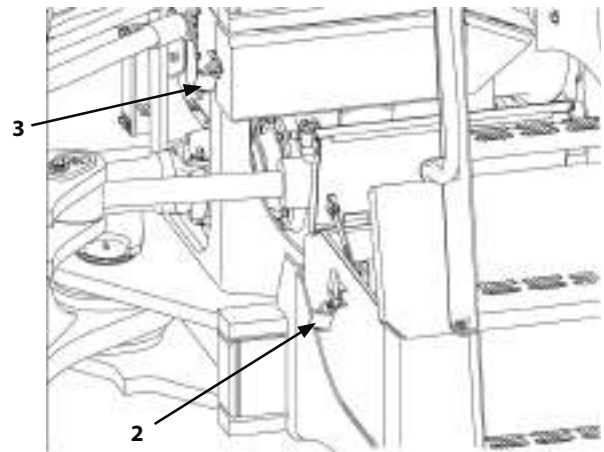
OPERATOR'S STATION

Vandal-Resistant Devices

Locks can be installed to transmission oil inlet cap cover (1), battery box cover (2), and relay and fuse box cover (3).



115Z7-Vandal-1

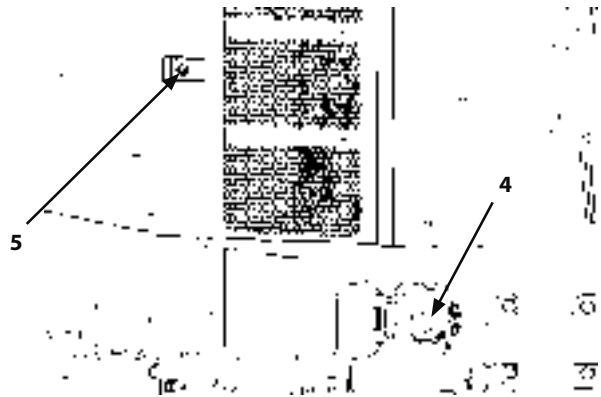


115Z7-Vandal-4

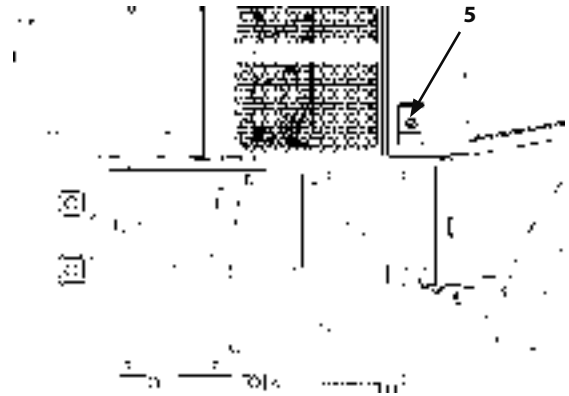
OPERATOR'S STATION

Vandal-Resistant Devices (continue from previous page)

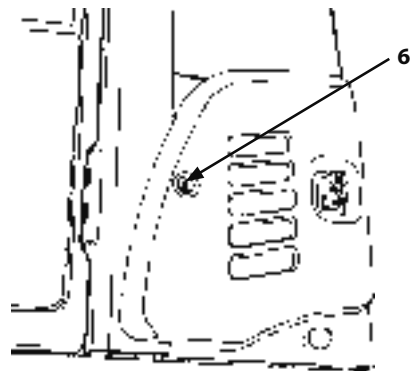
Fuel tank cap (4), side covers (5), and air conditioner fresh air filter (6) can be locked with the starter key.



115Z7B-1-146-1



115Z7B-1-146-2



MNEC-01-055

OPERATOR'S STATION

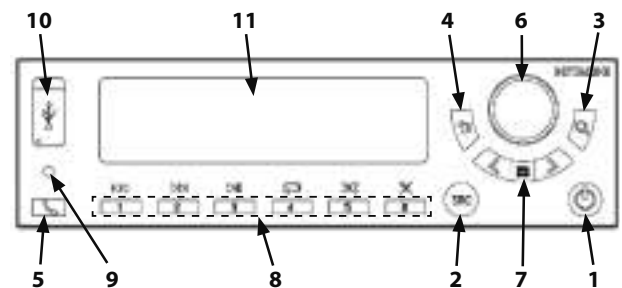
Digital Radio Unit (Built-in Microphone)

Control Panel

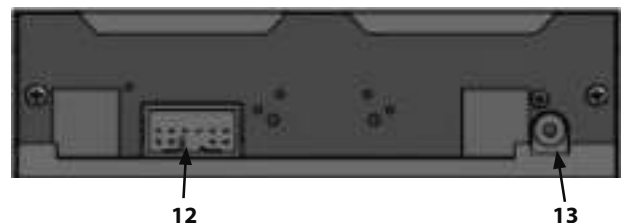
- 1- POWER button
Turns the device ON/OFF.
- 2- SRC button
Switches the source (FM1→FM2→AM→Bluetooth→USB).
- 3- Search button
Makes auto presets (FM/AM).
- 4- Return button
Returns to the previous screen while setting operation.
- 5- Hands-Free button
Receives mobile phone signal. Makes a redial call.
- 6- Rotary switch
Adjust the volume.
Switches between menu items and makes various settings.
- 7- SEEK BAND+/SEEK BAND- buttons
Adjusts radio frequency.
- 8- PRESET buttons ([1] to [6])
Calls up/registers preset frequencies.
Operates the connected Bluetooth/USB device.
- 9- MIC
Microphone for hands-free operation.
- 10- USB port
Connect a USB device.
- 11- LCD
Refer to the following page.
- 12- Power Connector
Power inlet and machine information input.
- 13- Antenna Port (for Analog Radio)
Connect the antenna to receive AM/FM radio.



Z7_US_radio_new



MNUD-01-402



Rear View

MNUD-01-446US

OPERATOR'S STATION

LCD Display

1- Information section

Indicates the source name, frequency, service name, etc. in characters and/or numbers.

2- Source label

Indicates the selected source name.

3- ST label

Lights to indicate stereo reception when FM are selected.

4- USB label

Lights when a USB device is connected.

5- Bluetooth label

Lights when connected to a Bluetooth compatible device.

6- Clock

Current time in 24 h format.

7- REPEAT label

Lights when Bluetooth/USB device is playing in repeat mode.

8- RANDOM label

Lights when Bluetooth/USB device is playing in random mode.

9- Folder No.

Indicates the USB memory folder No.

10- Track No.

Indicates the USB memory track No.

11- Menu/List title

Indicates the title of the selected menu, source, program type.

12- List No.

Indicates the selected list number among total selections.

13- Volume display

Indicates the volume of currently selected source.



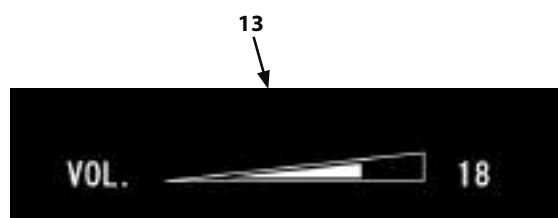
MNUD-01-448



MNUD-01-404



MNUD-01-406



MNUD-01-405

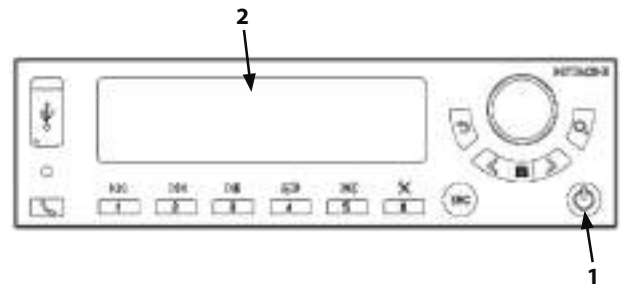
OPERATOR'S STATION

Basic Operation

Turn ON the device

When the machine starter key is set to ON or ACC, the previously selected source is displayed on LCD (2). If the LCD displays nothing, press power button (1). The previously selected source appears on the LCD.

 **NOTE:** When the starter key is turned to OFF when the radio unit is in the standby mode, the radio unit starts up in the standby mode when the key is turned to ON or ACC. Refer to "Turn OFF the device" for the standby mode.

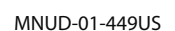
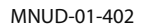


MNUD-01-402

Turn OFF the device

When the machine starter key is set to ON or ACC, the pressing power button (1) turns off the LCD. The power button (1) remains lit on (standby mode).

When the machine starter key is set to OFF with the radio unit is powered on, power button (1) and LCD (2) are both turned off.



OPERATOR'S STATION

Volume Control

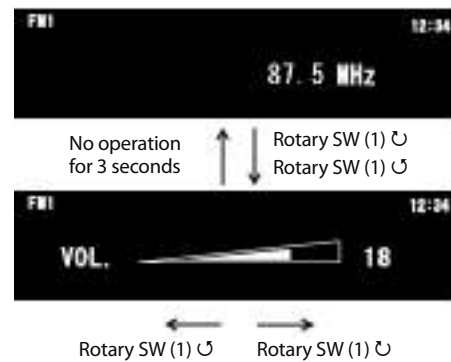
The volume control can be done individually for each source and for hands-free calling.

Rotating rotary switch (1) clockwise increases the volume. Rotating rotary switch (1) counterclockwise decreases the volume.

The volume level is selected between 0 (mute) and 32.

MNUD-01-402

 **NOTE:** The screen returns to the source screen when no operation is made for 3 seconds.



MNUD-01-416

OPERATOR'S STATION

About Trademark

The Bluetooth® wordmark and logo are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and Scribble Design Inc. uses these marks under license. Other trademarks and trade names belong to their respective owners.



CAUTION:

- **Do not operate the radio or other audio equipment while driving or working.**
- **The speaker volume may vary depending on the source, radio, USB audio input, Bluetooth® audio or handsfree phone. Adjust to an appropriate volume, such as by changing the volume of the Bluetooth compatible device.**

IMPORTANT: This device cannot connect to more than 1 Bluetooth compatible device at a time.

OPERATOR'S STATION

FM/AM Radio Operation

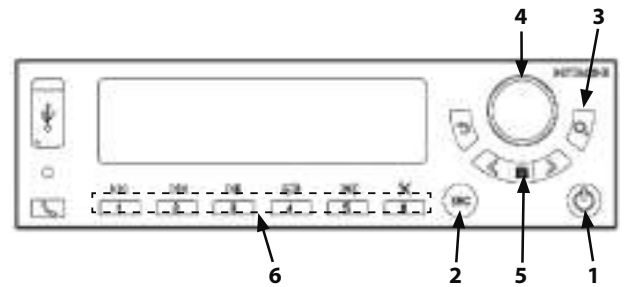
CAUTION: Refrain from listening to the radio while operating the machine.

Receives both FM and AM radio.

NOTE: The only difference between FM1 and FM2 is the grouping of preset numbers; the function is the same.

Control Panel

- 1- POWER button
Turns the radio ON/OFF.
- 2- SRC button
Switches the source (FM1→FM2→AM→Bluetooth→USB).
- 3- Search button
FM/AM auto presets.
- 4- Rotary switch
Adjust the volume.
- 5- SEEK BAND+/SEEK BAND- buttons
Adjusts radio frequency.
- 6- PRESET buttons ([1] to [6])
Calls up/registers preset frequencies.

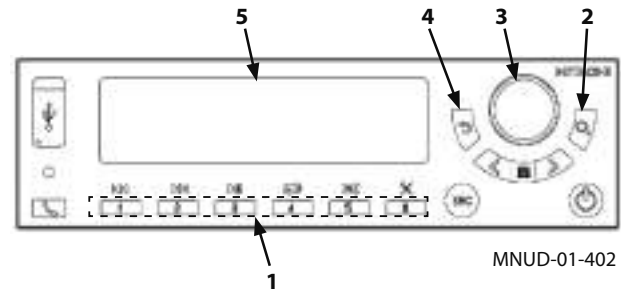


MNUD-01-402

OPERATOR'S STATION

Station Presetting Procedure

1. Select the desired station. Refer to the following page "Tuning Procedure".
2. Press and hold a desired PRESET button (1) for more than 1 second. The current station is preset to the selected number of button. When the station is preset, the "PRESET-x" blinks for 3 seconds on LCD (5). Once the presetting is complete for a PRESET button, the radio will be tuned to the preset station when the PRESET button is pressed.
3. To change the preset station, follow the same steps 1 and 2.



MNUD-01-402



[1] (long)



MNUD-01-411US

Calling up Preset Stations

Press any of PRESET buttons (1) to tune and receive the registered station frequency. "PRESET-x" with the selected number is displayed on LCD (5).



[1]



MNUD-01-412US

Factory Default Setting

PRESET	AM (kHz)	FM (MHz)
1	530	87.5
2	910	96.9
3	1000	97.9
4	1100	98.9
5	1540	106.9
6	1710	107.9

IMPORTANT: The PRESET data will not be erased even disconnected from the battery. The changed PRESET data is stored in the internal memory at ACC OFF, however, if ACC and battery are both OFF at the same time, the changed data is not stored.

Auto-Preset Function

By keep depressing search button (2), up to 6 stations with best reception can be automatically registered to PRESET buttons (1) (auto-preset function).

"AUTO PRESET" blinks on LCD (5) while auto-preset is running.

The station frequency is registered from No. 1 through No. 6 in frequency order.



MNUD-01-413

OPERATOR'S STATION

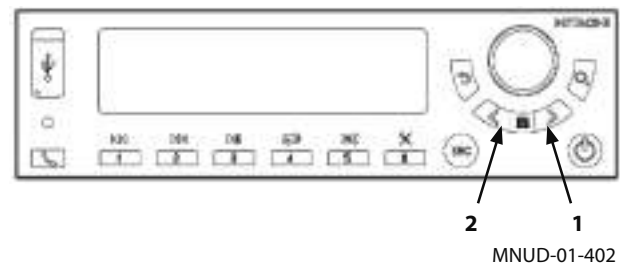
Tuning Procedure

- Automatic Search Function (Auto Seek)

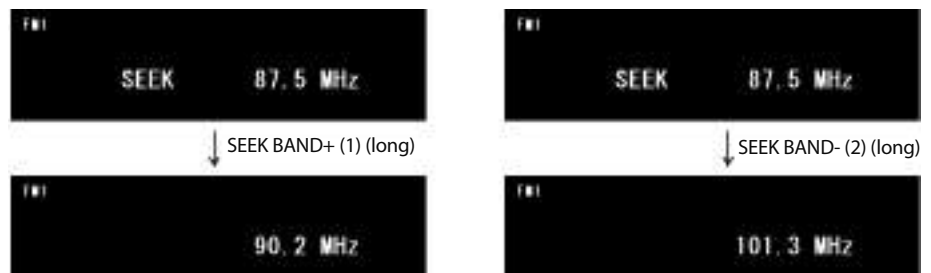
Press and hold SEEK BAND+ button (1) and/or SEEK BAND- button (2) for more than half a second, then release. Automatic search for the station starts to run and stops when a station is received.

Press SEEK BAND+ button (1) to search a higher frequency.
Press SEEK BAND- button (2) to search a lower frequency.

If no stations with good reception can be found after searching the entire band, the radio continues searching. Press either SEEK BAND button (1)(2) to cancel the searching operation.



NOTE: If the receiving radio waves are weak, i. e. such as when the machine is located between high rising buildings, etc., use the manual tuning procedure to select the desired station.

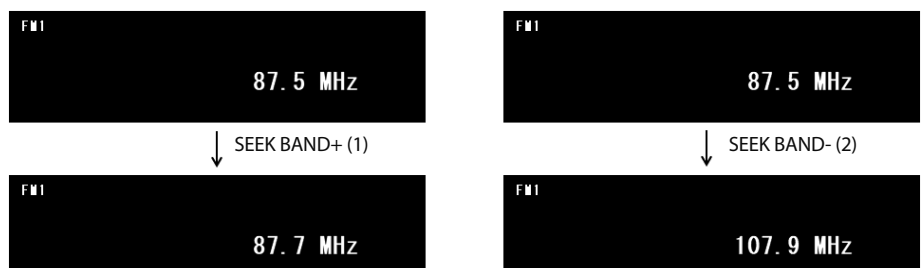


- Manual Tuning Procedure (Manual Seek)

Press SEEK BAND+ button (1) and/or SEEK BAND- button (2) until the desired station is reached. Each time SEEK BAND buttons (1)(2) is pressed, the frequency changes at an interval.

Press SEEK BAND+ button (1) to increase the frequency.
Press SEEK BAND- button (2) to decrease the frequency.

NOTE: AM frequency interval: 10 kHz
FM frequency interval: 0.2 MHz



OPERATOR'S STATION

Bluetooth® Input

IMPORTANT: A special Bluetooth® unit is necessary to use this function.

Specified Characteristics

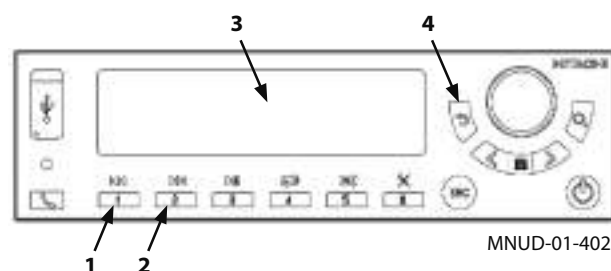
Frequency	2.4 GHz
Version	3.0
Class	2
Applicable profile	A2DP, AVRCP, HFP, HSP, SPP
Max. Number of Pairing Device	16

The audio files can be played via Bluetooth connection with a cell phone or Bluetooth audio playback device.

 **NOTE:** Refer to page 1-160 for pairing.
Refer to page 1-162 for device connection.

The track title, artist name, album name are displayed on LCD (3).

If they are too long to display in one line, separately displayed as shown to the right. Press return button (4) to change the screens.



MNU01-418

OPERATOR'S STATION

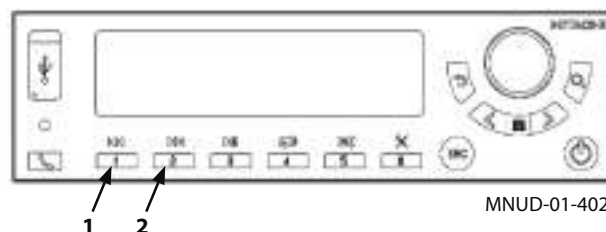
Change Track

Press [2] button (2) to start playing the next track.

Press [1] button (1) to play the previous track.

According to the connected device setting, pressing [1] button (1) returns to the top of the currently playing track.

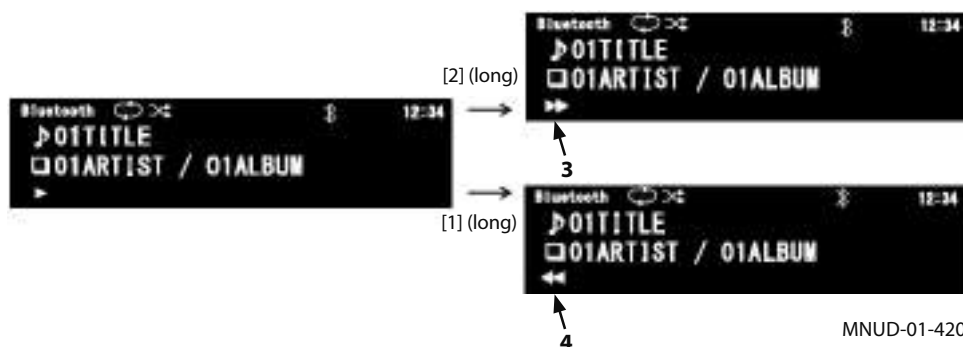
Then press [1] again to play the previous track.



Fast-forward/Fast-rewind

While playing a track, depressing [2] button (2) fast-forwards the track until releasing [2] button. Fast-forward label (3) is displayed while depressing [2] button.

While playing a track, depressing [1] button (1) fast-rewinds the track until releasing [1] button. Fast-rewind label (4) is displayed while depressing [1] button.

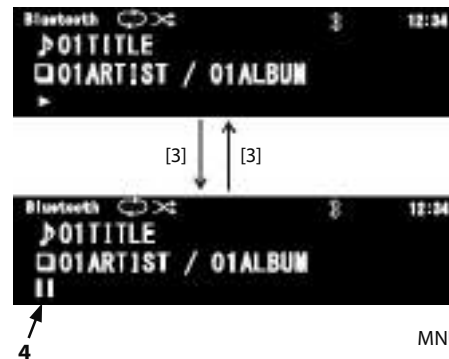
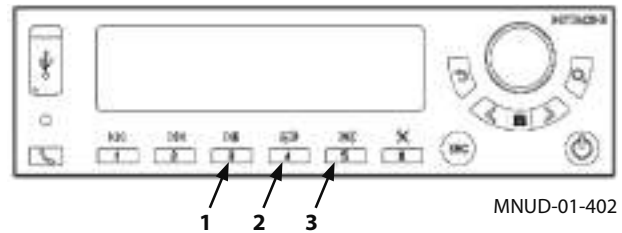


OPERATOR'S STATION

Pause/Playback

Pressing [3] button (1) while playing a track pauses playback. PAUSE label (4) is displayed.

Pressing [3] button (1) again starts playing from where it was paused.

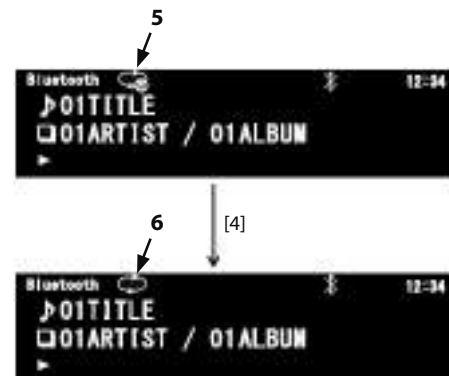


Repeat

Pressing [4] button (2) plays the same track repeatedly. REPEAT label (5) is displayed.

Pressing [4] button (2) again plays the same album or folder repeatedly. REPEAT label (6) is displayed.

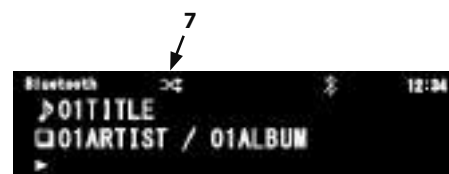
 **NOTE:** This function is not applicable depending on the connected device.



Random

Pressing [5] button (3) plays the tracks in random order. RANDOM label (7) is displayed.

 **NOTE:** This function is not applicable depending on the connected device.



OPERATOR'S STATION

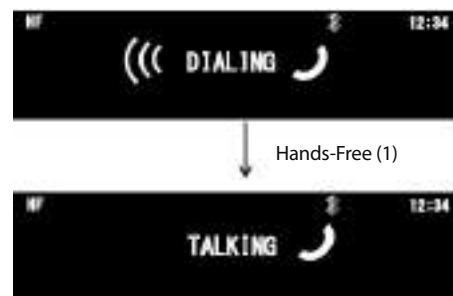
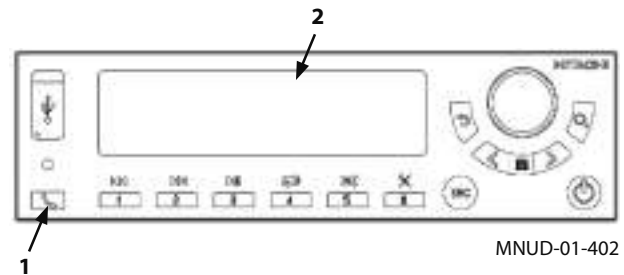
Hands-free Call

IMPORTANT: A special Bluetooth® connected cellphone is necessary to use this function.

Allows handsfree conversations when using a Bluetooth (HFP protocol) compatible cellphone.

- **Making a Call**
When calling from the cellphone, "DIALING" is displayed on LCD (2) and the sound from dialing is heard from the speakers. The voice of the other end party is heard from the speakers when connected.
- **Redial**
Regardless of the band (or operation), long pressing Hands-Free button (1) dials to the last incoming dial number since the ACC was turned ON.
"DIALING" is displayed on LCD (2) and the sound from dialing is heard from the speakers. The voice of the other end party is heard from the speakers when connected. Pressing Hands-Free button (1) during talk ends call.

 **NOTE:** The redial function may not work if the length of the previous incoming call was short.



OPERATOR'S STATION

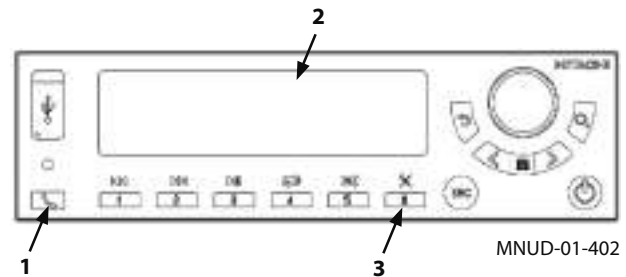
- Incoming Call

When a call comes in, "CALLING" is displayed on LCD (2), regardless of the band (or operation), and the speaker rings with the call.

Press Hands-Free button (1) to answer.

 NOTE:

- Even if the source of the radio unit is OFF when a call comes in, the source automatically turns ON, and "CALLING" is displayed and the speaker sounds ringing.
- According to the setting, auto-answer to the incoming call is possible. Refer to page 1-161 for the setting procedure.



- Reject call

When a call comes in, keep depressing Hands-Free button (1) rejects and ends the call. The radio returns to the band (or operation) before the call.



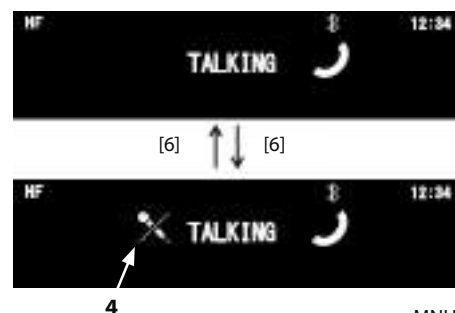
- MIC Mute

A microphone for hands-free talking is built-in the front panel of the radio unit.

Pressing [6] button (3) turns ON/OFF this microphone.

When the microphone is OFF, MUTE label (4) is displayed.

 NOTE: MIC mute is canceled at each call.



OPERATOR'S STATION

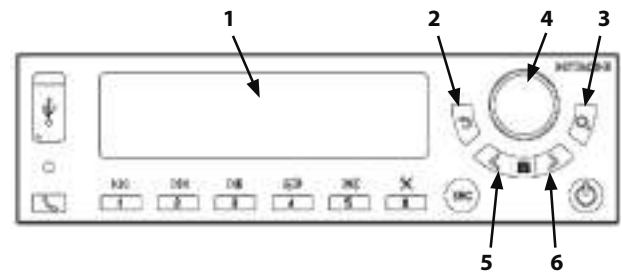
USB Device Input

Plays audio files via USB connection with a cell phone or audio playback device.

USB Specifications

Rated Current	Max. 2 A
Output Voltage	5.00 V when USB cable is not connected.
Applicable Data Format	MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV

NOTE: MP4 or other formatted files may not be played and skipped. If accepted, it may not be played in good enough quality.



MNUD-01-402

IMPORTANT: The basic functions provided with this radio unit are explained in this section. It may not be applicable to the USB device depending on its specifications and application. Refer to the instruction manual of the USB connected device.

The track title, artist name, album name are displayed on LCD (1).

If they are too long to display in one line, they are separately displayed on different screens. Press return button (2) to change the screens.



MNUD-01-427

Select Play List

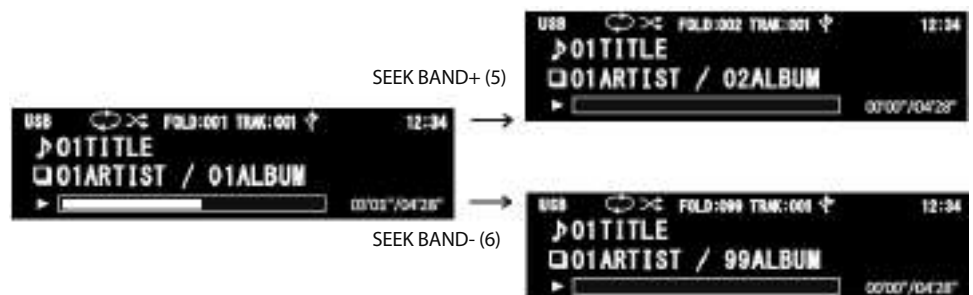
Pressing search button (3) may import the playlist from the specified device.

Select a desired track and play, if available, using rotary switch (4).

Select Folder/Album

Press SEEK BAND+ button (5) moves to the next folder or album stored in the USB device.

Press SEEK BAND- button (6) moves to the previous folder or album stored in the USB device.



MNUD-01-426

OPERATOR'S STATION

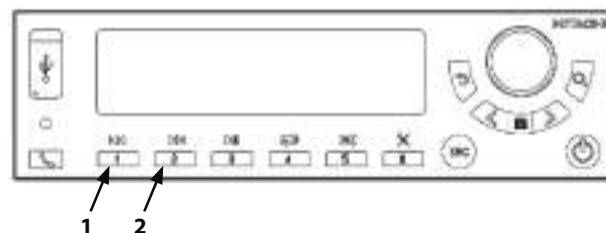
Change Track

Press [2] button (2) to start playing the next track.

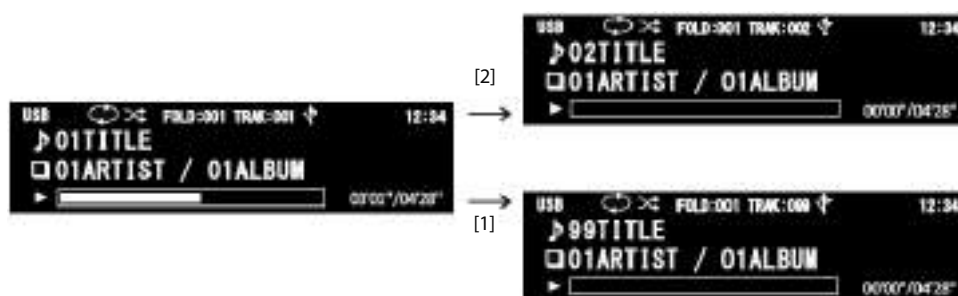
Press [1] button (1) to play the previous track.

According to the connected device setting, pressing [1] button (1) returns to the top of the currently playing track.

Then press [1] again to play the previous track.



MNU01-402

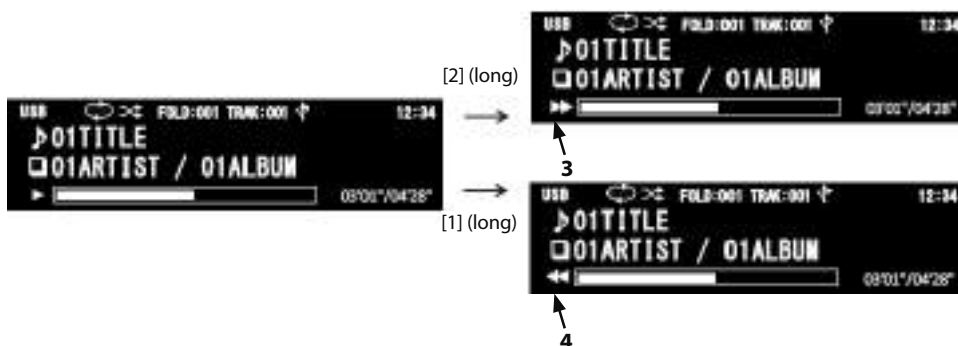


MNU01-428

Fast-forward/Fast-rewind

While playing a track, depressing [2] button (2) fast-forwards the track until releasing [2] button. Fast-forward label (3) is displayed while depressing [2] button.

While playing a track, depressing [1] button (1) fast-rewinds the track until releasing [1] button. Fast-rewind label (4) is displayed while depressing [1] button.



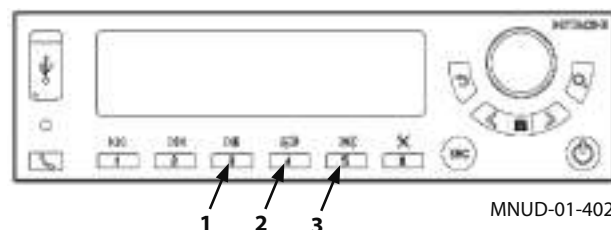
MNU01-429

OPERATOR'S STATION

Pause/Playback

Pressing [3] button (1) while playing a track pauses playback. PAUSE label (4) is displayed.

Pressing [3] button (1) again starts playing from where it was paused.



MNU01-402



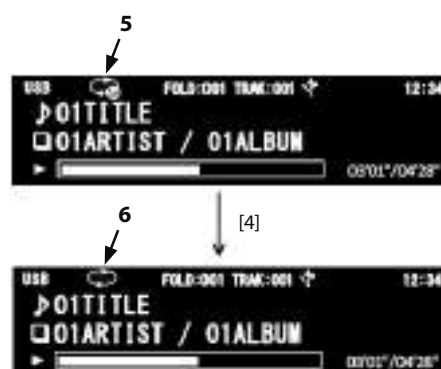
MNU01-430

Repeat

Pressing [4] button (2) plays the same track repeatedly. REPEAT label (5) is displayed.

Pressing [4] button (2) again plays the same album or folder repeatedly. REPEAT label (6) is displayed.

 **NOTE:** This function is not applicable depending on the connected device.



MNU01-431

Random

Pressing [5] button (3) plays the tracks in random order. RANDOM label (7) is displayed.

 **NOTE:** This function is not applicable depending on the connected device.



MNU01-432

OPERATOR'S STATION

Setting Screens

Allow changes to the various settings.

Press rotary switch (1) from any source screen to display setting screen (2).

Or select SETTING from the source selection operation.

Refer to page 1-143 "Selecting Source" for details.

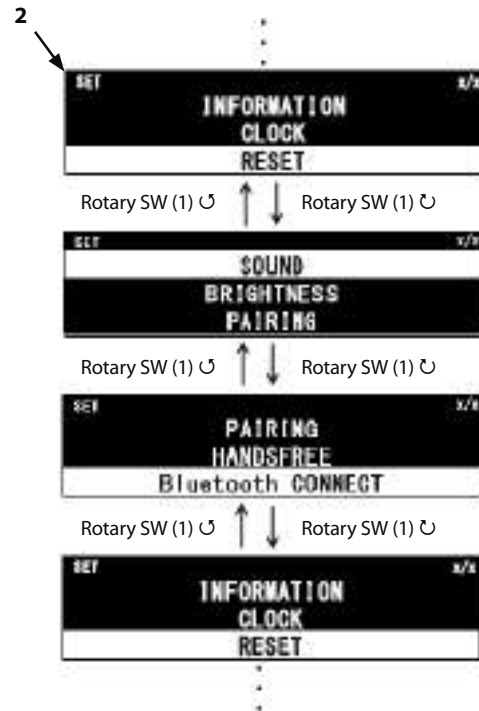
There are 7 setting menu and their submenu.

Rotate rotary switch (1) and highlight a desired menu to set, and push rotary switch (1) to display its submenu.



MNU01-01-402

		Default Setting
SOUND	* BALANCE	0
	* TREBLE	0
	* BASS	0
	* LOUDNESS	OFF
BRIGHTNESS	* DISPLAY	0
	* SWITCHES	0
PAIRING		
HANDSFREE	* AUTO ANSWER	OFF
Bluetooth CONNECT	* AUTO CONNECT	ON
	SELECT	
	DELETE	
INFORMATION	SOUND	
	BRIGHTNESS	
	HANDSFREE	
	Bluetooth CONNECT	
	REGION	
	VERSION	
CLOCK	* DISP	OFF
	TIME	
RESET		



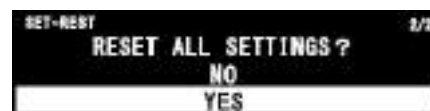
MNU01-01-451

Reset Settings

To reset the setting values, select RESET and press rotary switch (1). "RESET ALL SETTINGS?" appears.

Highlight "YES" by rotating rotary switch (1) and press rotary switch (1). The setting for all the items with an asterisk mark (*) in the above chart will be reset to the default setting.

Select "NO" to cancel the setting reset.



MNU01-01-434

OPERATOR'S STATION

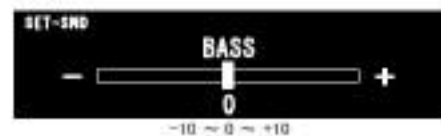
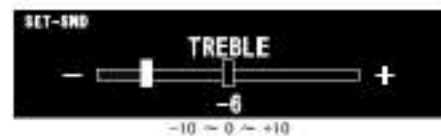
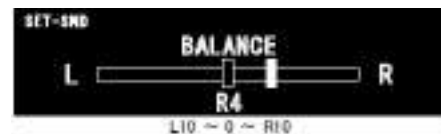
Sound Setting

1. From "SOUND" setting menu, highlight the desired item to adjust by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. The setting screen appears.
3. Make adjustment by rotating rotary switch (1).
4. Push rotary switch (1) to fix the adjustment.
5. Pressing return button (2) cancels the setting and it returns to the Menu screen.



MNU01-01-402

- **Left/Right Output Balance Adjustment**
Adjusts the output balance between the left and right speakers.
There are 21 steps to this adjustment: L10 (left only) to L1, 0 (Center) and R1 to R10 (right only).
- **Treble Output Adjustment**
Adjusts the high frequency part of the sound tone output to the speakers.
There are 21 steps to this adjustment: +10 to 0 to -10.
- **Bass Output Adjustment**
Adjusts the low frequency part of the sound tone output to the speakers.
There are 21 steps to this adjustment: +10 to 0 to -10.
- **Loudness Setting**
Adjusts the bass and treble ranges to be increased at low volumes to enhance hearing of those ranges.
The setting is either ON or OFF.

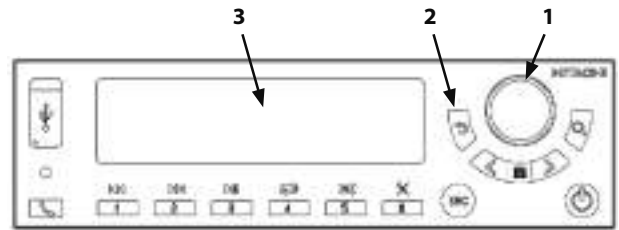


MNU01-01-435

OPERATOR'S STATION

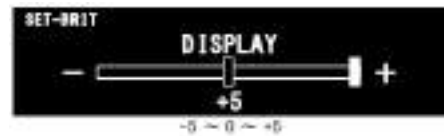
Brightness Adjustment

1. From "BRIGHTNESS" setting menu, highlight the desired item to adjust by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. The setting screen appears.
3. Make adjustment by rotating rotary switch (1).
4. Push rotary switch (1) to fix the adjustment.
5. Pressing return button (2) cancels the setting and it returns to the Menu screen.



MNUD-01-402

- LCD Brightness
Adjusts the brightness of LCD (3).
There are 11 steps to this adjustment: +5 to 0 to -5.
- Switch Brightness
Adjusts the brightness of activated switches.
There are 11 steps to this adjustment: +5 to 0 to -5.



MNUD-01-436

OPERATOR'S STATION

Pairing

The pairing authenticates up to 16 Bluetooth devices for use with this radio unit.

 **NOTE:** When the pairing is tried for the 17th device, it replaces any of the current 16 devices. To delete a Bluetooth device, refer to page 1-163 for procedure.

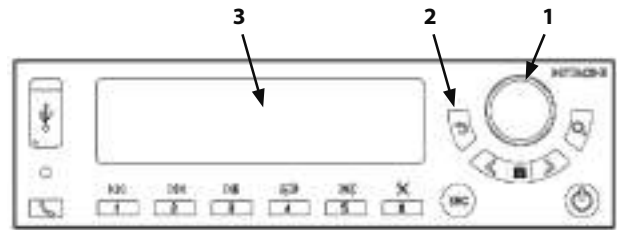
1. Highlight "PAIRING" menu by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. "PAIRING START?" message appears on LCD (3).
3. Push rotary switch (1) to start the pairing.
Push Return button (2) to cancel the pairing.

IMPORTANT: The pairing should be completed within 180 seconds after pairing starts.

4. Once the Bluetooth module of the radio unit completes preparations, "PASS KEY: 0000" and "BT-****" are displayed on the screen.

 **NOTE:** "****" is the smallest 4-digit of the Bluetooth module address.

5. If pairing is successful, "COMPLETED" is displayed. The Bluetooth device operation is possible on this radio unit. Refer to page 1-149 for each operation.
6. If pairing fails due to timeout, etc., "FAILED" is displayed. Repeat the above steps again for pairing.



MNUD-01-402



MNUD-01-438

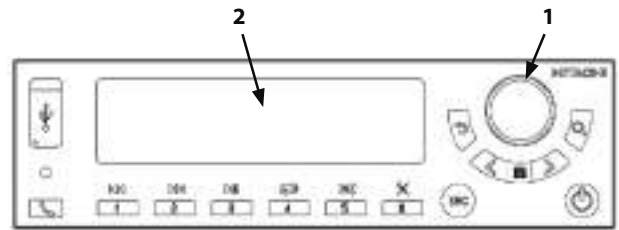
OPERATOR'S STATION

Handfree Setting

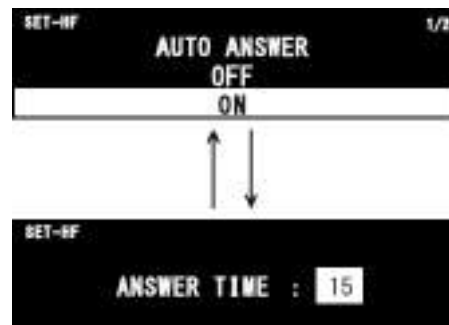
1. Highlight "HANDSFREE" menu by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. AUTO ANSWER setting appears on LCD (2).
3. Select "OFF" and push rotary switch (1) to disable the auto-answering to an incoming call.
4. Select "ON" and push rotary switch (1).
The time period before answering can be set among 1 to 30 seconds. Rotating rotary switch (1) clockwise increases the time by one second. Rotating rotary switch (1) counterclockwise decreases the time by one second. Push rotary switch (1) to fix the time.

This will automatically answer to an incoming call in the specified time period.

 **NOTE:** The call quality may vary depending on the connected device.



MNUD-01-402



MNUD-01-439

OPERATOR'S STATION

Bluetooth® Connection

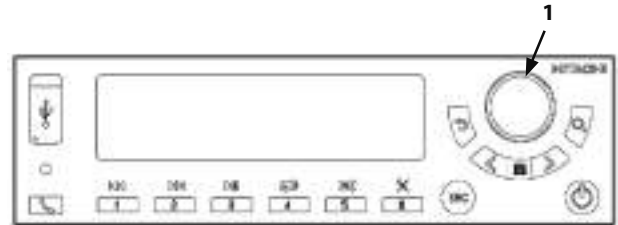
This specifies the connection method to the device after Bluetooth pairing.

1. From "Bluetooth CONNECT" menu, highlight "AUTO CONNECT" by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).

2. Select either OFF or ON and push rotary switch (1).

OFF: Disable auto-connection to a Bluetooth device.

ON: Automatically connect to the available device for which pairing in Bluetooth is completed.



MNUD-01-402

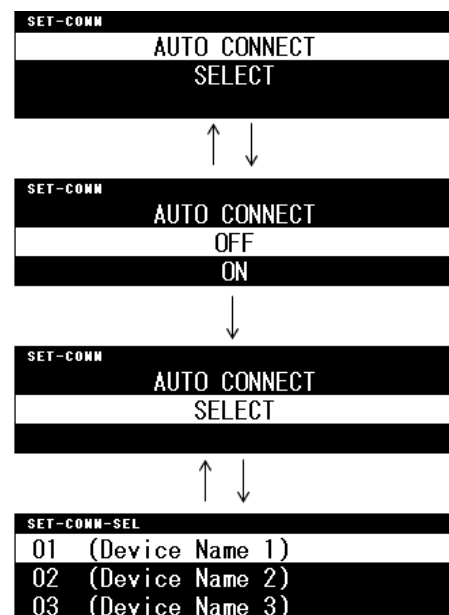
3. If "OFF" is selected in step 2, highlight "SELECT" from Bluetooth CONNECT menu and push rotary switch (1).

NOTE: *SELECT is effective only when AUTO CONNECT setting is OFF.*

4. The available Bluetooth device name or the device address are listed.
5. Select a device to connect by rotating rotary switch (1). Pressing rotary switch (1) starts connection to the selected device.

NOTE:

- If there is no device to connect in Bluetooth, "NO DEVICE" is displayed.
- The device name is obtained when connecting the first time to the device after ACC ON. If the device name is changed after connection, the listed device name will not be updated.



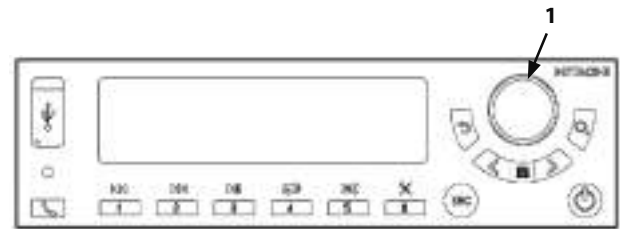
MNUD-01-440

OPERATOR'S STATION

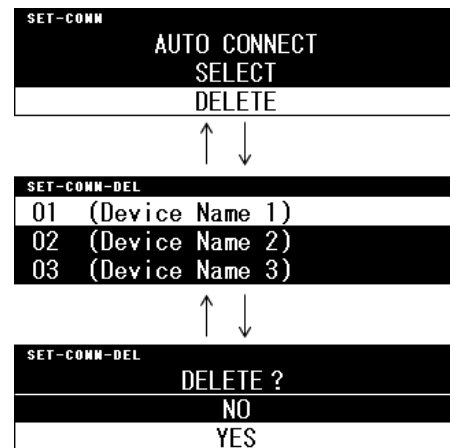
Deleting Bluetooth® Device

The selected device is deleted from the device list from Bluetooth CONNECT - DELETE menu.

Highlight a desired device and push rotary switch (1). Select "YES" and push rotary switch (1) to delete the selected device.



MNU01-402



MNU01-441

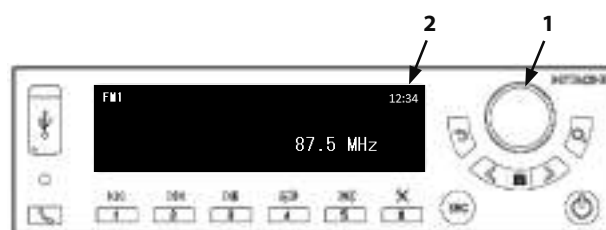
OPERATOR'S STATION

Clock Display

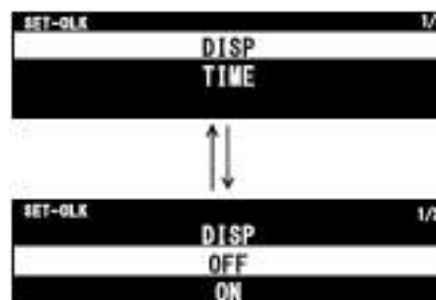
The current time is displayed on LCD (2).

1. From "CLOCK" menu, highlight "DISP" by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. Highlight a desired setting and push rotary switch (1).

OFF: No time display
ON: Time display in 24-hour format



MNUD-01-402



MNUD-01-442

Time Adjustment

 **NOTE:** When the machine battery runs out, the clock becomes 00:00.

1. From "CLOCK" menu, highlight "TIME" by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. The time setting screen (3) appears.
3. Highlight "HOUR" and push rotary switch (1). The hour can be set between 0 and 23.
Rotating rotary switch (1) clockwise increases number.
Rotating rotary switch (1) counterclockwise decreases number.
4. Push rotary switch (1) to fix the hour and returns to the time setting screen (3).
5. Adjust "MINUTE" in the same manner. The minute can be set between 0 and 59.



MNUD-01-444

OPERATOR'S STATION

Information

The current setting values are displayed.

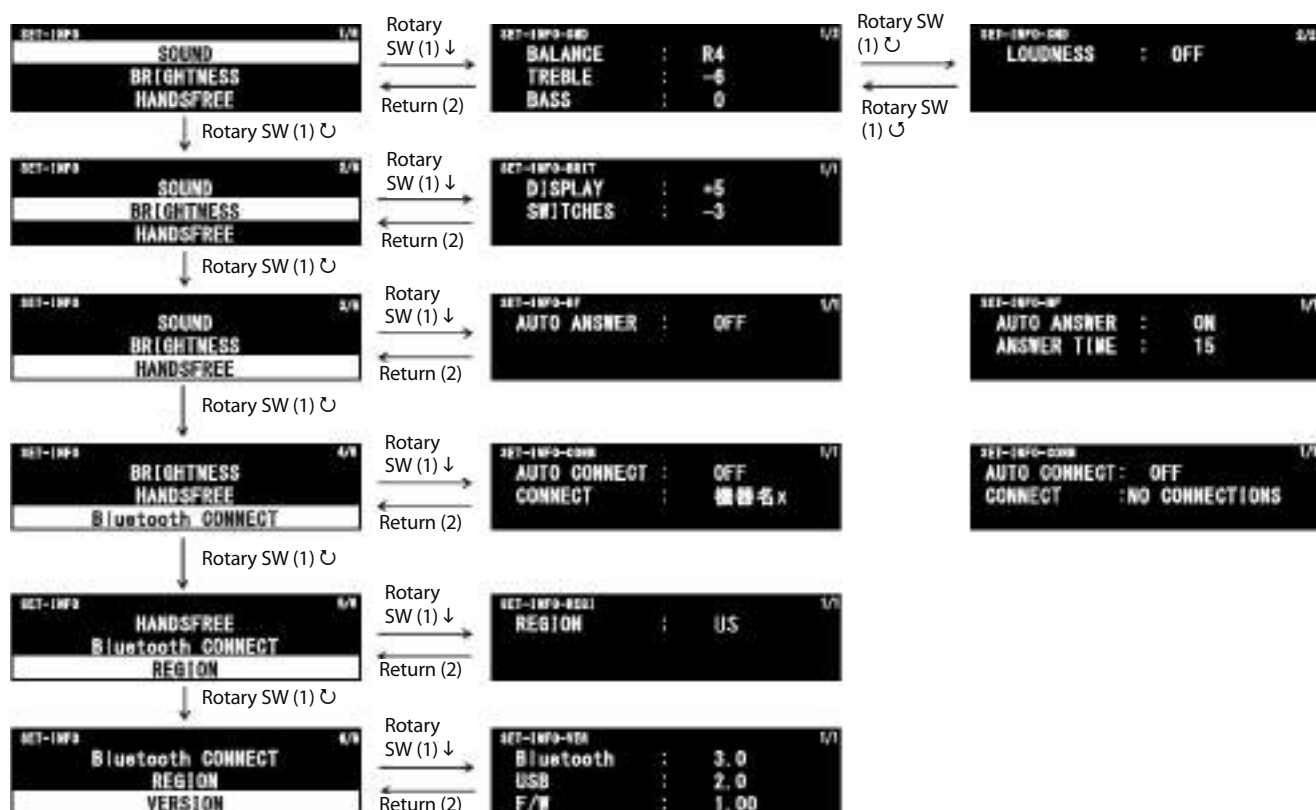
1. From "INFORMATION" menu, highlight a desired setting by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. The current setting(s) are displayed. If there are 4 or more submenu, rotate rotary switch (1) to display them.

 **NOTE:** The REGION setting and VERSION information are additionally displayed in this menu.



MNUD-01-402

- **Region Display**
Make sure the region displayed is "AE."
AE: Europe, Asia, Australia
JP: Japan
US: USA, Canada
SA: Latin America
- **Version Display**
Displays the version of the radio unit's firmware, Bluetooth, and USB protocol.



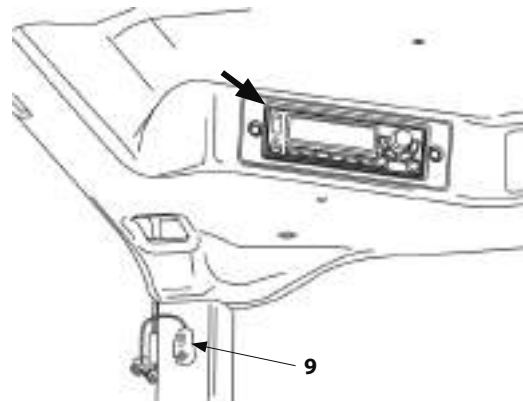
MNUD-01-445US

OPERATOR'S STATION

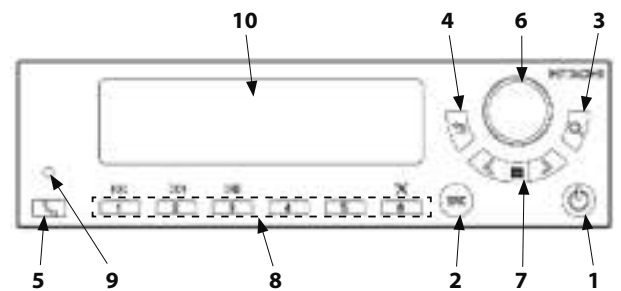
Digital Radio Unit (External Microphone)

Control Panel

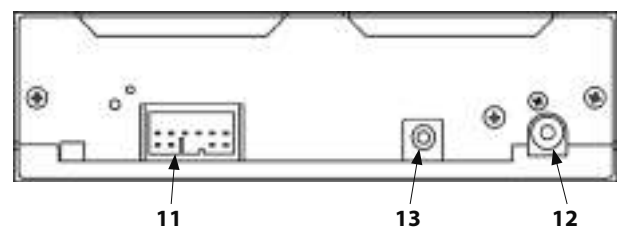
- 1- POWER button
Turns the device ON/OFF.
- 2- SRC button
Switches the source
(FM1→FM2→AM→AUX→Bluetooth®).
- 3- Search button
Makes auto presets (FM/AM).
- 4- Return button
Returns to the previous screen while setting operation.
- 5- Hands-Free button
Receives mobile phone signal. Makes a redial call.
- 6- Rotary switch
Adjust the volume.
Switches between menu items and makes various settings.
- 7- SEEK BAND+/SEEK BAND- buttons
Adjusts radio frequency.
- 8- PRESET buttons ([1] to [6])
Calls up/registers preset frequencies.
Operates the connected Bluetooth®
- 9- MIC
Microphone for hands-free operation.
- 10- LCD
Refer to the following page.
- 11- Power Connector
Power inlet and machine information input.
- 12- Antenna Port (for Analog Radio)
Connect the antenna to receive AM/FM radio.
- 13- Microphone Port (for Hands-free)
Connect the Microphone for Hands - free.



MPTC-01-058



MPTC-01-068



MPTC-01-062

 **NOTE:** There is an AUX indication, but it cannot be used.

OPERATOR'S STATION

LCD Display

1- Information section

Indicates the source name, frequency, service name, etc. in characters and/or numbers.

2- Source label

Indicates the selected source name.

3- ST label

Lights to indicate stereo reception when FM are selected.

4- Bluetooth® label

Lights when connected to a Bluetooth® compatible device.

5- Clock

Current time in 24 h format.

6- Menu/List title

Indicates the title of the selected menu, source, program type.

7- List No.

Indicates the selected list number among total selections.

8- Volume display

Indicates the volume of currently selected source.



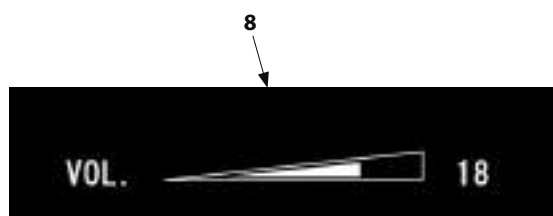
MPTC-01-060



MPTC-01-061



MNUD-01-406



MNUD-01-405

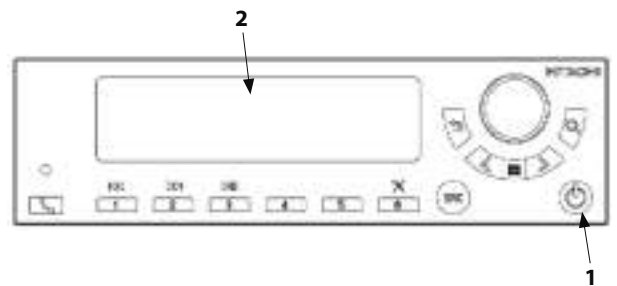
OPERATOR'S STATION

Basic Operation

Turn ON the device

When the machine starter key is set to ON or ACC, the previously selected source is displayed on LCD (2). If the LCD displays nothing, press power button (1). The previously selected source appears on the LCD.

 **NOTE:** When the starter key is turned to OFF when the radio unit is in the standby mode, the radio unit starts up in the standby mode when the key is turned to ON or ACC. Refer to "Turn OFF the device" for the standby mode.



Turn OFF the device

When the machine starter key is set to ON or ACC, the pressing power button (1) turns off the LCD. The power button (1) remains lit on (standby mode).

When the machine starter key is set to OFF with the radio unit is powered on, power button (1) and LCD (2) are both turned off.

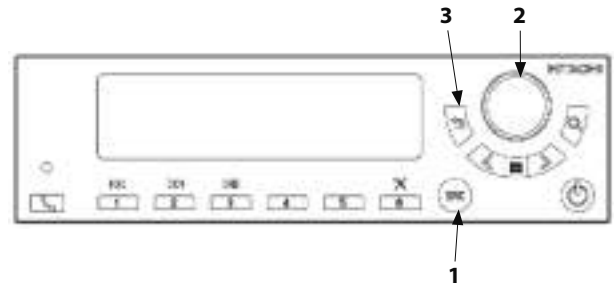
OPERATOR'S STATION

Selecting Source

Long depressing SRC button (1) displays the source selection screen (4).

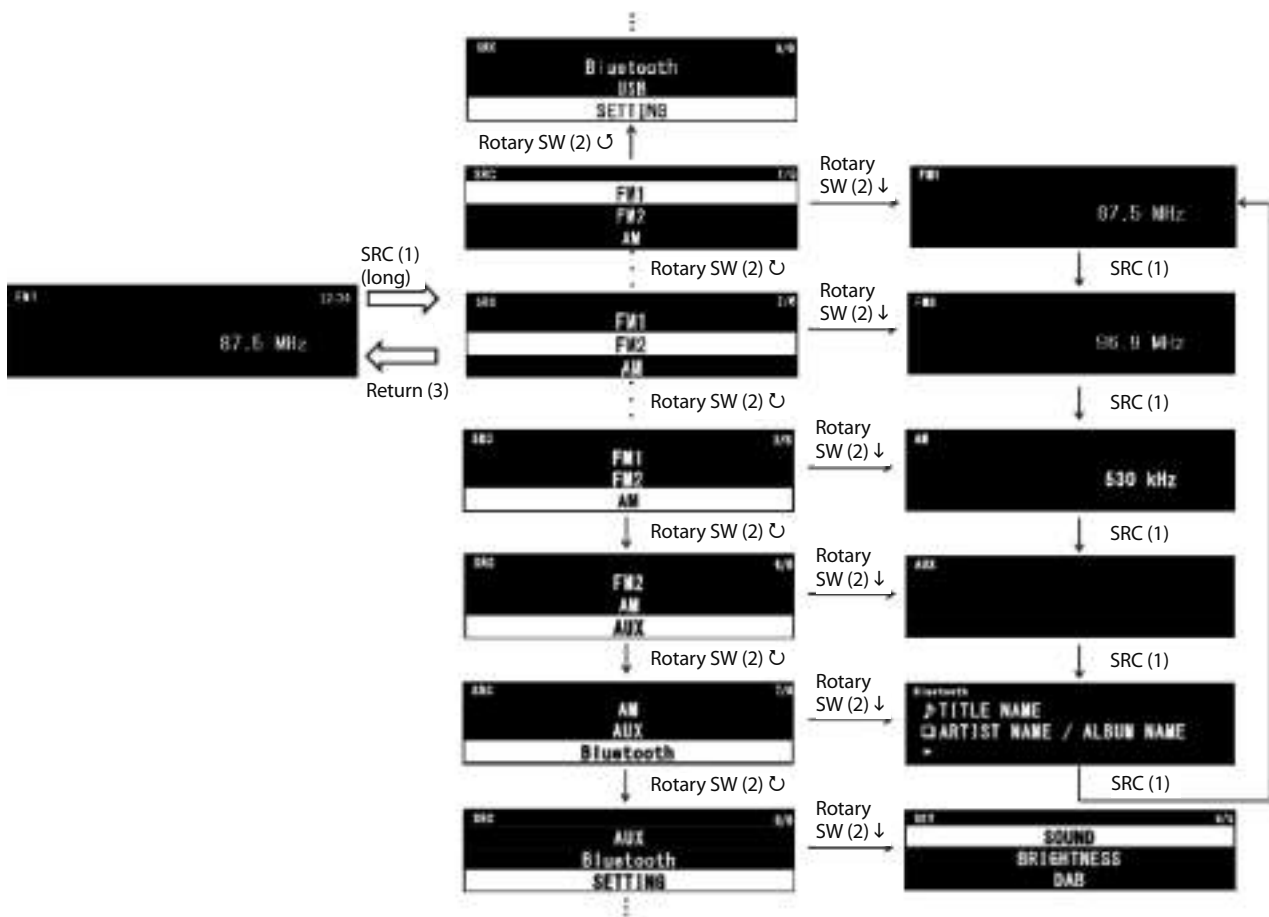


MNUD-01-450



MPTC-01-068

- Rotate rotary switch (2) to highlight a desired source (FM1↔FM2↔AM↔AUX↔Bluetooth®↔SETTING↔FM1).
- Press rotary switch (2) while selecting a source to display its sub-sources.
- Pressing SRC button (1) on each source screen moves to the screen to the next source screen (FM1→FM2→AM→AUX→Bluetooth®→FM1).



NOTE: There is an AUX indication, but it cannot be used.

MPTC-01-062

OPERATOR'S STATION

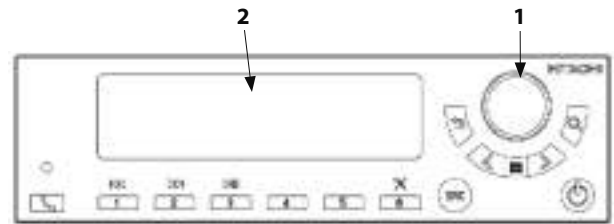
Volume Control

The volume control can be done individually for each source and for hands-free calling.

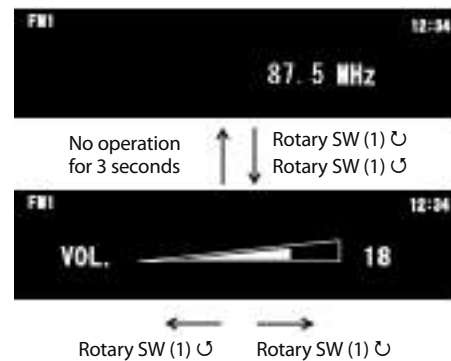
Rotating rotary switch (1) clockwise increases the volume. Rotating rotary switch (1) counterclockwise decreases the volume.

The volume level is selected between 0 (mute) and 32.

 **NOTE:** The screen returns to the source screen when no operation is made for 3 seconds.



MPTC-01-068



MNUD-01-416

OPERATOR'S STATION

About Trademark

The Bluetooth® wordmark and logo are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and Scribble Design Inc. uses these marks under license. Other trademarks and trade names belong to their respective owners.



CAUTION:

- **Do not operate the radio or other audio equipment while driving or working.**
- **The speaker volume may vary depending on the source, radio, Bluetooth® audio or handsfree phone. Adjust to an appropriate volume, such as by changing the volume of the Bluetooth® compatible device.**

IMPORTANT: This device cannot connect to more than 1 Bluetooth® compatible device at a time.

OPERATOR'S STATION

FM/AM Radio Operation

CAUTION: Refrain from listening to the radio while operating the machine.

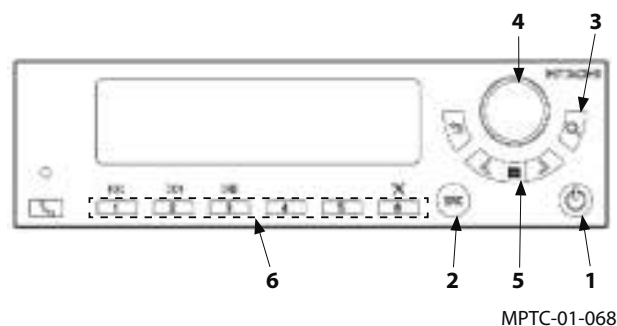
Receives both FM and AM radio.

NOTE: The only difference between FM1 and FM2 is the grouping of preset numbers; the function is the same.

Control Panel

- 1- POWER button
Turns the radio ON/OFF.
- 2- SRC button
Switches the source (FM1→FM2→AM→AUX→Bluetooth®).
- 3- Search button
FM/AM auto presets.
- 4- Rotary switch
Adjust the volume.
- 5- SEEK BAND+/SEEK BAND- buttons
Adjusts radio frequency.
- 6- PRESET buttons ([1] to [6])
Calls up/registers preset frequencies.

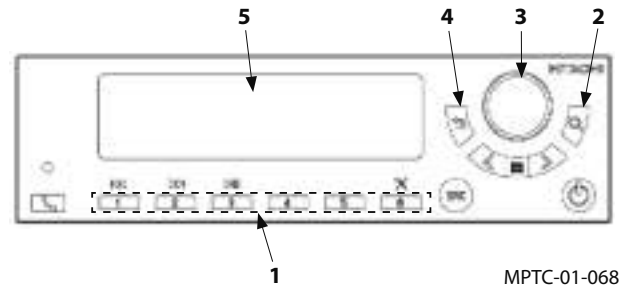
NOTE: There is an AUX indication, but it cannot be used.



OPERATOR'S STATION

Station Presetting Procedure

1. Select the desired station. Refer to the following page "Tuning Procedure".
2. Press and hold a desired PRESET button (1) for more than 1 second. The current station is preset to the selected number of button. When the station is preset, the "PRESET-x" blinks for 3 seconds on LCD (5).
Once the presetting is complete for a PRESET button, the radio will be tuned to the preset station when the PRESET button is pressed.
3. To change the preset station, follow the same steps 1 and 2.



MPTC-01-068



[1] (long)



MNUD-01-411US

Calling up Preset Stations

Press any of PRESET buttons (1) to tune and receive the registered station frequency. "PRESET-x" with the selected number is displayed on LCD (5).



[1]



MNUD-01-412US

Factory Default Setting

PRESET	AM (kHz)	FM (MHz)
1	530	87.5
2	910	96.9
3	1000	97.9
4	1100	98.9
5	1540	106.9
6	1710	107.9

IMPORTANT: The PRESET data will not be erased even disconnected from the battery. The changed PRESET data is stored in the internal memory at ACC OFF, however, if ACC and battery are both OFF at the same time, the changed data is not stored.

Auto-Preset Function

By keep depressing search button (2), up to 6 stations with best reception can be automatically registered to PRESET buttons (1) (auto-preset function).

"AUTO PRESET" blinks on LCD (5) while auto-preset is running.

The station frequency is registered from No. 1 through No. 6 in frequency order.



MNUD-01-413

OPERATOR'S STATION

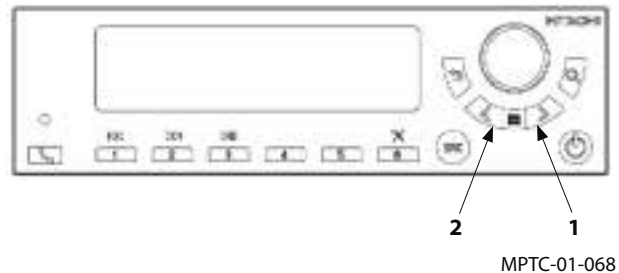
Tuning Procedure

- Automatic Search Function (Auto Seek)

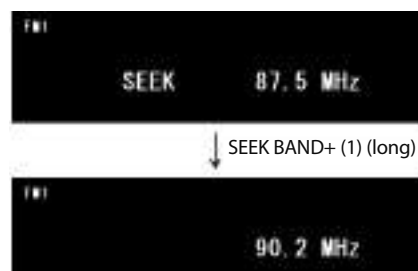
Press and hold SEEK BAND+ button (1) and/or SEEK BAND- button (2) for more than half a second, then release. Automatic search for the station starts to run and stops when a station is received.

Press SEEK BAND+ button (1) to search a higher frequency.
Press SEEK BAND- button (2) to search a lower frequency.

If no stations with good reception can be found after searching the entire band, the radio continues searching. Press either SEEK BAND button (1)(2) to cancel the searching operation.



NOTE: If the receiving radio waves are weak, i. e. such as when the machine is located between high rising buildings, etc., use the manual tuning procedure to select the desired station.



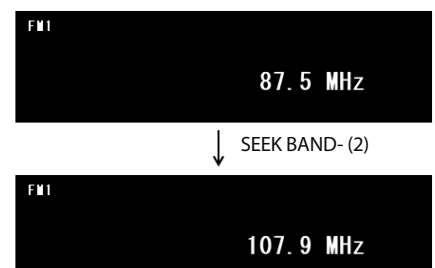
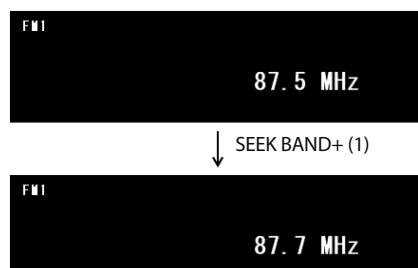
MNUD-01-414US

- Manual Tuning Procedure (Manual Seek)

Press SEEK BAND+ button (1) and/or SEEK BAND- button (2) until the desired station is reached. Each time SEEK BAND buttons (1)(2) is pressed, the frequency changes at an interval.

Press SEEK BAND+ button (1) to increase the frequency.
Press SEEK BAND- button (2) to decrease the frequency.

NOTE: AM frequency interval: 10 kHz
FM frequency interval: 0.2 MHz



MNUD-01-415US

OPERATOR'S STATION

Bluetooth® Input

IMPORTANT: A special Bluetooth® unit is necessary to use this function.

Specified Characteristics

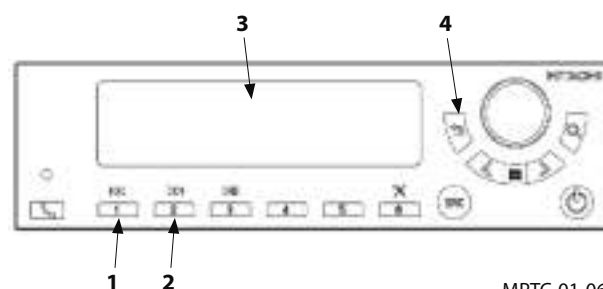
Frequency	2.4 GHz
Version	5.0
Class	1
Applicable profile	A2DP, AVRCP, HFP, SPP
Max. Number of Pairing Device	7

The audio files can be played via Bluetooth® connection with a cell phone or Bluetooth® audio playback device.

 **NOTE:** Refer to page 1-183 for pairing.
Refer to page 1-185 for device connection.

The track title, artist name, album name are displayed on LCD (3).

If they are too long to display in one line, separately displayed as shown to the right. Press return button (4) to change the screens.



MPTC-01-068



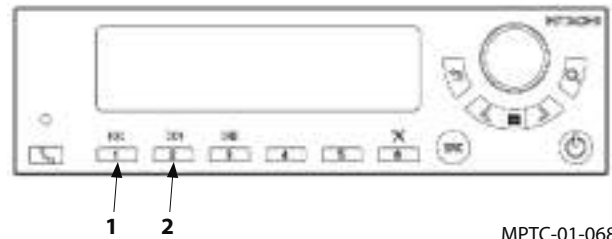
MPTC-01-063

OPERATOR'S STATION

Change Track

Press [2] button (2) to start playing the next track.

Press [1] button (1) to play the previous track.
According to the connected device setting, pressing [1] button (1) returns to the top of the currently playing track.
Then press [1] again to play the previous track.

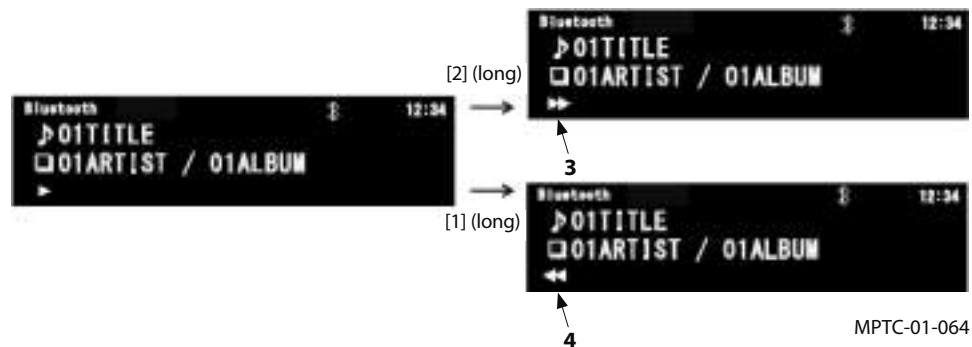


MPTC-01-068

Fast-forward/Fast-rewind

While playing a track, depressing [2] button (2) fast-forwards the track until releasing [2] button. Fast-forward label (3) is displayed while depressing [2] button.

While playing a track, depressing [1] button (1) fast-rewinds the track until releasing [1] button. Fast-rewind label (4) is displayed while depressing [1] button.



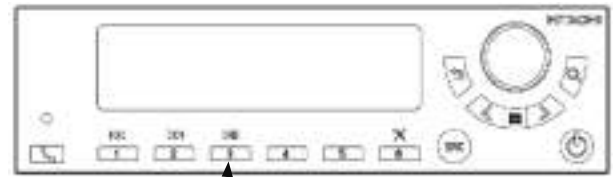
MPTC-01-064

OPERATOR'S STATION

Pause/Playback

Pressing [3] button (1) while playing a track pauses playback. PAUSE label (4) is displayed.

Pressing [3] button (1) again starts playing from where it was paused.



MPTC-01-068



[3] [3]



MPTC-01-065

OPERATOR'S STATION

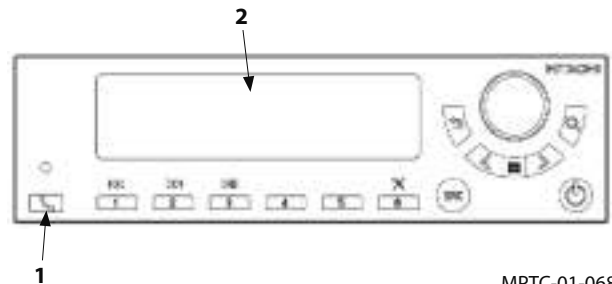
Hands-free Call

IMPORTANT: A special Bluetooth® connected cellphone is necessary to use this function.

Allows handsfree conversations when using a Bluetooth® (HFP protocol) compatible cellphone.

- **Making a Call**
When calling from the cellphone, "DIALING" is displayed on LCD (2) and the sound from dialing is heard from the speakers. The voice of the other end party is heard from the speakers when connected.
- **Redial**
Regardless of the band (or operation), long pressing Hands-Free button (1) dials to the last incoming dial number since the ACC was turned ON.
"DIALING" is displayed on LCD (2) and the sound from dialing is heard from the speakers. The voice of the other end party is heard from the speakers when connected. Pressing Hands-Free button (1) during talk ends call.

 **NOTE:** The redial function may not work if the length of the previous incoming call was short.



MPTC-01-068



MNUD-01-423

OPERATOR'S STATION

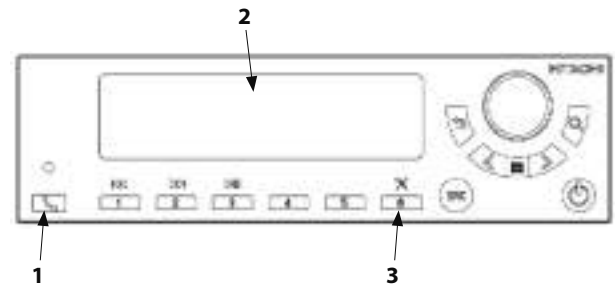
- Incoming Call

When a call comes in, "CALLING" is displayed on LCD (2), regardless of the band (or operation), and the speaker rings with the call.

Press Hands-Free button (1) to answer.

 NOTE:

- Even if the source of the radio unit is OFF when a call comes in, the source automatically turns ON, and "CALLING" is displayed and the speaker sounds ringing.
- According to the setting, auto-answer to the incoming call is possible. Refer to page 1-184 for the setting procedure.



MPTC-01-068

- Reject call

When a call comes in, keep depressing Hands-Free button (1) rejects and ends the call. The radio returns to the band (or operation) before the call.



MNUD-01-424

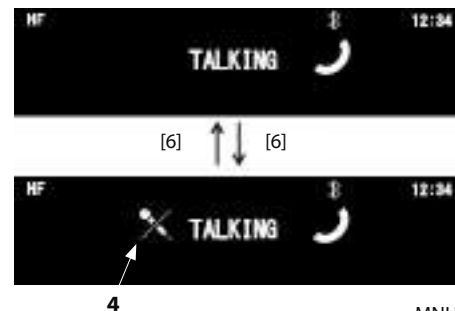
- MIC Mute

A microphone for hands-free talking is built-in the front panel of the radio unit.

Pressing [6] button (3) turns ON/OFF this microphone.

When the microphone is OFF, MUTE label (4) is displayed.

 NOTE: MIC mute is canceled at each call.



MNUD-01-425

OPERATOR'S STATION

Setting Screens

Allow changes to the various settings.

Press rotary switch (1) from any source screen to display setting screen (2).

Or select SETTING from the source selection operation.

Refer to page 1-169 "Selecting Source" for details.

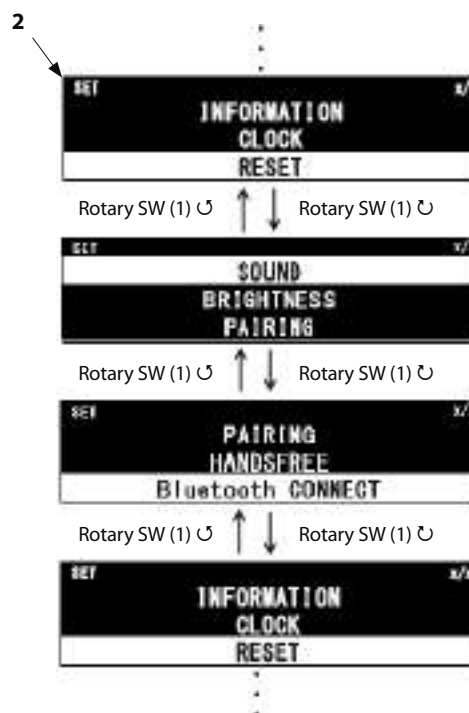
There are 7 setting menu and their submenu.

Rotate rotary switch (1) and highlight a desired menu to set, and push rotary switch (1) to display its submenu.

		Default Setting
SOUND	* BALANCE	0
	* TREBLE	0
	* BASS	0
	* LOUDNESS	OFF
BRIGHTNESS	* DISPLAY	0
	* SWITCHES	0
PAIRING		
HANDSFREE	* AUTO ANSWER	OFF
Bluetooth® CONNECT	* AUTO CONNECT	ON
	SELECT	
	DELETE	
INFORMATION	SOUND	
	BRIGHTNESS	
	HANDSFREE	
	Bluetooth® CONNECT	
	REGION	
	VERSION	
CLOCK	* DISP	OFF
	TIME	
RESET		



MPTC-01-068



MNUD-01-451

Reset Settings

To reset the setting values, select RESET and press rotary switch (1). "RESET ALL SETTINGS?" appears.

Highlight "YES" by rotating rotary switch (1) and press rotary switch (1). The setting for all the items with an asterisk mark (*) in the above chart will be reset to the default setting.

Select "NO" to cancel the setting reset.

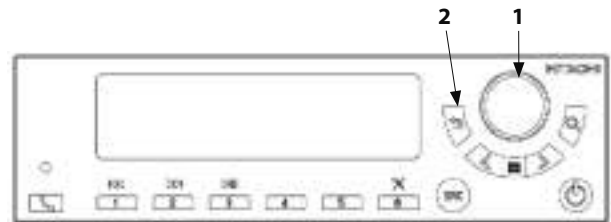


MNUD-01-434

OPERATOR'S STATION

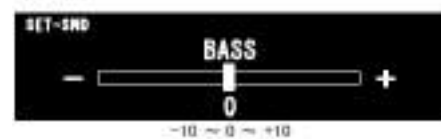
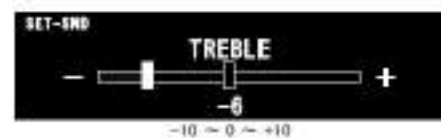
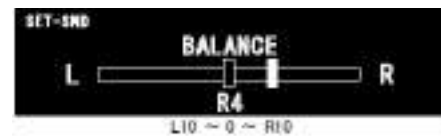
Sound Setting

1. From "SOUND" setting menu, highlight the desired item to adjust by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. The setting screen appears.
3. Make adjustment by rotating rotary switch (1).
4. Push rotary switch (1) to fix the adjustment.
5. Pressing return button (2) cancels the setting and it returns to the Menu screen.



MPTC-01-068

- **Left/Right Output Balance Adjustment**
Adjusts the output balance between the left and right speakers.
There are 21 steps to this adjustment: L10 (left only) to L1, 0 (Center) and R1 to R10 (right only).
- **Treble Output Adjustment**
Adjusts the high frequency part of the sound tone output to the speakers.
There are 21 steps to this adjustment: +10 to 0 to -10.
- **Bass Output Adjustment**
Adjusts the low frequency part of the sound tone output to the speakers.
There are 21 steps to this adjustment: +10 to 0 to -10.
- **Loudness Setting**
Adjusts the bass and treble ranges to be increased at low volumes to enhance hearing of those ranges.
The setting is either ON or OFF.

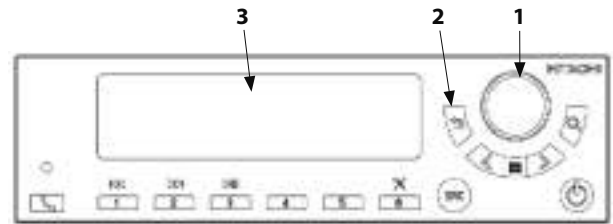


MNUD-01-435

OPERATOR'S STATION

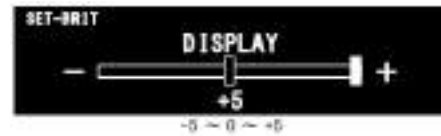
Brightness Adjustment

1. From "BRIGHTNESS" setting menu, highlight the desired item to adjust by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. The setting screen appears.
3. Make adjustment by rotating rotary switch (1).
4. Push rotary switch (1) to fix the adjustment.
5. Pressing return button (2) cancels the setting and it returns to the Menu screen.



MPTC-01-068

- LCD Brightness
Adjusts the brightness of LCD (3).
There are 11 steps to this adjustment: +5 to 0 to -5.
- Switch Brightness
Adjusts the brightness of activated switches.
There are 11 steps to this adjustment: +5 to 0 to -5.



MNUD-01-436

OPERATOR'S STATION

Pairing

The pairing authenticates up to 7 Bluetooth® devices for use with this radio unit.

 **NOTE:** When the pairing is tried for the 8th device, it replaces any of the current 7 devices. To delete a Bluetooth® device, refer to the following page 1-186 for procedure.

1. Highlight "PAIRING" menu by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. "PAIRING START?" message appears on LCD (3).
3. Push rotary switch (1) to start the pairing.
Push Return button (2) to cancel the pairing.

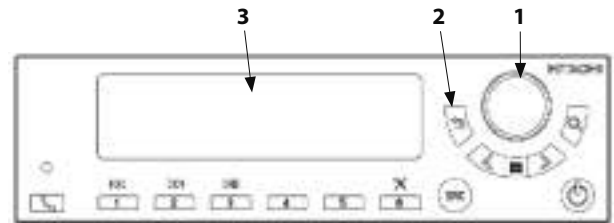
IMPORTANT: The pairing should be completed within 180 seconds after pairing starts.

4. Once the Bluetooth® module of the radio unit completes preparations, "PASS KEY: 0000" and "BT-****" are displayed on the screen.

 **NOTE:** "****" is the smallest 4-digit of the Bluetooth® module address.

5. If pairing is successful, "COMPLETED" is displayed. The Bluetooth® device operation is possible on this radio unit. Refer to page 1-175 for each operation.
6. If pairing fails due to timeout, etc., "FAILED" is displayed. Repeat the above steps again for pairing.

IMPORTANT: Do not turn off the key switch during pairing settings.



MPTC-01-068



↓
COMPLETED

↓
FAILED

MNUD-01-438

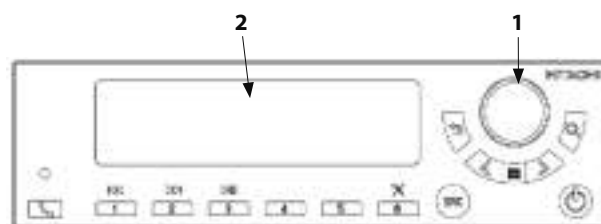
OPERATOR'S STATION

Handfree Setting

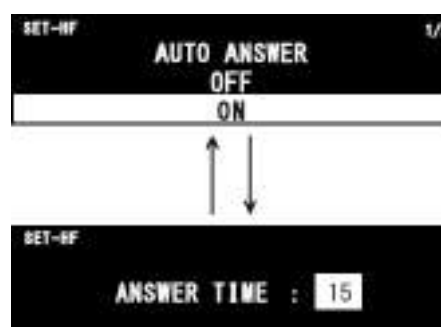
1. Highlight "HANDSFREE" menu by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. AUTO ANSWER setting appears on LCD (2).
3. Select "OFF" and push rotary switch (1) to disable the auto-answering to an incoming call.
4. Select "ON" and push rotary switch (1).
The time period before answering can be set among 1 to 30 seconds. Rotating rotary switch (1) clockwise increases the time by one second. Rotating rotary switch (1) counterclockwise decreases the time by one second. Push rotary switch (1) to fix the time.

This will automatically answer to an incoming call in the specified time period.

 **NOTE:** The call quality may vary depending on the connected device.



MPTC-01-068



MNUD-01-439

OPERATOR'S STATION

Bluetooth® Connection

This specifies the connection method to the device after Bluetooth® pairing.

1. From "Bluetooth® CONNECT" menu, highlight "AUTO CONNECT" by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).

2. Select either OFF or ON and push rotary switch (1).

OFF: Disable auto-connection to a Bluetooth® device.

ON: Automatically connect to the available device for which pairing in Bluetooth® is completed.



MPTC-01-068

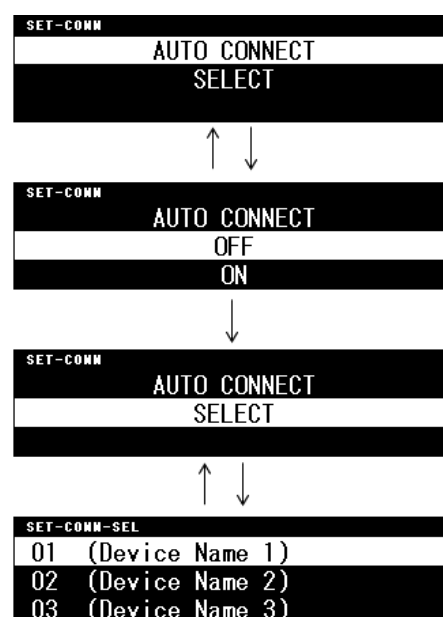
3. If "OFF" is selected in step 2, highlight "SELECT" from Bluetooth® CONNECT menu and push rotary switch (1).

NOTE: *SELECT is effective only when AUTO CONNECT setting is OFF.*

4. The available Bluetooth® device name or the device address are listed.
5. Select a device to connect by rotating rotary switch (1). Pressing rotary switch (1) starts connection to the selected device.

NOTE:

- If there is no device to connect in Bluetooth®, "NO DEVICE" is displayed.
- The device name is obtained when connecting the first time to the device after ACC ON. If the device name is changed after connection, the listed device name will not be updated.



MNUD-01-440

OPERATOR'S STATION

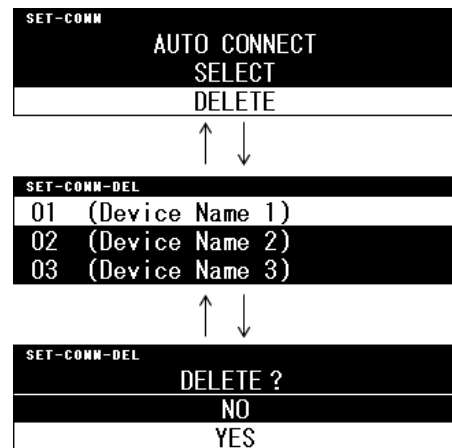
Deleting Bluetooth® Device

The selected device is deleted from the device list from Bluetooth® CONNECT - DELETE menu.

Highlight a desired device and push rotary switch (1). Select "YES" and push rotary switch (1) to delete the selected device.



MPTC-01-068



MNUD-01-441

OPERATOR'S STATION

Clock Display

The current time is displayed on LCD (2).

1. From "CLOCK" menu, highlight "DISP" by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. Highlight a desired setting and push rotary switch (1).

OFF: No time display
ON: Time display in 24-hour format



MPTC-01-066



MNUD-01-442

Time Adjustment

 **NOTE:** When the machine battery runs out, the clock becomes 00:00.

1. From "CLOCK" menu, highlight "TIME" by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. The time setting screen (3) appears.
3. Highlight "HOUR" and push rotary switch (1). The hour can be set between 0 and 23.
Rotating rotary switch (1) clockwise increases number.
Rotating rotary switch (1) counterclockwise decreases number.
4. Push rotary switch (1) to fix the hour and returns to the time setting screen (3).
5. Adjust "MINUTE" in the same manner. The minute can be set between 0 and 59.



MNUD-01-444

OPERATOR'S STATION

Information

The current setting values are displayed.

1. From "INFORMATION" menu, highlight a desired setting by rotating rotary switch (1) and push rotary switch (1).
2. The current setting(s) are displayed. If there are 4 or more submenu, rotate rotary switch (1) to display them.

 **NOTE:** The REGION setting and VERSION information are additionally displayed in this menu.



MPTC-01-068

• Region Display

Make sure the region displayed is "AE."

AE: Europe, Asia, Australia

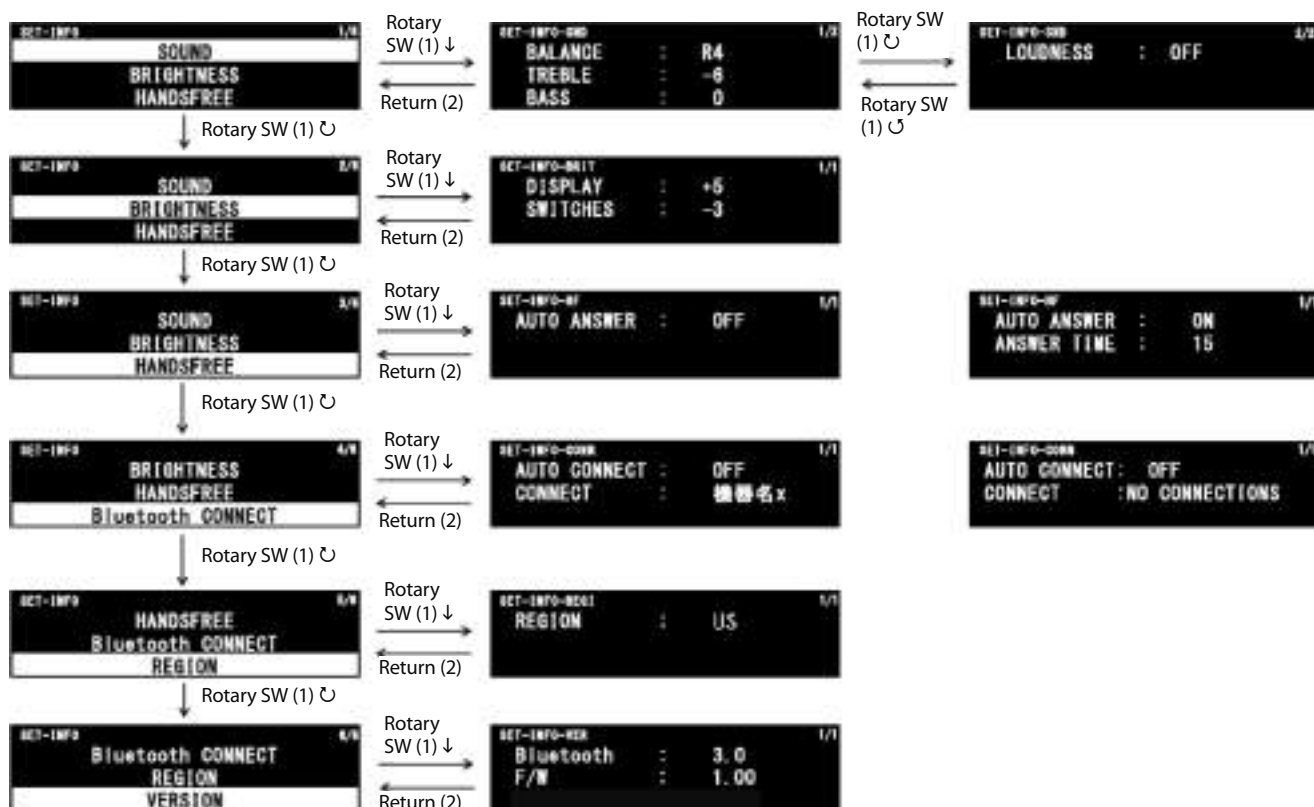
JP: Japan

US: USA, Canada

SA: Latin America

• Version Display

Displays the version of the radio unit's firmware, Bluetooth®, and USB protocol.



MPTC-01-067

BREAK-IN

Break-in Period for New Machine

Machine life and performance will be greatly affected by the treatment during operation and maintenance of the machine, but especially so during the initial operation.

IMPORTANT:

- **Always correctly warm the machine up to operating temperatures before running the machine ! This is always a requirement for good machine life.**
- **The machine must be operated appropriately as the new parts start to wear during the “break-in” period. If the new machine is abused, especially during the beginning break-in period, it will significantly reduce the operative life of the machine. This abuse can be in many forms, including, but not limited to, the following.**
- Overloading in any from:
 - Bucket
 - Ballast
 - At towing pin
 - Others
- Hitting unmovable objects
- Using brakes during operation and burning friction material
- Running hydraulic system pressure over relief setting pressures too often and heating the oil excessively
- Tractively twisting the boom arms or chassis
- Running through impassible terrain
- Not decelerating while changing machine direction
- Scaling out heavy materials like heavy rock while in forward motion, causing the bucket to catch and break free, and catch materials again
- Other types of poor treatment

The machine must never be abused, and must be treated carefully while during the break-in period.

- Operate and maintain the machine well
- Generously lubricate it, especially during the first 100 hours

Work Mode for Break-in

For the first 100 hours of operation, avoid using the power mode and perform the following:

- Thoroughly walk around and inspect the machine for damage
- Warm up the machine after engine start up
- Avoid sudden starts and stops
- Moderately load the machine and operate modestly at below 2/3 capacity

 **NOTE:** Refer to page 1-101 for the power mode.

OPERATING ENGINE

Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting

Perform the required daily check before starting the engine.

- Refer to "Maintenance" section for detailed information.

Check Points	Check Contents
1. Brake System	1. The brake pedal stroke is appropriate, brake performance is sufficient, and the brakes apply evenly. 2. The parking brake performance is good and holds on grades.
2. Tires	1. Tire pressure is appropriate. 2. No cracks and damage observed. 3. No excessive wear observed. 4. No metal pieces, stones or other foreign material found.
3. Wheel Disk	Mounting condition of the wheel disk is correct.
4. Lights and Turn Signals	They light up or flash normally, with clear view and no lens damage.
5. Outside Rear View Mirror and Inside Rear View Mirror	Appropriate visibility.
6. Reflectors and Registration Plate	Clearly visible and no damage found.
7. Previously reported damage.	Repaired.
8. Engine	1. Oil level 2. Oil condition - no antifreeze or contaminants present 3. Coolant level 4. All drive belts 5. Starts easily 6. Exhaust does not smoke excessively 7. No excess noise from exhaust 8. No fluid leaks; no oil or antifreeze under engine 9. No hose or line damage 10. All coolers clean and clear, not clogged 11. No missing or loose bolts in engine area 12. Check fuel pre-filter bowl (drain if needed)

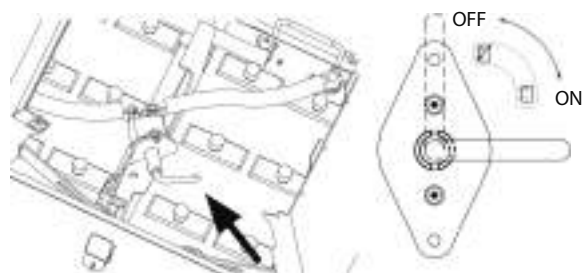
OPERATING ENGINE

Check Points	Check Contents
9. Chassis	1. Oil leaks of the transmission and the axle 2. Level, leaks and contamination of the fuel tank. Drain water from fuel tank. 3. Level and leaks of the hydraulic oil tank 4. Operation, play and operating force of control levers and joystick lever 5. Operation of hydraulic equipment. Oil leaks and damage to piping and hoses. 6. Deformation, damage, and abnormal noise of chassis parts 7. Washer fluid level 8. Level, leaks and contamination of the DEF/AdBlue® tank 9. DEF/AdBlue® leaks of pipe lines and hoses 10. Clean around the aftertreatment device.
10. Loader	1. Oil leaks and damage to cylinders, pipe lines and hoses 2. Loose, worn and missing cutting edges 3. Wear and damage to the bucket 4. Lubrication of the loader parts 5. Damage to the pin lock bolts, stoppers and links 6. Loose and missing mounting bolts/nuts
11. Others	1. Operation of instruments, switches, lights and buzzer/horn 2. Damage and deformation to the ROPS and cab 3. Abnormal outside appearance of machine 4. Looseness of the battery terminals 5. Wear, damage, and expiration date of the seat belt 6. Damaged to the steps and handrails

OPERATING ENGINE

Check Before Starting

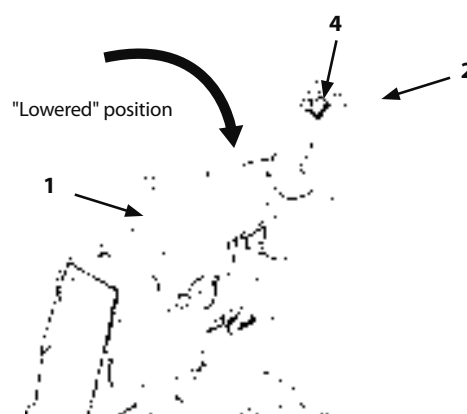
1. If your machine is equipped with the battery disconnect switch, check that the switch is in the ON position.



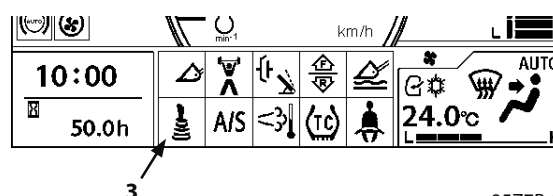
115Z7-3-3-1

2. Lower armrest (1) fully to the operating position until it is locked. Hold support bar (2) when moving armrest.
3. The joystick steering system is automatically turned on, and indicator lamp (3) on the monitor display turns on.
4. Check that forward/reverse switch (4) is in the neutral (N) position.

 **NOTE:** Unless forward/reverse switch (4) is in neutral (N), the engine will not start.



115Z7B-1-10-3

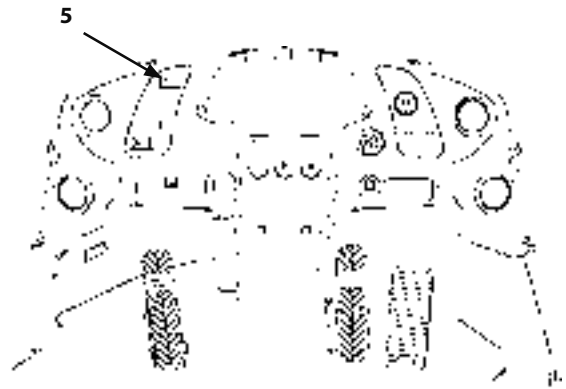


95Z7B-3-7-1

OPERATING ENGINE

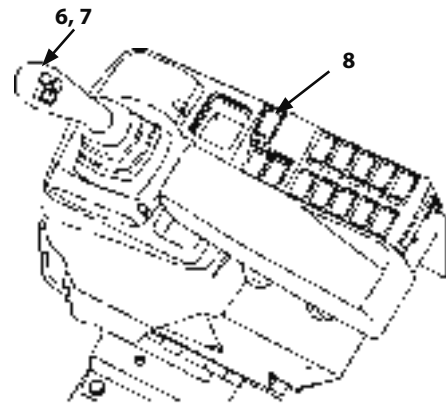
5. Check that parking brake switch (5) is in the ON position.

After the engine starts and checking indicator bulbs and display (refer to page 3-6), check that parking brake indicator is ON.



115Z7B-1-81-1

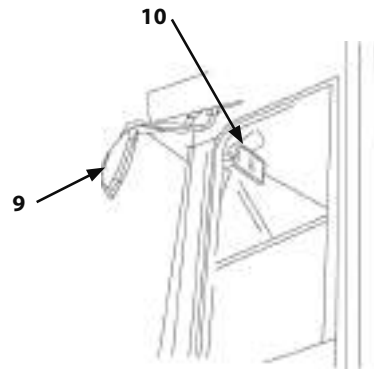
6. Check that bucket control lever (6) and lift arm control lever (7) are in the neutral (N) position.
7. Check that control lever lock switch (8) is in the locked (🔒) position.



MN HK-01-011

OPERATING ENGINE

6. Adjust the position of outside rear view mirror (9) and inside rear view mirror (10) so that the best rear visibility can be obtained.



115Z7-01-126

7. While seated on the operator's seat with your back in contact with the backrest, adjust each function of the seat so that the brake pedal can be fully applied.
8. Fasten seat belt (11) along your body without kinking or twisting it. Be sure the buckle firmly snaps when coupled and works as it should, and the retractor and anti-synch mechanism work as designed.
9. Inspect seat belt.



115Z7-3-4-3

OPERATING ENGINE

Starting Engine

Follow the following steps to start the engine.

1. Check that parking brake switch (1) is ON, with parking brake set. Make sure the armrest is fully lowered and locked in position.
2. Turn key switch (2) ON.
3. Check that joystick steering indicator (3) is turned ON.

 **NOTE:** The armrest may not be positioned correctly if joystick steering indicator (3) is not ON.

4. Check indicator bulbs and display.

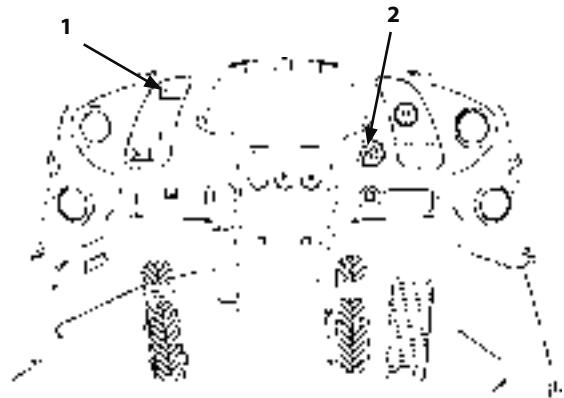
When key switch (2) is turned ON, all indicators and the warning lights come and stay ON for 2 seconds. Then, they go OFF afterward. Any indicator and/or warning light that fails to light at this time is a burned bulb.

However, the indicators for brake oil pressure (4) (When the brake pressure is low) and discharge warning indicator (5) will continue to stay ON, and it will go OFF only after the engine is started and circuits are filled.

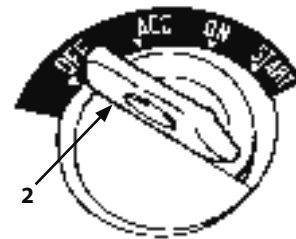
Preheating will automatically start with the key switch ON. The preheat indicator (6) will automatically come ON when needed.

 **NOTE:** When the key switch is turned ON, the maintenance notification for the item whose maintenance interval has expired displays for 10 seconds. The display will disappear when the Return switch (⬅️) is pressed, forward/reverse switch is set in Forward (F) or Reverse (R) position.

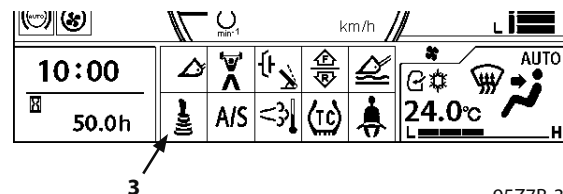
5. Check that parking brake indicator (7) is ON. When the preheat lamp goes OFF (the engine has preheated), sound the horn to clear any personnel away from the area surrounding the machine.



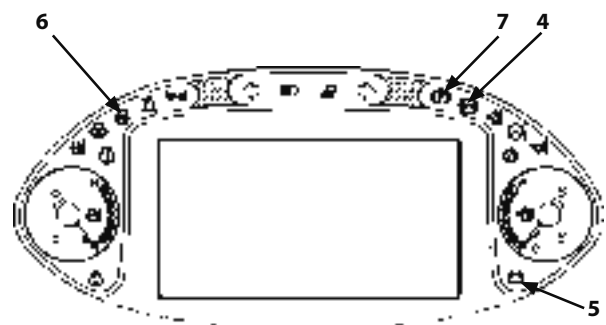
115Z7B-1-81-1



MPD8-01-307



95Z7B-3-7-1



MNEC-01-073

OPERATING ENGINE

6. Turn joystick steering system switch (8) ON. The F/R selector switch indicator (9) turns ON.

NOTE: Turn ON joystick steering system switch (8) after turning key switch to ON position. Otherwise, the machine cannot move forward/reverse.

IMPORTANT: Never operate the starter for more than 15 seconds at a time. If the engine fails to start, return key switch to OFF. Wait for more than 60 seconds, then try again.

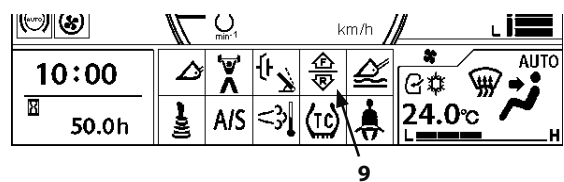
Failure to do so may damage the starter or discharge the batteries.



115Z7B-1-10-3

7. Turn key switch (2) to START position to rotate the starter. The engine will start. Do not step on accelerator pedal (10).
8. As soon as the engine starts, release the key switch.

The key switch will automatically return to the ON position. Run the engine at low idle without applying accelerator pedal (10).



95Z7B-3-7-1

WARNING: Do not operate the machine while the engine RPM is being kept at low idle, otherwise, the machine or the front attachment could unexpectedly move that may result in serious injury.

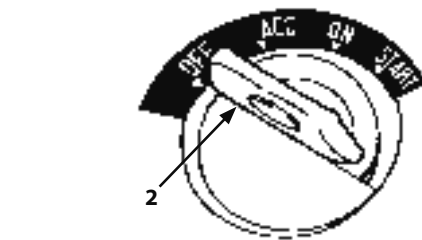
IMPORTANT: At starting the engine, the engine RPM (min^{-1}) is kept at low idle for maximum 35 seconds when the coolant or hydraulic oil temperature is low, or for 3 seconds if these temperatures are in the acceptable operation range. After this period, the engine RPM will increase by applying the accelerator pedal (3).

9. Perform checks to be done after starting the engine and warm up by referring to page 3-9.

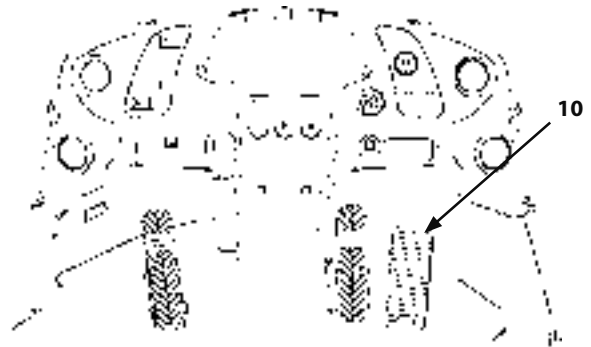
IMPORTANT: If the armrest is raised after starting the engine, above steps 1 through 6 must be repeated to move the machine forward/reverse using the joystick steering lever.

NOTE:

- If the machine is equipped with the emergency steering, the emergency steering auto-check sound may be heard after starting the engine.
- White smoke may occur for several minutes after the engine starts, this is not a malfunction.



MPD8-01-307



115Z7B-1-81-1

OPERATING ENGINE

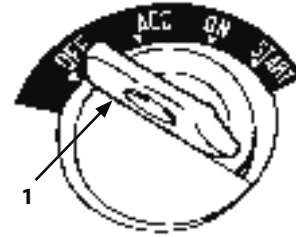
Starting in Cold Weather

Preheating

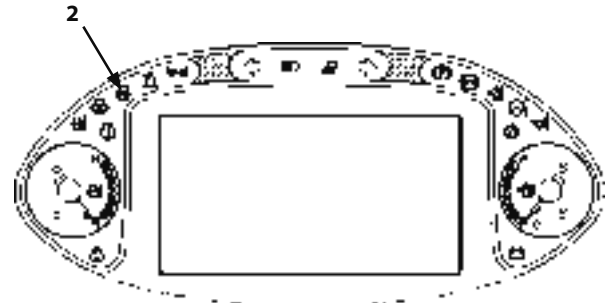
1. Turn the key switch (1) ON. The coolant temperature sensor is activated so that the engine is automatically preheated.
2. Preheat indicator (2) should turn ON. As long as the preheat indicator stays ON, the engine is being heated.

NOTE:

- Preheating time varies depending on the coolant temperature.
- Headlights, working lights or room light may become dim during engine preheating in the cold environment.



MPD8-01-307



MNEC-01-073

3. Turn joystick steering system switch (3) ON. The F/R selector switch indicator (4) turns ON.



NOTE: Turn ON joystick steering system switch (3) after turning key switch to ON position. Otherwise, the machine cannot move forward/reverse.



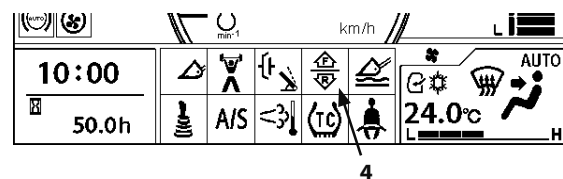
115Z7B-1-10-3

4. As soon as preheat indicator (2) turns OFF, turn key switch (1) to START position to rotate the starter. As soon as the engine starts, release the key switch. The key switch will automatically return to the ON position. Run the engine at low idle without applying accelerator pedal (5).



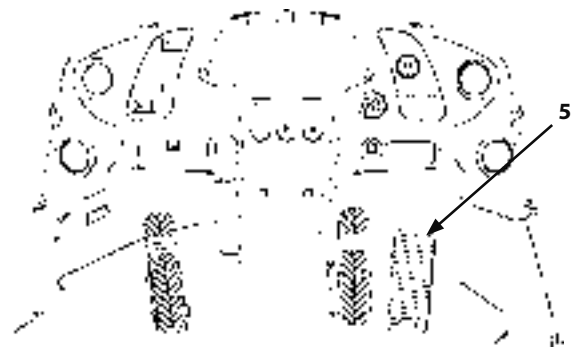
WARNING: Do not operate the machine while the engine RPM is being kept at low idle, otherwise, the machine or the front attachment could unexpectedly move that may result in serious injury.

IMPORTANT: At starting the engine, the engine RPM (min^{-1}) is kept at low idle for maximum 35 seconds to warm up the coolant, hydraulic oil, etc. After this period, the engine RPM will increase by applying the accelerator pedal (5).



95Z7B-3-7-1

5. Perform checks to be done after starting the engine by referring to the following section.



115Z7B-1-81-1

OPERATING ENGINE

Check After Starting

IMPORTANT: If any abnormality is found in the monitor functions, immediately stop the engine and investigate the cause of the trouble.

Check Monitor Operation

1. Check that service indicator (1) is OFF.
2. Check that discharge warning indicator (2) is OFF.
In case the discharge warning indicator stays ON, immediately stop the engine. Inspect the alternator and battery system for problems.
3. Check that low engine oil pressure indicator (3) is OFF.
In case the low engine oil pressure indicator stays ON, immediately stop the engine. Inspect the engine oil pressure system and the oil level.
4. Check that engine coolant temperature gauge (4) is within the blue range.



95Z7B-3-9-1

 **NOTE:** To check indicator bulbs and the buzzer function, when the key switch is turned ON, monitor indicators come ON and continue to stay ON for approx. 2 seconds.

Check Engine Noise and Exhaust Gas Color

Check that the engine noise and exhaust gas color is normal.

 **NOTE:** Check the exhaust gas color as follows. (After warm-up operation, run the engine with no loads.)

Clear or light blue	:	Normal (Perfect combustion)
Black	:	Abnormal (Imperfect combustion, abnormal exhaust filter, abnormal fuel system)
White	:	Abnormal (Oil is leaking into the combustion chamber, abnormal exhaust filter, abnormal fuel system)

 **NOTE:** White smoke may occur for several minutes after the engine starts, this is not a malfunction.

OPERATING ENGINE

Using Booster Batteries

⚠ WARNING:

- An explosive gas is produced while batteries are in use or being charged. Keep open flames and sparks away from the battery area. Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.
- Park the machine and a machine with the booster batteries on a dry or concrete surface, not on steel plates. If the machine is parked on steel plates, the machine is equivalent to a continuously grounded machine so that dangerous unexpected current flow may result.
- Never connect a positive terminal to a negative terminal, as a dangerous short circuit will occur.

IMPORTANT: The machine electrical system is a 24 volt negative (-) ground. Use only 24 volt booster batteries with sufficient capacity.

If the machine batteries are completely discharged so that when starting the engine using booster batteries is necessary, do the following procedure.

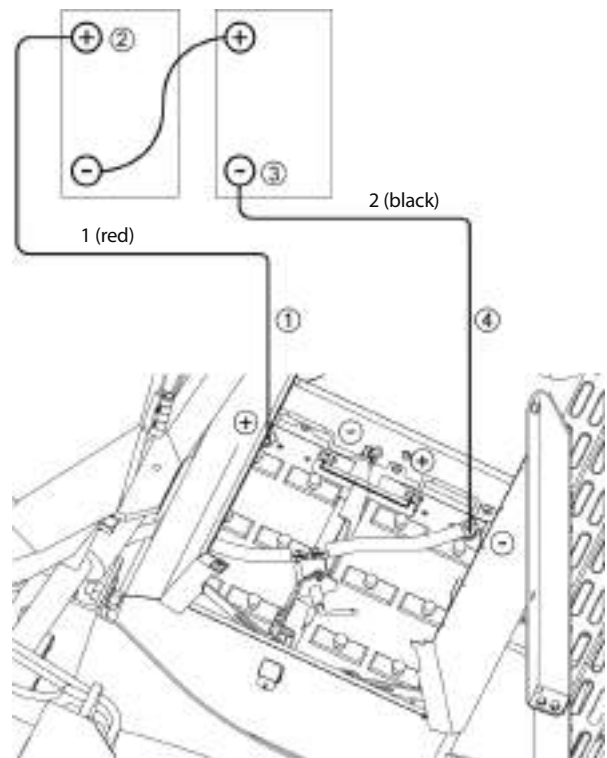


SA-032

OPERATING ENGINE

1. Connecting the booster batteries

- 1.1 Stop the engine on the booster battery mounted machine.
- 1.2 Connect one end of red booster cable (1) to the positive (+) terminal of the machine battery, and the other end to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.
- 1.3 Connect one end of black booster cable (2) to the negative (-) terminal of the booster batteries, and then connect the other end of the cable to the bolt of black cable (3) on machine frame side that connects the negative (-) terminal of the machine battery and machine frame. In the last connection to the bracket, sparks may fly so keep the machine batteries as far away as possible from the bracket.
- 1.4 After securely connecting the booster cables, start the engine on the booster battery mounted machine.
- 1.5 Start the engine on the machine.
- 1.6 After the engine starts, leave the booster batteries connected long enough so as not to overload alternator, then disconnect booster cables (1 and 2) in the following steps.



115Z7-3-10

2. Disconnecting the booster cables

- 2.1 Disconnect black negative (-) cable (2) from the machine frame first.
- 2.2 Disconnect the other end of black booster cable (2) from the negative terminal of the booster batteries.
- 2.3 Disconnect one end of red booster cable (1) from the positive terminal of the booster battery.
- 2.4 Disconnect the other end of red booster cable (1) from the positive terminal of the machine battery.

OPERATING ENGINE

Warm Up

WARNING: Do not operate the machine while the engine RPM is being kept at low idle, otherwise, the machine or the front attachment could unexpectedly move that may result in serious injury.

CAUTION:

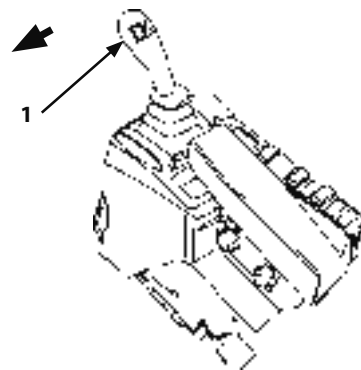
- Operating the machine without warming up operation causes damage to the engine and hydraulic components. Be sure to perform warm up operation not only to protect the hydraulic components from being damaged but also to ensure safe operation.
- Do not idle the engine for excessively long periods. Long periods of idling can cause poor engine performance.

IMPORTANT: At starting the engine, the engine RPM (min^{-1}) is kept at low idle for maximum 35 seconds to warm up the coolant or hydraulic oil. After this period, the engine RPM will increase by applying the accelerator pedal (3).

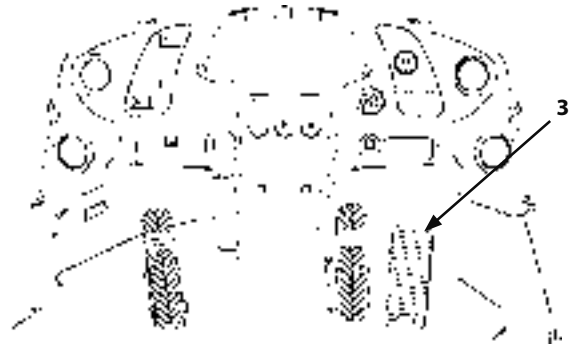
If the machine is operated with the hydraulic oil temperature below 20°C , damage to the hydraulic components may result. After starting the engine, perform warm up as described below before operating the machine until the hydraulic temperature is above 20°C .

1. While releasing accelerator pedal (3), run the engine at low idle speed for about 3~5 minutes with no load.
2. Increase the engine revolutions to 1200 min^{-1} (RPM's). Raise the bucket above the ground and hold bucket control lever (1) in the tilt position for 10 seconds. (Do not operate control levers other than the bucket control lever at this time.)

IMPORTANT: Excessively repeated operation of bucket control lever (1) could generate abnormal surge pressure, damaging in hydraulic parts.



MN HK-01-012



115Z7B-1-81-1

OPERATING ENGINE

Cold Weather Warm Up

⚠ WARNING: Do not operate the machine while the engine RPM is being kept at low idle, otherwise, the machine or the front attachment could unexpectedly move that may result in serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION:

- In case the hydraulic oil temperature is low, perform cold weather warm up. Operate the machine only after loading linkage speed is normal. Operating the machine without warming up first causes damage to the engine and hydraulic components. Be sure to perform warm up, not only to protect the hydraulic components from being damaged, but also to ensure safe operation.
- Do not idle the engine for excessively long periods. Long periods of idling can cause poor engine performance.

IMPORTANT:

- At starting the engine, the engine RPM (min^{-1}) is kept at low idle for maximum 35 seconds to warm up the coolant or hydraulic oil. After this period, the engine RPM will increase by applying the accelerator pedal (3).
- Do not idle the engine for excessively long periods of time. Long periods of idling (more than 10 minutes) can damage an engine because combustion chamber temperatures drop so low the fuel can not burn completely. This will cause carbon to form in the injector spray holes and on the piston rings and can result in stuck valves.



115Z7B-1-81-1

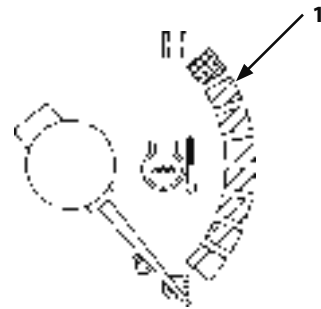
OPERATING ENGINE

1. Run the engine at slow idle speed for more than 5 minutes to warm up.

If the [Warm Up Operation] in the multi-monitor setting menu is set to "ON" (enabled), the engine speed automatically increases from slow idle to 1000 min⁻¹ (rpm) and enters warm-up mode when hydraulic oil temperature is 0°C or lower.

Further, when either hydraulic oil temperature reaches 30°C or higher, or engine coolant temperature reaches 40°C or higher, the warm-up mode is automatically canceled, and the engine runs in slow idle mode.

(Do not operate the machine until the needle of coolant temperature gauge (1) starts moving.)



 NOTE:

- At this time, do not operate the engine in slow or fast speed. Use medium engine speeds for safe and quick warm up.
- Refer to page 1-67 for Warm Up Operation setting menu.
- When auto shut-down setting is ON, the engine may stop during warm up. To avoid this situation, deactivate the auto shut-down or set the auto shut-down activating time longer. Refer to page 1-53 for Auto Shut-Down setting menu.

MNEC-03-002

2. Fully extend the bucket cylinder.

 NOTE: Do not continuously operate the bucket control lever for more than 10 seconds at a time. Do not bang linkage when cold.

3. Slowly and fully retract the bucket cylinder.

 NOTE: Do not continuously operate the bucket control lever for more than 10 seconds at a time. Do not bang linkage when cold.

4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 above until the loading linkage speed is normal. When the air temperature is lower than 0°C, extend the warm up time by running the engine at about 1200~1500 min⁻¹ (RPM's).

 NOTE: Headlights, working lights or room light may become dim during engine preheating in the cold environment.

OPERATING ENGINE

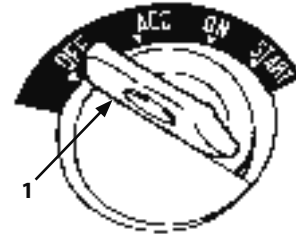
Stopping Engine

Stop the engine in the following manner.

IMPORTANT: Never stop the engine while moving the machine.

If the engine stops, the steering system may become inoperable, or it may cause other malfunctions or seizure of parking brake.

1. Lower and level the bucket before stopping the engine.

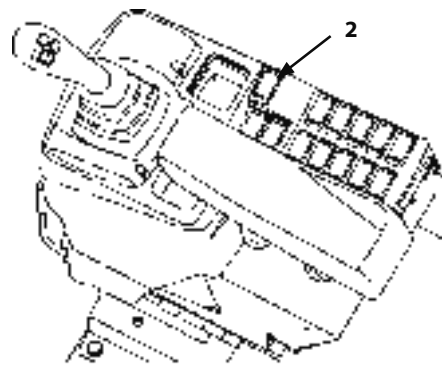


MPD8-01-307

IMPORTANT:

- If an engine equipped with a turbocharger is stopped without first cooling down at low rpm's, the lubricant on the turbocharger bearing and seal surfaces may be dissipated due to the intense heat inside the turbocharger, possibly damaging the turbocharger.
- During aftertreatment device regeneration, do not stop the engine unless absolutely necessary. Immediately after regeneration completes, and when necessity dictates the engine be stopped during regeneration, run the engine at slow idle to cool it.

If the engine is stopped suddenly and not cooled, the aftertreatment device will remain hot which may result in damage to the urea SCR system.



MNHK-01-011

2. Run the engine at low idle speed for 5 minutes to cool the engine.

 **NOTE:** Do not idle for excessively long periods. Observe local and federal engine idling regulations.

3. Turn the key switch (1) to OFF position to stop the engine.
4. Press LOCK () side of control lever lock switch (2).
5. Make sure that the light switch is turned OFF.

 **NOTE:** Do not idle for excessively long periods. Observe local and federal engine idling regulations.

When stopping the machine, refer to page 4-16 for further procedures.

When parking the machine, refer to page 4-18 for further procedures.

IMPORTANT: After stopping the engine, the DEF/AdBlue® pump keeps operating to return the DEF/AdBlue® in piping to the DEF/AdBlue® tank. Do not turn the battery disconnect switch OFF while pump running (for approx. 5 minutes). Failure to do so may damage the SCR system.

MOVING MACHINE

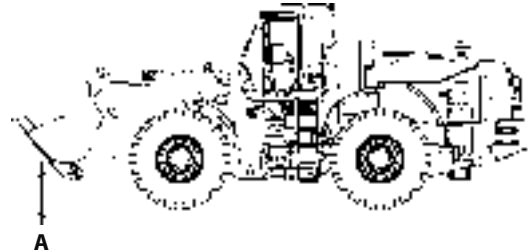
Driving the Machine

Correct operation will result in extending the service life of each part and component as well as saving fuel and oil. Always be sure to safely and efficiently operate the machine while paying attention to the following points.

IMPORTANT: The engine must be started and ready for driving correctly by referring to the previous section "OPERATING THE ENGINE".

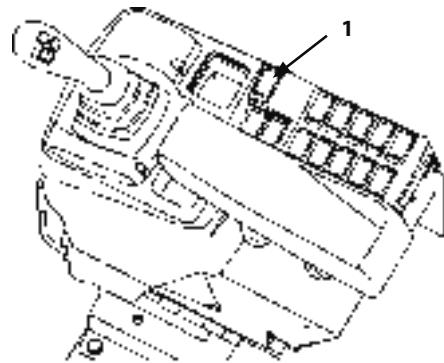
Precautions for Starting to Move

1. Perform a thorough walk-around inspection.
Conduct correct start-up procedure.
2. After raising the lift arm, set the lift arms and bucket in the operating position.
3. Before driving on public roads, set the machine to the driving position as illustrated to the right.
4. Be sure to press lock (🔒) side of control lever lock switch (1) so that the linkage will not move even if the control levers are accidentally moved.



Position
A: 545 mm

115Z7B-4-1-1



MNHK-01-011

MOVING MACHINE

Starting to Move

WARNING: Start to move the machine only after checking that no personnel and/or obstacles are present around the machine.

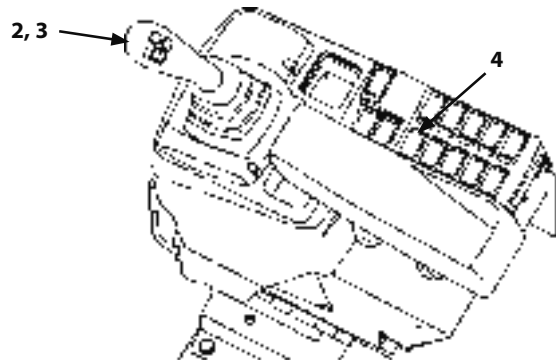
Never turn ride control switch (4) to ON position when traveling the machine or raising the bucket. Before turning the ride control switch (4) ON, stop the machine and confirm that no one is around the bucket. Avoid turning ride control switch (4) to ON position while moving the machine. Failure to do so may automatically move the lift arm up or down.

Refer to page 1-105 for detailed information of ride control switch (4).

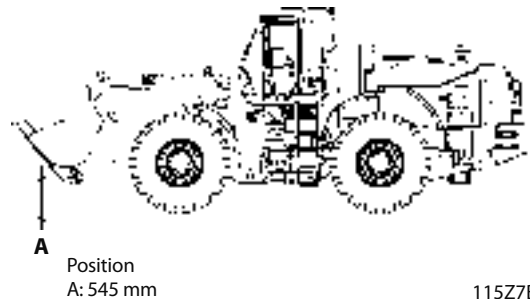
1. Check that none of the warning indicators except parking brake indicator (1) on the monitor panel are ON when engine is running.
2. Set the front attachment in the operating position by operating control levers (2) (3).



95Z7B-3-9-1



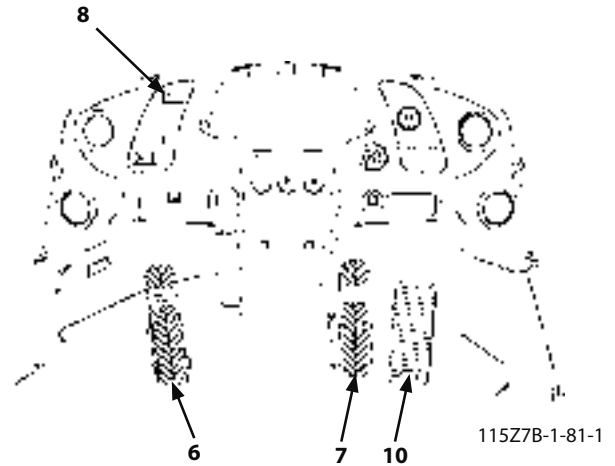
MN HK-01-011



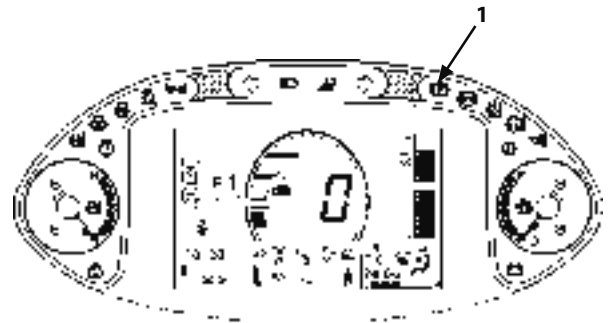
115Z7B-4-1-1

MOVING MACHINE

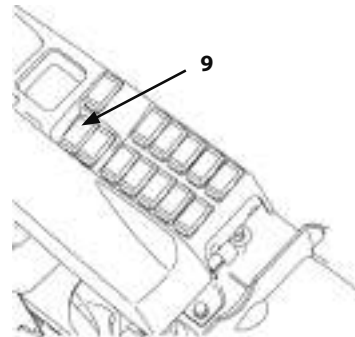
3. Step on brake pedal (6) or (7) and press parking brake switch (8) to the OFF position to release the parking brake.



Check that at this time parking brake indicator (1) goes OFF.



NOTE: When starting to ascend a slope, turn clutch cut switch (9) (OFF) (clutch engaged), and depress the brake pedal (6). Gradually release the brake pedal while depressing the accelerator pedal to easily start ascending a slope.



MOVING MACHINE

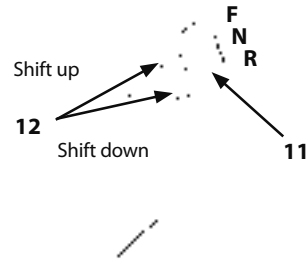
4. Manual Shift (M)

After setting forward/reverse switch (11) to either forward (F) or reverse (R) position, press the shift switch (12) to the desired position. The transmission gear position can be shifted in 4 ranges in the forward and 3 ranges in the reverse mode. Select the most appropriate transmission range position according to the operating conditions.

Manual Mode:

Manual shift mode.

The transmission gear is shifted by pressing shift up/down switches (12).



5. Auto Shift

115Z7B-4-4-1

Set forward/reverse switch (11) to (F) or (R). Select the most appropriate transmission range position according to the operating conditions. Select the most appropriate travel pattern by operating travel mode selector (13).

AUTO 1 Mode:

This mode sets 1st range as the minimum speed gear stage.

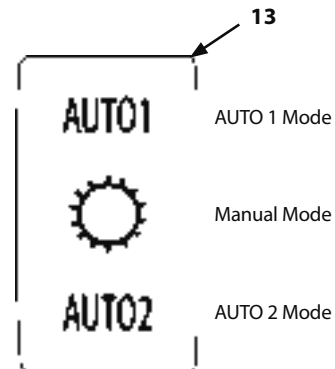
Start traveling with 2nd range. When driving load increases, it automatically shifts to 1st range.

This mode is suited for heavy digging work or ascending on a slope.

AUTO 2 Mode:

This mode sets 2nd range as the minimum speed gear stage.

This mode is suited for removing snow or lighter applications.



MNEC-01-024

NOTE:

- Avoid operating this switch while machine is moving.
- Do not use this switch on a slope. Use of the Quick Power Switch is recommended to have more acceleration while ascending on a slope.
(Refer to page 1-107 for Quick Power Switch.)

7. Release brake pedals (7) and step on accelerator pedal (10) to start traveling.

MOVING MACHINE

Shift Range of Auto Transmission

Mode	Shift Position	Shift Range
AUTO 1:	1st range	1st range only
	(Forward)	1st range ↔ 2nd range → 2nd L-UP → 3rd range → 3rd L-UP → 4th range ↔ 4th L-UP ← ← ← ← ←
	(Reverse)	1st range ↔ 2nd range → 2nd L-UP → 3rd range ↔ 3rd L-UP ← ← ←
AUTO 2:	1st range	1st range only
	(Forward)	2nd range → 2nd L-UP → 3rd range → 3rd L-UP → 4th range ↔ 4th L-UP ← ← ← ← ←
	(Reverse)	2nd range → 2nd L-UP → 3rd range ↔ 3rd L-UP ← ← ←



NOTE:

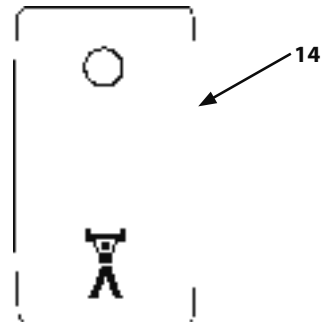
- * Start traveling with 2nd range.
- "L-UP" stands for lock-up, and indicates lockup clutch is used.
When lockup setting is turned OFF, the L-UP shift ranges are skipped during shift change. Refer to page 1-61 for the lockup setting.
- L-UP shift ranges are skipped during shift down.
- When AUTO 1 is selected, the gear automatically shifts in 1st range according to the load. However, the transmission will not shift in 1st range while depressing the brake pedal.

MOVING MACHINE

Power Mode Selector

Pressing power mode selector switch (14) alternately activates (ON) and deactivates (OFF) the power mode. When the power mode is activated (ON), the indicator "A" appears on the monitor display.

The power mode is suited for heavy digging work prioritizing work effectiveness. Under auto shifting mode, the gear is shifted in regular RPM's (min⁻¹) and shift mapping.



MNEC-01-016

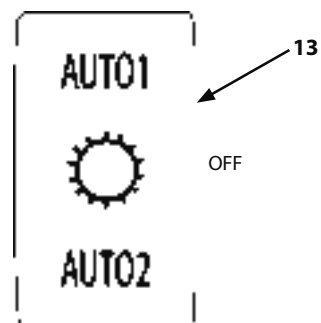
 **NOTE:** When the power mode is OFF, the machine operates prioritizing fuel consumption. Under auto shifting mode, the gear is shifted in early timing.

Shift Change Delay Mode

When travel mode selector (13) is set in AUTO 1 or AUTO 2, the shift up timing in 2nd range → 3rd range is delayed. Loading work can be easily done in 2nd range position.

Shift Up Delay

- Forward movement : The gear shifts up when moving the machine at high speed in 2nd range for 8 seconds or longer. The gear will not shift while the lift arm is raising. The forward shift up delay will operate only one time when the bucket is in the operating position. When the bucket is lower at digging position, the shift delay always operates.
- Reverse movement : The gear shifts up when operating the machine at high speed in 2nd range for 8 seconds or longer. The shift up delay always operates.



MNEC-01-024

 **NOTE:**

- This does not apply when the lockup clutch is used; shift up timing from 2nd range to 2nd lock-up, or from 2nd lock-up to 3rd range is not delayed.
- Capability to activate or not activate the shift change delay mode is selected via the transmission setting menu on the monitor. Refer to page 1-59 for details.

MOVING MACHINE

Parking Brake Switch

WARNING:

- To prevent accidents due to running away of the machine, after parking the machine or before leaving the machine, be sure to apply the parking brake.
- Never apply the parking brake switch (1) while moving the machine except in an emergency. Premature wear and/or damage to the parking brake may result. After the parking brake has been applied in an emergency while moving the machine, have the parking brake checked at Authorized Dealer.

1. Press the OFF side of parking brake switch (1) to release the parking brake. Check that parking brake indicator (2) goes OFF by pressing the switch firmly twice.

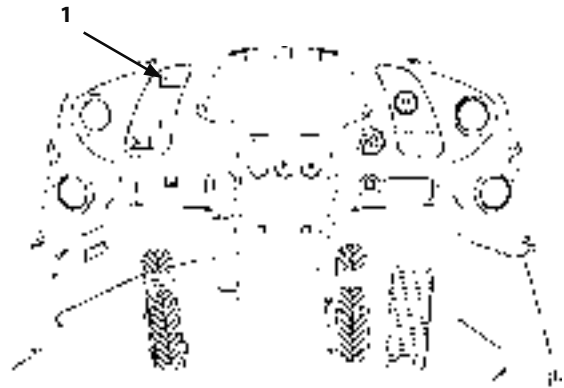
Press the ON side of parking brake switch (1) to apply the parking brake.

Operate the parking brake after stopping the machine on level ground.

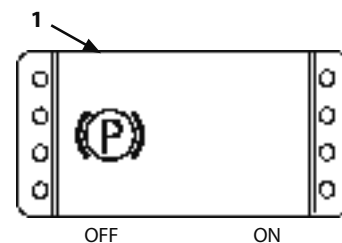
 NOTE: While running the engine, when the parking brake is applied with forward/reverse switch (3) in neutral, parking brake indicator (2) comes ON.

2. While running the engine, when the parking brake is applied with forward/reverse switch (3) in either the forward (F) or reverse (R) position, parking brake indicator (2) comes ON, and the alarm buzzer sounds. F-N-R display (4) of the monitor display indicates "N" not "R". The display will not indicate "F" and "R" until the parking brake is released.
3. To ensure safe operation, when the engine is stopped, the parking brake is applied even if parking brake switch (1) is in the OFF position.

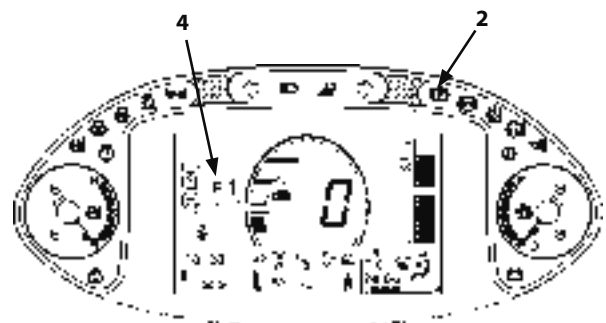
In this case even after the engine is restarted, the parking brake will not be released. After starting the engine, push the ON position of parking brake switch (1) once. Then, push the OFF position parking brake switch (1) to release the parking brake.



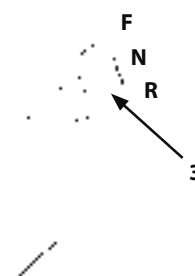
115Z7B-1-81-1



MNEC-01-058



MNEK-01-500



115Z7B-4-4-1

MOVING MACHINE

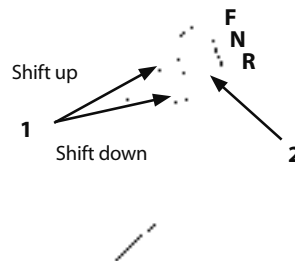
Drive Speed Change (Manual Shift)

The transmission gear range of 2nd, 3rd and 4th can be selected with shift switch (1).

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|---|
| 1st and 2nd ranges | : | To be used for excavation and loading work |
| 3rd and 4th ranges | : | To be used for traveling over long distances. |

NOTE:

- Avoid rapid gear changes using shift switch (1) while traveling at high speed. Shift the gear range only after reducing the travel speed by releasing the accelerator pedal.
- Refer to item 5 on page 4-4 for the auto-shifting mode.



115Z7B-4-4-1

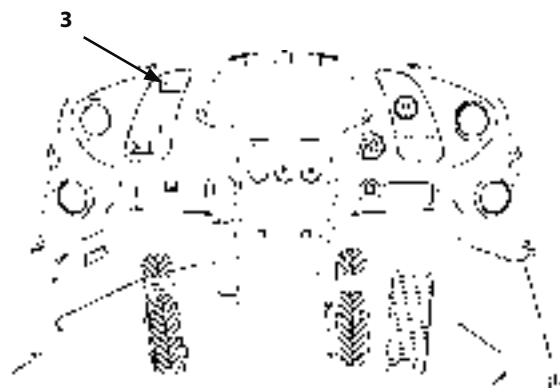
Changing Forward/Reverse Drive Direction

WARNING:

- Before changing the forward/reverse drive direction, confirm that the direction of drive is clear.
- To ensure operator's safety and ensure the longevity of the power train, change the machine drive direction only after sufficiently slowing down the machine.

1. Press the OFF position of parking brake switch (3).
2. Set forward/reverse switch (2) to the desired position.

- | | | |
|---|---|-----------------|
| F | : | Forward Driving |
| N | : | Neutral |
| R | : | Reverse Driving |



115Z7B-1-81-1

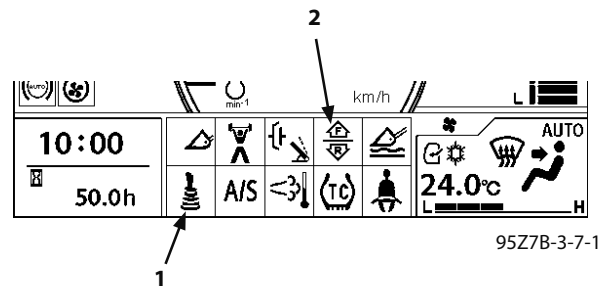
MOVING MACHINE

Steering

WARNING:

- Avoid sudden steering while moving the machine at high speeds, while moving on a steep slope, or while raising the lift arms. Failure to do so may cause the machine to turn over.
- Never attempt to stop the engine while steering the machine. If the engine is stopped, the parking brake will be applied so that steering will be impossible. Never stop the engine while moving the machine.
- Never steer while raising the lift arm high as it is extremely dangerous and may cause the machine to turn over.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that both joystick steering indicator (1) and F/R selector switch indicator (2) are turned on before operating joystick steering (3). Refer to page 3-6 for these indicators.



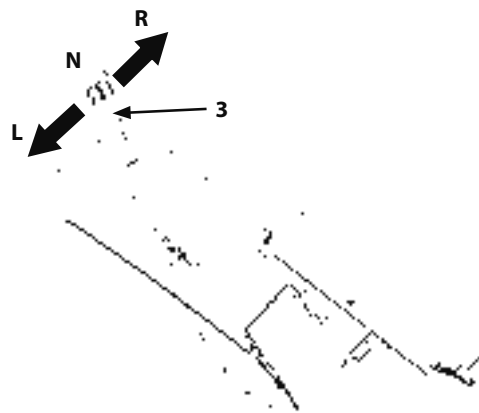
Turn joystick steering (3) toward the direction you intend to steer the machine during operation.

- When joystick steering (3) is moved from the neutral (centered) position to the right (or left), the machine steer to the right (or left).
- When joystick steering (3) is returned to the neutral position, the machine stops steering.
- The further joystick steering (3) is moved to the side, the faster the machine steers (proportional steering).

IMPORTANT:

- Excessive force will damage the joystick steering. Do not jam, slap, or force the joystick steering beyond its normal range.
- Avoid putting excessive force down on the armrest. Never sit on the armrest.

 **NOTE:** This machine has an articulated frame design. The front and rear chassis are coupled by connection pins (center pins) so that the rear wheels follow the tracks of the front wheels. Turn the joystick steering slowly so as to follow the motion of the machine.



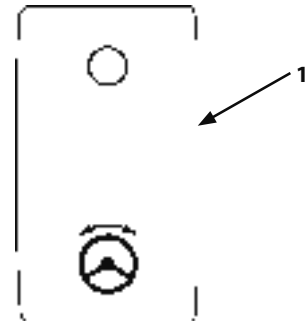
MNHNK-01-013

MOVING MACHINE

Emergency Steering

If the oil pressure in the steering system lowers, the emergency steering system is activated so that steering operation can be achieved. If the emergency steering system is activated, the emergency steering indicator lights and the buzzer sounds. Immediately park the machine in a safe location. Then, contact Authorized Dealer. The emergency steering can be used for 60 seconds.

IMPORTANT: The emergency steering system is provided for an emergency use. If continuously used for more than 60 seconds, damage to the system may result.



MNEC-01-020

Even though the machine is equipped with the emergency steering system, if the steering function becomes inoperable while moving machine, press emergency steering check switch (1) on the right console to activate the emergency steering system. Then, immediately park and stop the machine in a safe location.

 NOTE:

- The emergency steering auto-check sound may be heard for two seconds after starting the engine.
- Before operating the machine, press emergency steering check switch (1) to confirm that the emergency steering pump operates normally.

MOVING MACHINE

Emergency Stop and Restart of Operation

Follow the tips described below when required to stop or restart operation when an emergency has occurred.

1. Slowly release the accelerator pedal. Depress the service brake pedal to stop the machine.
2. Slowly depress the accelerator pedal while releasing service brake pedal to move the machine again.
3. In case the machine is required to park the machine for a long period of time, return the forward/reverse switch to neutral (N), turn the parking brake switch ON, and apply the parking brake to ensure safety.
4. During long load and carry applications, the lift arm position may lower due to inner hydraulic oil leaks. When required to adjust the lift arm position, temporarily stop machine, return the forward/reverse switch to neutral, apply the parking brake by turning the parking brake switch ON. Then, after repositioning the position of lift arm and bucket, begin moving the machine again. Always allow the machine to maintain correct drive position.

MOVING MACHINE

Precautions for Traveling

When operating, observe the previously noted operating precautions along with the others shown below to ensure safe and correct operation.



WARNING:

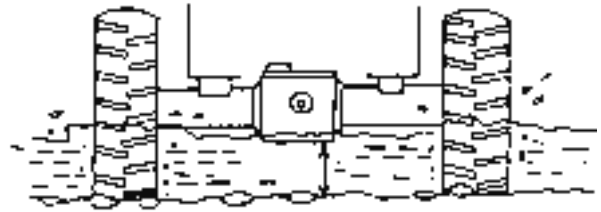
- **In case a tire is punctured while driving, securely hold the support bar and slowly reduce the drive speed.**
If the service brake is suddenly applied while a tire is punctured, steering may lose control, possibly creating an accident. Never apply the brake quickly if a tire is punctured.
- **Never mount or dismount a moving machine. Never allow any personnel other than the operator to ride on the machine when operating.**
- Even after break-in is complete, avoid running the engine at high RPM's (min⁻¹) under no load.
- If any abnormal condition such as an abnormal noise, vibration, or smell is noticed while operating, immediately stop the engine and inspect the machine for any trouble.
- Avoid using sudden steering or braking as much as possible because your machine and other machines may become involved in a hazardous condition.
- Road speeds of this machine are lower than most automobiles. Always give the right of way to automobiles.
- Make it a habit to periodically scan the gauges and instruments. If any abnormality is recognized, immediately stop the machine and check the machine for the cause of the trouble.
- When required to drive on the road shoulder or in tight spaces, use a signal person or signal car.
- Slowly approach a crossing while paying attention to the visibility ahead and in the opposite lane.

MOVING MACHINE

Operating in Water or on Soft Ground

IMPORTANT: If the axles, transmission, etc. should become submerged under water to the point that water enters into them, they must be reconditioned immediately, otherwise the inner gears may wear excessively, or the machine may become damaged. Contact Authorized Dealer for inspection and maintenance.

- Do not submerge the front and rear axles, transmission, or front and rear propeller shafts in water or mud. Avoid operating in water as much as possible.
- If operating in water or mud is unavoidable, do not allow the machine to be submerged deeper than allowable depth (A) (up to the bottom of the axle housing). Reduce the allowable depth in case the river bed is feared to be rugged or water is flowing fast.
- When operating on muddy ground, mud can easily accumulate on the chassis even if the chassis is not heavily submerged in mud. Check regularly and clean as necessary.



M4GB-04-003

 **NOTE:** After operation is complete, be sure to wash and lubricate all areas which were submerged.

MOVING MACHINE

Precautions for Driving on Slopes



WARNING:

- **Never allow the machine to descend a slope with the forward/reverse switch (or lever) in neutral (N). This will not only cause the excessive engine revolutions to malfunction but also cause other engine and machine troubles.**
- **When descending a slope, use normal resistance to travel as exerted by the engine through the drive train. Apply the brakes only when absolutely required. If the brake is continuously used while descending a slope, the brake temperature will increase, possibly decreasing braking performance.**
If overheating of the brake system is noticed, immediately park the machine in a safe location. Restart and operate the machine only after the brake system is sufficiently cooled.
- **When descending a slope, do not operate the machine at a speed faster than the maximum travel speed. Failure to do so may damage the machine and/or a serious accident may result.**

When steering on a slope, lower the loader front to increase the machine stability. Do not steer on a steep slope since this may cause the machine to turn over.

When descending a slope, descend in a low drive range with engine resistance applied.

Do not operate the machine at a speed faster than the maximum travel speed.

In case the engine stalls on a slope, immediately step on the service brake pedal, lower the loader arms to the ground and stop the machine. The parking brake is automatically applied when the engine is stopped regardless of the position of the parking brake switch. Before restarting engine, return the forward/reverse switch to neutral (N) and turn the parking brake switch ON.

- Before descending a slope, confirm that the service and parking brake systems work normally.
- In case the hydraulic oil and lubricant temperatures are low, the machine gradability may decrease. Before climbing a steep slope, warm up the machine.

MOVING MACHINE

Precautions to be Taken if Machine Failure Occurs

- Keep alert. While paying attention to the vehicles following you, slowly reduce the travel speed and park the machine on the road shoulder away from flow of traffic.
- Lower the lift arms.
- Set the parking brake.
- Indicate that the machine is disabled. Unless a sign is used, collision with a following vehicle from behind may result.
Be sure to indicate that the machine is disabled by one or more of the following methods.
 - Use disabled machine triangles.
 - Turn the hazard lights ON.
 - Use an emergency signal instrument (emergency signal light or reflective triangles).



WARNING: Do not spill oil on the road surface. Oil spillage may cause another vehicle to slide, possibly creating a serious accident.

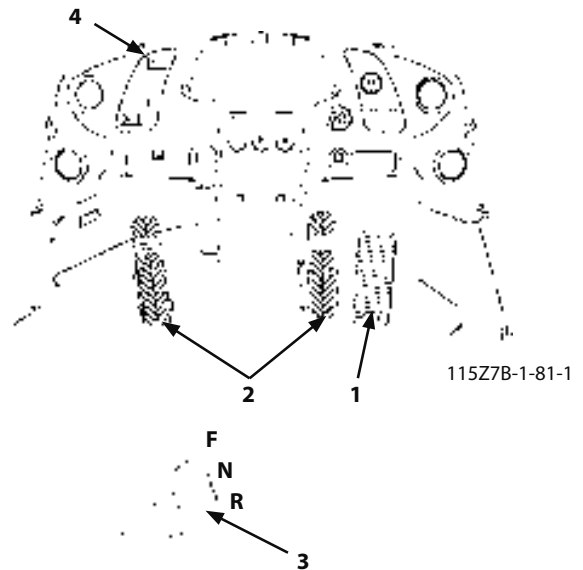
- In case of hydraulic oil leaks, immediately repair the machine. If oil gets on the road surface, take the highest priority to notify the following vehicles of this danger. Then, remove the leaked oil as soon as possible.
- In case the repairing the machine by yourself is impossible, contact Authorized Dealer.

MOVING MACHINE

Stop

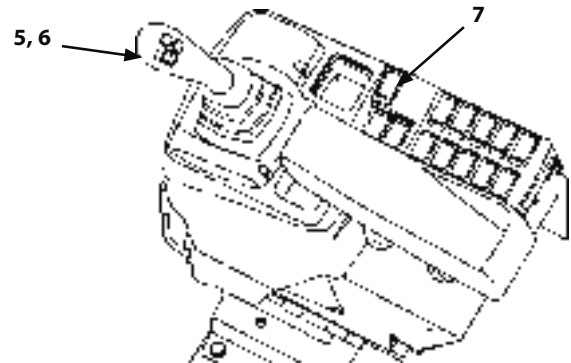
1. Avoid sudden deceleration. Smoothly reduce operating speed.

Release accelerator pedal (1) and step on brake pedal (2) to stop the machine.



2. Set forward/reverse switch (3) to neutral (N).
3. Press the ON position of parking brake switch (4).

4. Level the bucket with the surface of the ground and lower the bucket to the ground by operating control levers (5, 6).
5. Press lock (lock symbol) side of control lever lock switch (7).



IMPORTANT:

- This machine is equipped with a turbocharged engine. Therefore if the engine is stopped without first cooling down at low RPM's, the lubricant on the turbocharger bearing and seal surfaces may be dissipated due to the intense heat present inside turbocharger, possibly damaging the turbocharger.
- During aftertreatment device regeneration, do not stop the engine unless absolutely necessary. Immediately after regeneration completes, and when necessity dictates the engine be stopped during regeneration, run the engine at slow idle to cool it.
If the engine is stopped suddenly and not cooled, the aftertreatment device will remain hot which may result in damage to the urea SCR system.

6. Run the engine at slow idle speed for 5 minutes to cool the engine.

 **NOTE:** Do not idle for excessively long periods. Observe local and federal engine idling regulations.

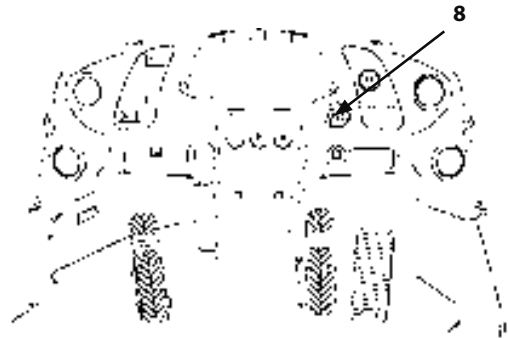
MN HK-01-011

MOVING MACHINE

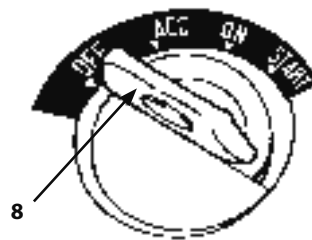
IMPORTANT: Do not leave the machine with key switch (8) in ACC position. This may discharge the batteries.

Be sure to turn key switch to OFF position before leaving the machine.

7. Turn key switch (8) to OFF position to stop the engine. Remove the key from the switch.

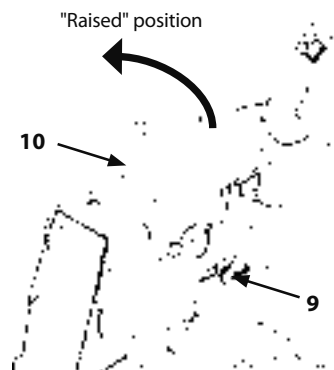


115Z7B-1-81-1

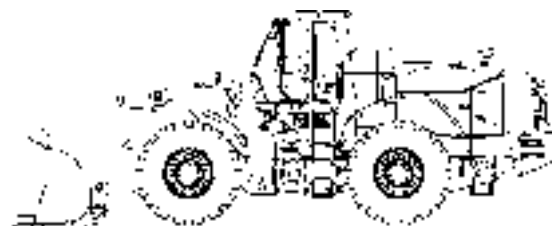


MPD8-01-307

8. Push lock button (9) and lift armrest (10) to the fully raised position
9. Before leaving the machine, turn OFF the light switch, close and lock all the windows, cab doors, and covers.



115Z7B-1-10-3



Stop and Parking Position

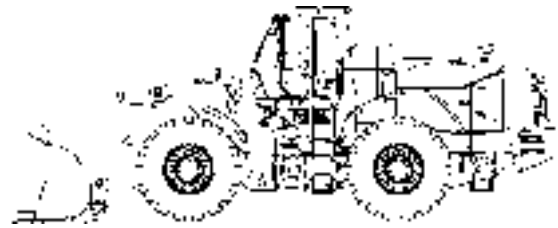
115Z7B-BKT

MOVING MACHINE

Parking

IMPORTANT: When parking the machine with cab door and windows open, cab electrical components may be damaged by bad weather. Always close windows, roof vent and cab doors when parking the machine.

1. Stop and park the machine on level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground.
2. Turn parking brake switch (1) ON.

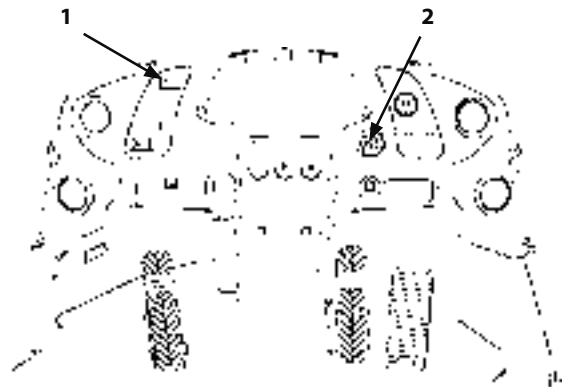


Stop and Parking Position

115Z7B-BKT

IMPORTANT:

- This machine is equipped with a turbocharged engine. Therefore if the engine is stopped without first cooling down at low RPM's, the lubricant on the turbocharger bearing and seal surfaces may be dissipated due to the intense heat present inside turbocharger, possibly damaging the turbocharger.
- During aftertreatment device regeneration, do not stop the engine unless absolutely necessary. Immediately after regeneration completes, and when necessity dictates the engine be stopped during regeneration, run the engine at slow idle to cool it.
If the engine is stopped suddenly and not cooled, the aftertreatment device will remain hot which may result in damage to the urea SCR system.

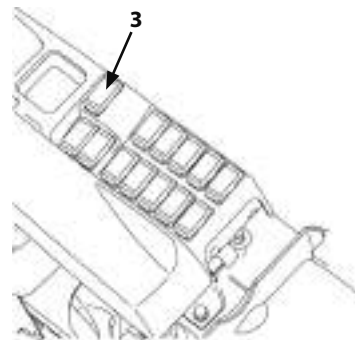


115Z7B-1-81-1

3. Run the engine at low idle speed to cool the engine for a few minutes.

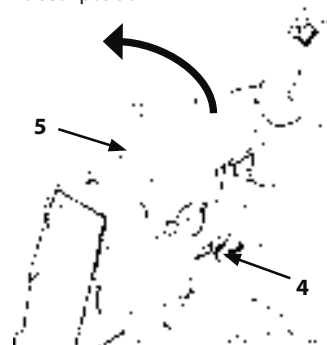
 **NOTE:** Do not idle for excessively long periods. Observe local and federal engine idling regulations.

4. Turn key switch (2) to OFF position to stop the engine. Remove the key from the switch.
5. Press lock (U) side of control lever lock switch (3).
6. Push lock button (4) and lift armrest (5) to the fully raised position.
7. Before leaving the machine, turn OFF the light switch, close and lock all the windows, cab doors, and covers.



115MNEC-07-01

"Raised" position



115Z7B-1-10-3

MOVING MACHINE

Emergency Stopping

When the Engine has Stalled During Operation:

Pressurized oil in the accumulator acts on the brake when the brake pedal is depressed. Immediately park and stop the machine in a safe location. At this time, do not repeatedly apply the brake pedal.

The brake oil pressure will be quickly reduced so that the brakes become inoperable.

If the machine does not stop even if the brake pedal is applied, press the parking brake switch ON side to stop the machine.

The joystick steering will become hard to operate as the hydraulic system becomes inoperable.

In the event any above mentioned symptom occurs, immediately trace the cause of the problem.
In case a complicate failure has occurred, consult Authorized Dealer.

MOVING MACHINE

Auto Brake

Auto brake applies the service brakes and turns on the warning buzzer when the machine speed exceeds the preset limit. Auto brake indicator (1) appears on the monitor panel (refer to page 1-25).

This feature protects the transmission from excessive speed.

In case of the direction change, the warning buzzer does not turn on, only the service brakes are applied and auto brake indicator (1) appears.



115Z7B-4-20-1

IMPORTANT: When auto brake applies, machine may slow down suddenly. Be prepared. Wear seat belt.

Auto brake works under the following conditions.

- Over speed
If the machine runs above the following speeds forward or reverse;

Shift Range	Forward	Reverse
1	14.9 km/h	14.9 km/h
2	21.6 km/h	23.8 km/h
2L	15.4 km/h	17.0 km/h
3	35.8 km/h	35.8 km/h
3L	26.0 km/h	28.7 km/h
4	35.8 km/h	---
4L	35.8 km/h	---

 **NOTE:** When the machine speed reaches the specified machine maximum speed at the 4th speed range, the engine speed automatically reduces before the auto brake is applied to keep within the safety speed limit. Still the auto brake should operate if the machine speed exceeds the speed mentioned above or higher at each speed range.

- Direction change
When the direction is changed while running over the following speed.

Shift Range	Speed
1st, 2nd	12.0 km/h
3rd, 4th	8.0 km/h

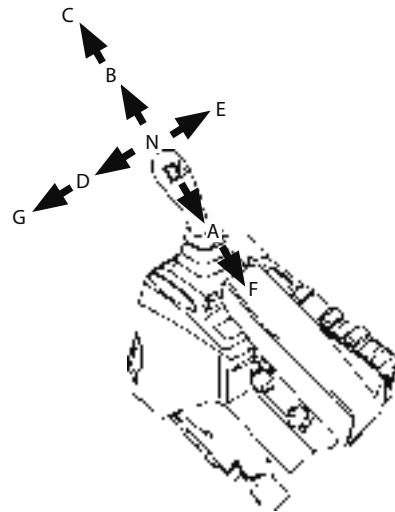
 **NOTE:** The above specified speeds are applicable to machines with standard tires (35/65R33). When using tires in other size, contact to your local representative.

OPERATING MACHINE

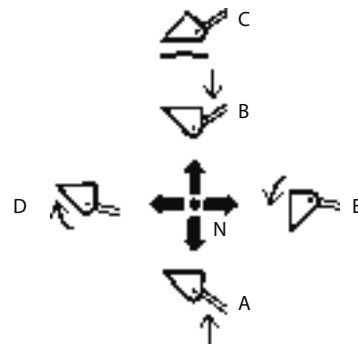
Loading Multi-Function Joystick Lever

The multi-function joystick lever is used to operate the lift arm and/or bucket.

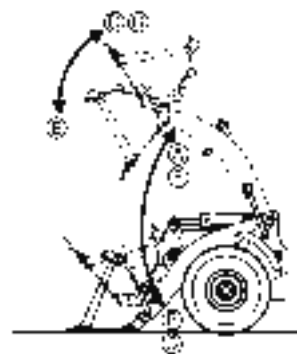
Lever Position	Lift Arm/Bucket Operation
C	Float (Detent): The lift arm free falls and can be moved as loads are applied. The lever will stay in this position.
B	Lift Arm Lower
N	Hold: The lift arm is stopped and held in that position.
A	Lift Arm Raise
F	Detent: The lift arm is held in the raise position with the detent.
G	Detent: When the multi-function joystick lever is moved from the bucket dump position to the bucket tilt position, the multi-function joystick lever is held in this position with the detent.
D	Bucket Tilt (or Roll Back): The bucket is tilted back, taking the transportation position.
N	Hold: The bucket is stopped and held in that position.
E	Bucket Dump: The bucket is tilted forward to dump the bucket load.



MNHK-01-012



M4GB-01-074



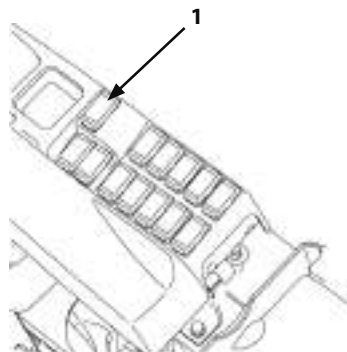
M4GB-01-073

OPERATING MACHINE

Control Lever Lock

WARNING:

- Be sure to press lock (🔒) side of control lever lock switch (1).
- Before leaving the operator's seat, be sure to stop the engine. Then, set control lever lock switch (1) to the lock (🔒) position.
- Always check to be sure that the control lever lock switch is set in the lock (🔒) position before transporting the machine or leaving the machine at the end of the shift.



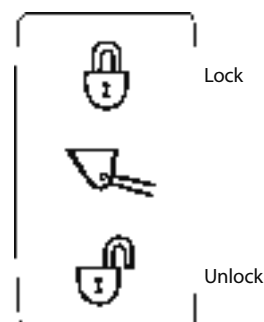
115MNEC-07-01

Control lever lock switch (1) is provided to prevent unexpected machine operation if the operator were to mistakenly come in contact with the bucket and/or lift arm control lever when getting on or off the machine. When control lever lock (1) is placed in unlock (🔓) position, the control lever becomes operable.

Control Lever Lock Operation

- When leaving the operator's seat:
 1. Park the machine on solid level ground. Lower the bucket to the ground. Return all levers to neutral. Set the parking brake. Stop the engine.
 2. Press lock (🔒) side of control lever lock switch (1).
- Before starting operation:

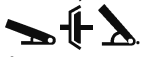
Before starting operation, check that control lever lock switch (1) is in the unlock (🔓) position.



MNEC-01-015

OPERATING MACHINE

Clutch Cut Position Switch

To perform digging (scooping) or loading operation, clutch cut position switch (1) can be set to any position . Turn the clutch cut position switch ON to let the engine speed and power be applied to loading circuits.

- [ ] side (Clutch Cut)

By depressing left brake pedal (3), the clutch is disengaged and brake is applied without transmitting the power to the drive train.

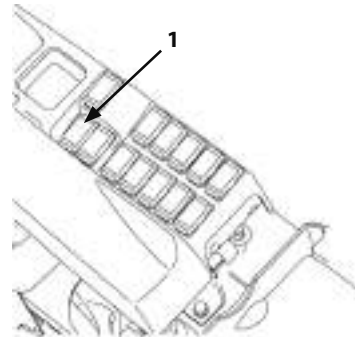
 : Clutch Cut ON when lightly depressing the left pedal (3)
(Suited to loading work on a level surface or on a gentle slope.)

 : Clutch Cut ON when firmly applying the left pedal (3)
(Suited to operate on a steep slope)

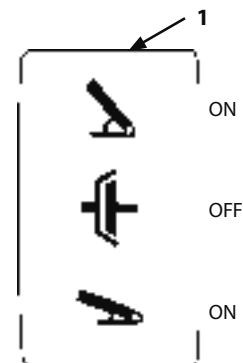
- OFF  (Clutch Engaged)

By depressing brake pedals (3) or (4), brake is applied while power is transmitted to the drive train.

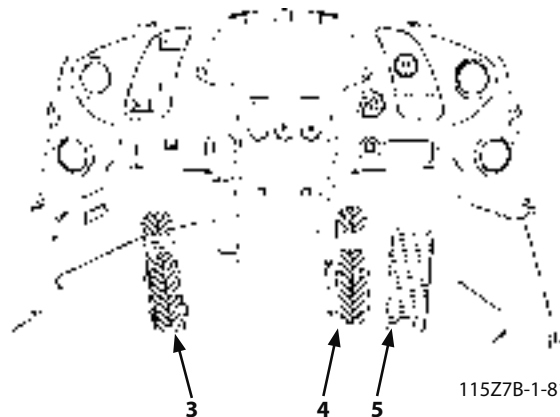
 **NOTE:** When starting to ascend a slope, turn clutch cut position switch (1) OFF  (clutch engaged), depress the left brake pedal. Gradually release the left brake pedal (3) while applying accelerator pedal (5) to easily start ascending a slope.



115MNEC-07-01



MNEC-01-025



115Z7B-1-81-1

OPERATING MACHINE

Adjustment of Bucket Auto Leveler

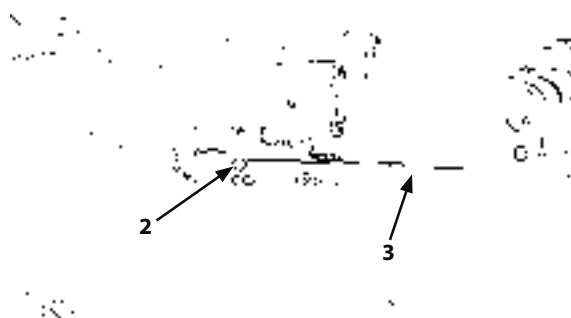
WARNING: CRUSH HAZARD

- Be careful to avoid injury and/or death when adjusting the bucket auto leveler.
- Stop the engine. Lower the loader arm and bucket to the ground to release oil pressure.
- Apply the parking brake to prevent unexpected movement of the machine. Chock wheels with blocks. Keep bystanders away from the vicinity of the machine.

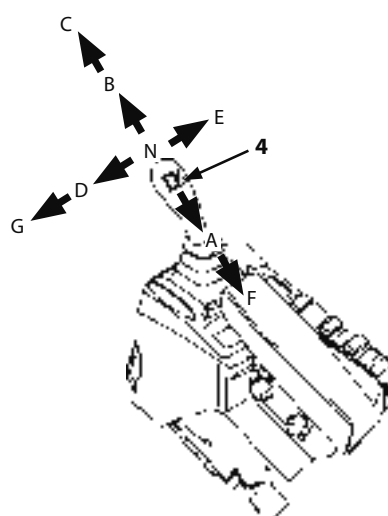
The bucket auto leveler automatically stops the bucket movement when level. (When the machine is shipped from the factory, the bucket positioner is preset so that the bucket is stopped with the bucket bottom parallel with the road surface.)

For example, after discharging material into a truck or a hopper, when bucket control lever (4) is placed to detent position (G), the lever is held in that position. Then, when the bucket is returned to the preset angle position, the bucket is automatically stopped and the lever is returned to neutral (N).

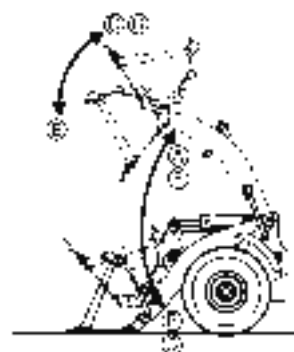
The bucket auto leveler is preset so that when the bucket bottom becomes parallel with the road surface, bucket movement is stopped. Nevertheless, when required to tilt the bucket forward or backward beyond the level position, adjust the bucket auto leveler by moving the mounting position of the proximity switch (2), relative to rod (3).



95Z7B-5-6-1



MN HK-01-012



M4GB-01-073

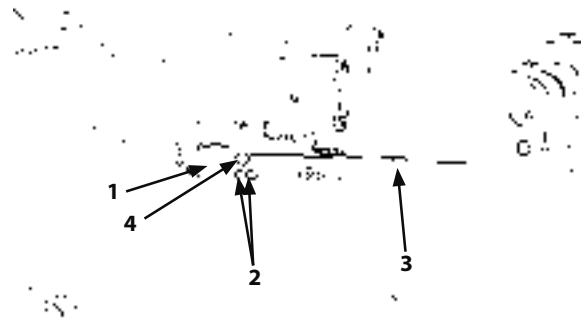
OPERATING MACHINE

Adjustment Procedures

IMPORTANT: Do not operate the machine with the bucket dumped more than 10°.

1. After moving the bucket to the desired digging angle, stop the engine.
2. Loosen bolt (2). Slide the end edge of rod (3) up to the center of proximity switch (4) (orange color).

Then, tighten bolt (2) to fix bracket (1).

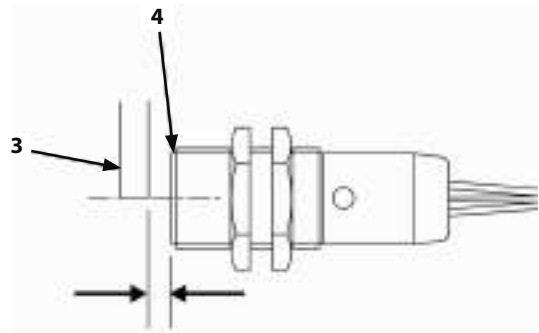


95Z7B-5-6-1

3. Loosen the proximity switch mounting nut and adjust the clearance between rod (3) and proximity switch (4) to 5 ± 2 mm.

After adjusting, securely tighten the mounting nut.

4. After adjustment start the engine. Check that the bucket can be stopped at the desired angle position.



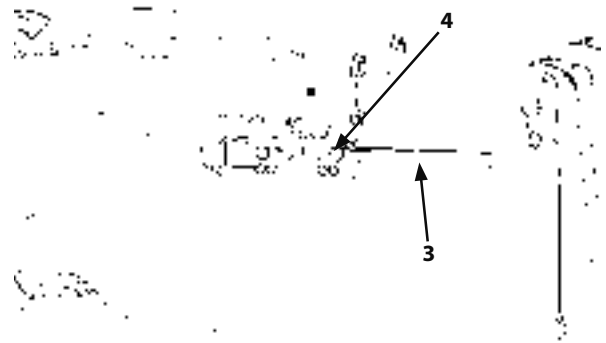
OM0128a

OPERATING MACHINE

Adjustment of Bucket Angle Switch

WARNING: CRUSH HAZARD

- Be careful to avoid injury and/or death when adjusting the bucket angle switch.
- Stop the engine. Lower the loader arm and bucket to the ground to release oil pressure.
- Apply the parking brake to prevent unexpected movement of the machine. Chock wheels with blocks. Keep bystanders away from the vicinity of the machine.



95Z7B-5-8-1

The bucket angle switch detects the bucket angle during operation for the judgment of the lock up or digging power control activation.

When the machine is shipped from the factory, the bucket roll back angle is 30 degree from the road surface.

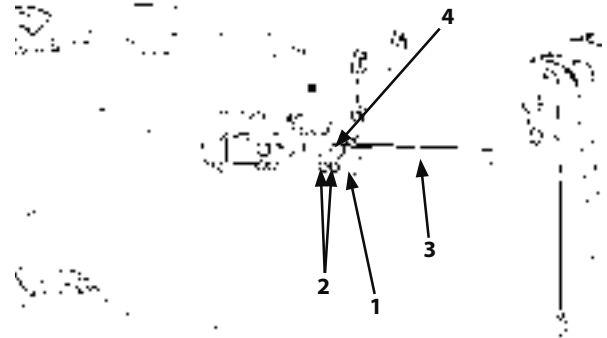
When required to roll back the bucket beyond this preset level position, adjust the bucket angle switch by moving the mounting position of the proximity switch (4), relative to rod (3).

OPERATING MACHINE

Adjustment Procedures

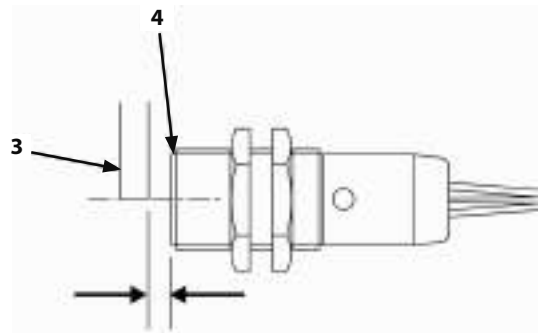
IMPORTANT: Do not operate the machine with the bucket dumped more than 10°.

1. After moving the bucket to the desired operating angle, stop the engine.
2. Loosen bolt (2).
Slide the end edge of rod (3) up to the center of proximity switch (4) (orange color).
Then, tighten bolt (2) to fix bracket (1).



95Z7B-5-8-1

3. Loosen the proximity switch mounting nut and adjust the clearance between rod (3) and proximity switch (4) to 5 ± 2 mm.
After adjusting, securely tighten the mounting nut.
4. After adjustment start the engine. Check that the bucket can be stopped at the desired angle position.



OM0128a

OPERATING MACHINE

Adjustment of Dual Lift Arm Auto Leveler



WARNING:

- **Take extra care to prevent injury and/or death when adjusting the lift arm auto leveler (kickout).**
- **Apply the parking brake to prevent the machine from moving unexpectedly. Chock the wheels with blocks. Keep bystanders away from the vicinity of the machine.**

IMPORTANT:

- **When the lift arm auto leveler (kickout) function is activated with the bucket loaded, the bucket may stop at the set position.**
- **Height setting of lowering direction can not be done when the lift arm is above the horizontal position of the lift arms. Also, height setting of raising direction can not be done when the lift arm is below the horizontal position of the lift arms.**

The lift arm auto leveler is a device that automatically stops the lift arm at the preset position while lowering or raising the lift arm. It is convenient to change the setting of stop position by using this function when the machine is constantly used in a specific way, such as when loading trucks that are equipped with side boards of the same height.

Refer to "Dual Lift Arm Auto Leveler Switch" in the OPERATOR'S STATION section to adjust the stop position.

OPERATING MACHINE

Auto Shut-Down

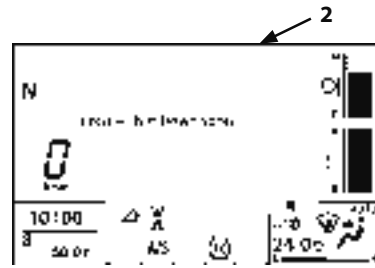
⚠ WARNING: This function automatically stops the engine. Carefully operate within the work environment when using this function.

When the auto shut-down function is ON (enabled), the engine automatically stops after the preset time from the state in which the specified conditions are met (see the operating condition on the next page).

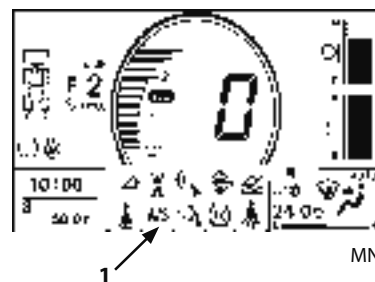
30 seconds before the engine stop, monitor (2) displays a message that engine will be stopped and indicator (1) starts flashing. Also the buzzer sounds. The buzzer sounds once at 30 seconds before, intermittently sounds from 15 seconds, and then stops after 15 seconds.

The auto shut-down is disabled and the engine will not stop if any of the conditions on the next page is not satisfied.

IMPORTANT: Ensure that the ON or OFF status of auto shut-down indicator (1). If the indicator is ON, the auto shut-down function will be activated.



MNHG-01-153EN

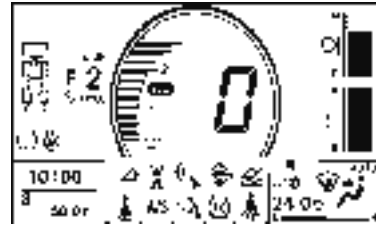


MNHG-01-100EN

OPERATING MACHINE

Auto Shut-Down Operating Condition

- The engine is running.
- The parking brake switch is ON.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The loading control lever is not operated.
- The joystick steering is not operated.
- The forward/reverse switch is in neutral (N).
- Coolant, hydraulic oil and transmission temperature are not high.
- The exhaust filter manual regeneration is not operating.



MNHG-01-100EN

IMPORTANT:

- **When the engine stops because of the auto shut-down function, turn the key switch to ACC or OFF once and then turn it to START to restart the engine. Do not leave the machine after auto shut-down. This may discharge the batteries.**
- **When the key switch is turned to OFF position while the auto shut-down function is ON, the setting will remain ON at the next startup.**

Refer to page 1-53 for setting the auto shut-down function.

OPERATING MACHINE

Aftertreatment Device Manual Regeneration

When manual regeneration is needed, symbol (1) and service indicator (2) as shown to the right will be displayed. Perform manual regeneration in the following procedure.

IMPORTANT:

Park the machine in a safe area where exhaust temperatures will not damage property or other potential flammable sources.

Be sure that there are no flammable materials in the engine area, including, but not limited to:

- Coal dust.
- Wood chip particles, saw dust.
- Animal feed products (straw, hay, grain dust, etc.)
- Inorganic man made debris; plastics, paper, refuse, etc.
- Any other loose flammable debris.

Manual Regeneration Procedure

1. Park the machine in a safe and open place. Place the transmission in neutral. Apply parking brake. Lower the front attachment level to the ground.

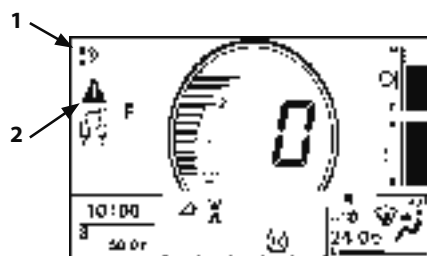
2. Verify that items are set as shown below.

Forward/Reverse Switch	: N (Neutral)
Accelerator Pedal	: UP (OFF)
Parking Brake Switch	: ON
Control Lever Lock Switch (4)	: LOCK (🔒)
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited Setting	: OFF
Hydraulic oil temperature	: 5~70°C
Coolant temperature	: 70°C or higher
Remaining fuel alarm does not light.	
DEF/AdBlue® alarm does not occur.	

3. Press the aftertreatment device regeneration switch (3).

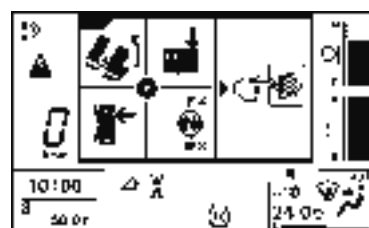
NOTE:

- When "Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited" is preset to ON, manual regeneration cannot be started. Refer to page 1-57.
- Refer to pages 1-6 and 1-35 for Automatic Regeneration and more information.



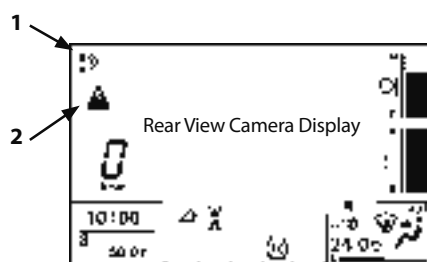
Basic Screen

MNHG-01-280EN



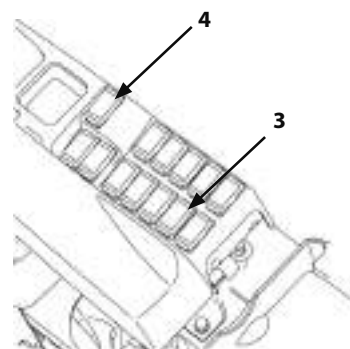
Manual Regeneration Request Screen

MNHG-01-282EN

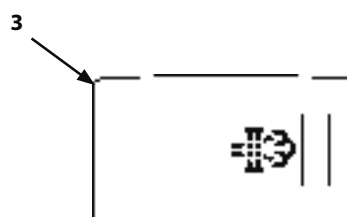


Basic Screen
(When Rear View Camera ON)

MNHG-01-281EN



115MNEC-07-01



MDAA-05-002

OPERATING MACHINE

4. When aftertreatment device switch has been pressed, screen (5) appears as shown to the right and manual regeneration starts. The bar graph on the screen (6) indicates regeneration progress.

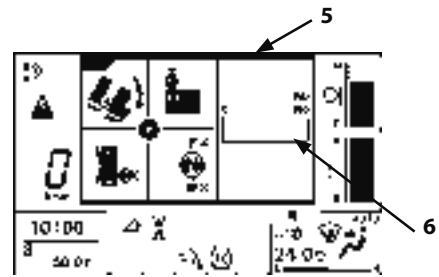
 **NOTE:** The manual regeneration cannot start unless the following items are as indicated.

Item	Condition
Accelerator pedal	UP (OFF)
Forward/reverse switch	Neutral
Parking switch	ON
Control lever lock switch	ON

If any of the listed items are changed, or the key is turned to the "OFF" position, the regeneration process will be aborted. If the manual regeneration has been aborted, start the process over again.

 **NOTE:**

- The engine sound may change and the engine RPM may increase when the manual regeneration starts. This is not a malfunction.
- White smoke may temporarily be generated from the tail pipe during the regeneration process. This is not a malfunction.
- Coolant temperature may increase during the manual regeneration.
- Regeneration period depends on the ambient temperature.
- Just after machine operation, manual regeneration period becomes shorter than when the engine temperature is low.



MNHG-01-283EN

OPERATING MACHINE

5. Manual Regeneration Completed (Successful)

When manual regeneration is completed, "Regeneration Has Completed." message will be displayed and the regeneration symbol disappears.

6. Manual Regeneration Failed (Unsuccessful)

If the message "Regeneration Has Failed." appears on the monitor panel, start the regeneration process over again.

Failure to regenerate manually may be caused by a problem not in the above list, such as malfunction of a sensor that affects regeneration at a low ambient temperature.

IMPORTANT: If regeneration must be interrupted, press manual regeneration switch (3) again.

The message "Regeneration Has Failed." will be displayed on the monitor, and the machine becomes operable.

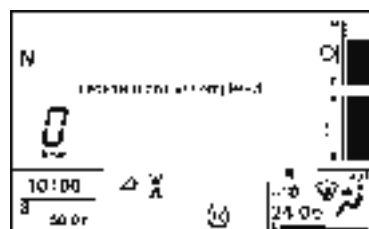
In this case, manual regeneration must be done later. Perform the manual regeneration again as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT: During aftertreatment device regeneration, do not stop the engine unless absolutely necessary. Upon stopping the engine immediately after regeneration completes, run the engine at slow idle for 5 minutes to cool it. If the engine is stopped suddenly and not cooled, the aftertreatment device will remain hot which may result in damage to the urea SCR system.



NOTE:

- Aftertreatment device regeneration cannot be started when the hydraulic oil temperature is too high. Run the engine at low idle to lower the oil temperature, and restart the procedure.
- If aftertreatment device regeneration switch (3) is pressed when the ambient temperature is low, it may take long to start the aftertreatment device regeneration process. Before pressing aftertreatment device regeneration switch (3), increase the coolant temperature to about 70 °C until the coolant temperature gauge needle starts moving. Refer to page 3-13 for warm-up in cold weather.



MNHG-01-284EN



MNHG-01-285EN

OPERATING MACHINE

Before Operation



WARNING:

- Be sure to install only authorized buckets and other work tools.
- Never modify or increase the capacity of the bucket or other work tools without first receiving authorization. Do not overload the machine by installing additional counterweights. This may result in personal injury and/or machine trouble.

Ensure Safety When Operating on Road Shoulders



CAUTION: Stabilize the soil before operating the machine on soft road shoulders.

OPERATING MACHINE

Avoid Overloading



WARNING:

- Do not penetrate the bucket into piles of soil and/or gravel at fast travel speed.
- Avoid excavating or scooping loads when the machine is articulated, which could possibly cause the machine to turn over.

IMPORTANT: Avoid machine abuse by allowing the bucket or attachment to receive loads at only one side. Damage to the machine may result.

Avoid Rapid Steering Changes and/or Sudden Braking



WARNING: Always maintain a flat work site surface. Avoid rapid steering changes and sudden braking while raising the lift arm with the bucket loaded to prevent the machine from turning over.

Avoid Operation with Loads on Only One Side



WARNING: Avoid machine abuse by allowing the bucket to receive loads at only one side. Machine rollover or deformation of the lift arm may result.

Avoid frequent bucket shaking

IMPORTANT: Do not dump and tilt the bucket repeatedly with high speed and high frequent.

It may damage the front linkage and hydraulic components.

OPERATING MACHINE

Excavation

Loading Accumulated Soil

IMPORTANT:

- Do not dig or scoop with machine frame articulated.
- Avoid operating the machine with the front wheels raised off the ground. Machine traction force is reduced and excessive loads are applied to the undercarriage.

Scoop load while moving the machine forward as described below. As load increases the wheels begin to slip, slightly raise the lift arm to increase tire grip.

 **NOTE:** When loading rocks or hard packed material, the use of bucket teeth is recommended.

1. Move the machine forward to the material. Steer the machine in a straight ahead position when entering the material.
2. Lower the bucket parallel to the ground. Drive the bucket straight into the material.

 **NOTE:** Use approximately 1/2 - full engine speed.

3. Raise the lift arm while running the machine forward slowly in 1st or 2nd speed. Use 2nd speed for loose materials.
4. Move the bucket control lever to the "Roll Back" and the "Hold" position several times to get more material in the bucket. When the bucket is filled, move the bucket control lever to the "Roll Back" position.



OM0115-Z7

5. Move the machine with the bucket rolled back fully and held at the driving position.

 **NOTE:** Steer the machine in a straight ahead position when entering the material. Aim the center of the bucket at the protruding portion of the material.



M4GB-05-003



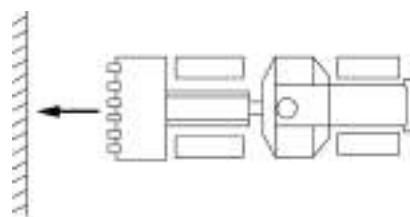
M4GB-05-004



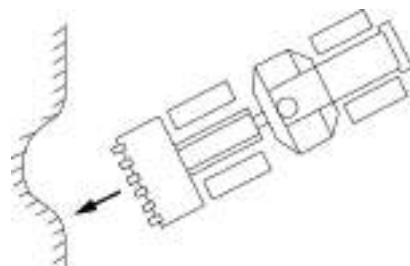
M4GB-05-005



M4GB-05-006



OM0111



OM0112

OPERATING MACHINE

Digging and Loading Level Ground

IMPORTANT: While excavating with the bucket or fork, never apply excessive force to the tooth tips with the bucket or fork tilted more than 10°. This may result in cracks or damage to the front attachment.

Slightly position the bucket teeth downward (0 to 10 degrees) and dig the ground while moving the machine forward as described below. Always take care not to apply loads to only one side of the bucket.

1. Position the bucket teeth slightly downward (dump forward 10 degrees or less).
2. While moving the machine forward in 1st or 2nd speed, roll the bucket forward so that the ground surface is gradually lifted. Increase engine speed as the bucket digs deeper.
3. Adjust the digging depth by operating the lift arm or bucket.
4. When the bucket is filled, move the machine with the bucket fully rolled back. Clear the ground and hold at the driving position.



M4GB-05-007



M4GB-05-008



M4GB-05-009



M4GB-05-010

OPERATING MACHINE

Grading

⚠ WARNING: When operating a machine equipped with ride control and the lift arm control lever in the float position, when performing works as soil scooping, land grading, or snow removal, be sure to turn the ride control switch OFF. Failure to do so may allow the ride control system to operate so that the front attachment may automatically move up and down.

IMPORTANT: Perform grading work while moving the machine in reverse. If grading work is performed by moving the machine forward, severe loads are applied to the front attachment, possibly creating cracks or damage to the front attachment.

1. After filling the bucket, dump the bucket gradually to spread soil while moving the machine in reverse.
2. Lower the bucket edge onto the ground. Grade and level the ground surface while driving the machine in reverse with the bucket edge dragging.
3. After filling the bucket with a load such as soil, position the bucket level with the ground surface. Finish the ground surface utilizing the bucket weight.

At this time, move the machine in reverse with the lift arm held in the FLOAT position.



M4GB-05-011



M4GB-05-012



M4GB-05-013

OPERATING MACHINE

Loading

IMPORTANT:

- **Always maintain a clean surface for machine operation.**
Cleaning of materials such as soil and stones spilled on the work surface will reduce wear and/or damage on tires.
- **When carrying loads in the bucket, pay attention to the road surface conditions. Operate the machine at such speed so that the load will not spill out of the bucket, while positioning the bucket at the driving position.**
- **Refrain from banging bucket against the bucket stopper as much as possible when removing stuck material, like clay, from the bucket. This may result in damage to the front attachment.**
Remove material stuck to the bucket with water under pressure.

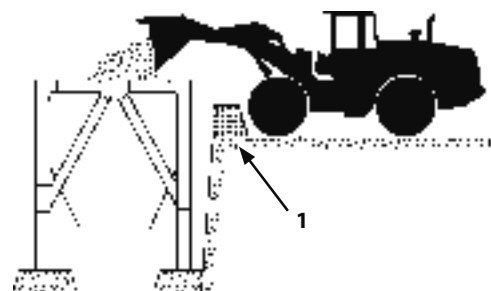
Loading is dumping the handling material onto a truck or into a hopper.

Loading work is performed in either the load and carrying method or loader and dump truck method. Select either method depending on the work site conditions while taking the cost and safety into account.

Load and Carrying Method

WARNING:

- **Be sure to provide a tire stopper (1) in front of the hopper.**
- **Before raising the lift arm, slightly tilt the bucket back and forth to stabilize the load in the bucket to avoid injury or damage to the machine from falling of loose material.**
Avoid raising the lift arm on a slope.
- **When approaching a hopper with the lift arm raised never steer the loader. Slowly move the machine. Never rapidly operate the machine to prevent roll over.**



M4GB-05-014

A wheel loader performs work process of loading, carrying, and dumping in sequence. Generally, when the carrying distance is 30 to 100 m, this method is employed. Make an upgrade slope of approx. 3° around a hopper when dumping into the hopper. Be sure to provide a level area 10 m apart from the hopper and tire stopper (1) at the hopper edge. Reduction in travel speed will assist operator's braking operation effort.

OPERATING MACHINE

Loader and Dump Truck Combination Method



WARNING:

- **Always maintain a flat and clean work site surface. Avoid rapid turns and/or sudden braking while raising the lift arm with the bucket loaded to prevent the machine from tipping over.**
- **Do not insert the bucket into a loading face at fast speed, possibly resulting in an accident.**

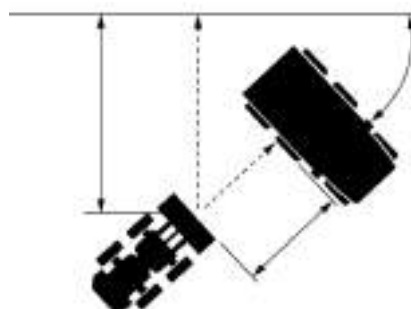
A loader carries out loading and carrying, and dumping is carried out by a dump truck. Either V- or I-shape loading method is used in this method. Depending on the work site conditions and matching with available trucks, select the most efficient method.

V-Shape Loading

1. Park a dump truck in a spot located at approx. 60° angle toward the loading face. After loading material, travel the wheel loader in reverse and turn its direction so that the wheel loader faces the parked dump truck at a right angle. Then, travel forward to carry material onto the dump truck.
2. Position the wheel loader so that the material can be loaded around the center of the dump body. In case the dump body is longer than twice the bucket width, load from the front to rear position of the dump body in order.
3. When dumping sticky material such as clay, move the bucket lever back and forth to lightly hit the bucket to the stoppers.

Use a small steering angle to operate the machine efficiently.

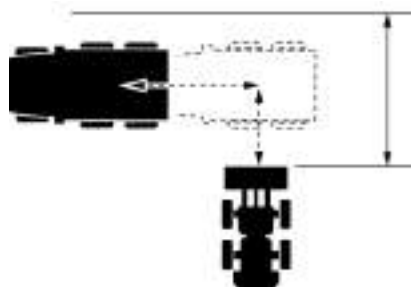
4. Before raising the lift arm to the maximum height with the bucket full, lightly tap the bucket while low to stabilize the material in the bucket and help prevent the material from spilling from the backside of the bucket.



M4GB-05-015

I-Shape Loading

Park a dump truck in a direction parallel to the loading face. After loading material into the bucket, move the wheel loader straight in reverse. Then, move a dump truck to a spot between the loading face and the wheel loader. Move the wheel loader forward to load material into the dump truck body.



M4GB-05-016

OPERATING MACHINE

Dumping into Truck or Hopper

WARNING:

- When boom is raised, machine stability is reduced and could cause machine to tip over causing serious injury or death.
- Do not make quick turns or abrupt braking when boom is raised.
- Keep boom low for best stability especially on slopes.

1. Move the lift arm control lever to the "Raise" position to raise the loaded bucket while approaching the truck or the hopper.
2. Use the clutch cut switch in the "ON" position if working on a level site.
When the left brake pedal (clutch cut pedal) is step on, the transmission is placed automatically in neutral and the lift arm rises faster.
3. Return the lift arm control lever to the "Hold" position when the bucket reaches the enough height to clear the truck or hopper sideboards.
If the lift arm is equipped with the kickout device, the lift arm will automatically stop and the lift arm control lever will return to the "Hold" position when the bucket reaches the preset height.
Holding the lift arm control lever in the "Raise" position will continue to raise the lift arm if required.
4. Position the machine in the center of the truck body or hopper to dump the load.
5. Push the bucket control lever forward to the "Dump" position to empty the bucket.
6. Roll back the bucket to clear the truck or hopper sideboards and lower the lift arm while reversing the machine.



90M4GB-05-14



90M4GB-05-14a

OPERATING MACHINE

Dozing

IMPORTANT:

- Dozing or pushing with dumped bucket or attachment may cause severe damage to linkages. It may also cause engine over-heating and torque converter over-heating.
- Never attempt to forcibly push piled material higher than the bucket capacity. Premature wear of the tires due to slipping and/or waste of fuel may result.
- Never apply great force to the cutting edge with the cutting edge tilted forward more than 10°. Failure to obey so may result in damage such as cracks to the working tools. Keep bucket or attachment bottom parallel to ground.



M4GB-05-017KC

Dozing with a wheel loader means a working method performed by a wheel loader using the wheel loader bucket in place of a bulldozer blade. This operation method is employed when reclaiming land or dumping material into a hopper, that is below ground level. Set the bucket bottom parallel with the ground surface and move the wheel loader forward.

Stock Piling

⚠ WARNING: Do not pile material on soft ground. Steering on soft ground may easily cause the machine to tip over.

Take care not to scrape the ground with the counterweight while working. The machine may become unstable, possibly causing the machine to turnover.



M4GB-05-018

OPERATING MACHINE

Removing Snow

WARNING: When operating a machine equipped with ride control and the lift arm control lever in the float position, when performing work as soil scooping, land grading, or snow removal, be sure to turn the ride control switch OFF. Failure to do so may allow the ride control system to operate so that the front attachment may automatically move up and down.

CAUTION: Remove snow in the same method as employed in general loading work. However, pay attention to slippage of tires traction and obstacles that may be covered with snow.



M4GB-05-019

Precautions for removing snow

- Avoid sudden starting and stopping as well as rapid steering of the machine.
- Use tire chains on all four wheels.
- Pay attention to the presence of the utility facilities such fire hydrants, manholes, curbs, roadside drains, etc. The facilities or the machine may be damaged.

Lifting Wheel Loader

WARNING:

- Be sure to use lifting tools and set the articulation stopper (lock bar) in the LOCK position. (Refer to page 1-133.)
- Never allow any person to ride on the machine to be lifted.
- Never allow any person to enter below the lifted machine. Before fully lifting the machine above the ground, check that the hooks are securely attached to the machine and the machine is well balanced while lifting the machine slightly above the ground.

Refer to the "LIFTING MACHINE" in the TRANSPORTING section.

Lifting of the machine may be needed when loading the machine onto a ship or truck for repairing and/or transporting.



115MNEC-05-01

OPERATING MACHINE

Precautions for After Operation

1. After finishing operation, move the machine to firm, level ground where no possibility of falling stones, ground collapse, or floods are present.

(Park the machine referring to the "Parking" in the "MOVING THE MACHINE" chapter.)

2. Refill the fuel tank.



CAUTION: Wash the machine when needed. In areas of exposed metal, spray a light coat of rust-preventive oil to protect the machine from rusting. If the machine continues to be used with rust developing in areas like cylinder rods, oil leaks may occur.

IMPORTANT: If hard rain is expected or the machine is to be stored, wrap the muffler with a tarpaulin to prevent water from entering the exhaust system and engine.

3. Clean the machine.

OPERATING MACHINE

4. Maintenance for long term machine storage after engaging in snow removal. (Refer to STORAGE section.)

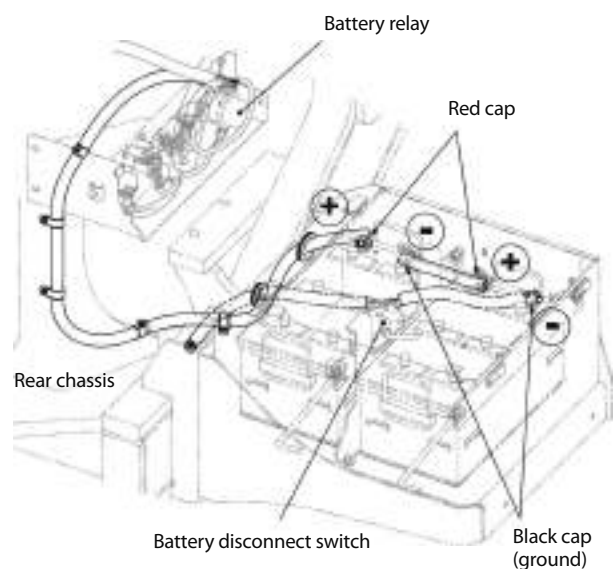
Anti-freeze agents such as salt (sodium chloride or calcium chloride) usually are scattered on snow covered roads. When the machine is stored for a long time after engaging in snow removal work, perform the following maintenance to protect the machine from being corroded and/or damaged by corrosive chemicals or elements.

IMPORTANT: Take care not to spray water directly to electrical parts, harnesses and connectors.
Most lights such as the headlights, work lights, and turn signal lights are water resistant.

- 4.1 Clean the machine thoroughly.
Clean each cylinder rod (plated areas) and the radiator with extra care.
- 4.2 After positioning the machine for storage, carefully coat each cylinder rod (plated areas) with rust-preventive oil.
- 4.3 Lubricate all pins while referring to A Greasing Section in the Maintenance Guide List.

CAUTION: When removing the batteries, disconnect the ground cable from the battery terminal first (covered with a black vinyl cap).

- 4.4 Remove the batteries and store them in a dry cool place.
When the batteries are not removed, disconnect the ground terminal cable.



115Z7-5-24

TRANSPORTING

Transporting by Road

When transporting the machine on public roads, be sure to first understand and follow all local regulations.

1. For transporting using a trailer, check the width, height, length and weight of the trailer when the machine is loaded.
2. Investigate beforehand the conditions of the route to be traveled, such as dimensional limits, weight limits, and traffic regulations. Take any detours that may be needed into account.

In some cases, getting approval from the authority concerned, disassembling the machine to bring it within dimensional limits or weight limits of local regulations may be necessary.

Selecting a Trailer

Provide an appropriate trailer while referring to the weight and dimensions shown in the specifications. When transporting the machine within the weight and dimensions shown in the specifications by a trailer, it may be possible to transport the machine without disassembling.

TRANSPORTING

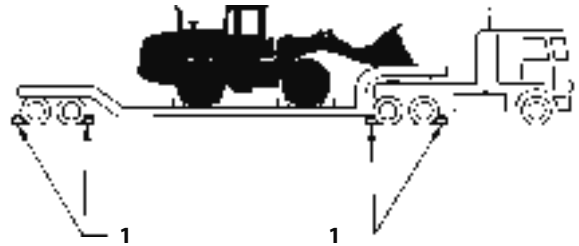
Loading / Unloading on Trailer

⚠ WARNING: Be sure to use a loading dock or a ramp for loading/unloading.

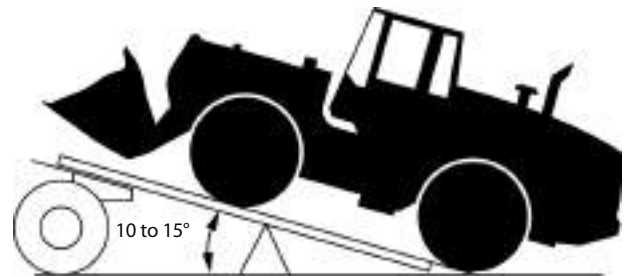
Always load and unload the machine on a firm, level surface.

Ramp/Loading Dock:

1. Before loading, thoroughly clean the ramps, loading dock and flatbed. Dirty ramps, loading docks, and flatbeds with oil, mud, or ice on them are slippery and dangerous.
2. Chock (1) the truck and trailer wheels while using a ramp or loading dock.
3. Ramps must be the right size and able to bear the load. Be sure that the incline of the ramp is less than 15°.
4. Loading docks must be the right size and able to bear the load, to support the machine and have an incline of less than 15°.



M4GB-06-001



M4GB-06-002

TRANSPORTING

Loading / Unloading on Trailer

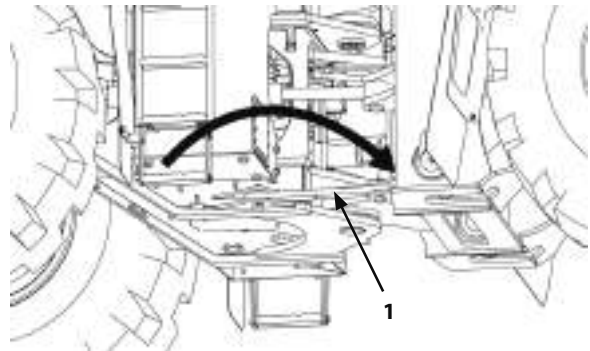


WARNING:

- **Keep machine straight while moving up or down a ramp since turning on a ramp may cause the machine to turn over. Never attempt to steer the machine on a ramp. If the travel direction must be changed on a slope, move the machine back to the flat surface on flatbed. Then, after changing the travel direction, begin to move again.**
- **Select AUTO 2 for auto-shifting, or select 2nd speed for manual shifting.**

Loading

1. Load the machine so that the center line of the machine aligns with the center line of the trailer flatbed.
2. Slowly move the machine on the ramp.
3. Lower the bucket onto the trailer deck.
4. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
5. Operate the control lever several strokes to relieve pressure in the cylinders.
6. Move the control lever lock switch in the lock (🔒) position.
7. Securely close the windows and cab doors to protect the cab from rain. Cover the exhaust outlet. Failure to do this will damage the engine.
8. Install the articulation stopper (lock bar) (1) to prevent the machine from articulating.



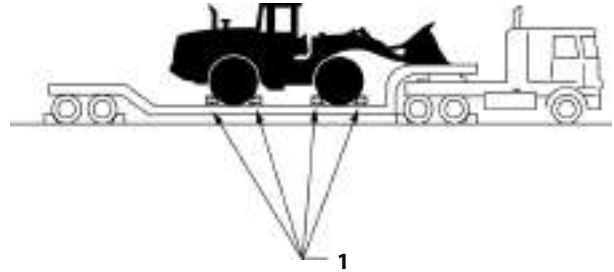
115Z7-AK-LOCK

TRANSPORTING

Fastening Machine for Transporting

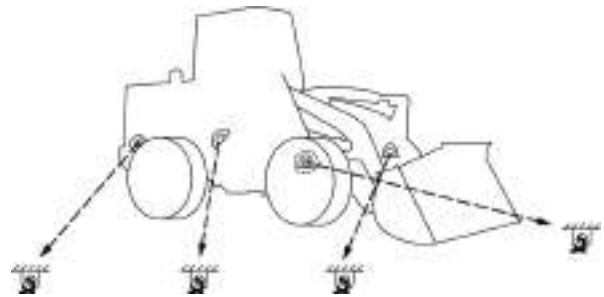
⚠ WARNING: Fasten the machine chassis to the trailer securely with chains and cables. While traveling, loads may shake around, move forward or backward or to the sides.

1. Apply the parking brake. Slowly rest the bucket on the trailer deck or load-carrying platform.
2. Place blocks (1) in front of and behind the tires to prevent the machine from moving.
3. Securely fasten the machine and the front attachment to the truck or trailer platform with heavy chains or wire cables.



M4GB-06-003

The machines for export are provided with lifting eyes. (Option) Use these eyes for securing the machine.



115MNEC-06-02

TRANSPORTING

Transporting Wheel Loader (Urgent Situation)

The following procedures shall only be applied to cases when urgently moving the wheel loader a short distance is required. When required to transport the wheel loader long distance, use a trailer.

Precautions for Driving On Roads

Avoid driving the wheel loader long distances at high-speed as much as possible as it may overheat the tires, possibly resulting in premature tire damage and/or wear. Keep the following points in mind when transporting the wheel loader by driving on roads.

- Observe the rules and regulations associated to this wheel loader, and travel carefully.
- Recommended tire pressures and traveling speeds may vary depending on the type of tires used and the road conditions. Consult Authorized Dealer.
- Check the tire pressure before self-traveling when the tires are cool.
- After driving the wheel loader for 30 minutes, allow the wheel loader to park for 30 minutes and meanwhile, check the tires and every part of the machine for any abnormality, and also check the oil and coolant levels.
- Keep the bucket empty when traveling.
- Do not drive the machine with the tires containing calcium chloride or dry ballast, which accelerate heating.

TRANSPORTING

Precautions for Towing

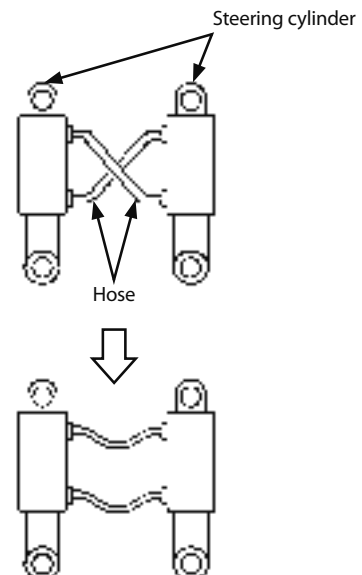
⚠ WARNING: Never attempt to tow the machine if the brake system is in need of repair. Ask Authorized Dealer to repair the machine. Operate the machine only after repairs is completed.

Avoid towing the machine as much as possible. If the machine must be towed, be careful about the following points.

IMPORTANT: Do not tow the machine with the parking brake applied. Damage to the parking brake may result.

- If the engine is operable:
Keep the engine running so that the steering and brake system are operable. Release the parking brake.
- If the engine is inoperable:
Removing the propeller shafts
 - When the parking brake cannot be released, manually release the parking brake. (Refer to the "Releasing Parking Brake" on page 6-7.) Then, disconnect the front and rear propeller shafts. At this time, wedge wheel stoppers at all tires to prevent the machine from moving.
 - When the engine is stopped, the machine cannot turn as the steering cylinders become inoperable. Changing the hydraulic hose connections as shown will enable the steering cylinders operation to turn by following the towing machine.

✎ NOTE: Be careful not to spill oil when disconnecting the hoses. Be sure to catch the oil.



M4GB-06-007

TRANSPORTING

Releasing Parking Brake



WARNING:

- **Once the parking brake is released, the machine becomes impossible to stop with the parking brake system, possibly resulting in personal injury or death.**
- **Before releasing the parking brake be sure to chock tires with wheel stoppers.**



CAUTION:

- **As soon as towing is complete, connect the parking brake.**
- **Towing only when moving the machine to a place where the machine is inspected and/or serviced. Avoid towing to move the machine over a long distance.**

Release the parking brake manually only when the parking brake switch becomes inoperable due to any abnormality or failure in the brake system such as a pump.

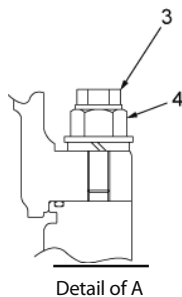
TRANSPORTING

Procedures

WARNING:

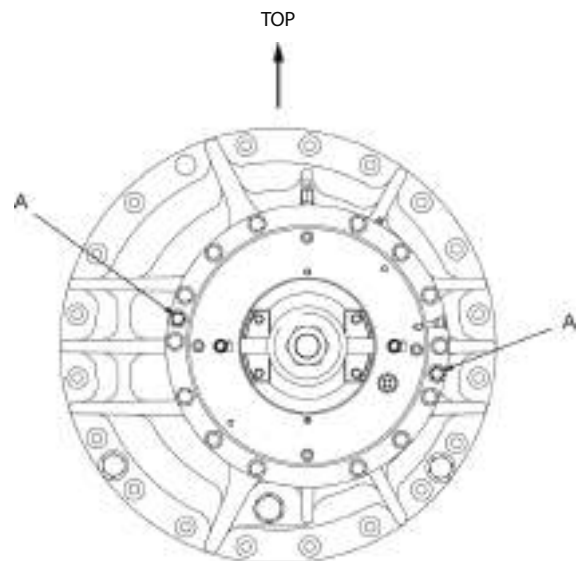
- Once the parking brake is released, the machine becomes impossible to stop with the parking brake system.
- Chock all tires to prevent the machine from moving.
- Before restarting to operate the machine, consult Authorized Dealer to have the parking brake adjusted.

1. Remove lock bolt (3) on the front differential and remove flange nuts (4) from both parts (A).



Detail of A

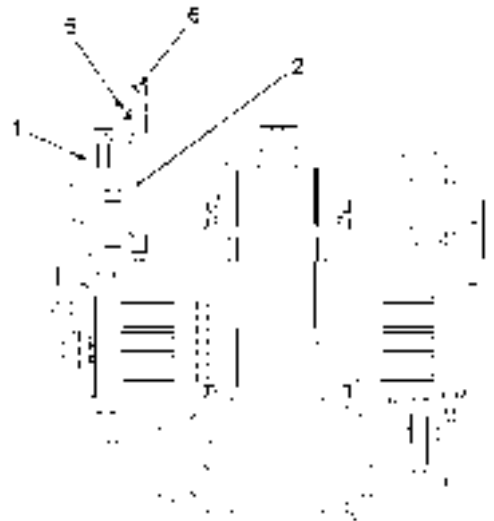
95Z7-6-8-2



115Z7-6-8-1

2. Loosen hose band (5) and remove rubber cap (6) from manual release bolt (2).
3. Install the flange nuts, which were removed at step 1, to manual release bolt (2).
4. Tighten flange nuts (4) alternately and evenly until contacting with housing (1).
5. Then, tighten flange nuts (4) until you feel the nuts are rather tight; the brake is released.

 NOTE: After contacting with housing (1), approximately 3 or 4 additional turns of the flange nuts will release the parking brake.



115Z7-6-8-2

6. After finishing the work, install flange nuts (4) to the original positions. Secure flange nuts (4) with lock bolts (3). Install rubber caps (6) to manual release bolts (2) and secure rubber caps (6) with hose bands (5).

TRANSPORTING

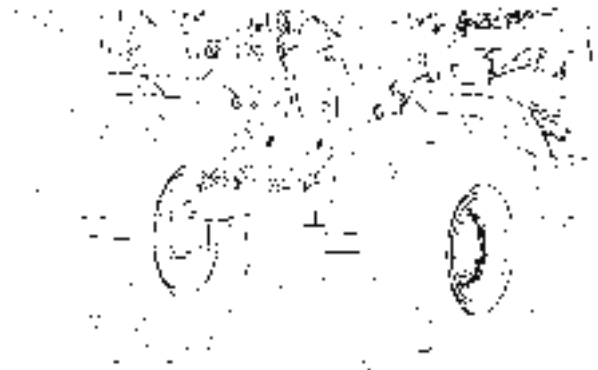
Towing Method

Attach wire ropes to the machine when the machine must be towed, in such cases when the machine cannot be moved from soft ground under its own power.

CAUTION:

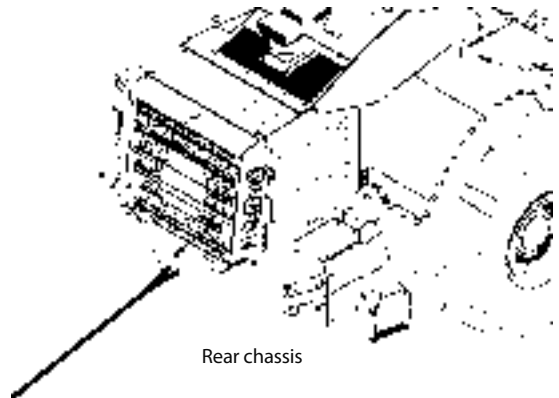
- Use wire cable having the strength more than approx. 150 % of the machine weight.
- Towing from the front end of the machine
Attach wire ropes to the machine using eye plates on the front chassis as indicated in the illustration. Always use soft material at the corners between the front chassis and wire cables to prevent damage to the wire cables.
- Towing from the rear end of the machine
Attach wire ropes to the machine using the towing pin on the rear chassis as indicated in the illustration. Always use the lock pin after completely inserting the towing pin to prevent the wire cables from coming off.

 NOTE: Refer to page 1-134 for towing pin.



Front chassis

MNHE-05-003



Rear chassis

115Z7B-6-9-2

TRANSPORTING

Lifting Machine



WARNING:

- The lifting tools are optional. Install specified lifting tools at Authorized Dealer.
- Use lifting cables and other lifting tools that are free from any damage and/or aging, and properly rated for the load.
- Consult Authorized Dealer for correct lifting procedures, and size and types of lifting cable and tools.
- Before lifting the machine, move the control lever lock switch to the lock (🔒) position to prevent the machine from moving unexpectedly.
- Rigidly secure the front and rear chassis using the articulation stopper (lock bar) so that the machine front and rear chassis will not steer.
- Incorrect lifting procedure and/or incorrect wire cables may cause the machine to move (shift) while being lifted, resulting in machine damage and/or injury of personnel.
- Do not lift the machine quickly. Excessive load will be applied to the wire cables and/or lifting tools, and may cause them to break.
- Do not allow anyone to come close to or under the raised machine.

Lifting

1. Straighten the machine and lower the front attachment as illustrated to the right.
2. Move the control lever lock switch in the lock (🔒) position.
3. Rigidly secure the front and rear chassis using the articulation stopper (lock bar) (Refer to page 1-133).
4. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
5. Use cables long enough so that the cables do not come in contact with the machine chassis when the machine is lifted.

Wrap some protectors around wire ropes and/or support bar as required to prevent the sheet metal from being damaged. Be sure to use the specified lifting tools.

6. Set the crane in an appropriate position on a firm, level surface.
7. Attach the cable to the lifting tools.
8. Load machine slowly and carefully, as desired.



115MNEC-05-01

MAINTENANCE

Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures

Learn how to service your machine correctly. Follow the correct maintenance and inspection procedures shown in this manual.

Inspect machine daily before starting.

- Check controls and instruments.
- Level, leakage and contamination of coolant, fuel, DEF/AdBlue® and hydraulic oil
- Check for leaks, kinked, frayed or damaged hoses and lines.
- Walk around machine checking general appearance, noise, heat, etc.
- Check for loose or missing parts.



SA-005

If there is any problem with your machine, repair it before operating or contact Authorized Dealer.

IMPORTANT:

- **Use only specified fuel, DEF/AdBlue®, lubricants and coolant.**
- **Be sure to use only Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine parts. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death and/or machine breakdown.**
- **Failure to use recommended fuel, lubricants, and Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine parts will result in loss of Hitachi Construction Machinery product warranty.**
- **Never adjust engine governor or hydraulic system relief valve.**
- **Protect electrical parts from water and steam.**
- **Never spray high pressure water or steam to the transmission oil filler port, transmission air breather and vicinity of the axle air breather.**
- **Never disassemble electrical components such as main controller, sensors, etc.**
- **Never adjust parts of engine fuel system or hydraulic equipment.**
- **Using bad quality fuel, drainage agent, fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol refueled or mixed with specified fuel may deteriorate performance of fuel filters and cause sliding problem at lubricated contacts in the injector. It also affects the engine and aftertreatment device parts, leading to malfunction.**
- **Using bad quality DEF/AdBlue® may deteriorate performance of the engine and affect the aftertreatment device, leading to malfunction. Using improper density DEF/AdBlue® may derate the engine power.**
- **Use Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine high performance filter.**

MAINTENANCE

- **Body Information Controller**

This machine provides a body information controller that stores machine operation information for preventive maintenance.

When maintaining the machine, our authorized service man may download the stored information.

Consult with Authorized Dealer for detailed function of this device.

- **Communication Terminal Operation**

It is not necessary to check or operate the communication terminal however if any abnormality is found, consult Authorized Dealer.

Before installing any covering attachment such as a head guard, consult Authorized Dealer.

Never spray water on the communication terminal and the wirings.

- **Inquire to your local environmental or recycling center or Authorized Dealer, for the proper way to recycle or dispose of oil, fuel, coolant, filters, batteries, DEF/AdBlue® and other waste.**

MAINTENANCE

Check the Hour Meter Regularly

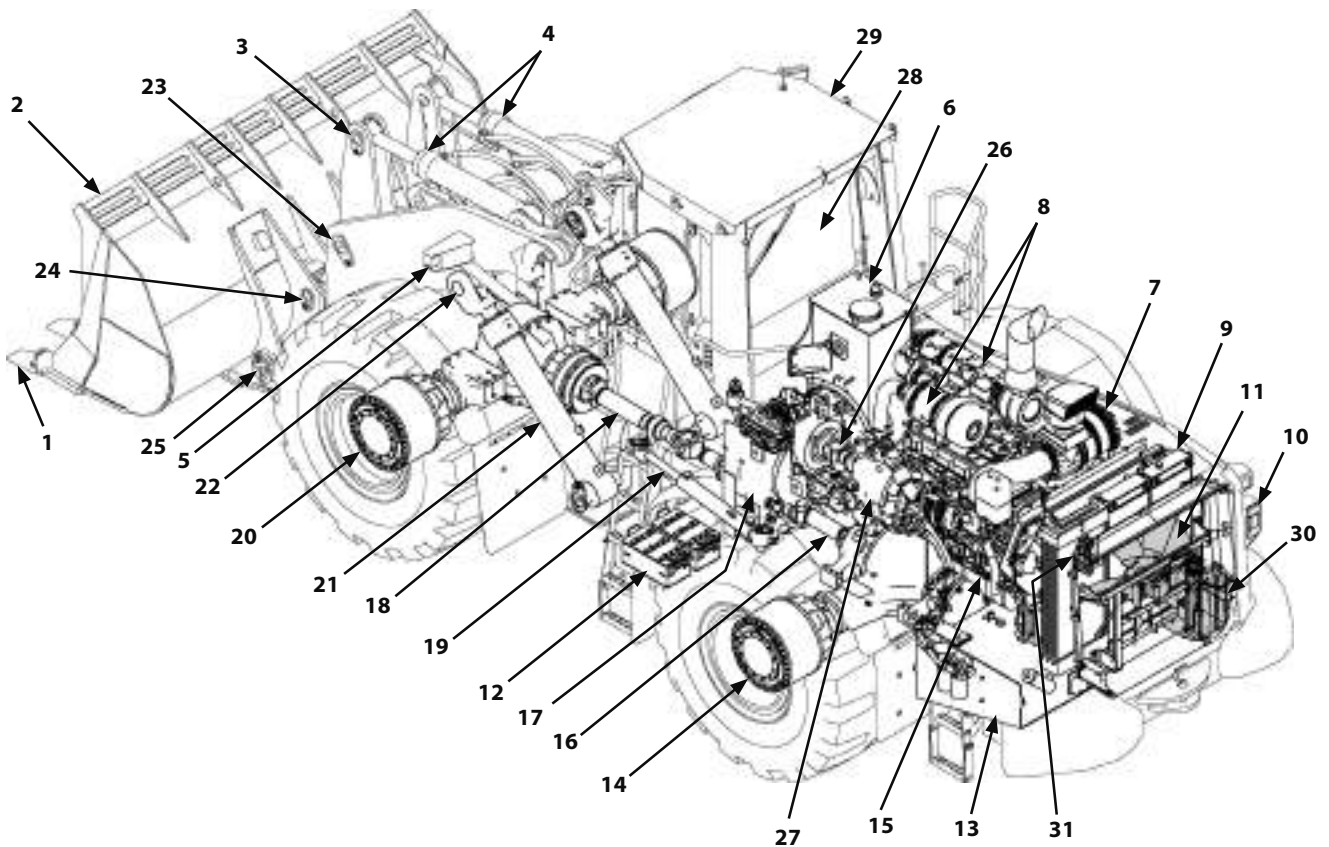
Refer to the List of Check and Maintenance for information about lubricants, check and adjustment intervals. The maintenance guide table is affixed on the left side of the front chassis. Refer to page 7-6 .

This manual recommends grouping the intervals into three categories as follows:

- Daily Check : To be conducted daily before operation
- Monthly Check: To be regularly conducted once per month
- Annual Check : To be regularly conducted once per year

Check and maintenance intervals shown in this manual are those for the machines to be operated under normal conditions. If the machine is operated under more severe conditions, shorten the intervals.

MAINTENANCE



115Z7B-1-2-1

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1- Bucket Teeth | 17- Transmission |
| 2- Bucket | 18- Second (Front and Center) Propeller Shaft |
| 3- Bucket Cylinder Rod Pin | 19- Steering Cylinder |
| 4- Bucket Cylinder | 20- Front Axle |
| 5- Front Combination Lamp | 21- Lift Arm Cylinder |
| 6- Hydraulic Oil Tank | 22- Lift Arm Cylinder Rod Pin |
| 7- Air Cleaner | 23- Bell Crank (Lever) Pin |
| 8- Aftertreatment Device | 24- Bucket Link Pin |
| 9- Radiator, Oil Cooler, and Other Cooling System | 25- Bucket Hinge Pin |
| 10- Rear Combination Lamp | 26- First (Main) Propeller Shaft |
| 11- Radiator Fan | 27- Torque Converter |
| 12- Battery | 28- Cab |
| 13- Fuel Tank | 29- ROPS (Roll Over Protective Structure) |
| 14- Rear Axle | 30- DEF/AdBlue® Tank |
| 15- Engine | 31- DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module |
| 16- Third (Rear) Propeller Shaft | |

MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Guide Table

The maintenance guide table is affixed to the reverse side of the tool box cover. Lubricate and/or service the parts at the intervals as instructed in the table so that all necessary maintenance can be performed regularly.

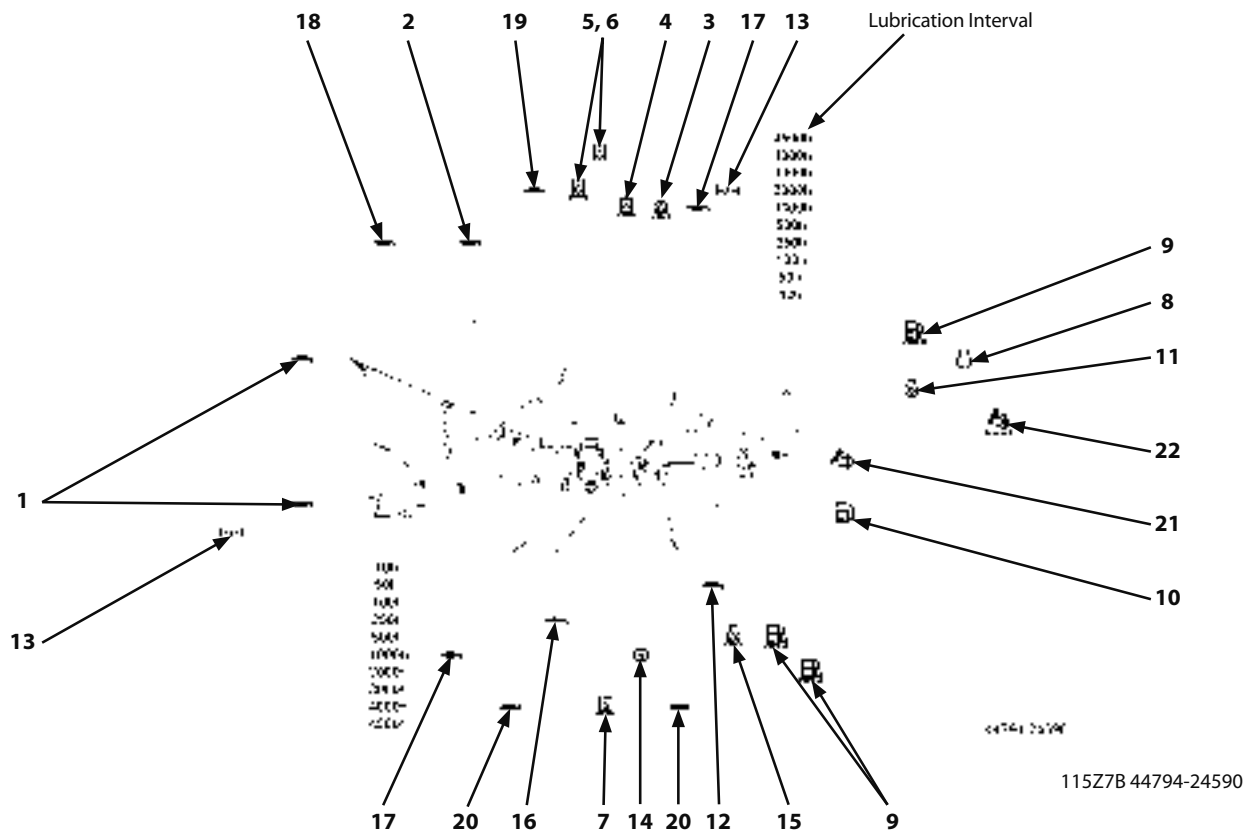
- Symbol Marks

The following marks are used in the maintenance guide table.

	Grease (Front Joint Pin, Cylinder Pin, Propeller Shaft)		Hydraulic Oil
	Engine Oil		Hydraulic Oil Filters (Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter (Full-Flow Filter), Suction Filter, Air Breather Element)
	Engine Oil Filter		Gear Oil (Final Drive, Differential Gear)
	Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)		Fuel
	Transmission Oil (Transmission, Torque Converter)		Fuel Filter (Fuel Main Filter, Pre-Filter)
	Transmission Oil Filter		DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module Main Filter

MAINTENANCE

- Maintenance Guide Table



	Item	Page		Item	Page
1	Grease (Front Joint Pins)	7-27	12	Grease (Axle Support pin)	7-28
2	Grease (Frame Hinge Pins)	7-28	13	Axle Gear Oil (Final drive, Hub Reduction)	7-41
3	Transmission Oil Filter	7-37	14	Transmission Oil	7-37
4	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Full-Flow Filter)	7-55	15	Engine Oil Filter	7-34
5	Air Breather Element	7-57	16	Grease (Steering Cylinder Pin)	7-28
6	Hydraulic Oil	7-50	17	Grease (Axle Seal)	7-30
7	Pilot Oil Filter	7-53	18	Grease (Propeller Shaft Center Support)	7-29
8	Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)	7-83	19	Grease (Propeller Shaft Spline)	7-29
9	Fuel Filter, Fuel Pre-Filter, Water Separator (Optional)	7-68 to 7-79	20	Grease (Propeller Shaft Universal)	7-28 to 7-30
10	Fuel (Diesel Fuel)	7-66	21	DEF/AdBlue®	7-136
11	Engine Oil	7-32	22	DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module Main Filter	7-139

MAINTENANCE

Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance

WARNING: If ride control switch (3) is in the AUTO position, the lift arm may unexpectedly rise. To avoid an accident due to unexpected movement of the lift arm and bucket, always turn ride control switch (3) OFF before beginning the inspection and/or maintenance of the machine.

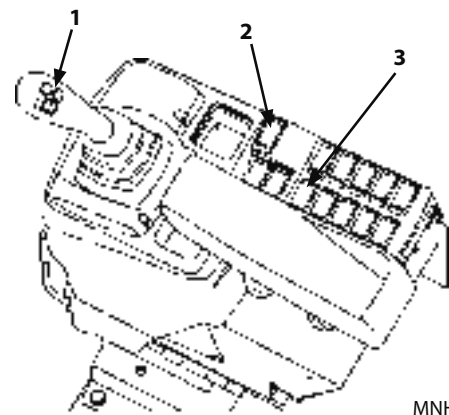
CAUTION: If the machine is unexpectedly moved, a serious accident may result. Be sure to apply the parking brake when parking the machine.



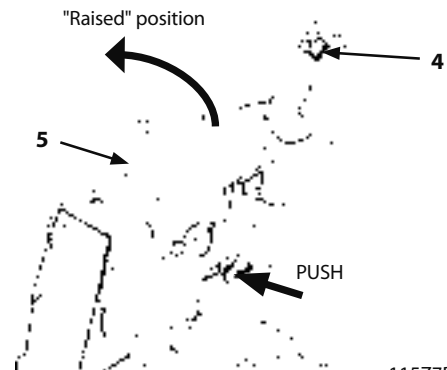
SA-456

Unless specified otherwise, park the machine by following the procedures below before beginning the inspection and/or maintenance work.

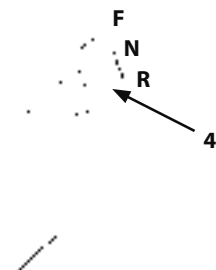
1. Park the machine on a solid level surface.
2. Lower the working tools such as the bucket level to the ground.
3. Turn ride control switch (3) OFF.
4. Set forward/reverse switch (4) on the joystick steering to the neutral position. Push the lock button and fully raise armrest (5) until it locks in the raised position.



MNHK-01-011



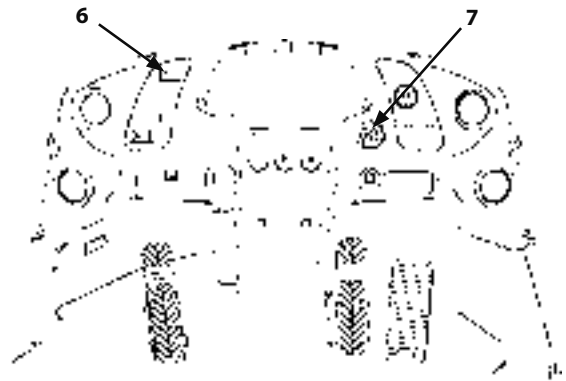
115Z7B-1-10-3



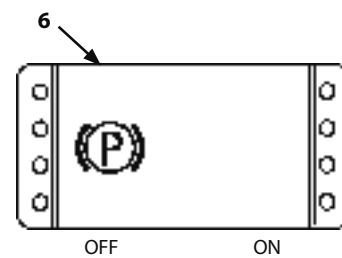
115Z7B-4-4-1

MAINTENANCE

5. Apply the parking brake (Turn parking brake (6) ON.)
6. Chock the tires.
7. Run the engine at low idle speed for a few minutes to cool the engine. Turn key switch (7) OFF to stop the engine. Again, turn key switch (7) ON and place control lever lock switch (2) to the unlock (U) position.
8. Fully operate the lift arm and bucket control levers (1) 3 to 4 strokes to release residual pressure in the hydraulic system.
9. In case inspection and/or maintenance must be performed with the engine running, use a signal person.
10. Be sure to place control lever lock switch (2) to the lock (L) position.
11. Turn key switch (7) OFF and remove the key.
12. Start working only after putting an "UNDER INSPECTION/ MAINTENANCE" tag in a highly visible place such as on the cab door or the control lever.



115Z7B-1-81-1



MNEC-01-058

MAINTENANCE

⚠ WARNING: Never attempt to maintain the machine when the engine is running in order to prevent an accident. If the engine must be run while working, do the following.

- One person should take the operator's seat to be ready to stop the engine any time while communicating with other workers.
- When working around moving parts is unavoidable, pay special attention to ensure that hands, feet, and clothing do not become entangled.
- If parts or tools are dropped or inserted into the fan or the belt, they may fly off or be cut off. Do not drop or insert parts and tools into the moving parts.
- Move control lever lock switch (2) to lock (🔒) position so that the front attachment will not move.
- Never touch the control levers and pedals. If operating the control levers or pedals is unavoidable, signal co-workers to move to a safe place.



SA-2294



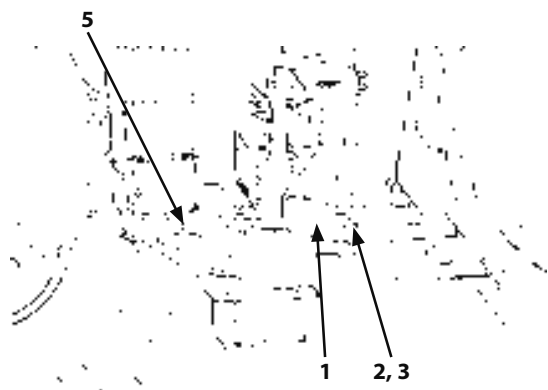
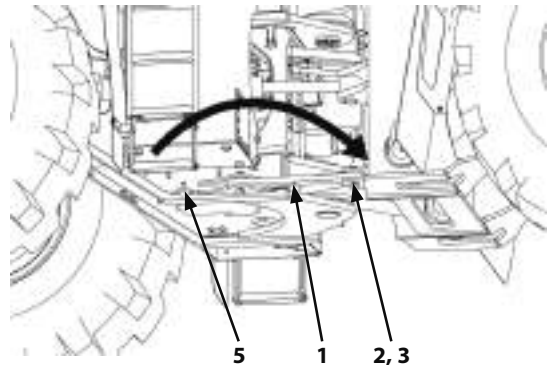
SA-026

MAINTENANCE

Lock Frames

⚠ WARNING: Before beginning to work near the frame center hinge, install articulation lock bar (1) to securely lock and prohibit movement between the front and rear frames. Avoid accidents due to unexpected movement of the machine.

1. Align the front and rear frame centers with each other.
2. Remove β -form pin (2) to remove set pin (3) from the front frame hole.
3. Remove lock bolt (5) from articulation lock bar (1).
4. Pull out and rotate articulation lock bar (1) to align it with the front frame hole.
5. Install set pin (3) into the front frame hole and the articulation lock bar tip end hole. Install β -form pin (2) to lock the articulation lock bar (1) in position.



MAINTENANCE

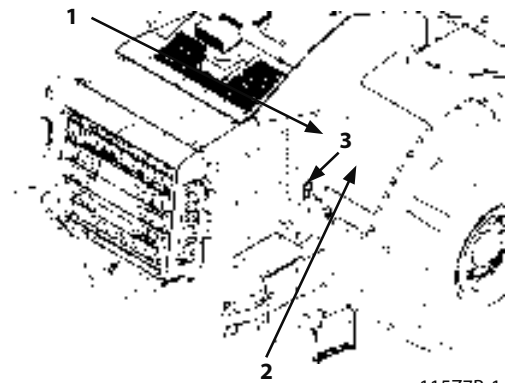
Inspection/Maintenance Side Access Cover

CAUTION:

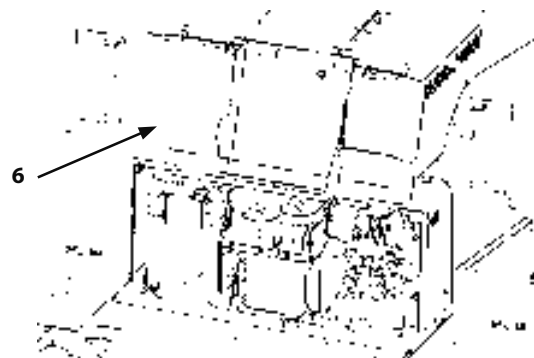
- Always close side covers (1) and top cover (6) during operation.
- Do not keep side covers (1) open on a slope or when a strong wind is blowing. Failure to do so may be dangerous because side cover (1) may unexpectedly close.
- Take care not to pinch your fingers when opening/closing side covers (1) and top cover (6).
- In case the machine is equipped with the fenders (2) on side covers (1), never ride on the fenders (2).

1. When opening side cover (1), pull latch (3).
2. When fully opening side cover (1), lock lever (5) automatically slides and is positioned in the lock position. Make sure that lock bar (5) is firmly positioned to lock the cover.
3. To close side cover (1), pull wire (4) and release the end of lock bar (5) from the lock position.

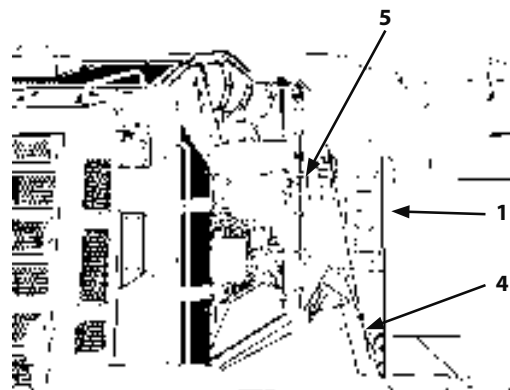
 NOTE: Top cover (6) is locked when fully opened. Make sure it is secured before starting work.



115Z7B-1-142-1



115Z7B-1-142-2



115Z7B-1-142-3

MAINTENANCE

Rear Grille

CAUTION:

- Open or close rear grille (4) only after stopping the engine. Failure to do so may create a very dangerous situation as entanglement with the cooling fan may result.
- Before driving the machine, always check that rear grille (4) is not open.

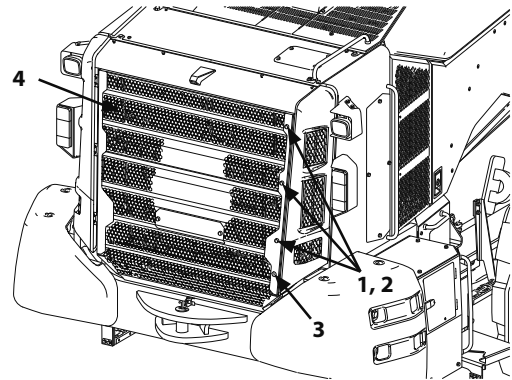
 NOTE: The switch key cannot be removed from latch (3) while rear grille (4) is being opened.

Opening the rear grille

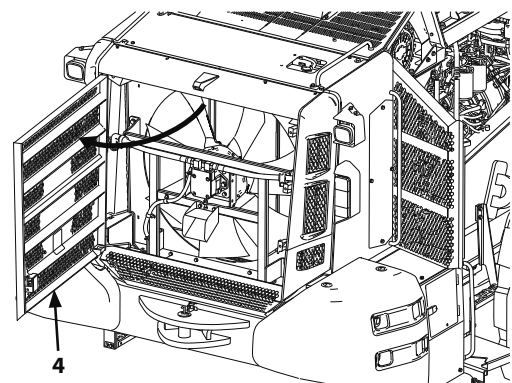
Remove bolt caps (1) and bolts (2). Release latch (3) with the key switch unlock rear grille (4). The rear grille opens and the cooling fan can be cleaned.

Closing the rear grille

After closing rear grille (4), turn and remove key switch (3) to lock rear grille (4). Tighten bolts (2) and install caps (1).



115Z7B-7-10-1



115Z7B-7-10-2

MAINTENANCE

Periodic Replacement of Parts

To ensure safe operation, be sure to conduct periodic inspection of the machine. In addition, the parts listed below, if defective, may pose serious safety/fire hazards. It is very difficult to gauge the extent of deterioration, fatigue, or weakening of the parts listed below simply by visual inspection alone. For this reason, replace these parts at the intervals shown in the table below. However, if any of these parts are found to be defective, replace before starting operation, regardless of the interval.

Also, when replacing hoses, check the clamps for deformation, cracks, or other deterioration, and replace as necessary.

Be sure to perform periodic inspection of all hoses, as shown below, and replace or retighten any defective parts found, as necessary.

Consult Authorized Dealer for correct replacement.

Periodic Replacement Parts		Replacement Intervals	
Engine	Fuel hose (Fuel tank to fuel pre-filter)	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first	
	Fuel hose (Fuel pre-filter to main filter)		
	Oil filter hose (Engine to oil filter)		
	Heater hose (Heater to engine)		
	Fuel hose (Engine to fuel tank)		
	Heater hose (Engine to dosing module)		
	DEF/AdBlue® hose (Aftertreatment device)		
Brakes	Brake valve seals (Rubber parts)	Every 1 year	
	Wet type brake (D-ring for piston)	Every 4 years	
	Accumulator	Every 2 years	
	Stop light switch	Every 2 years	
	Brake hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first	
Steering Mechanism	Steering hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first	
	Steering cylinder seals (Rubber parts)	Every 4 years	
	Steering valve seals (Rubber parts)		
Hydraulic System	Base Machine	Pump suction hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Hydraulic hose (Main pump to main valve)	
		Hydraulic hose (Fan pump to fan motor and fan valve)	
		Hydraulic hose (Transmission high pressure circuit hose)	
		Hydraulic hose (Transmission cooler line hose)	
		Hydraulic oil tank return hose	
		Hydraulic oil cooler line hose	
		Hydraulic hose (Valve to hydraulic oil tank return hose)	
	Front Attachment	Lift arm cylinder line hose	
		Bucket cylinder line hose	
		Pilot hose	
Cab	Seat belt	Every 3 years	

 **NOTE:** Be sure to replace seals, such as O-rings and gaskets, when replacing hoses.

MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Guide

Shaded columns in the table indicate maintenance interval.

A. Greasing

	Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)								Page
			10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	4000	
1.	Bucket Pin	2	★								7-27
2.	Bucket Link Pin	4	★								7-27
3.	Bucket Cylinder Pin	2	★								7-27
	Bucket Cylinder Rod Pin	2	★								7-27
4.	Bell Crank Pin	2	★								7-27
5.	Lift Arm Cylinder Rod Pin	2	★								7-27
	Lift Arm Cylinder Pin	2	★								7-27
6.	Lift Arm Pivot Pin	2	★								7-27
7.	Right Steering Cylinder Pin	2		★★							7-28
8.	Left Steering Cylinder Rod Pin	2		★★							7-28
9.	Frame Center Hinge Pin	2									7-28
10.	Axle Support Pin	2									7-28
11.	Front Propeller Shaft Universal	1								*	7-28
12.	Propeller Shaft Center Support	1									7-29
13.	Center Propeller Shaft Universal	2								*	7-29
14.	Center Propeller Shaft Spline	1							*		7-29
15.	Rear Propeller Shaft Universal	2								*	7-29
16.	Axle Seal	2						*			7-30
17.	Main Propeller Shaft Universal	2								*	7-30

- ★ : Add grease daily during first 50 hours of operation.
In case the machine is engaged in excavation in mud, water or snow, add grease after each work shift.
- ★★ : 50 hours at only first time
- * : Shorten greasing intervals when the machine is operated under severe conditions or when the machine is continuously operated for a long period of time.

IMPORTANT: Grease bucket and link pivots every day until break-in period (50 hours) is complete.

MAINTENANCE

B. Engine

IMPORTANT: Be sure to use the specified oil. Change oil at the exactly specified intervals. If unspecified oil is used, or the oil change intervals are arbitrarily extended, serious engine failure or damage may result.

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page
			10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Engine Oil	Check Oil Level	-							7-31
2.	Engine Oil	Change	57 L							7-32
3.	Engine Oil Filter	Replace	2				★			7-34

★ : Replace the engine oil filter every time the engine oil is changed.

C. Power Train

Parts			Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page
				10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Transmission Oil	Check Oil Level	-		(When leaking oil)						7-36
2.	Transmission Oil	Change	90 L				★				7-36
3.	Suction Strainer	Clean	1								7-36
4.	Transmission Oil Filter	Replace	1				★				7-36
5.	Transmission and Torque Converter Air Breathers	Clean	2								7-40
6.	Axle Oil	Check Oil Level	2								7-41
	Hub Reduction Device		4								7-42
7.	Axle Oil	Change Oil	115 LX2								7-43
	Hub Reduction Device		32.5 LX4								7-44
8.	Check Around Axle and Covers for Oil Leaks		-								7-46

★ : 250 hours at only first time

MAINTENANCE

D. Hydraulic System

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)									Page
			10	50	100	250	500	1000	1500	2000	4000	
1.	Check Hydraulic Oil Level	-										7-49
2.	Change Hydraulic Oil/Clean Hydraulic Oil Tank	550 L									★	7-50
3.	Clean Suction Filter	2	(When changing hydraulic oil)									7-52
4.	Clean Pilot Oil Filter (Brake Circuit)	1										7-53
5.	Clean Pilot Oil Filter (Steering Circuit)	1										7-54
6.	Replace Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter (Full-Flow Filter)*	1										7-55
7.	Replace Air Breather Element	1										7-57
8.	Check Pilot Circuit Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage	1										7-53
9.	Check Ride Control Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage	1										7-59
10.	* Check Gas Pressure in Ride Control Accumulator	-										7-59
11.	* Check Gas Pressure in Steering Accumulator	2										7-60
12.	Check Hoses and Lines for Leaks	-										7-61
	Check Hoses and Lines for Cracks, Bent, Etc.	-										7-61

 **NOTE:** * Contact Authorized Dealer for maintenance.

★ : Hydraulic oil changing interval differs according to the kind of hydraulic oil used.

*: Fine full-flow filter is installed at factory shipment.

E. Fuel System

IMPORTANT: Be sure to use the specified fuel. Failure to do so may result in malfunction or damage on the engine.

	Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page
			10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Check Fuel Level	-								7-66
2.	Drain Water and Sediment from Fuel Tank	1								7-68
3.	Drain Fuel Filter	2								7-69
4.	Replace Fuel Main Filter Element	2								7-73
5.	Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element	2								7-75
6.	Clean Fuel Pump Strainer	1								7-77
7.	Check Water Separator	Drain water	2							7-78
		Change Element	2							7-79
	Check Fuel Hoses for Leak, Cracks, Etc.	-								7-80
8.	Check Fuel Hoses for Cracks, Bent, Etc.	-								7-80

MAINTENANCE

F. Air Cleaner

Parts			Quantity	Interval (hours)						Page
				10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000
1.	Air Cleaner Outer Element	Replace	1	Indicator comes ON						7-81
2.	Air Cleaner Inner Element	Replace	1	At the time of the fifth replacement of the outer element (or every 2 years)						7-81

G. Cooling System

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page
			10	50	100	250	500	2000	3000	
1.	Check Coolant Level	-								7-83
2.	Check Drive Belt	-								7-84
3.	Change Coolant	88 L							*	7-86
4.	Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Other Cooling System	1					★			7-89

★ : Shorten the maintenance interval when the machine is operated in severely dusty areas.

* : When genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery Long-Life Coolant is used, change every two years or 3000 operating hours, whichever comes first.

IMPORTANT: Use fresh water or normal tap water as a coolant. Do not use strong acid or alkaline water. Use the coolant with genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery Long-Life Coolant (LLC) mixed by 30 to 50 %. If a coolant mixed with less than 30 % of Hitachi Construction Machinery Long-Life Coolant is used, service life of the cooling parts may be shortened due to damage by freezing or corrosion of coolant system parts.

If mineral-rich water is used for coolant, water stain or scale may build up inside the engine or radiator, causing overheat due to deterioration of coolant performance.

H. Electrical System

Parts			Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page
				10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1.	Batteries	Check Electrolyte Level	2								7-90
		Check Electrolyte Specific Gravity	2								7-93
2.	Check Monitor Functions and All Other Instrument Operation		-								7-94
3.	Check Work Lights		-								7-95
4.	Check Horn and Reverse Buzzer		-								7-96
5.	Check Electrical Harnesses and Fuses		-								7-97

MAINTENANCE

I. Brake System

Parts			Quantity	Interval (hours)						Page	
				10	50	100	250	500	1000		2000
1.	Check Right and Left Brake Interlocking Performance		-								7-99
2.	Check Parking Brake Force		-								7-100
3.	Parking Brake Gear Oil	Check	1								7-101
		Change	3 L								7-102
4.	Check Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage		2								7-103
5.	Check Gas Pressure in Accumulator		2								7-104
6.	Check Brake Disks (Service and Parking)		-								7-104

J. Tire

Parts			Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page
				10	50	100	250	500	2000	4000	
1.	Check Tire (Air Pressure)	Check	4								7-105
		Adjustment	4	As required							7-105
2.	Check Tire for Damage	Check	4								7-106
3.	Check Wheel Bolt Torque	Adjustment	4		★						7-106

★ : 50 hours at only first time

K. Air Conditioner

Parts				Quantity	Interval (hours)						Page	
					10	50	100	250	500	1000		2000
1.	Check Air Conditioner Filter	Double Filter	Clean	1	When cleaning fresh air filter						7-110	
			Replace	1								
		Circulating Air Filter	Clean	1			★					7-111
			Replace	1	After Cleaning 10 times						7-111	
2.	Check Air Conditioner			-	Every 6 months						7-112	
3.	Check Air Conditioner Piping			-	Every 6 months						7-112	
4.	Check Air Conditioner Condenser			1	Every 6 months						7-113	
5.	Check Air Conditioner Compressor Drive Belt			1	Every 6 months						7-113	
6.	Check Refrigerant			1	Every 6 months						7-114	
7.	Replace Air Conditioner Receiver Dryer			1	*						7-114	
8.	Check Compressor and Pulley			1	Once a year						7-115	

★ : Clean every 100 hours or every week whichever comes first.
In case the machine is operated at a dusty job site, clean or replace the filter element earlier than the normal interval.

* : Replace every 3 years or 6000 operating hours, whichever comes first.

MAINTENANCE

L. Miscellaneous

	Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)								Page
			10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	4500	
1.	Check Bucket Teeth and Cutting Edge	-									7-116
2.	Check and Replace Seat and Seat Belt	1									7-117
3.	Check ROPS cab, Resin Cab Roof, and Roof Mounting Bolts	-									7-117
4.	Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level	-									7-117
5.	Check Play Amount in Joystick Steering Movement	-									7-118
6.	Check Accelerator Pedal Operation, and Exhaust Gas Color and Noise	-									7-119
7.	Check Rearview Mirror and Inside Rearview Mirror	-									7-120
8.	Check Steps and Handrails for Damage and Looseness	-									7-120
9.	Clean Engine Compartment and Hood	-									7-121
10.	Check Sound Absorbing Mat Around Engine	-									7-121
11.	Cleaning of Rear View Camera Lens										7-121
12.	* Check and Adjust Valve Clearance	-									7-122
13.	* Check Engine Compression Pressure	-						★★			7-122
14.	* Check and Clean Starter and Alternator	-									7-122
15.	* Retighten Front Axle and Rear Axle Support Mounting Bolts	-		★							7-122
16.	* Check Turbocharger	-									7-123
17.	* Check and Clean EGR Valve	-									7-123
18.	* Check and Clean EGR Cooler	-									7-123
19.	* Check Fuel Injector	-									7-123
20.	Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts	-		★							7-124

 NOTE: * Contact Authorized Dealer for maintenance.

★ : 50 hours at only first time

★★ : Every 1000 hours or 1 year whichever comes first

MAINTENANCE

M. Aftertreatment Device

Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)								Page
		10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	4500	
1. Check and Clean Aftertreatment Device	–	As required								7-133

N. Urea SCR System

Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)								Page
		10	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	4500	
1. DEF/AdBlue®	Check	1								7-136
	Change	1	As required							7-138
2. Replace DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module Main Filter	1									7-139
3. Check Dosing Module	1									7-140
4. Replace DEF/AdBlue® Tank Inlet Filter	1									7-140

MAINTENANCE

Kind of Oils

Brand Names of Recommended Grease

Kind of Grease		Lithium Grease
Application		Front Joint Pins, etc.
Air Temp.		-20 to 40 °C
Recommended Products		Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Grease NLGI EP-2
Alternative Products	Specification	NLGI 2 EP

IMPORTANT:

- **Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Greases are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for Hitachi Construction Machinery, hence we recommend to use Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Greases.**
- **Do not use greases which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable grease may lead to damage which is excluded from Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**

Recommended Engine Oil

Kind of Oil		Engine Oil (ISO 6743/4 HV)
Application		Engine Crank Case
Air Temp.		-20 to 40 °C
Recommended Products		Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oil 10W-40 DH-2
Alternative Products	Viscosity	10W-40
	Specification	JASO DH-2

IMPORTANT:

- **Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oils are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for Hitachi Construction Machinery, hence we recommend to use Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Engine Oils.**
- **Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is excluded from Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**

MAINTENANCE

Brand Names of Recommended Transmission Oil

Kind of Oil	Engine Oil (API 10W, CD Class)
Application	Transmission
Air Temp.	-25 °C or higher
Manufacturer (INPO)	
Hitachi Construction Machinery	* Transmission Oil 10W

IMPORTANT: When the atmospheric temperature is below -25°, consult Authorized Dealer.

 **NOTE:** The machine shipped from factory is filled with transmission oil marked with *.

Brand Names of Recommended Axle Oil

Kind of Oil	Axle Oil
Application	Axle, Parking Brake
Manufacturer	
Hitachi Construction Machinery	High Gear Oil TKTT 15150-4th

IMPORTANT:

- Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Axle Oils are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for Hitachi Construction Machinery, hence we recommend to use Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Axle Oils. If other oil is used, which may lead to damage on the machine.
- Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to damage which is excluded from Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.

MAINTENANCE

Brand Names of Recommended Hydraulic Oil

Kind of Lubricant	Hydraulic Oil	
Where to be applied	Hydraulic System	
Change Interval	4000 hours	1500 hours
Environmental Temp.	-20 to 40 °C	
Recommended Products	Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Hydraulic Oil 5000	Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Hydraulic Oil Multi
Alternative Product		Hydraulic Oil meeting JCMAS HK VG46W

IMPORTANT:

- **Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Hydraulic Oils are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for Hitachi Construction Machinery, hence we recommend to use Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Hydraulic Oils.**
- **Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to damage which is excluded from Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.**

Recommended Coolant

Kind of Coolant	Long-Life Coolant
Application	Radiator
Standard	ASTMD-6210
Manufacturer/ Recommended Products	Hitachi Construction Machinery Genuine Long Life Coolant

Air temperature [°C]	Long-Life Coolant Mixing ratio [%]	Coolant Capacity: 88 L	
		Long-Life Coolant [L]	Soft Water [L]
-10 °C or higher	30	26.4	61.6
-20 °C or higher	40	35.2	52.8
-30 °C or higher	50	44.0	44.0

 **NOTE:** * Use concentrate type coolant.

If the premix 50/50 type is used, do not mix with water.

MAINTENANCE

List of Consumable Parts

1. Filter Elements

	Part No.
Engine Oil Filter	4696643
Fuel Main Filter	YA00033486
Fuel Pre-Filter Element	4906070100
Water Separator Element	YA00002973
Air Cleaner Element (outer)	3098171070
Air Cleaner Element (inner)	3098171060
Hydraulic Oil Tank Suction Filter	4033560150
Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter (Full-Flow Filter)	YA00058645
Pilot Oil Filter (Brake Circuit)	4033060610
Pilot Oil Filter (Steering Circuit)	3098170720
Transmission Oil Filter	3098170620
Oil Tank Air Breather Element	3098170990
Air Conditioner Circulating Air Filter	YA00001490
Air Conditioner Fresh Air Filter	4251527
Air Conditioner Receiver Dryer	4552070070
Axle Oil Filter (optional)	4034470090
DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module Main Filter	YA00047054

2. Drive Belts

	Part No.
Air Conditioner Drive Belt	4300160090
Alternator Drive Belt	4690909

MAINTENANCE

3. Bucket Parts

			Part No.	Quantity
Cutting Edge	Center		3093524340	2
	Right and Left side		3093524350	2
	Bolt		4395420020	14
	Washer		6271018339	14
	Nut		3761220010	14
Bucket Teeth (R Bucket)	Bucket Teeth		3680020443	8
	Adapter (Left)		3024520260	1
	Adapter (Center)		3024520250	6
	Adapter (Right)		3024520270	1
	Pin		4000039440	8
O-ring	At the Connection of Lift Arm and Bucket	Dust Seal	4103903	2
		O-ring	4513526	2
	At the Connection of Bucket Link and Bucket	Dust Seal	4083971	2
		O-ring	Z954488	2
Wear Plate	Wear Plate (Common with Cutting Edge and Teeth Type Bucket)		4165620120	2
	Bolt		4392720290	8
	Washer		6271018221	8
	Nut		3761260020	8

MAINTENANCE

4. Combination Light and Other Light

			ASS'Y	Bulb	Lens	
Head Light			Left	4436232	4434679 (24V75/70W H4)	-
			Right	4436232	4434679 (24V75/70W H4)	-
Front Combination Light	Front Combination Light	Left	2640242432	-	4661233 (Front) 4661234 (Rear)	
		Right	2640242432	-	4661233 (Front) 4661234 (Rear)	
	Front Work Light	Left	-	3848070930 (24V25W)	-	
		Right	-	3848070930 (24V25W)	-	
	Clearance Light	Left	-	4661235 (24V5W)	-	
		Right	-	4661235 (24V5W)	-	
	Rear Combination Light	Rear Combination Light	Left	YA00045096	-	-
Right			YA00045096	-	-	
Work Light	Front (Cab)		YA00015760	-	-	
	Rear/Add Front (Cab)		YA00031518	-	-	
	Rear		YA00063511	-	-	

5. Slow Blow Fuses

	Part No.
70A	4315073
140A	YA00021809

MAINTENANCE

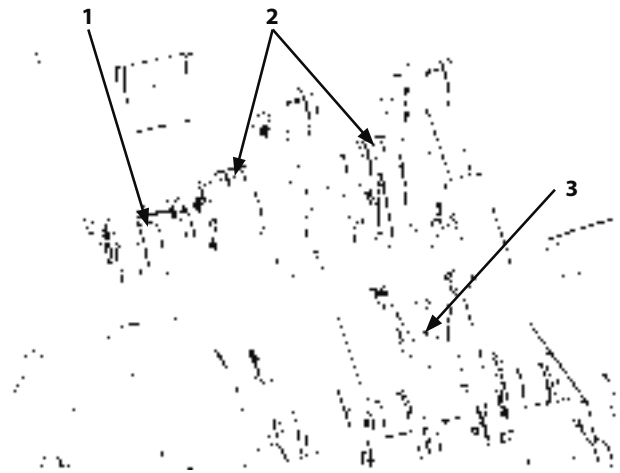
A. Greasing

CAUTION: Apply the parking brake and the articulation lock bar.

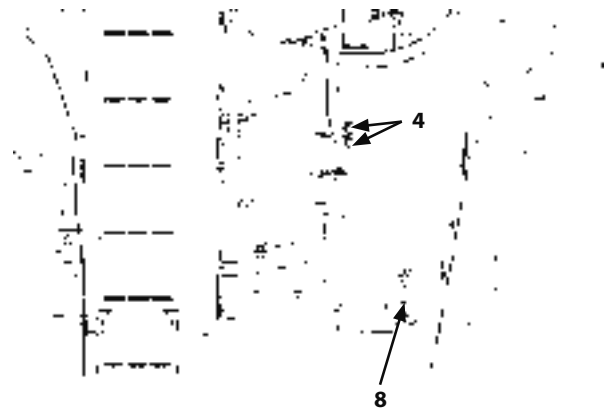
NOTE:

- Grease the front joint pins (grease fitting (1) to (9)) everyday, until the initial break-in period of 50 hours is complete.
- In case excavation is made in mud, water or snow, lubricate the machine after operation is complete.
- Sufficiently add high quality grease through the grease fittings. After removing contamination around the grease fitting, add grease. After greasing, thoroughly remove the old grease that was pushed-out from the seals.

1. One point each to right and left bucket pins (1).
--- every 100 hours
2. One point each to right and left bucket link pins (2 and 3).
--- every 100 hours
3. One point each to right and left bucket cylinder pin (4).
--- every 100 hours
One point each to right and left bucket cylinder rod pins (5).
--- every 100 hours
4. One point each to right and left bell crank pins (6).
--- every 100 hours
5. One point each to right and left lift arm cylinder rod pins (7).
--- every 100 hours
One point each to right and left lift cylinder pins (8).
--- every 100 hours
6. One point each to right and left lift arm pivot pins (9).
--- every 100 hours



MNHE-07-009



MNHE-07-010



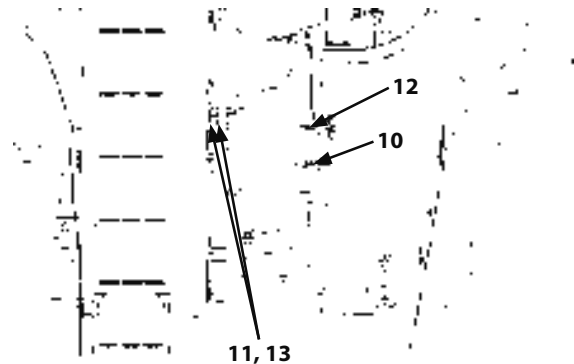
MNHE-07-011

MAINTENANCE

7. Two points to right steering cylinder pins (10 and 11).
--- every 250 hours (50 hours at first time only)

Cylinder right front (10)

Cylinder right rear (11)

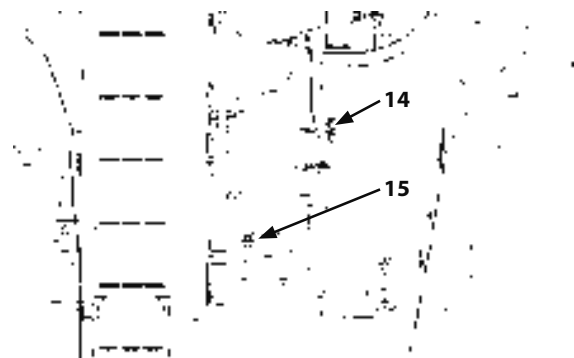


MNHE-07-010

8. Two points to left steering cylinder rod pins (12 and 13).
--- every 250 hours (50 hours at first time only)

Cylinder left front (12)

Cylinder left rear (13)



MNHE-07-010

9. One point each to upper and lower frame center hinge pins (14 and 15).
--- every 250 hours

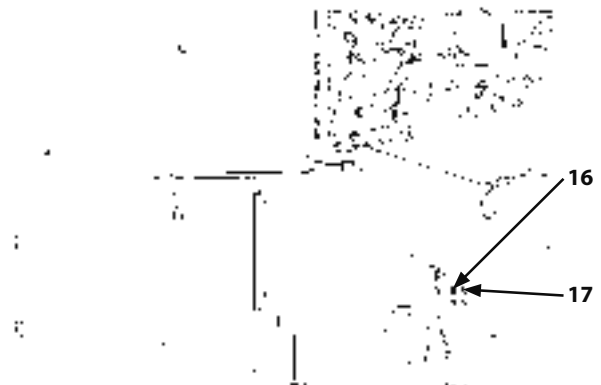
Upper (14)

Lower (15)

10. One point each to front and rear axle support pins (16 and 17).
--- every 50 hours

Front (17)

Rear (16)



MNHE-07-012

11. One point to front propeller shaft universal (18).
--- every 4000 hours



Front axle

MNHE-07-013

 **NOTE:** When the machine is continuously operated under severe conditions for a long time, shorten the greasing intervals.

MAINTENANCE

12. One point to propeller shaft center support (19).

--- every 250 hours

13. One point to center propeller shaft universal front (20).

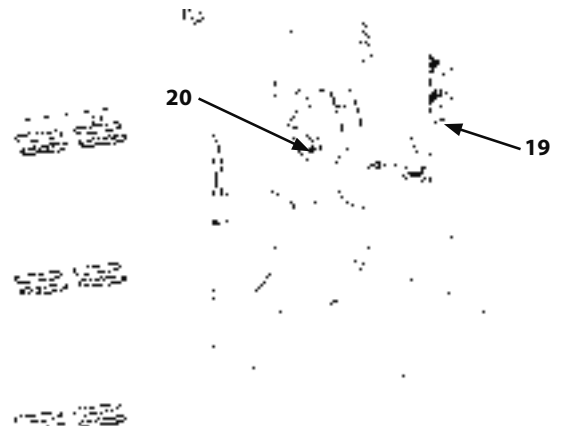
--- every 4000 hours

One point to center propeller shaft universal rear (22).

--- every 4000 hours

14. One point to center propeller shaft splines (21)

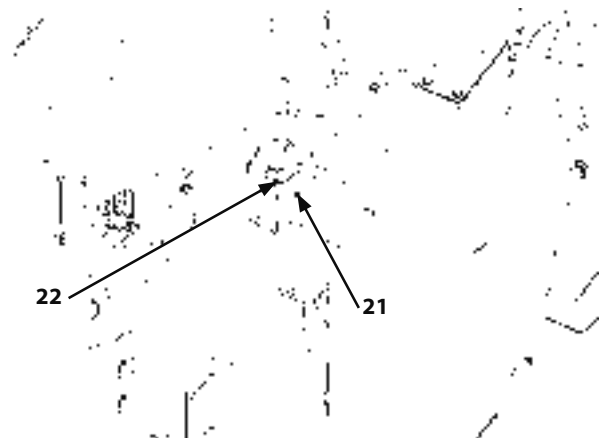
--- every 2000 hours



MNHE-07-014

IMPORTANT: When greasing with the machine positioned in straight, remove the fitting on the sleeve yoke before starting the engine.

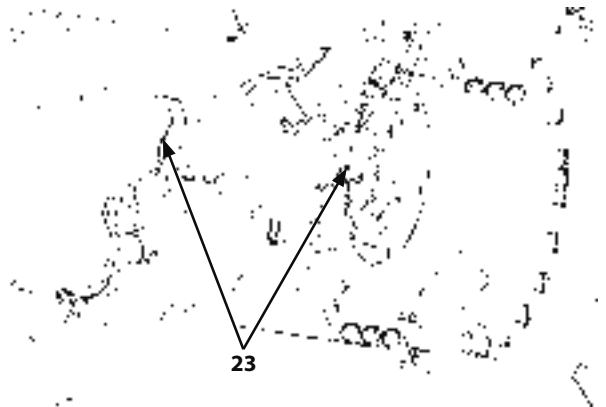
 **NOTE:** When greasing spline (21), steer the machine fully to the right or left, and stop the engine. Lubricate the fitting, start the engine and slowly turn the machine from side to side 2 or 3 times after greasing to lubricate the spline enough.



MNHE-07-015

15. Two points to rear propeller shaft universal (23).

--- every 4000 hours



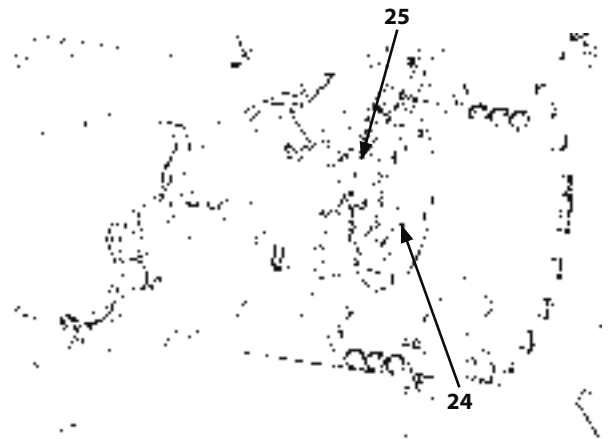
MNHE-07-016

MAINTENANCE

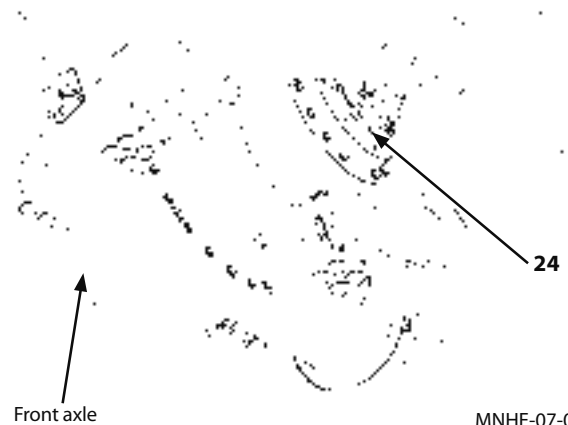
16. One point each to front and rear axle seal (24).

--- every 1000 hours

- Remove breather nipple (25).
- Fill grease until it spills out of breather nipple (25) hole.
- Wipe the spilled grease and install breather nipple (25).



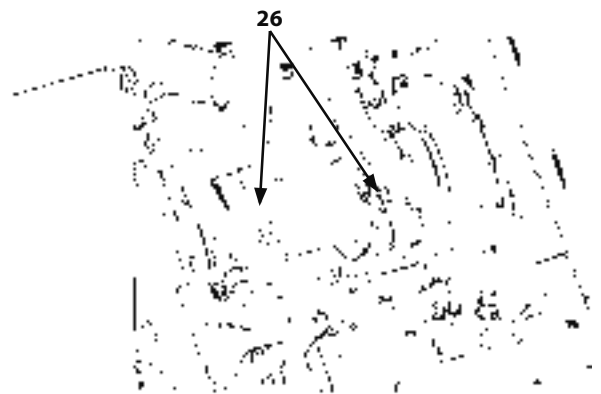
MNHE-07-016



MNHE-07-013

17. Two points to main propeller shaft universal (26)

--- every 4000 hours



MNHE-07-017

MAINTENANCE

B. Engine

- 1** Check Engine Oil Level
--- every 10 hours (before starting the engine)

IMPORTANT: Incorrect engine oil level may cause engine trouble (The oil level should be between the upper and lower marks on oil level gauge (1)).

If engine oil level is too high, control the oil level to the proper quantity before starting the engine.

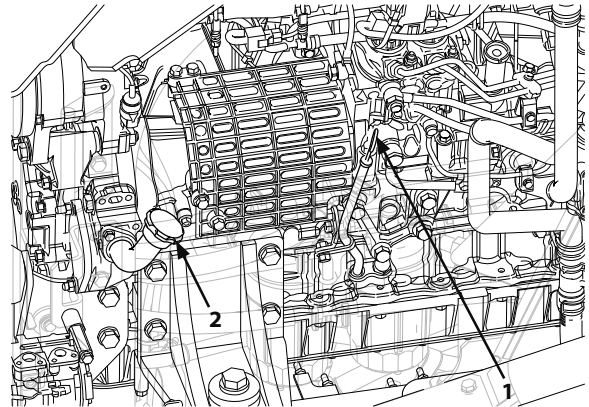
Check oil level before starting the engine. Pull out oil level gauge (1). Check for mixing of foreign matter or contamination in the oil. Wipe oil level gauge (1) with cloth, re-insert it into the pipe to the end, and then pull it out again. The oil level should be between the "HIGH" and "LOW" marks on oil level gauge (1).

If oil level is below the "LOW" mark, add the recommended engine oil via oil filler (2).

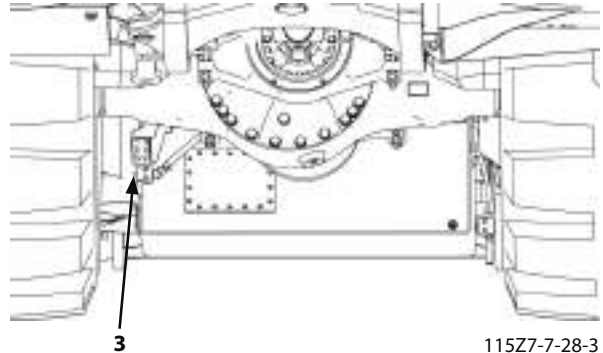
If oil level exceeds the "HIGH" mark, remove drain plug (3), and then drain oil.

Recheck oil level.

Drain plug (3) tightening torque: 78.5 N·m (8.0 kgf·m)



95Z7B-7-25-1



115Z7-7-28-3

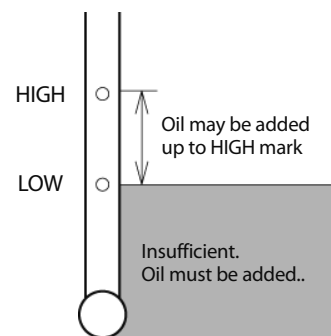
WARNING: Do not spill oil while changing oil. Spilled fuel and oil, and trash, grease, debris, accumulated coal dust, and other flammable materials may cause fires.

NOTE: Level the engine when adding oil or inspecting oil level.

When required to check oil level after operating the machine, first stop the engine. Wait for more than 30 minutes. Then check oil level.

In case the oil color changes, severe contamination and/or mixing of foreign matter may be seen, change the oil.

(This means that the oil level will become stabilized after all oil delivered to respective lubrication area returns to the oil pan.)



95Z7-7-25-3

MAINTENANCE

2 Change Engine Oil

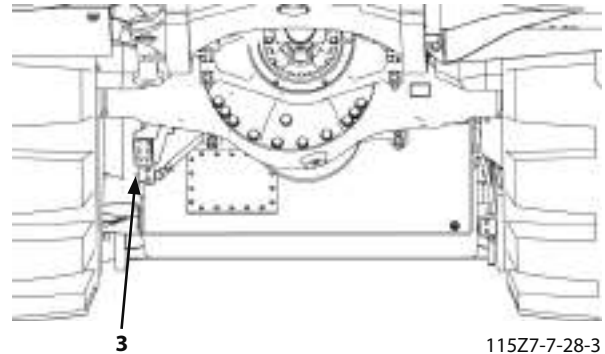
--- every 500 hours

WARNING: Immediately after the machine has been operated, all engine parts are hot. Wait for the engine to cool before starting any maintenance work. Failure to do so may cause severe burns.

NOTE: Improper disposal of waste oil can threaten the earth's environment and ecology.

Consult professional collection trader or Authorized Dealer for disposing used oil and filters.

Be sure to replace the engine oil filter when changing the engine oil at the same time.



115Z7-7-28-3

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/ maintenance work.
2. Clean the areas around the drain plug and the oil filter.
3. Arrange a 60 liter- capacity container to receive the drain oil.
4. Remove drain plug (3) provided on the fuel tank side to allow oil to drain.
5. Drain oil from the oil filter cartridge.

MAINTENANCE

6. Allow oil to drain through a clean cloth to check if any foreign matters such as metal pieces are not included in the oil.

7. Install a new oil filter.

(Refer to the descriptions for **3** Replace Engine Oil Filter.)

8. Securely tighten drain plug (3).

Tightening torque: 78.5 N·m (8.0 kgf·m)

9. Remove oil filler cap (2). Supply the specified amount of engine oil.

57 liters

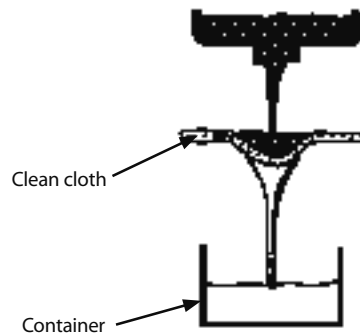
10. Securely tighten oil filler cap (2).

11. Check that oil filler cap (2) is not loosened.

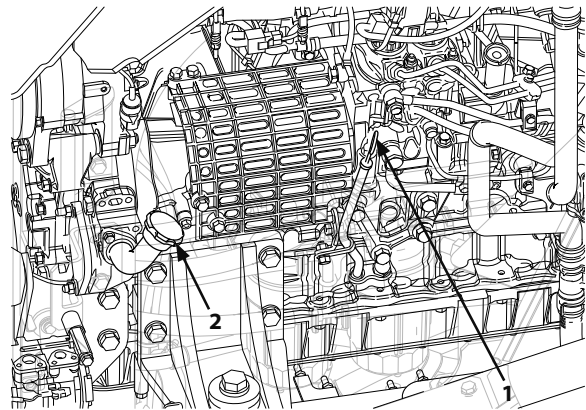
12. Check that the oil level is between the maximum and minimum level scales on oil level gauge (1). Then, start the engine.

13. After starting the engine, check the sealing surfaces for any oil leakage.

14. Keep the engine running at low idle speed for 5 minutes and stop the engine. About 30 minutes later, recheck the oil level. If necessary, add oil.



M4GB-07-020



95Z7B-7-25-1

MAINTENANCE

3

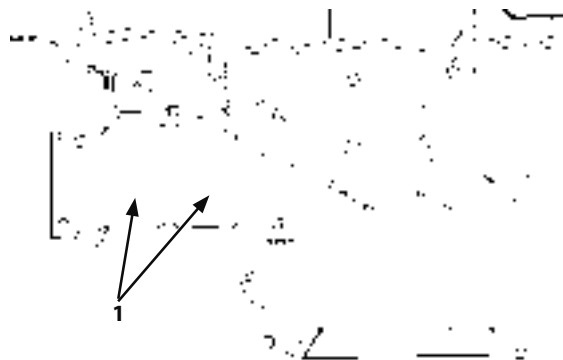
Replace Engine Oil Filter

--- every 500 hours (each time when engine oil is changed)

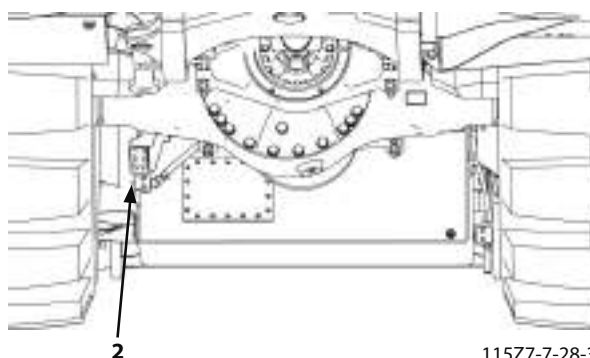


WARNING: Immediately after the machine has been operated, all engine parts are hot. Wait for the engine to cool before starting any maintenance work. Failure to do so may cause severe burns.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Clean the areas around oil filters (1). Place a container under the engine oil pan and oil filters (1).
3. Remove drain plug (2).
4. Then, allow oil to drain through a clean cloth into a container.
57 liters
5. After all oil has been drained, inspect the cloth for any debris such as small pieces of metal.
6. Install drain plug (2).



115Z7B-7-27-1



115Z7-7-28-3

MAINTENANCE

IMPORTANT:

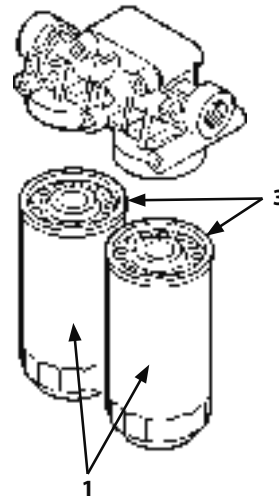
- **When replacing oil filters (1), make sure to replace both of them at the same time.**
7. Remove the filter cartridges of engine oil filter cartridge (1) by turning it counterclockwise with the filter wrench.
 8. Clean the filter gasket contact area on the engine.

IMPORTANT:

- **When filling new oil, take care not to allow foreign matter to enter the engine.**
 - **Do not re-use cartridge element (1).**
9. Pour new oil into the new cartridge, being careful not to let it overflow. Then, apply a thin layer of clean oil to cartridge gasket (3).
 10. Install new filter (1). Turn filter cartridge (1) clockwise by hand until gasket (3) touches the contact area. Be sure not to damage the gasket when installing filter (1).
 11. Tighten engine oil filter (1) 1 turn more using the filter wrench. Be careful not to overtighten.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not spill oil while adding oil. Spilled oil may cause fires.

12. Remove the oil filler cap. Fill the engine with recommended oil. Check that oil level is between the circle marks on the dipstick after 15 minutes.
13. Install the oil filler cap.
14. Start the engine. Run the engine at slow idle for 5 minutes.
15. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
16. Check for any leakage.
17. After 15 minutes, check oil level on the dipstick and add or drain oil to maintain proper oil level. (The oil level should be between the "HIGH" and "LOW" limit marks on the oil level gauge.) (Refer to page 7-31.)



MNHE-07-068

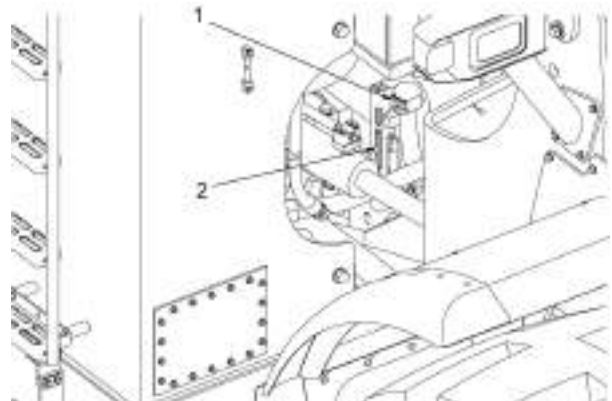
MAINTENANCE

C. Power Train

- 1** Check Transmission Oil Level
--- every 10 hours (daily)

WARNING:

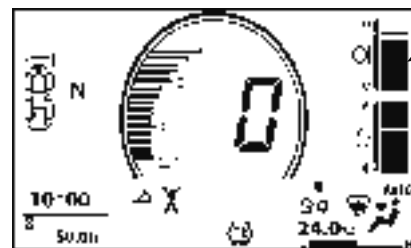
- Check the oil level while running the engine with care about the following points.
- Move forward/reverse lever to neutral and turn parking brake switch ON.
- After leveling the bucket on the ground, move the control lever lock switch to the lock (🔒) position.
- Set the articulation lock bar.



115Z7-7-29-1

IMPORTANT:

- Do not start the engine when the transmission oil level is low. Damage to the transmission may result. Do not use transmission oils other than those listed in the "Brand Names of Recommended Transmission Oil".
- Never spray high pressure water to the cap and vicinity of the cap. Water may enter into the transmission, damage to the transmission may result.



Transmission
oil temperature
gauge

MNHG-01-103EN

Check the oil level with engine at low idle.
Normal oil level is at the center of oil level sight gauge (2).
If the oil level is lower than the specified, add recommended oil from filler port (1) while the engine is at idle.
Do not overfill.

MAINTENANCE

- 2** Change Transmission Oil
--- every 1000 hours (250 hours at first change only)
- 3** Clean Suction Strainer
--- when changing transmission oil
- 4** Change Transmission Oil Filter
--- every 1000 hours (250 hours at first change only)



WARNING:

- Unexpected movement of the machine may cause a serious accident. When parking the machine, turn off the joystick steering system by fully raise armrest (1). Then, turn off parking brake switch (2) to apply parking brake and stop the engine.
- Before changing oil, install articulation stopper (lock bar) (3) to securely hold the front and rear chassis to avoid an accident due to unexpected machine movement.

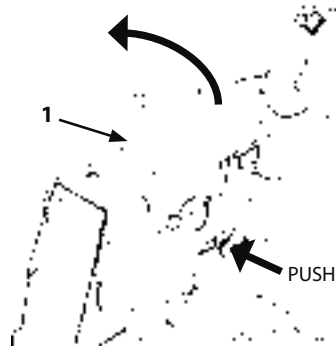
IMPORTANT: Do not use transmission oils other than those listed in the "Kind of Oils" - "Transmission Oil".



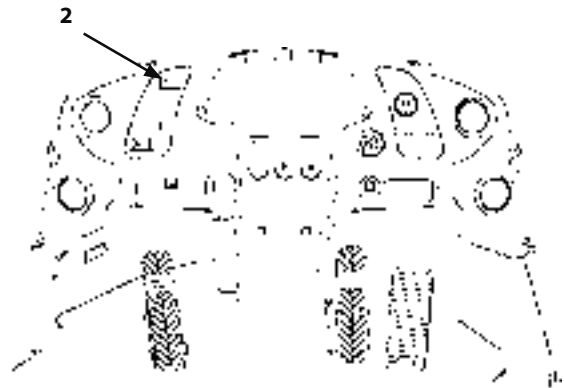
NOTE: Be sure to replace the transmission oil filter when changing the transmission oil.

1. Operate the machine until the transmission oil is heated to the appropriate temperature.
2. Park the machine and follow the procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
3. Make sure to turn off the joystick steering system, and to install articulation stopper (3) to lock the front and rear chassis.

Fully raise up.



115Z7B-1-10-3



115Z7B-1-81-1



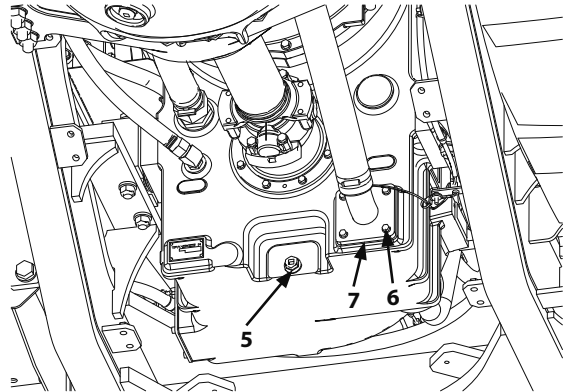
"LOCKED" position

MNHE-07-005

MAINTENANCE

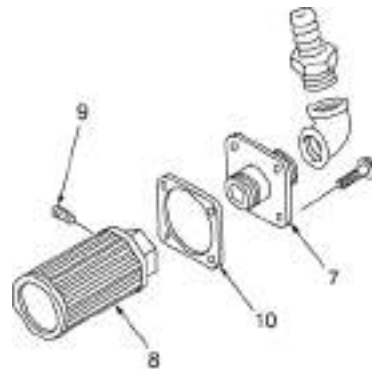
IMPORTANT: The machine is equipped with a turbocharged engine. Perform cool down operation before stopping the engine. Failure to do so may cause the lubricant on the turbocharger bearing surfaces to desiccate due to the intense heat present inside the turbocharger, possibly causing damage to the turbocharger.

4. Turn the key switch OFF to stop the engine. Leave the machine untouched for 10 minutes.
5. Prepare a container to receive the drain oil.
120 liters
6. Remove drain plug (5) from the transmission bottom to drain the oil. Dispose of the drain oil in the proper way.
7. Securely tighten drain plug (5).



115Z7B-7-31-1

8. Loosen four bolts (6).
Wrench size : 14 mm
9. Remove flange (7) together with the pipe and suction strainer (8).
10. Remove set screw (9) from strainer (8).
Wrench size : 2.5 mm (hex wrench)



95Z7-7-32-2

11. Remove suction strainer (8) from flange (7).
Brush off any debris and clean with solvent.

 **NOTE:** It is normal for a few fine particles to be on strainer (8). Large pieces or a large quantity of particles indicates a problem. Contact Authorized Dealer if you find excessive debris.

12. Reassemble and reinstall strainer (8), flange (7) and the drain plug with a new gasket (10).
13. Tighten four bolts (6).
Tightening torque: 53 N·m (5.4 kgf·m)

MAINTENANCE

 **NOTE:** Before removing filter (11), remove the drain plug on the bottom of filter (11) with a 24 mm wrench. Prepare a container of about 4 liter capacity to catch the drain.

14. Using a filter wrench, turn cartridge filter (11) counterclockwise to remove it.
15. Clean the filter-seating surface. After coating the new cartridge filter gasket surface with new oil, lightly turn the cartridge filter clockwise by hand until the cartridge filter sealing surface comes in contact with the filter-seating surface.
16. At this time, further tighten the cartridge filter using a filter wrench. Take care not to excessively tighten the cartridge filter. Be careful not to damage filter cartridge by overtightening.

Tightening torque: $98 \pm 9.8 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($10 \pm 1 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{m}$)

 **NOTE:** Clean and install the oil drain plug.

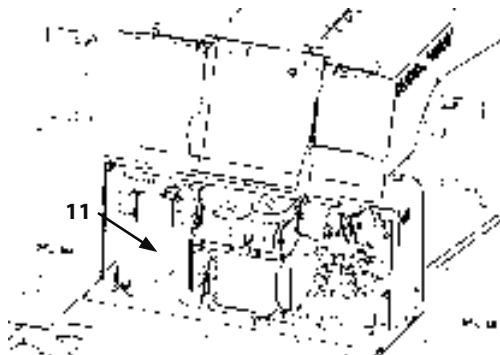
Tightening torque: $59 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($6 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{m}$)

17. Refill the specified amount of oil through transmission oil filler port (12).
- 90 liters
18. Start the engine and keep it running for two minutes.
19. Check that the oil level is within the specified range in oil level gauge (13). If necessary, add oil.

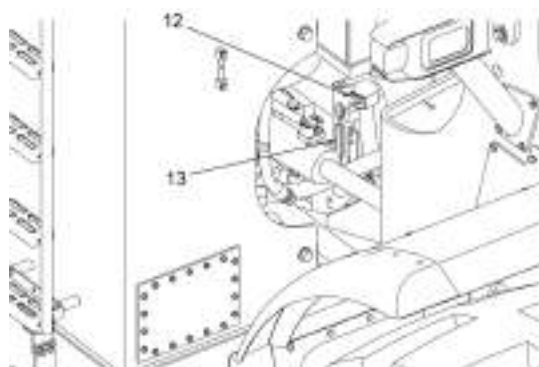
 **NOTE:** Never reuse cartridge type element (11).

Install the cartridge with care so that the O-ring is not damaged due to twisting.

Check for any oil leakage at the drain plug and the filter mounting area.



115Z7B-1-142-2



115Z7-7-29-1a

MAINTENANCE

5 Clean Transmission and Torque Converter Air Breathers

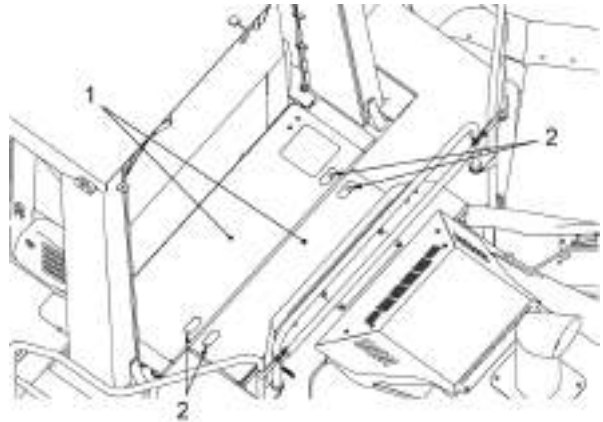
--- every 1000 hours

1. Open two top covers (decks) (1) behind the cab by removing two each of fixing bolts (2). Lock the covers in the opened position.
2. Clean the vicinity around air breathers (3, 4).
Put a cover on the air breather port to prevent foreign matter from entering.

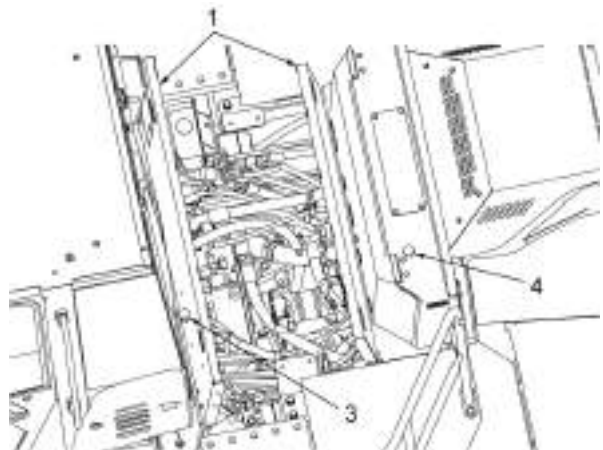
WARNING: Be sure to wear safety glasses when cleaning the air breather with compressed air.

3. Clean the air breather using compressed air.
If completely contaminated, wash the air breather with a cleaning solvent, blow it dry and reinstall it.
4. Take care not to allow foreign matter to enter when reinstalling the air breather.
5. Close covers (1) and tighten bolts (2).

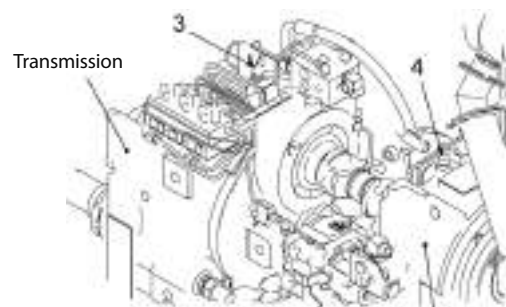
WARNING: Be sure to tighten bolts (2) to prevent covers (1) from opening or falling down unexpectedly.



115Z7-7-37-3



115Z7-7-37-2



Torque Converter

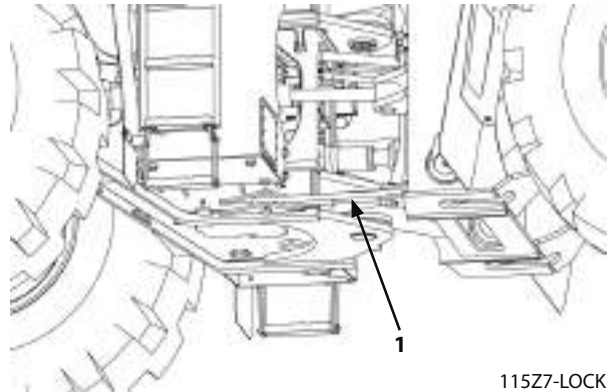
115Z7-7-37-4

MAINTENANCE

6 Check Axle Oil Level --- every 250 hours

Check Axle Oil Level

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/ maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar (1) to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Clean the vicinity of oil level plug (2).
4. Remove oil level plug (2).
5. If the oil level is lower than the plug, add the specified oil through the level plug hole.

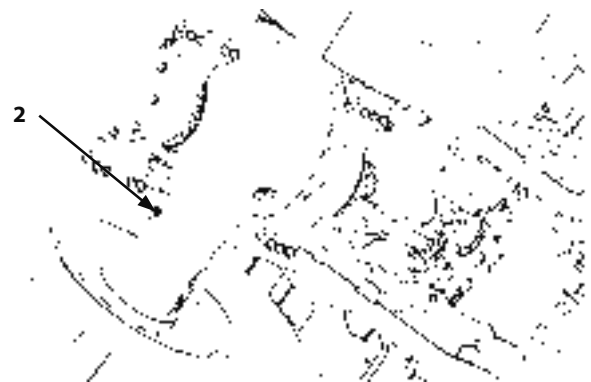


115Z7-LOCK



Front Axle

MNHE-07-024



Rear Axle

MNHE-07-025

MAINTENANCE

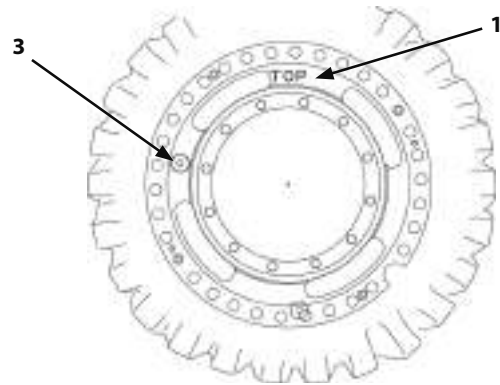
Check Oil Level (Hub Reduction Device)

--- every 250 hours

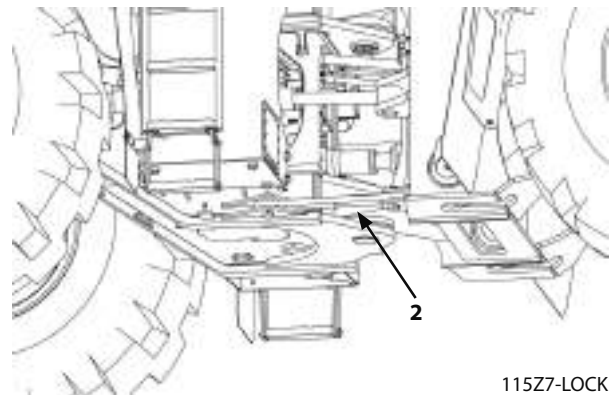
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.

 **NOTE:** Adjust so that the "TOP" mark (1) on the hub reduction device comes top. See the illustration at the right side.

2. Install articulation lock bar (2) to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Clean the vicinity of oil level plug (3).
4. Remove oil level plug (3). Oil must be up to the bottom of hole.
5. If necessary, add oil until oil flows out of oil level check plug (3) hole. (Refer to the "Brand Names of Recommended Axle Oil".)
6. Wrap the plug threads with sealing-type tape. Install and tighten plug (3).
7. Check the gear oil level in the other hub reduction device.



115Z7-7-40-2



115Z7-LOCK

MAINTENANCE

7 Change Axle Oil Change Axle Oil --- every 2000 hours

WARNING: Take care about the following points.

- Starting repair work immediately after operation may cause burns. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.
- Lock the front and rear frames with the articulation lock bar.

IMPORTANT: Do not use axle oils other than those listed in the "Brand Names of Recommended Axle Oil".

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar (1) to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Clean the areas around the drain plug and the oil level plug.
4. Arrange a container to receive the drain oil.

Drain plug hole	Capacity
Drain plug (2)	120 liters

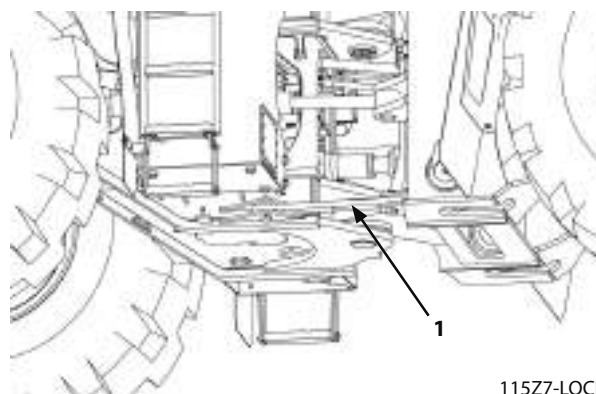
5. Remove drain plug (2) to drain the oil.
6. Securely tighten drain plug (2).
7. Refill the specified amount of oil through oil level plug (3) hole.

Refill plug hole	Front axle	Rear axle
Plug (3)	115 liters	115 liters

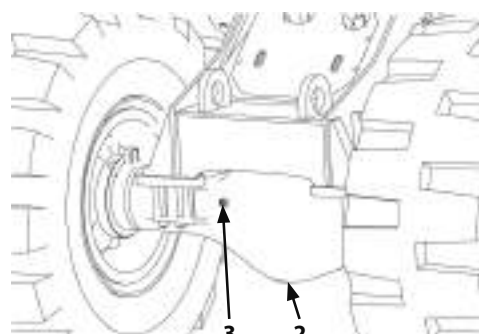
IMPORTANT: It takes time for oil to fully lubricate the overall front axle.

After installing the plug, allow the machine to drive for several minutes. Then, stop the engine and check the axle for any oil leaks.

8. Check the oil level.

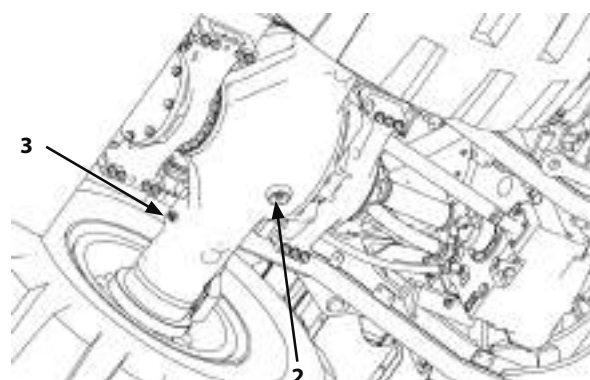


115Z7-LOCK



Front Axle

115Z7-7-34-1



Rear Axle

115Z7-7-38-3

MAINTENANCE

Change Oil (Hub Reduction Device)

--- every 2000 hours

WARNING: Take care about the following points.

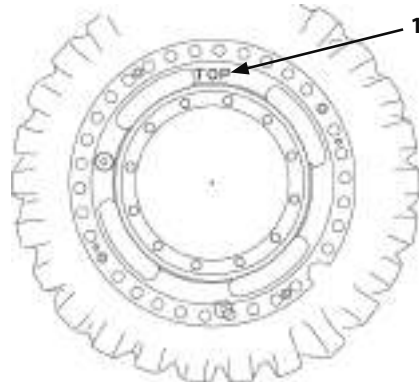
- Starting repair work immediately after operation may cause burns. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.
- Lock the front and rear frames with the articulation lock bar.

IMPORTANT: Do not use axle oils other than those listed in the "Brand Names of Recommended Axle Oil".

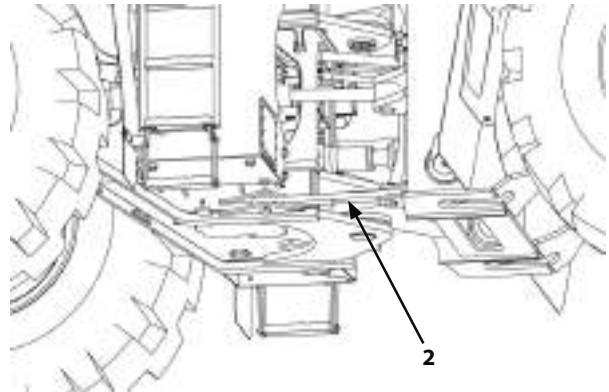
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.

NOTE: Adjust so that the "TOP" mark (1) on the hub reduction device comes top. See the illustration at the next page.

2. Install articulation lock bar (2) to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.



115Z7-7-40-2



115Z7-LOCK

MAINTENANCE

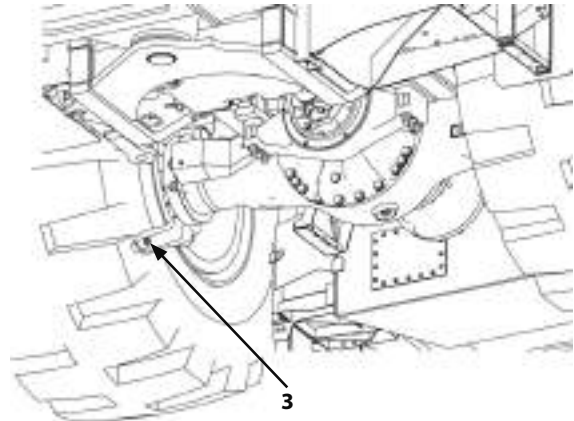
3. Clean the areas around drain plug (3) and oil level plug (4).

4. Arrange a container to receive the drain oil.

Drain plug hole	Capacity
Drain plug (3)	33 liters

5. Remove drain plug (3) to drain the oil.
6. Securely tighten drain plug (3).
7. Refill the specified amount of oil through oil level plug (4) hole.

Refill plug hole	Front axle	Rear axle
Plug (4)	32.5 liters × 2	32.5 liters × 2

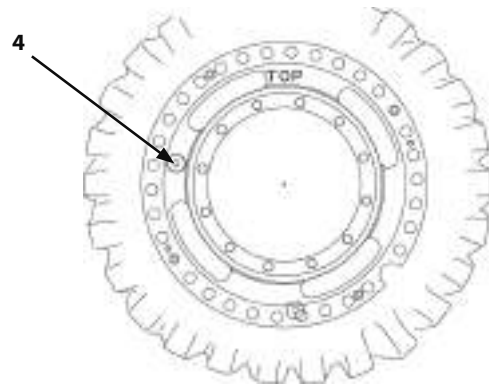


115Z7-7-41-3

IMPORTANT: It takes time for oil to fully lubricate the overall front axle.

After installing the plug, allow the machine to drive for several minutes. Then, stop the engine and check the axle for any oil leaks.

8. Check the oil level.



115Z7-7-40-2

MAINTENANCE

8

Check Around Axle and for Oil Leaks

--- every 1000 hours

Check the around the axle and covers for oil leaks. If any oil leaks are found, check the bolts in the oil leaking area for looseness. Retighten as needed.

MAINTENANCE

D. Hydraulic System

Inspection and Maintenance of Hydraulic Equipment

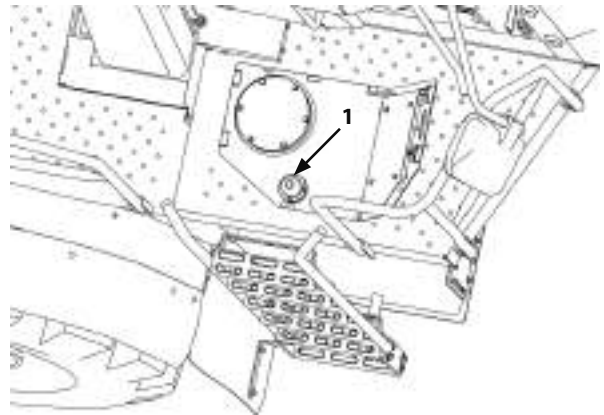
CAUTION: When checking and/or servicing the hydraulic components, pay special attention to the following points.

During operation, the parts of the hydraulic system become very hot. Allow the machine to cool down before beginning inspection or maintenance.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Begin servicing hydraulic components only after components, hydraulic oil and lubricants are completely cooled, and after releasing residual pressure.
 - 2.1 Release internal pressure.
 - 2.2 Be sure to relieve the air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing air bleed valve (1).
 - 2.3 Allow the machine to cool down. Note that servicing heated and pressurized hydraulic components may cause hot parts and/or oil to fly off or escape suddenly, possibly resulting in personal injury.

Keep body parts and face away from plugs or screws when removing them. Hydraulic components may be pressurized even when cooled.

Never attempt to service or inspect the hydraulic circuits on slopes. They are highly pressurized due to self-weight.



115Z7-7-37-1

MAINTENANCE

IMPORTANT:

- When connecting hydraulic hoses and pipes, take special care to keep seal surfaces free from dirt and to avoid damaging them. Keep these precautions in mind.
- Wash hoses, pipes, and the tank interior with a washing liquid and thoroughly wipe it out before reconnecting them.
- Only use O-rings that are free of damage or defects. Be careful not to damage them during reassembly.
- Do not allow high pressure hoses to twist when connecting them. The life of twisted hoses will be shortened considerably.
- Carefully tighten low pressure hose clamps. Do not overtighten them.
- When adding hydraulic oil, always use the same brand of oil; do not mix brands of oil. As the machine is filled with Super EX 46HN when it is shipped from the factory, use it as a general rule. When selecting to use another brand of oil listed in the table "Brand names of recommended hydraulic oil", be sure to completely replace the oil in the system.
- Do not use hydraulic oils other than those listed in the table "Brand names of recommended hydraulic oil".
- Never run the engine without oil in the hydraulic oil tank.

MAINTENANCE

1 Check Hydraulic Oil Level

--- every 10 hours (daily)

IMPORTANT: If the oil level is not viewed in the level gauge, immediately refill hydraulic oil up to the appropriate level. Failure to do so may result in a serious failure in the hydraulic system.

If the oil level is higher than the level gauge, drain oil down to the appropriate level using a pump.

1. Park the machine on solid, level ground, lower the front attachment (bucket, etc.) so it sits level on the ground as illustrated on the right, then stop the engine.

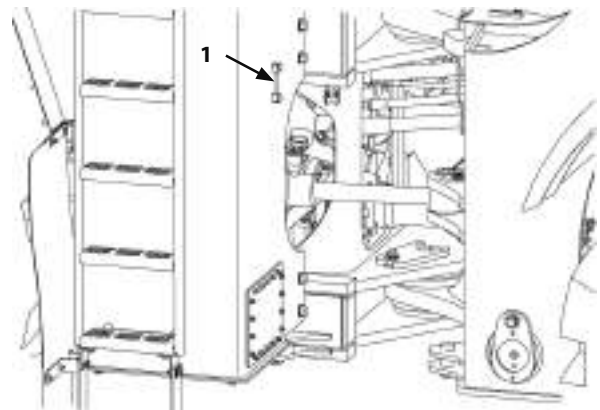
Park the machine according to the procedure "Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance" on page 7-7.

2. Check oil level with level gauge on hydraulic oil tank. Float (1) must be between marks on the gauge. If necessary, add oil.

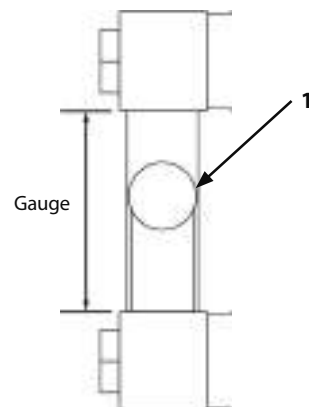
 **NOTE:** During cold weather season, check the oil level after warming up the hydraulic oil by referring to the instructions described in the "Warm up operation" group.



SA-456



115Z7-7-39-1



90M4GB-07-160

MAINTENANCE

2 Change Hydraulic Oil/Clean Hydraulic Oil Tank --- every 4000 hours

Changing and cleaning procedure

WARNING: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

IMPORTANT: Do not use hydraulic oils other than listed in the "Brand Names of Recommended Hydraulic Oil".

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar (1) to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Before changing the hydraulic oil, be sure to relieve the air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank (2) by pressing air bleed valve (3).

IMPORTANT: When changing hydraulic oil, take care not to permit foreign matters such as dirt, water, and /or sand to enter into the hydraulic oil tank.

4. Remove air bleed valve (3). Arrange a container of approx. 500 liters. Remove drain plugs (4) to drain hydraulic oil.

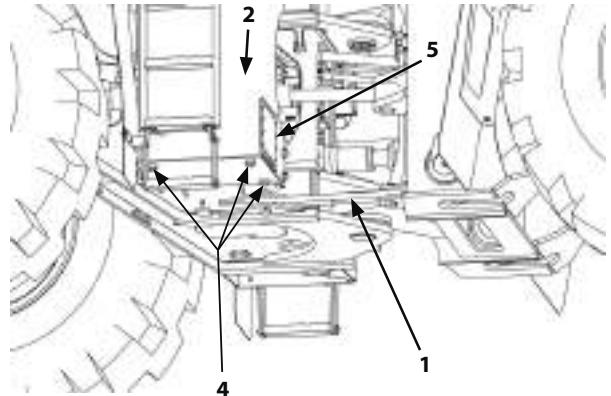
Drain plug wrench size: 24 mm

5. Remove cleaning cover (5) on the side of hydraulic oil tank (2). Clean the tank bottom with cleaning oil. Install the cover and a new gasket to the original position after cleaning.

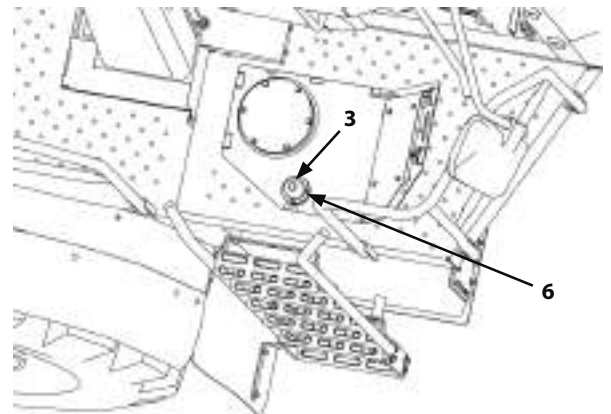
Cover mounting nut wrench size: 14 mm

NOTE: Make sure to replace the cover gasket with new one.

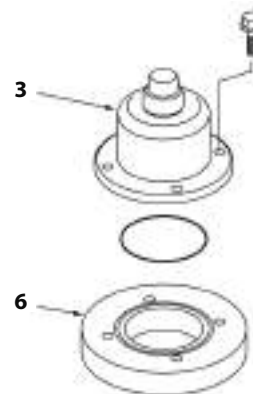
6. Install drain plugs (4).



115Z7-LOCK



115Z7-7-37-1



MNHG-07-004

MAINTENANCE

7. Supply hydraulic oil through filling port (6) while checking the oil level at level gauge (7). Refer to the "Brand Names of Recommended Hydraulic Oil" on page 7-23.

Capacity of hydraulic oil tank	Total oil capacity in the hydraulic system
398 liters	550 liters

8. While filling oil into the hydraulic tank, make sure the oil coming out of bleed screws (A, B) does not contain air bubbles.
9. Install air bleed valve (3).

Tightening torque: 50 N·m (5.0 kgf·m)

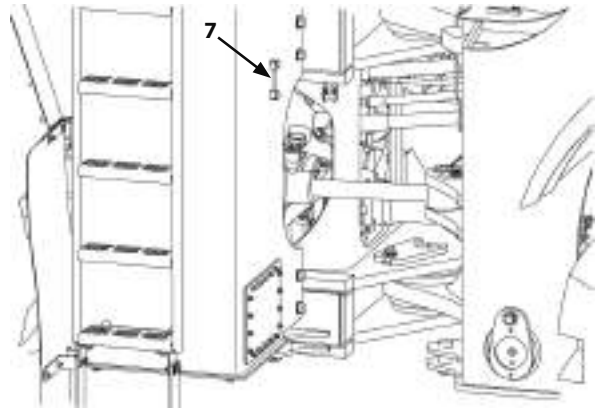
 **NOTE:** When the emergency steering system is used, also check the oil from bleed screw (C).

IMPORTANT: When changing hydraulic oil, take care not to permit foreign matter such as dirt, water, and /or sand to enter into the hydraulic oil tank.

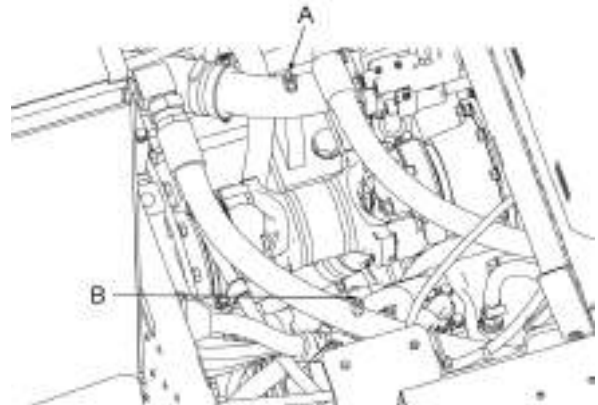
10. After changing hydraulic oil or replacing the return filter (full-flow filter), pilot filter and/or suction filter, "Bleed Air from the Hydraulic Circuit" following the procedures below.

Bleed Air from the Hydraulic Circuit

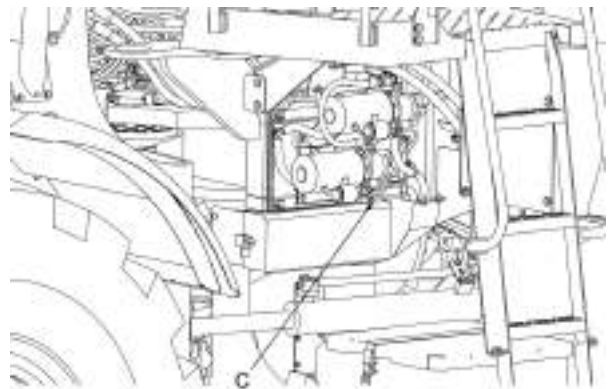
1. After supplying oil, start the engine. Do not exceed 1000 min⁻¹ (rpm). Move the bucket and lift arm cylinders several times to bleed air mixed in the hydraulic circuit. Do not operate the cylinders to stroke end.
2. Rest the bucket on the ground to resume the hydraulic oil level check position.
3. Stop the engine. Check for any oil leakage. Check the oil level using level gauge (7). Add oil as needed.



115Z7-7-39-1



115Z7-7-23-3a



115Z7-7-43-1

MAINTENANCE

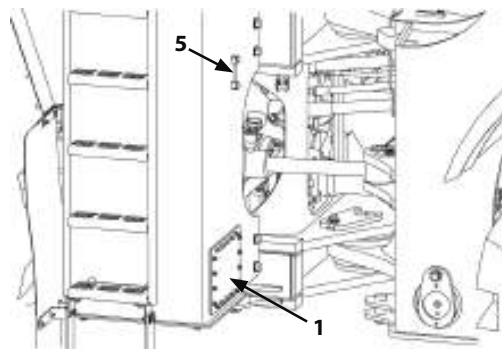
3

Clean Suction Filter

--- each time the hydraulic oil is changed.

IMPORTANT:

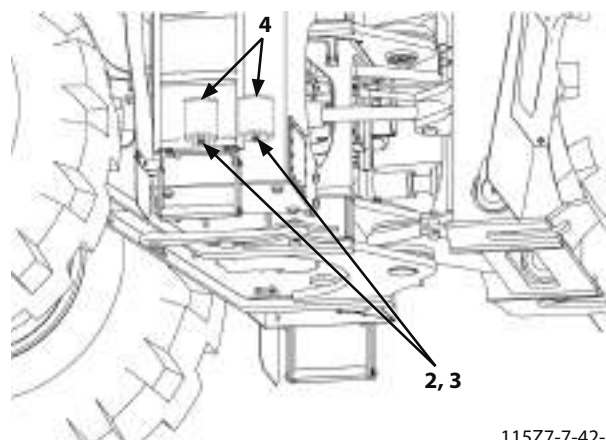
- This upper tank area must be very clean prior to beginning this procedure. Failure to clean the top of tank may lead to hydraulic system problems due to system contamination.
- A few small particles in the strainer is normal. Large metal, rubber pieces, or a large amount of fine particles is abnormal. If found, contact Authorized Dealer.



115Z7-7-39-1

Two suction filters are located on the bottom of the hydraulic oil tank. Clean suction filters (4) when changing hydraulic oil.

1. After draining hydraulic oil, remove cover (1) with gasket. Remove lock nuts (2) and washers (3).
2. Remove suction filters (4) from the oil pipe.
When removing suction filters (4), take care not to allow trapped dust to fall into the tank.
3. Clean suction filters (4) and the hydraulic oil tank inside with cleaning solvent.
4. Install cleaned suction filters (4) to the oil pipe, and tighten lock nuts (2) with washers (3).



115Z7-7-42-2

Tightening torque: 38 N·m (3.8 kgf·m)

5. Install cover (1) and a new gasket with nuts.



NOTE: Make sure to replace the cover gasket with new one.

6. Fill the tank to level with the specified volume of oil through the oil filling port. Check the oil level at the oil sight gauge.
7. Start the engine. While slowly raising or lowering the arm and tilting the bucket forward and backward, check for any abnormality. Stop the engine. Check the oil level using level gauge (5).

MAINTENANCE

4 Clean Pilot Oil Filter (Brake Circuit)

--- every 2000 hours

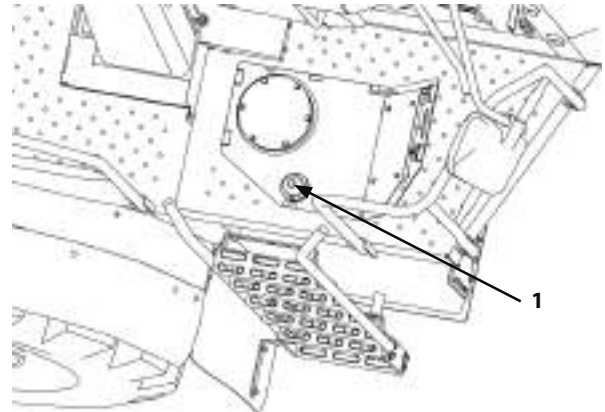
Replace

WARNING: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

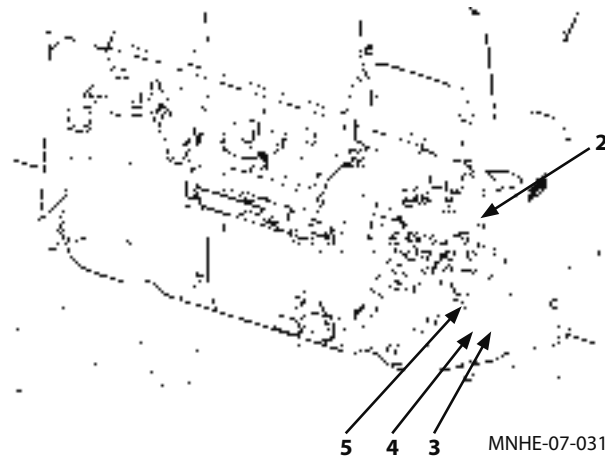
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Before replacing the filter element, be sure to relieve the air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing air bleed valve (1).
4. Place a suitable container under combination valve (2).
5. Disconnect hoses (3) and (4). Remove bolt (5).

CAUTION: Wear goggles or safety glasses when using compressed air [less than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm²)].

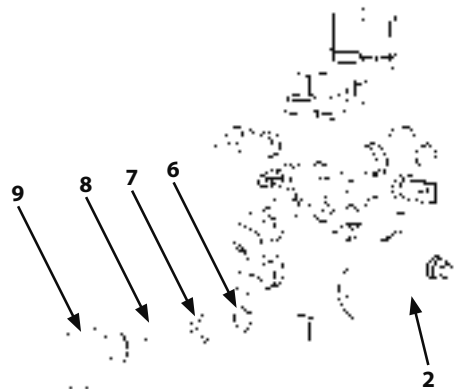
6. Remove adapter (9) and filter (6) from the valve and clean filter (6) by applying air or cleaning solution from the oil flow outlet side.
7. Install cleaned filter (6), washer (7), O-ring (8) and adapter (9).



115Z7-7-37-1



MNHE-07-031



MNHE-07-032

MAINTENANCE

5 Clean Pilot Oil Filter (Steering Circuit)

--- every 2000 hours

Cleaning

WARNING: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Before replacing the filter element, be sure to relieve the air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing air bleed valve (1).
4. Place a suitable container under the filter.
5. Remove plug (4) and O-ring (5).

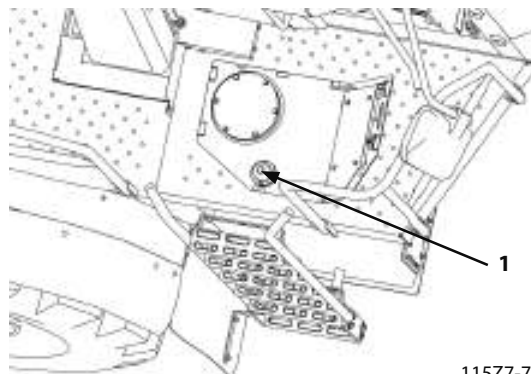
CAUTION: Wear goggles or safety glasses when using compressed air [less than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm²)].

6. Remove filter (3) and clean it by blowing compressed air or cleaning solution from the oil flow outlet side.
7. Install the cleaned filter with new O-ring (5) and plug (4).
8. After cleaning the filter, bleed air from the hydraulic pump and check the oil level in the hydraulic oil tank.

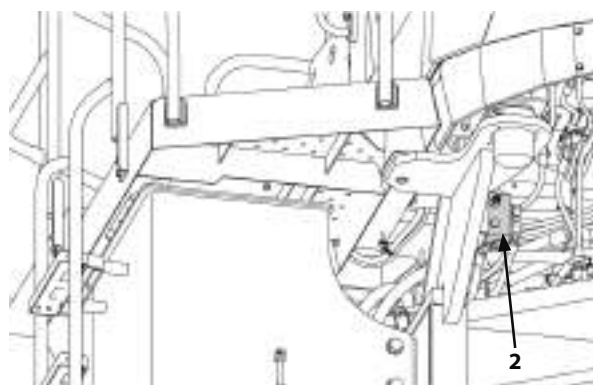
(Refer to the descriptions for "Bleed Air from the Hydraulic Circuit" in item **2**.)

If the machine is operated without bleeding the air mixed in the hydraulic circuit, damage to the hydraulic pump may result.

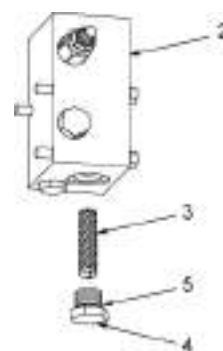
NOTE: Clean the element at the regular intervals to maintain clean hydraulic oil and extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



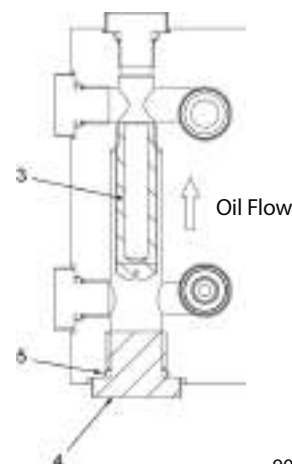
115Z7-7-37-1



115Z7-7-49-2



95Z7-7-43-4



90Z7-38511-31770

MAINTENANCE

6 Replace Hydraulic Tank Oil Filter (Full-Flow Filter) --- every 1000 hours

Replace

WARNING: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation.

Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

Especially when removing the filter, be aware that the remaining oil in the filter may spill. Use extra care.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Clean the vicinity around cover plate (1).
4. Arrange a container and workshop towels to receive the spilled oil and the element. Relieve the air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing air bleed valve (2).
5. Loosen bolts (3) (6 used) to remove cover (1) and O-ring (4).

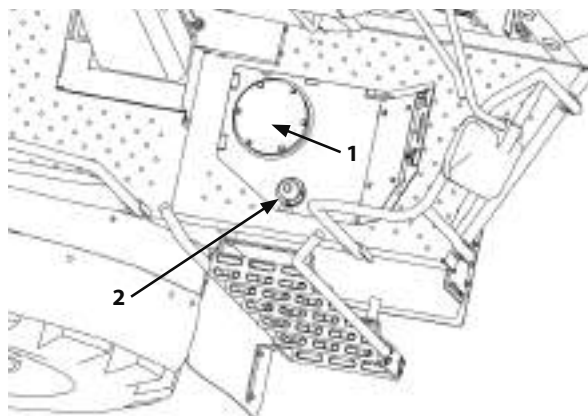
When removing cover (1), slowly remove the cover while pressing the cover downward so that spring (5) does not fly off.

6. Remove spring (5) and element (6).
7. Replace element (6) and O-ring (3) with new ones. Install new element and O-ring in the hydraulic oil tank.

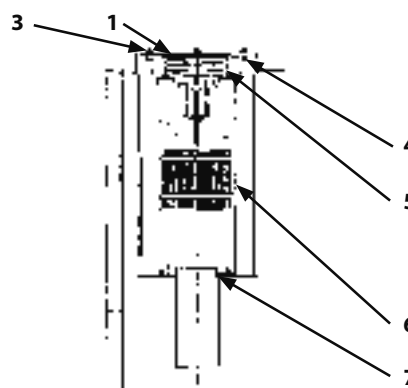
Before installing element (6), make sure that rubber (7) is present.

8. Install cover (1) with bolts (2) (6 used).

Tightening torque: 50 N·m (5.0 kgf·m)



115Z7-7-37-1



M4GB-07-052

MAINTENANCE

9. After replacing the filter, bleed air from the hydraulic pump and check the oil level in the hydraulic oil tank.

(Refer to the descriptions for "Bleed Air from the Hydraulic Circuit" in item 2.)

If the machine is operated without bleeding the air mixed in the hydraulic circuit, damage to the hydraulic pump may result.



NOTE: Replace the element at the regular intervals to maintain clean hydraulic oil and extend the service life of the hydraulic components.

MAINTENANCE

7 Replace Air Breather Element

--- every 2000 hours

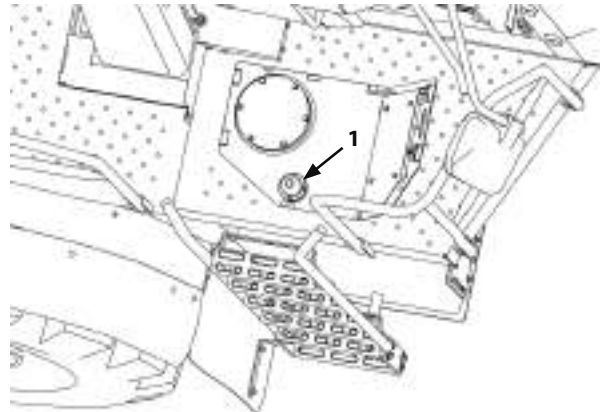
WARNING: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation.

Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

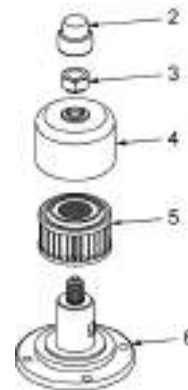
Replace

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Before replacing the filter element, be sure to relieve the air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing air bleed valve (1).
3. Remove cap (2) and remove nut (3) by rotating it counterclockwise.
4. Rotate cover (4) counterclockwise and remove it. Remove element (5).
5. Install new element (5). Tighten cover (4) clockwise. After cover (4) come in contact with the inside element, tighten the cover by 1/4 turn further.
6. Install nut (3) and cap (2).
Tightening torque: 8 to 10 N·m (0.8 to 1.0 kgf·m)
7. Take care not to allow water or dust to enter the clearance (air discharge port) between cover (4) and body (6).

NOTE: Replace the element at the recommended regular intervals to keep the hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



115Z7-7-37-1



T4A breather valve

MAINTENANCE

8

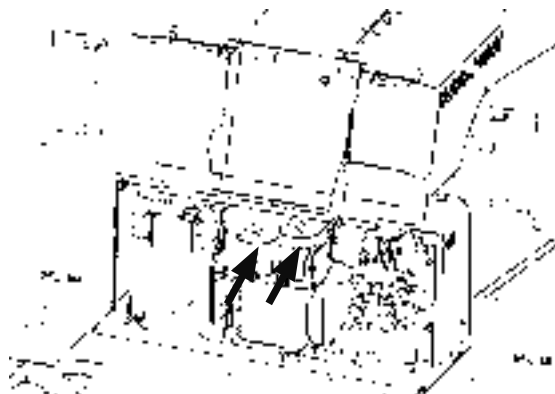
Check Pilot Circuit Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage

--- every 2000 hours

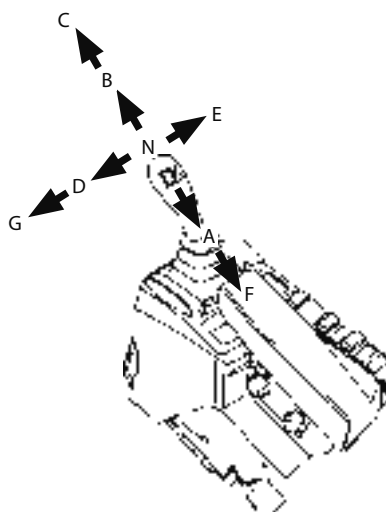


WARNING:

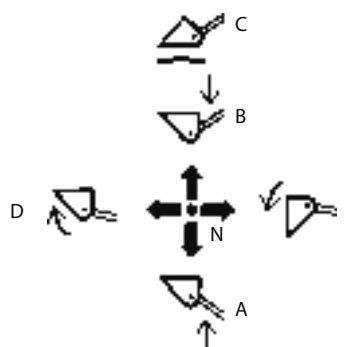
- Allow only qualified personnel to handle the accumulator.
 - High-pressure nitrogen gas is enclosed in the accumulator. Caution is required to prevent fires from occurring.
 - Never strike the accumulator. Keep the accumulator away from sparks and/or flames.
 - Do not directly heat the accumulator. Do not weld the accumulator housing.
 - Be sure to release pressure before starting to work on the pipe lines.
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
 2. Raise the lift arm at the maximum height, and then set the lift arm control lever in the Neutral (N) position.
 3. Turn the key switch OFF to stop the engine.
 4. Turn the key switch ON but do not start the engine.
 5. Confirm the safety around the machine.
 6. Place the lift arm control lever to FLOAT position (C) and lower the bucket 1 m off the ground within 2 minutes after stopping the engine.
 7. Place the lift arm control lever to the LOWER position (B) and lower the bucket on the ground.
 8. Ensure the lift arm does not stop halfway. If the lift arm stops halfway, the accumulator function may be deteriorated. Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.



115Z7B-1-142-2



MN HK-01-012



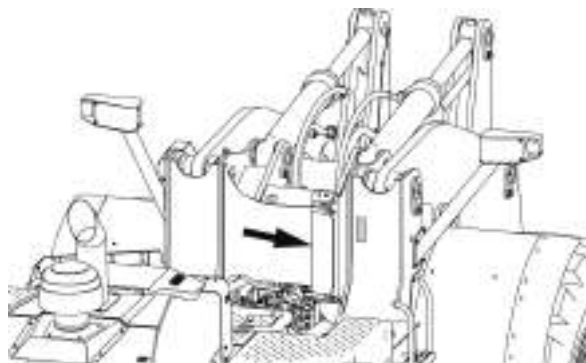
M4GB-01-074

MAINTENANCE

- 9** Check Ride Control Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage
--- every 500 hours

WARNING:

- Allow only qualified personnel to handle the accumulator.
- High-pressure nitrogen gas is enclosed in the accumulator. Caution is required to prevent fires from occurring.
- Never strike the accumulator. Keep the accumulator away from sparks and/or flames.
- Do not directly heat the accumulator. Do not weld the accumulator housing.
- Be sure to release pressure before starting to work on the pipe lines.



115Z7-S-41A-1

Let the machine travel with the ride control switch turned AUTO and OFF to compare the machine's vertical vibration during travel. Travel the machine at a speed faster than "Ride Control Drive Speed Setting" displayed on the multi-monitor. If the machine's vertical vibration is not dampened when letting the machine travel with the ride control function activated, the accumulator may be faulty. Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.

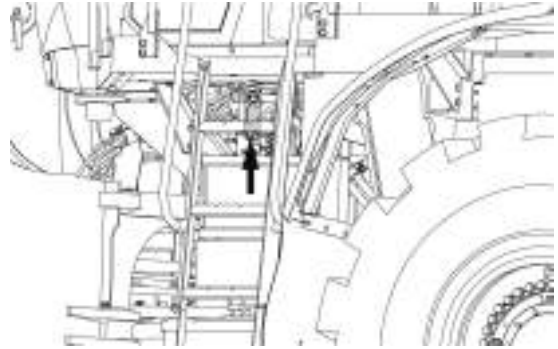
- 10** Check Gas Pressure in Ride Control Accumulator
--- every 2000 hours

Check the gas pressure at a regular interval. Ask Authorized Dealer for checking.

MAINTENANCE

11 Check Gas Pressure in Steering Accumulator --- every 2000 hours

Check the gas pressure at a regular interval.
Check the gas pressure if the machine vibrates and the turning is not smooth when the joystick steering is operated. Consult Authorized Dealer for checking the gas pressure.



115Z7-7-53-1

MAINTENANCE

12

Check Hoses and Lines

--- every 10 hours (daily) / every 250 hours

⚠ WARNING: Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. To avoid this hazard, search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Take care to protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids. If an accident occurs, see a doctor familiar with this type of injury immediately.

Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.

⚠ WARNING: Hydraulic oil and lubricant leaks can lead to fire that may result in serious injury.

To avoid this hazard :

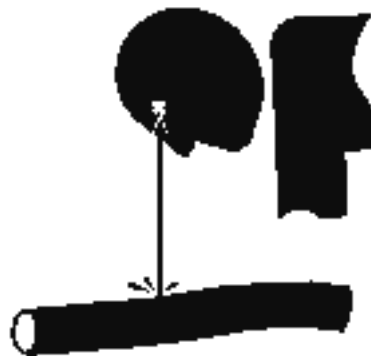
- Park the machine on a firm, level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Stop the engine. Remove key from the key switch. Push the control lever lock switch to the lock (🔒) position.
- Check for missing or loose clamps, kinked hoses, lines or hoses that rub against each other, damaged oil cooler, and loose oil cooler flange bolts, and for leaks.

Check hoses, lines and oil cooler at the check points indicated below for leaks and other damage that may result in future leaks. If any abnormalities are found, replace or retighten them, as shown in Tables below.

- Tighten, repair or replace any missing, loose or damaged clamps, hoses, lines, oil cooler, and loose oil cooler flange bolts. Do not bend or strike high-pressure lines.



SA-031



SA-292

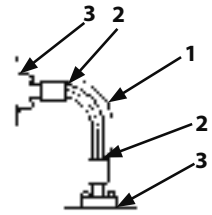


SA-044

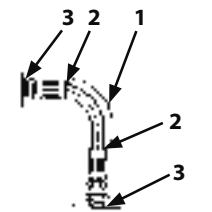
MAINTENANCE

Hose

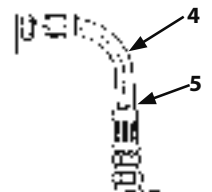
Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Every 10 hours (daily)	Hose covers	Leak (1)	Replace
	Hose ends	Leak (2)	Replace
	Fittings	Leak (3)	Retighten or replace hose or O-ring
		Crack	
Every 250 hours	Hose covers	Crack (4)	Replace
	Hose ends	Crack (5)	Replace
	Hose covers	Exposed reinforcement (6)	Replace
	Hose covers	Blister (7)	Replace
	Hose	Bend (8), Collapse (9)	Replace (Use proper bend radius)
	Hose ends and Fittings	Deformation or Corrosion (10)	Replace



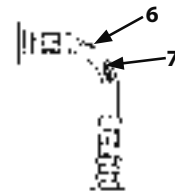
M137-07-008



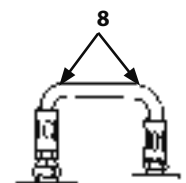
M115-07-145



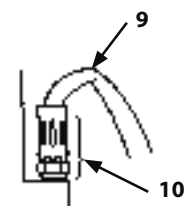
M115-07-146



M115-07-147



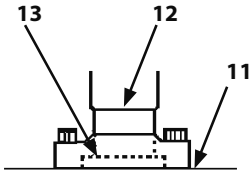
M115-07-148



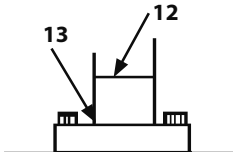
M115-07-149
Fig.1

MAINTENANCE

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Every 10 hours (daily)	Contact surfaces of flange joints	Leak (11)	Replace
	Bolts	Loose or leak (11)	Retighten or replace O-ring
	Welded surfaces on flange joints	Leak (12)	Replace
Every 250 hours	Flange joint neck	Crack (13)	Replace
	Welded surfaces on flange joints	Crack (12)	Replace
	Clamps	Missing or deformation Loose bolts	Replace or retighten



M4GB-07-059



M4GB-07-060
Fig.2

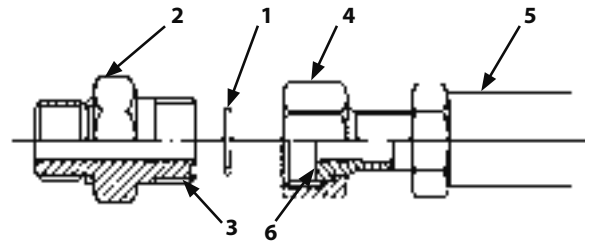
MAINTENANCE

Service Recommendations for Hydraulic Fittings

Two hydraulic fitting designs are used on this machine.

Flat Face O-ring Seal Fitting (ORS Fitting)

An O-ring is used on the sealing surfaces to prevent oil leakage.



M104-07-033

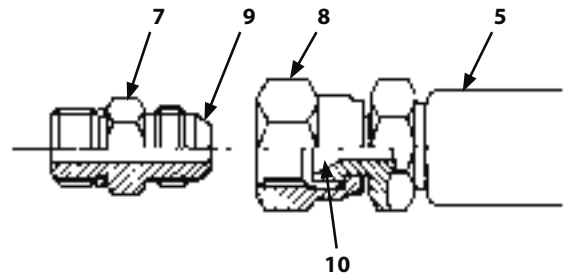
1. Inspect fitting sealing surfaces (6). They must be free of dirt or defects.
2. Replace O-ring (1) with a new one when assembling fittings.
3. Lubricate O-ring (1) and install it into groove (3) using petroleum jelly to hold it in place.
4. Tighten fitting (2) by hand, pressing the fitting joint together to ensure O-ring (1) remains in place and is not damaged.
5. Tighten fitting (2) or nut (4) to the torque values shown. Do not allow hose (5) to twist when tightening fittings.
6. Check for leaks. If oil leaks from a loose connection, do not tighten fitting (2). Open the connection, replace O-ring (1) and check for correct O-ring position before tightening the connection.

MAINTENANCE

Metal Face Seal Fittings

Fittings are used on smaller hoses and consist of metal flare (9) and metal flare seat (10).

1. Tighten fitting (7) by hand.
2. Tighten fitting (7) or nut (8) to the torque values shown.
Do not allow hose (5) to twist when tightening fittings.



M202-07-051

MAINTENANCE

E. Fuel System

- 1** Check Fuel Level
--- every 10 hours (daily)



DANGER: Beware of fire

Fuel is flammable. Keep fuel away from fire hazards.

IMPORTANT: Always fill the fuel tank with the specified diesel fuel. Failure to do so may cause engine trouble and also making it difficult for the engine to start.

Recommended Fuel

Use only super high quality or high quality DIESEL FUEL (JIS K-2204) (ASTM D-975) (EN-590) which contains 15 ppm or lower sulfur.

Using bad quality fuel, drainage agent, fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol refueled or mixed with specified fuel may deteriorate performance of fuel filters and cause sliding problem at lubricated contacts in the injector.

Using fuel other than ultra low-sulfur or low-sulfur diesel fuel has adverse effects on the engine and the aftertreatment device, which may result in malfunction.

MAINTENANCE

Refueling

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.

⚠ DANGER: Handle fuel carefully. Shut the engine off before fueling. Do not smoke while you fill the fuel tank or work on fuel system.

IMPORTANT: The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

2. Check fuel gauge (1) of the monitor panel. Add fuel if necessary.

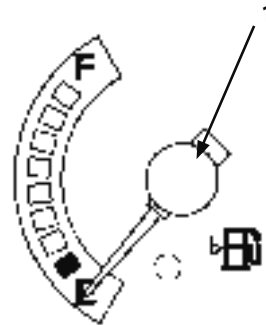
IMPORTANT: Keep all dirt, dust, water and other foreign materials out of the fuel system.

3. To avoid condensation, fill the tank at the end of each day's operation. Take care not to spill fuel on the machine or ground.

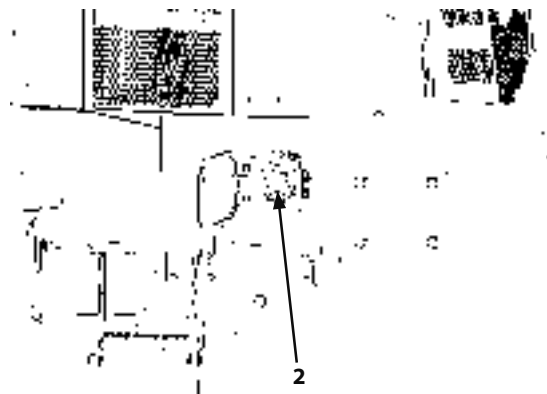
Fuel tank capacity: 648 liters

4. Install and lock fill cap (2) immediately after fueling.

🔧 NOTE: Fuel port (2) has vandal-proof cover.



MNEC-01-002



115Z7B-7-56-2

MAINTENANCE

2 Drain Water and Sediment from Fuel Tank

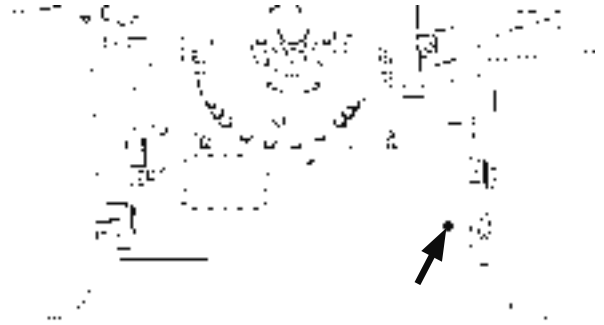
--- every 1000 hours

Before starting to operate the machine, loosen drain plug to drain water and/or sediment from the fuel tank. Tighten plug when no more water is draining, and only fuel drainage is seen.

Wrench size: 24 mm

or

Hex socket size: 12 mm



115Z7-7-56-1

MAINTENANCE

3

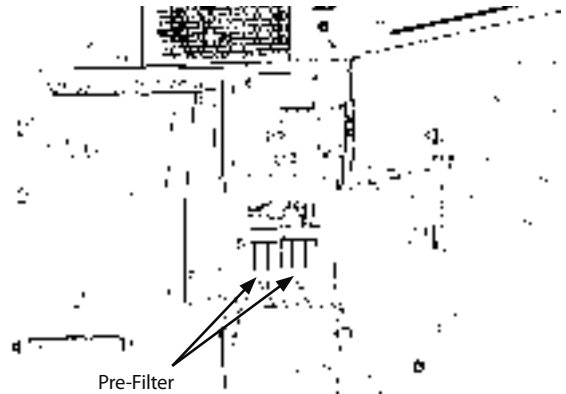
Drain Fuel Filter

--- every 10 hours (daily)

IMPORTANT: Drain fuel filter daily before starting operation. The engine may be damaged if you do not drain fuel filter daily.

Fuel pre-filter has water separator function, which allows float to rise as water accumulates.

Be sure to drain daily the water accumulated in the filter until float goes to the bottom of case.



115Z7B-7-59-1

MAINTENANCE

Draining Procedures (Pre-Filter)

1. Remove two bottom plates (1) of the pre-filter box by removing the wing bolt.
2. Connect transparent drain hose (2) stored in the tool box to drain valve (3).
3. Place 1 liter or larger capacity container under drain hose (2) to collect the drained water.
4. Rotate drain valve (3) on the bottom of the filter counterclockwise. Drain the water accumulated in the filter until float (4) goes to the bottom of case. If it is difficult to drain, loosen plug (5) on the top of the fuel pre-filter.

Wrench size: 14 mm

5. After draining water, securely tighten drain valve (3) and plug (5).

Tighten torque

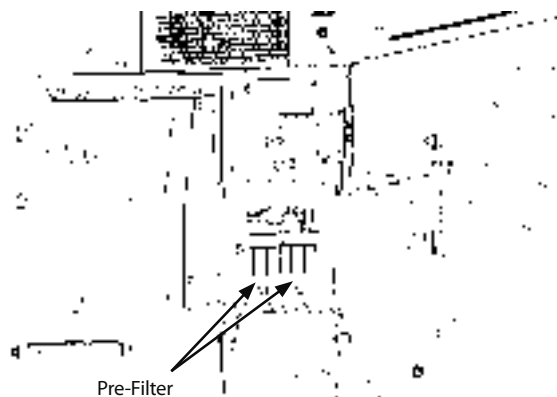
Drain valve (3): 2.5 ± 0.5 N·m (0.25 ± 0.05 kgf·m)

Air bleed plug (5): 10 ± 2 N·m (1.0 ± 0.2 kgf·m)

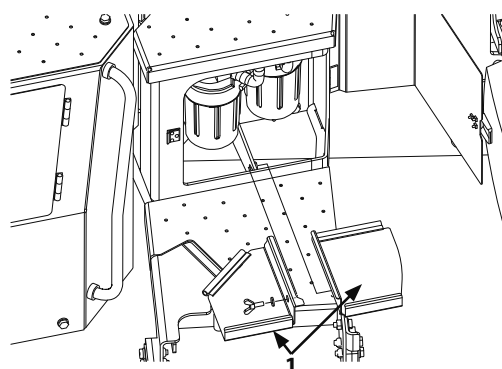
6. Start the engine. Check drain valve (3) and plug (5) for fuel leaks.

IMPORTANT:

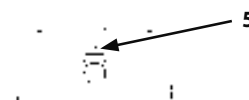
- After draining water from the fuel filter, bleed air from the fuel supply system.
- Do not use alcoholic gas dryer fuel additives to remove water in fuel to avoid cracks in the prefilter transparent case.



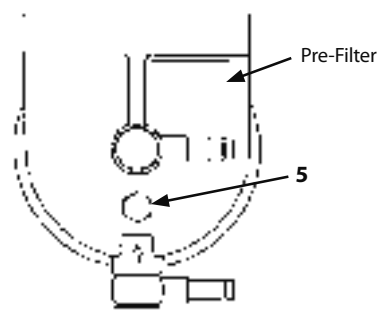
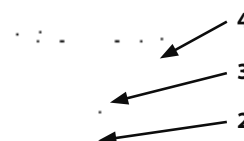
115Z7B-7-59-1



115Z7B-7-59-2



95Z7-7-59-2



M1U1-07-004

MAINTENANCE

Bleed Air from the Fuel System

Air in the fuel system may make the engine hard to start or make it run rough or not run at all.

After draining water and sediment from the fuel filter, replacing the fuel filter, cleaning the fuel pump strainer or running the fuel tank dry, be sure to bleed the air from the fuel system according to the following procedure.

Air Bleeding by Priming Pump

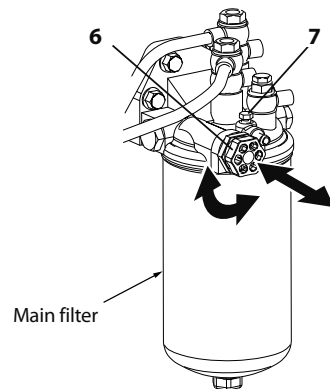
1. Place a container under drain pipe to receive drained fuel.
2. Slightly pull out knob (6) on the filter head, turn it counterclockwise, and then pump by moving the knob push and pull until the pre-filter is filled with fuel.
3. Repeat pumping until feel load.
4. Loosen air bleed plug (7) on the fuel main filter.
5. Keep pumping with knob (6) until fuel with no air bubbles is seen coming from air bleed plug (7), tighten air bleed plug (7).

Tightening torque: 10 ± 2 N·m (1.0 ± 0.2 kgf·m)

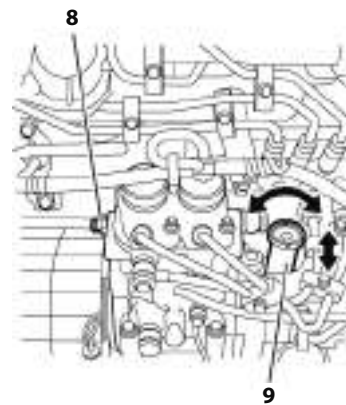
6. After tightening air bleed plug (7), turn knob (6) fully clockwise while pressing it down.
7. Loosen air bleed plug (7) on the other fuel main filter and remove air in the same manner.
8. Loosen air bleeder plug (8) of the supply pump, and operate priming pump (9) of the supply pump until fuel with no air bubbles comes out.
9. Tighten air bleeder plug (8).
10. Tighten all plugs and operate priming pump (9) until you feel load applied.
11. Fix priming pump (9) in its original position.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not over-tighten the priming pump to avoid being damaged.
- If the hand primer pump is not securely placed in the inserted and stored position, damage to the fuel system can result. This damage is not covered by warranty.



95Z7B-7-61-1



MNHG-07-006

MAINTENANCE

IMPORTANT: Do not over-tighten the priming pump to avoid being damaged.

12. Wipe off any spilled fuel.
13. Start the engine. Check that no fuel leaks are present. If the engine does not start, wait for the battery recovery for 30 seconds before the second trial. If the engine does not start again, repeat the above procedures from step 1.

If Air Mixed Downstream of Common Rail



WARNING: INJECTION HAZARD

Fuel under high pressure

High pressure common rail, high pressure lines fuel lines and high pressure fuel injection lines contain high pressure fuel.

High pressure fuel injection into skin can cause injury or death.

Keep hands away from injection lines while turning engine with starter or while running engine.

In case air mixed in the fuel system due to lack of fuel and the engine is difficult to start, release air by following the procedure given below.

1. Bleed air until the engine supply pump entrance enough according to the above-mentioned procedures.
2. Operate starter motor for long cranking within 20 seconds. If engine fails to start, return key switch to OFF. Wait more than about 60 seconds, and then try again.

MAINTENANCE

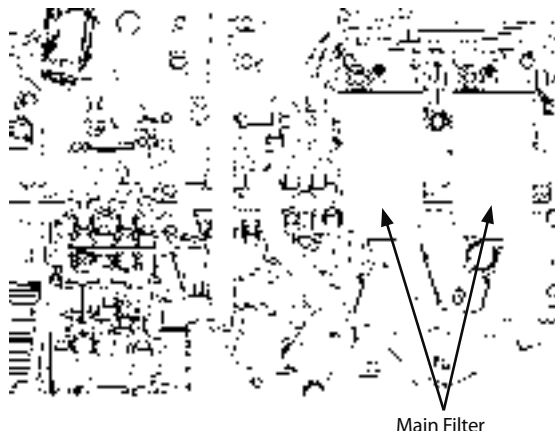
4

Replace Fuel Main Filter Element

--- every 500 hours or when fuel filter restriction indicator is lit

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use only Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine elements for the fuel main filter element and the pre-filter element. Failure to do so may deteriorate the engine performance and/or shorten the engine service life. Please be noted that all engine failures caused by using other manufacturers' elements are excluded from Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.
- Take care not to allow dirt and/or water to enter the fuel tank.



Main Filter

115Z7B-7-58-1

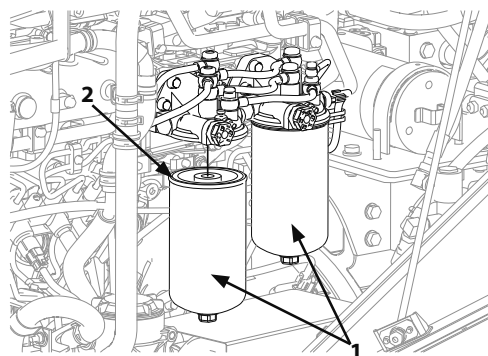
Procedures

1. Prepare 1 liter or larger capacity container to hold the drained fuel.
2. Loosen and remove fuel main filter (1) using the provided filter wrench.



NOTE: Make sure the filter gasket (2) does not stick to the filter head.

3. Apply a light film of clean engine oil to gasket surface of the new filter.



95Z7B-7-64-2

IMPORTANT: Do not fill fuel main filter (1) with fuel before installation.

4. Install empty fuel main filter (1) to the filter head.



CAUTION: Mechanical overtightening can distort the threads as well as damage the filter element seal or filter canister.

5. Tighten the filters an additional two-thirds turn after the gasket contacts the filter head surface. Follow the instructions supplied with the filter.

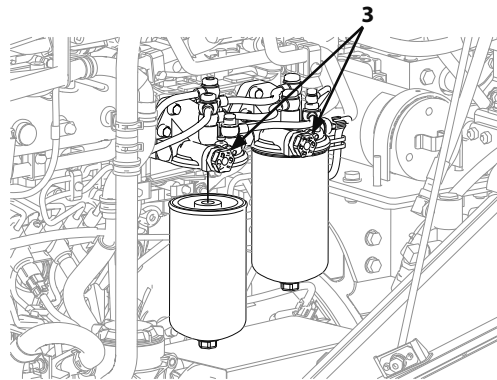


NOTE: Main filter (1) tightening torque: 25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m)

MAINTENANCE

⚠ WARNING: When servicing the engine, do not rotate engine with a high pressure fuel system joint open. Rotating the engine can create highly pressurized fuel in the fuel system. High-pressure fuel spray can penetrate the skin, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

6. Repeat for the other filter.
7. After replacing the fuel filter elements, bleed air from the fuel supply system by actuating the priming pump.
(Refer to "Bleed Air from the Fuel System" in item **3**.)
8. Tighten air bleed plug (3).
Tightening torque: 10 ± 2 N·m (1.0 ± 0.2 kgf·m)



95Z7B-7-64-2

MAINTENANCE

5

Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element

--- every 500 hours or when fuel filter restriction indicator is lit

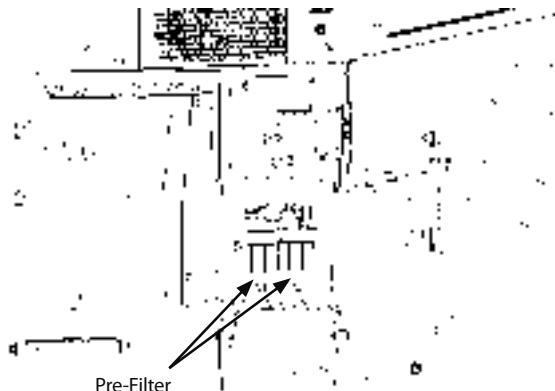
IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use only Hitachi Construction Machinery genuine elements for the main fuel filter and the pre-filter. Failure to do so may deteriorate the engine performance and/or shorten the engine service life. Please be noted that all engine failures caused by using other manufacturers' elements are excluded from Hitachi Construction Machinery Warranty Policy.
- Take care not to allow dirt and/or water to enter the fuel tank.

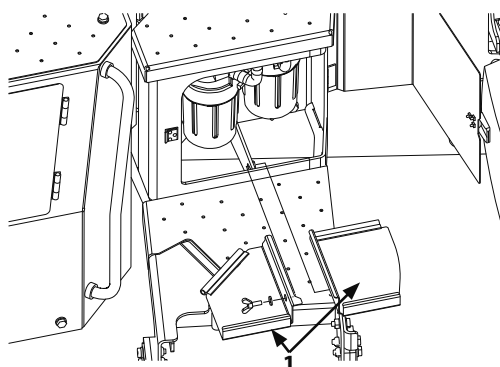
Procedures

1. Remove two bottom plates (1) of the pre-filter box by removing the wing bolt.
2. Connect transparent drain hose (2) stored in the tool box to drain valve (3).
3. Place 1 liter or larger capacity container under drain hose (2) to collect the drained water.
4. Loosen air bleed plug (4) and drain valve (3). Drain fuel until fuel does not flow out of the filter.

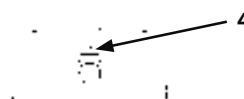
After draining fuel, remove drain valve (3) and replace O-ring.



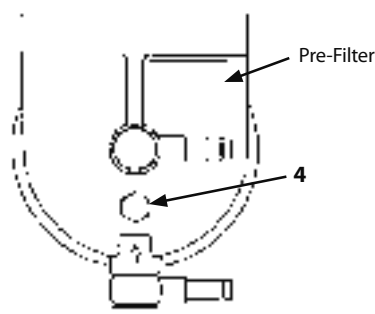
115Z7B-7-59-1



115Z7B-7-59-2



95Z7-7-59-2



M1U1-07-004

MAINTENANCE

5. Remove transparent filter case (5) using the filter wrench.
6. When transparent filter case (5) is removed, the element and O-ring for transparent filter case (5) are exposed. Remove the element by hand.
7. Install a new element. Replace O-ring and tighten transparent filter case (5) to $30 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($3 \pm 0.2 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{m}$) using the filter wrench.
8. Tighten air bleed plug (4) and drain valve (3). Store used hose (2) in the tool box.

Tightening torque

Drain valve (3): $2.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($0.25 \pm 0.05 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{m}$)

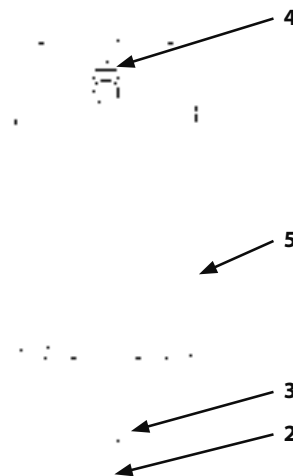
Air bleed plug (4): $10 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($1.0 \pm 0.2 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{m}$)

9. Repeat for the other filter.
10. Bleed Air from the Fuel System

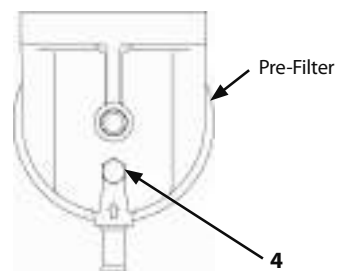
After replacing the fuel filter element, bleed air from the fuel supply system.

(Refer to "Bleed Air from the Fuel System" in item **3**.)

Wrench size: 14 mm



95Z7-7-59-2



95Z7-7-59-1

MAINTENANCE

6 Clean Fuel Pump Strainer --- every 500 hours

IMPORTANT:

- The supply pump strainer is assembled into the joint bolt located at the inlet side of the supply pump. This joint bolt is a component which cannot be disassembled, so do not pull out the strainer inside.
- When cleaning the fuel strainer, do not disassemble the strainer from the joint bolt (clean it while being assembled).

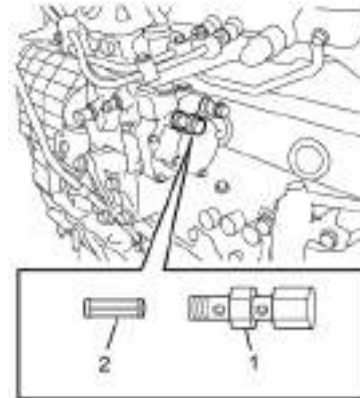
1. Loosen joint bolt (1) and take out fuel strainer (2) being assembled with joint bolt (1) from the fuel pipe on the supply pump.
2. Clean the strainer in clean diesel fuel and blow off dust with high-pressure air.

IMPORTANT: After cleaning the fuel strainer, bleed air from the fuel supply system.

3. Reinstall strainer (2), tighten joint bolt (1) and closely check the air-tightness of the strainer.

⚠ WARNING: After installing the strainer, wipe off any spilled fuel.

4. Start the engine and run at low idle, and check for fuel leaks.



95Z7-7-63-1

MAINTENANCE

7

Check Water Separator

Drain water --- every 10 hours (daily)

Change Element --- every 2000 hours

Water separator (2) is a device designed to separate water from the fuel. There is a float inside the case which buoys when water accumulates.

When the float rises to the water draining level, drain water.

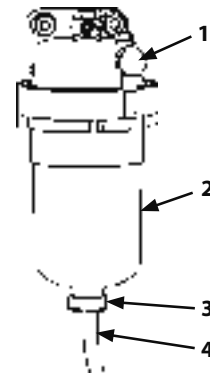
Drain Procedures

1. Connect transparent drain hose (4) stored in the tool box to drain valve (3).
2. Place 1 liter or larger capacity container under drain hose (4) to collect the drained water.
3. Loosen plug (1) at upper part of water separator (2).
Loosen drain valve (3) at lower part of the case to drain water.
4. After draining water, securely tighten drain plug (1) and valve (3).
5. Store used hose (4) in the tool box.

IMPORTANT: After draining water from the water separator, bleed air from the fuel supply system.



115Z7B-7-59-1



MDAA-07-009

MAINTENANCE

Element Replacement Procedure

1. Connect transparent drain hose (4) stored in the tool box to drain valve (3).
2. Place 1 liter or larger capacity container under drain hose (4) to collect the drained water.
3. Loosen air bleed plug (1) and drain valve (3). Drain fuel until fuel does not flow out of the filter.

After draining fuel, remove drain valve (3) and replace O-ring.

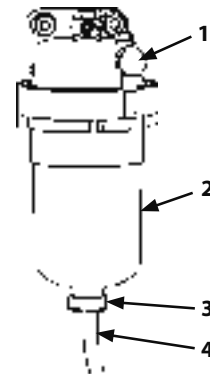
4. Remove transparent filter case (2) using the exclusive tool.
5. When transparent filter case (2) is removed, the element and O-ring for transparent filter case (2) are exposed. Remove the element by hand.
6. Install a new element. Replace O-ring and tighten transparent filter case (2) to $30 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($3 \pm 0.2 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{m}$) using the exclusive tool.
7. Tighten air bleed plug (1) and drain valve (3). Store used hose (4) in the tool box.

8. Bleed Air from the Fuel System

After replacing the water separator element, bleed air from the fuel supply system.

(Refer to "Bleed Air from the Fuel System" in item **3**.)

Wrench size: 10 mm



MDAA-07-009

MAINTENANCE

8

Check Fuel Hoses

--- every 10 hours (daily) / every 250 hours

⚠ WARNING: Fuel leaks can lead to fires that may result in serious injury.

Check for kinked hoses, hoses that rub against each other, and any fuel leaks.

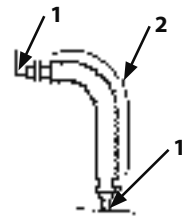
Repair or replace any loose or damaged hoses.

Never reinstall bent or damaged hoses.

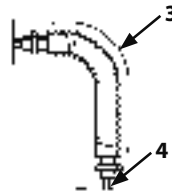
According to the check points shown below, check hoses for oil leaks and damage.
If any abnormality is found, replace or retighten as instructed in the table.

Hose

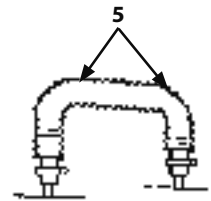
Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Every 10 hours (daily)	Hose ends Hose covers	Leak (1) Wear, crack (2)	Retighten or replace
Every 250 hours	Hose covers Hose ends Hose Hose fittings	Crack (3) Crack (4) Bend (5), Collapse (6) Corrosion (7)	Replace Replace Replace Replace



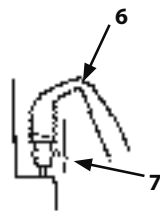
M4GB-07-071



M4GB-07-072



M4GB-07-073



M4GB-07-074

MAINTENANCE

F. Air Cleaner

1

Replace Air Cleaner Element

Outer element --- When the restriction indicator comes ON

Inner element --- at the time of the fifth replacement (or every 2 years) of the outer element

IMPORTANT: Do not reuse inner and outer element (4, 5).

Air cleaner (1) is comprised of double elements, outer element (4) and inner element (5).

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.

IMPORTANT: Do not allow foreign matter such as dirt to enter the engine when cleaning or replacing elements.

2. Remove clip band (3) and remove cover (2).
Clean out dust from inside cover (2) thoroughly.

CAUTION: Wear goggles or safety glasses when using compressed air [less than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm²)].

3. Remove outer element (4) by slowly pulling it out.
Replace outer element with new one.
4. In case the air filter restriction indicator lights soon after replacing outer element (4), replace both outer and inner elements with new ones.
Inner element (5) is threaded.

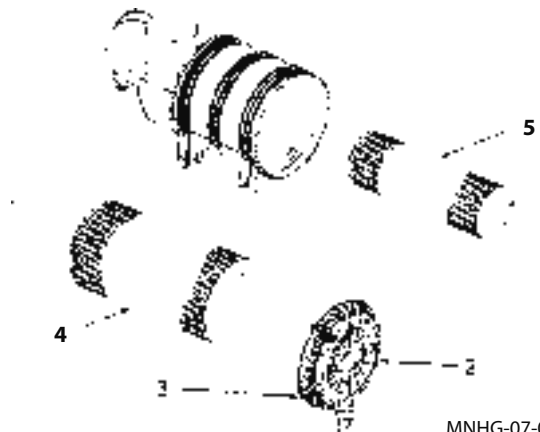
5. Confirm that gasket fits properly onto cover (2).

6. Install cover (2) in the original position.

7. After replacing is complete, run the engine at slow speed. Then, check that the air filter restriction indicator is not ON.



115Z7B-7-69-1



MNHG-07-007

MAINTENANCE

G. Cooling System

Coolant

Use fresh water or demineralized water as a coolant. Do not use strong acid or alkaline water. Use the coolant with genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery Long-Life Coolant (LLC) mixed by 30 to 50 %.

If the air temperature is expected to fall below 0 °C, fill the cooling system with an genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery Long-Life Coolant (LLC) and soft water mix. As a general rule, the ratio of LLC should range between 30 % and 50 % as shown in the table below. If the ratio is below 30 %, the system may develop rust, and if it is above 50 %, the engine may overheat.

Precautions for handling antifreeze

 **WARNING: Antifreeze is poisonous.**

- **Antifreeze is poisonous; if ingested, it can cause serious injury or death. Induce vomiting and get emergency medical attention immediately.**
- **If antifreeze is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes and get emergency medical attention.**
- **When storing antifreeze, be sure to keep it in a clearly marked container with a tight lid. Always keep ANTIFREEZE out of the reach of children.**
- **Use attention to fire hazards. LLC is specified as a dangerous substance in the fire protection law.**
- **When storing or disposing of antifreeze, be sure to comply with all local regulations.**

Air temperature [°C]	Mixing ratio [%]	Coolant Capacity	
		88 L	
		Soft Water [L]	LLC [L]
-10 °C or higher	30	61.6	26.4
-20 °C or higher	40	52.8	35.2
-30 °C or higher	50	44	44

MAINTENANCE

1

Check Coolant Level

--- every 10 hours (daily)

WARNING: Do not remove caps (2) (3) until the coolant temperature in the radiator is cool. Hot steam may spout out, possibly causing severe burns. After the coolant temperature cools, slowly loosen caps (2) (3) to release the inside air pressure before removing caps (2) (3).

IMPORTANT:

- When refilling a long life coolant (LLC), use the same brand product and the same mixture ratio as already used in the machine.
- If only water is refilled, the mixture ratio in the long life coolant (LLC) is diluted so that anti-rust and antifreeze effect in the coolant will become diluted and less affective.
- Refer to page 7-23 for the coolant specifications.

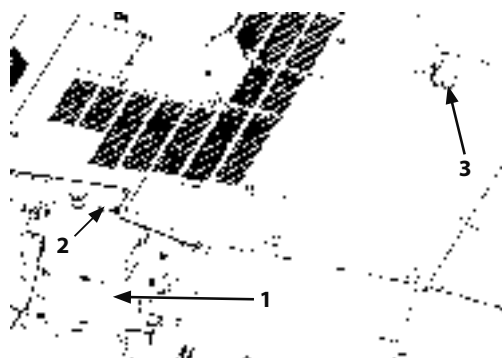
Check the coolant level at radiator sub tank (1). The normal coolant level is between the FULL and LOW marks on side surface of radiator sub tank (1).

In case no coolant is present in radiator sub tank (1), add the coolant mixture via cap hole (2) on radiator sub tank (1). In addition, open radiator cap (3) to check the coolant level. Coolant level is normal if coolant is filled to the bottom level of radiator filler port.

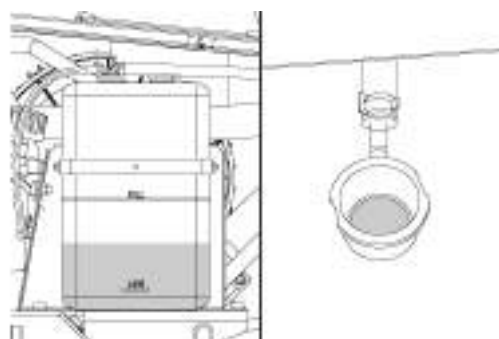
If needed, add the required amount of the coolant.

- When refilling a long life coolant (LLC), use the same brand product and the same mixture ratio as already used in the machine.
- If only water is refilled, the mixture ratio in the long life coolant (LLC) is diluted so that anti-rust and antifreeze effect in the coolant will become diluted and less affective.

IMPORTANT: If the coolant level is low, EGR cooler is heated up, and damaged.



115Z7B-7-74-1



115Z7B-7-71-2

MAINTENANCE

2

Check Fan Drive Belt

--- every 10 hours (daily)

Adjust, Replace --- as necessary

Press the center of the belt with a hand, and check whether the belt deflects only slightly.
Also, check the belt for a damage.

Measurement of Deflection Amount and Vibration Frequency

1. Press the middle of the belt with a force of 98 N (approx. 10 kgf), and check whether the amount of deflection is within the following range.

Fan belt deflection value: 6 to 8 mm

2. When the value is not within the range, adjust the tension.
3. Check the belt for a damage such as a scratch and crack.
4. When the belt adjusting allowance is no longer available, when crack, damage or abnormal wear is found, or when the belt squeaks during driving even after the belt tension has been adjusted, replace the belt.

Adjusting Fan Belt

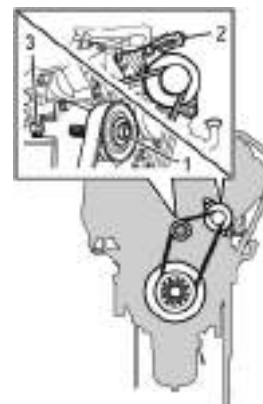
1. Loosen idler pulley's lock nut (1).

Nut (1) tightening torque: 140 to 160 N·m (14 to 16 kgf·m)

2. Turn the generator and idler pulley adjusting bolts (2, 3) to adjust the belt tension to be within the standard value range.
3. After the adjustment, firmly tighten loosened lock nut (1) to the specified torque.



95Z7-7-68-1



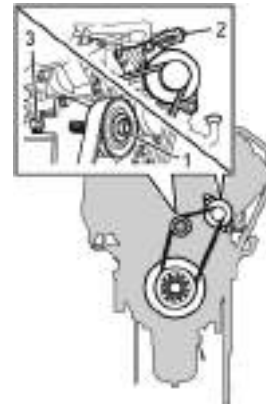
95Z7-7-68-2

MAINTENANCE

Replacing Fan Belt

1. Loosen idler pulley's lock nut (1) and adjusting bolt (3).
2. Remove the belt.
3. Install a new belt, and adjust the belt tension.
4. Turn the generator and idler pulley adjusting bolts (2, 3) to adjust the belt tension to be within the standard value range.
5. After the adjustment, firmly tighten loosened lock nut (1) to the specified torque.

Nut (1) tightening torque: 137 to 157 N·m (14 to 16 kgf·m)
6. After the adjustment, run the engine at the idling speed for approx. 5 minutes, and then stop the engine to recheck the belt tension.



95Z7-7-68-2

IMPORTANT:

- **When the generator is fixed, the belt tension slightly changes, so check the belt tension again after the generator is fixed.**
- **If the lock nut that is fixing the idler pulley is not tightened securely, it may be loosened by the vibrations generated during engine operation, which may cause damage to the components or an accident.**

MAINTENANCE

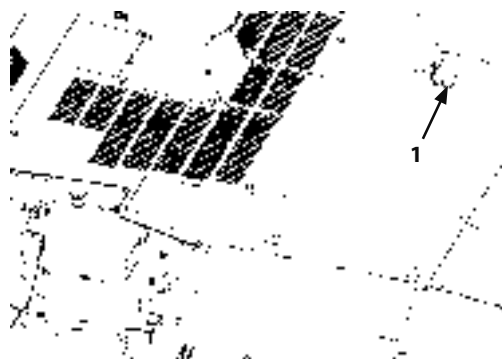
3

Change Coolant

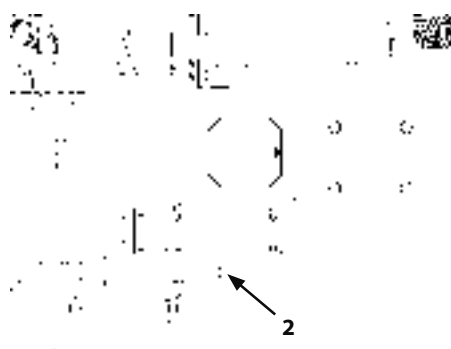
--- every 3000 hours or 2 years

WARNING: Do not remove the radiator cap (1) until the coolant temperature in the radiator has cooled. Hot steam and coolant may spout out, possibly causing severe burns. After the coolant temperature cools, slowly loosen the cap to release the inside pressure before removing cap (1).

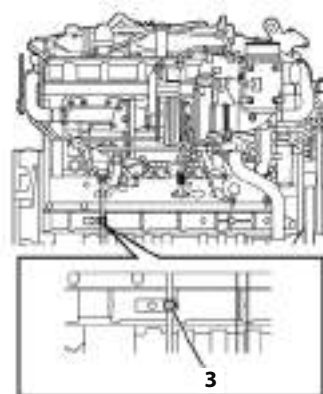
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Prepare a container to capture approx. 88 liters of drained coolant.
Recycle or properly dispose of the used coolant.
4. Remove radiator cap (1).
Open radiator drain plug (2) and engine oil cooler drain plug (3) to completely drain the coolant.
Remove impurities such as scale at the same time.
5. Close radiator drain plug (2) and engine oil cooler drain plug (3).



115Z7B-7-74-1



115Z7B-7-74-2



95Z7-7-69-3

MAINTENANCE

6. Slightly loosen air bleeder plug (4) of the EGR (Exhaust Gas Recirculation) cooler.

IMPORTANT: Be sure to loosen the plug before supplying the coolant.

7. Prepare a container of more than 5 liter capacity under the outlet (5) of the hose from air bleeder plug (4).
8. Supply low impurity soft water or tap water together with the specified LLC up to the bottom level (6) of radiator filler port.
When adding coolant, do it slowly (5 liters per minute or less) to avoid mixing air in the system.
At this time, supply water coolant until coolant starts to flow from hose (5).
Once water coolant starts to flow from hose (5), close EGR air bleeder plug (4).

9. Open EGR air bleeder plug (4) again and supply coolant up to the bottom (6) of the radiator filler port. When 4 liters or more coolant is drained, tighten the plug (4).

Tightening torque: 23.5 N·m (2.4 kgf·m)

10. Add coolant up to the bottom level (6) of radiator filler port.

 **NOTE:** The drained coolant in the above step 9. can be used.

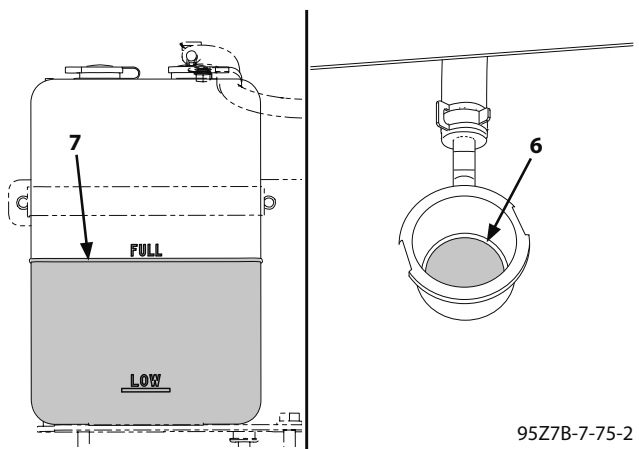
11. Tighten radiator cap (1) firmly.
12. Supply the LLC up to "FULL" level line (7) of the radiator sub tank.
13. Start the engine and run the engine at low idle for about 5 minutes.

IMPORTANT: Take care the coolant temperature not to reach 75 °C or higher while idling the engine.

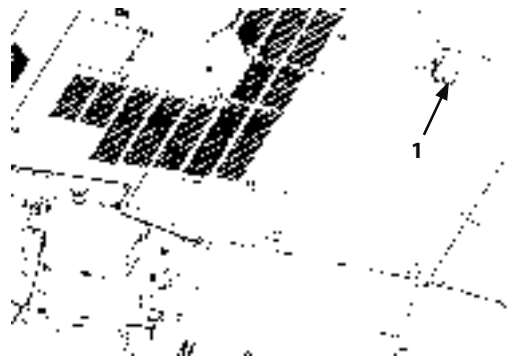
14. Stop the engine.
The coolant level should be lowered as the mixed air in the coolant is released.
15. Wait until the engine and the coolant is cooled.
Remove radiator cap (1) and supply the coolant to the bottom level (6) of radiator filler port.
If the coolant level in the radiator is abnormally low, check for possible leakage.
16. Tighten radiator cap (1) firmly.
17. Add the coolant in the sub tank to 3/4 level (8).
18. Select "Information Menu" - "Monitoring" menu to display the coolant temperature on the monitor. (Refer to page 1-82 Monitoring.)



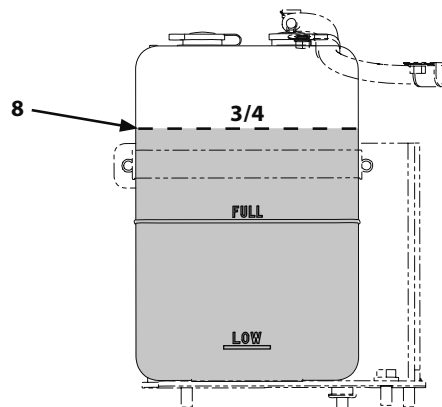
97Z7-7-90-1



95Z7B-7-75-2



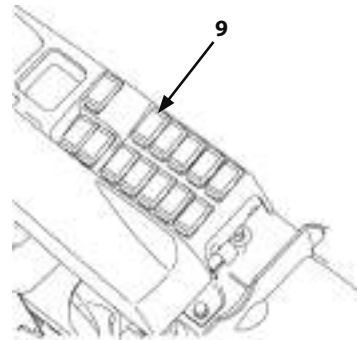
115Z7B-7-74-1



95Z7B-7-75-3

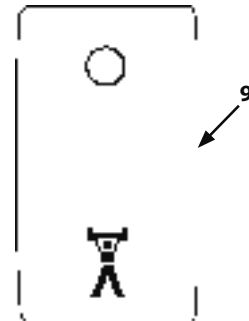
MAINTENANCE

19. Start the engine. Turn Power Mode Switch (9) and the heater on. This is to bleed the air of the heater circuit. (You may turn OFF the heater after running for 1 minute.)
20. Wait until the engine temperature reach the normal operation range, then run the engine at slightly higher speed than low idle until the coolant temperature reaches 80 °C. Then, keep running the engine at high idle for over 6 minutes while maintaining the coolant temperature at 80 °C or higher. This opens the engine thermostat to release the air between the radiator and the engine.



115MNEC-07-01

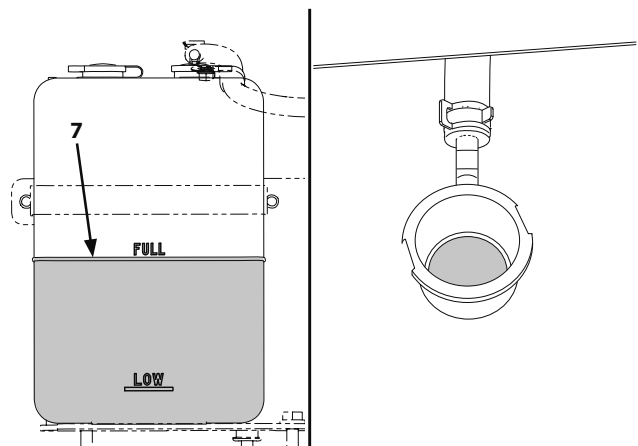
NOTE: The water coolant temperature can be confirmed using the monitoring function of the Multi Function Monitor. To increase the coolant temperature quickly, set the shift lever to the second speed range, the parking brake SW to OFF, and roll back the bucket. While stepping on the left brake pedal, apply the throttle pedal thirty seconds at full throttle and thirty seconds idle and repeat. Do not keep depressing the throttle pedal to prevent overheating. When the above operations are performed, the monitor screen switches to the basic screen. After machine operations have ended, please confirm again using the monitoring feature. If the water coolant temperature falls below 80 °C even when the engine is operating in high idle, perform front attachment stroke-end operation using hydraulic relief to ensure the coolant temperature is maintained at 80 °C or higher.



MNEC-01-016

IMPORTANT: After opening the engine thermostat, make sure to keep running the engine at least for 6 minutes. While the engine is running, maintain the coolant temperature at 80 °C or higher. If failed, remaining air in the EGR cooler line could reach high temperature, resulting in burned EGR cooler.

21. Run the engine at low idle speed for about 5 minutes and stop the engine. Wait until the engine is fully cooled.
22. Check the coolant level in the sub tank and add coolant to "FULL" level (7). If the sub tank is empty, there may be a problem with the engine coolant system. Please contact Authorized Dealer for check and repair.



95Z7B-7-75-2

MAINTENANCE

4 Clean Radiator and Oil Cooler and Other Cooling System

--- every 500 hours or when the core is clogged.

WARNING: When using compressed air pressure [less than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm²)], wear safety glasses or goggles.

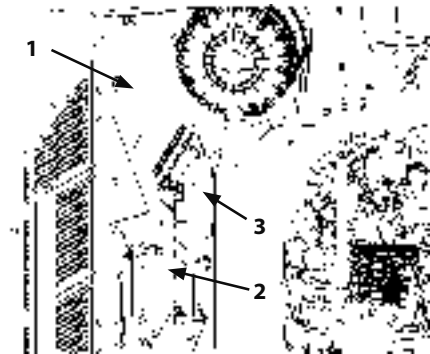
IMPORTANT: If compressed air with the pressure of more than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm²) or tap water with high delivery pressure is used for cleaning, damage to the radiator/oil cooler fins may result. Keep the nozzle away from the core surface more than 500 mm.

(Over the Side Cover)

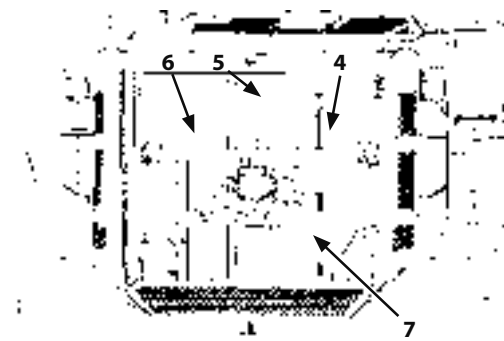
Check and clean engine inter air cooler (1), air conditioner condenser (2), and fuel cooler (3).

(Over the Rear Grille)

Check and clean hydraulic oil cooler (4), radiator (5), torque converter oil cooler (6), and hydraulic driven fan (7). In case dirt or dust sticks to the radiator/oil cooler cores, clean the radiator/oil cooler cores with compressed air pressure [less than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm²)] or tap water to maintain the cooling system performance at a good level.



115Z7B-7-77-1



115Z7B-7-77-2

MAINTENANCE

H. Electrical System

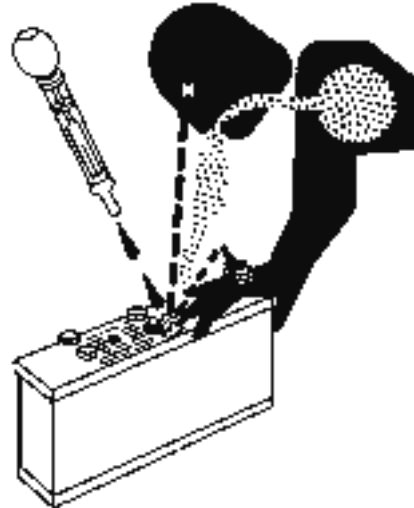
IMPORTANT:

- Improper radio communication equipment and associated parts, and/or improper installation of radio communication equipment affects the machine's electronic parts, causing involuntary movement of the machine.

Improper installation of electrical equipment may cause machine failure and/or a fire on the machine.

Be sure to consult Authorized Dealer when installing radio communication equipment or additional electrical parts, or when replacing electrical parts.

- Never attempt to disassemble or modify the electrical/electronic components. If replacement or modification of such components is required, contact Authorized Dealer.

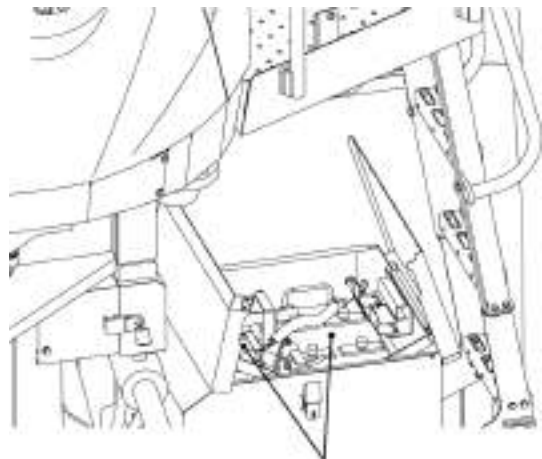


SA-036

1 Batteries

⚠ WARNING:

- Battery gas can explode. Keep sparks and flames away from batteries.
- Do not keep tools, metals or flammable materials around the battery or inside the battery room. If a metal tool is placed across the battery terminal and a vehicle component such as the engine block, sparks may be created, possibly resulting in fire and/or explosion.
- Use a flashlight to check the battery electrolyte level.
- Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.
- Charge the batteries in a well ventilated location.
- Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into the eyes.



Batteries

115Z7-7-71-1

MAINTENANCE

Avoid hazard by:

- 1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.**
- 2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.**
- 3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.**
- 4. Avoiding spilling or dripping electrolyte.**
- 5. Using proper booster battery starting procedures.**

If you spill acid on yourself:

- 1. Flush your skin with water.**
- 2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.**
- 3. If splashed in eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.**

If acid is swallowed:

- 1. Do not induce vomiting.**
- 2. Drink large amounts of water or milk.**
- 3. Get medical attention immediately.**

IMPORTANT:

- Add water to batteries in freezing weather before you begin operating your machine for the day, or else charge the batteries.**
- If the battery is used with the electrolyte level lower than the specified lower level, the battery may deteriorate quickly.**
- Do not refill electrolyte more than the specified upper level. Electrolyte may spill, damaging the painted surfaces and/or corroding other machine parts.**



NOTE: If electrolyte is refilled more than the specified upper level line or beyond the bottom end of the sleeve, remove the excess electrolyte until the electrolyte level is down to the bottom end of the sleeve using a pipette. After neutralizing the removed electrolyte with sodium bicarbonate, flush it with plenty of water, otherwise, consult the battery manufacturer.

MAINTENANCE

Electrolyte Level Check --- every 100 hours (monthly)

1. Check the electrolyte level at least once a month.
2. Park the machine on level ground and stop the engine.
3. Check the electrolyte level.
- 3.1 When checking the level from the battery side:

Clean around the level check lines with a wet towel. Do not use a dry towel. Static electricity may be developed, causing the battery gas to explode. Check if the electrolyte level is between U.L (Upper Level) and L.L (Lower Level).

If the electrolyte level is lower than the middle level between the U.L and L.L, immediately refill with distilled water or commercial battery fluid.

Be sure to refill with distilled water before recharging (operating the machine).

After refilling, securely tighten the filler caps.

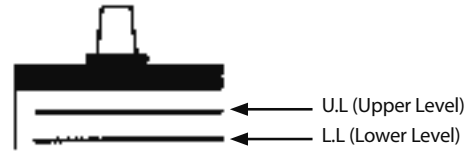
- 3.2 When impossible to check the level from the battery side or no level check mark is indicated on the side:

After removing the filler plug from the top of the battery. Check the electrolyte level by viewing through the filler port. It is difficult to judge the accurate electrolyte level in this case. When the electrolyte level is at the U.L, the level is judged to be proper. Referring to the illustrations at the right side, check the level. When the electrolyte level is lower than the bottom end of the sleeve, refill with distilled water or commercial battery fluid up to the bottom end of the sleeve.

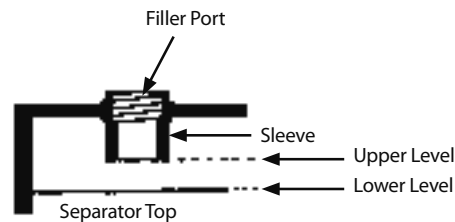
After refilling, securely tighten the filler caps.

Be sure to refill with distilled water before recharging (operating the machine).

- 3.3 When an indicator is available to check the level, follow its check result.
 4. Always keep the area around the battery terminals clean to prevent battery discharge.
- Check terminals for loose and/or rust. Coat terminals with grease or petroleum jelly to prevent corrosion build up.



M146-07-109



M146-07-110

Specified Electrolyte Level



Since the electrolyte surface touches the bottom end of the sleeve, the electrolyte surface is raised due to surface tension so that the electrode ends are seen curved.

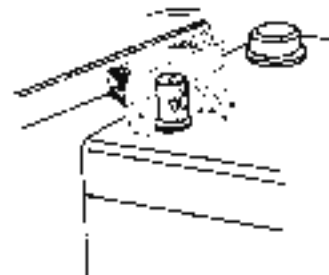
M146-07-111

Lower



When the electrolyte surface is lower than the bottom end of the sleeve, the electrode ends are seen straight.

M146-07-112



M409-07-072

MAINTENANCE

Check Electrolyte Specific Gravity --- every 250 hours



WARNING:

- Battery gas can explode. Keep sparks and flames away from batteries.
Use a flashlight to check the battery electrolyte level.
- Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into the eyes.
- Never check the battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.

Avoid hazard by:

1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
4. Avoiding spilling or dripping electrolyte.
5. Using proper booster battery starting procedures.

If you spill acid on yourself:

1. Flush your skin with water.
2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
3. If splashed in eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.

If acid is swallowed:

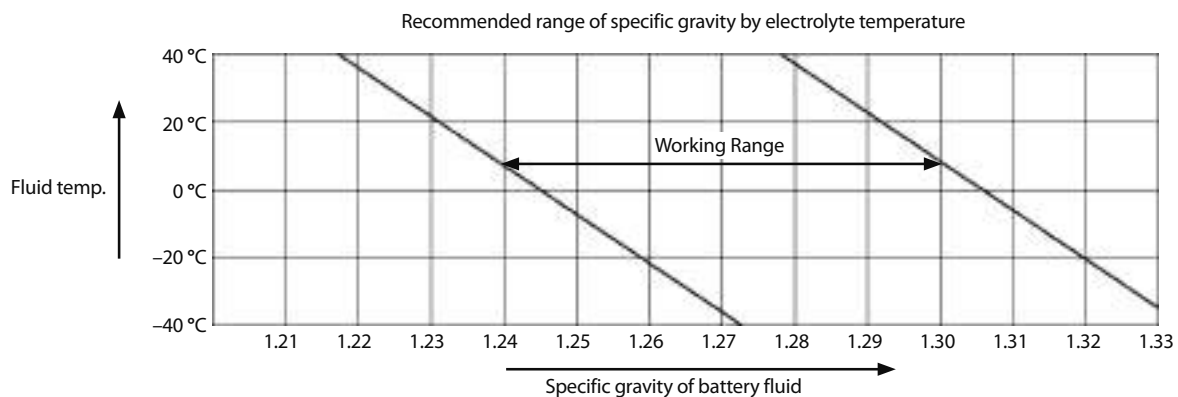
1. Do not induce vomiting.
2. Drink large amounts of water or milk.
3. Get medical attention immediately.

IMPORTANT: Check the electrolyte specific gravity in each battery cell.

The lowest limit of the specific gravity for the electrolyte varies depending on electrolyte temperature.

Check the electrolyte specific gravity in each battery cell.

The lowest limit of the specific gravity for the electrolyte varies depending on electrolyte temperature. The specific gravity should be kept within the range shown below. Charge the battery if the specific gravity is below the limit.



M104-07-054

MAINTENANCE

Replace Batteries

IMPORTANT: Before adjusting the electrical system or welding on the machine, disconnect the negative (-) wiring from the battery. If the machine is equipped with the battery disconnect switch, turn the disconnect switch OFF.

Your machine has two 12-volt batteries with negative (-) ground.

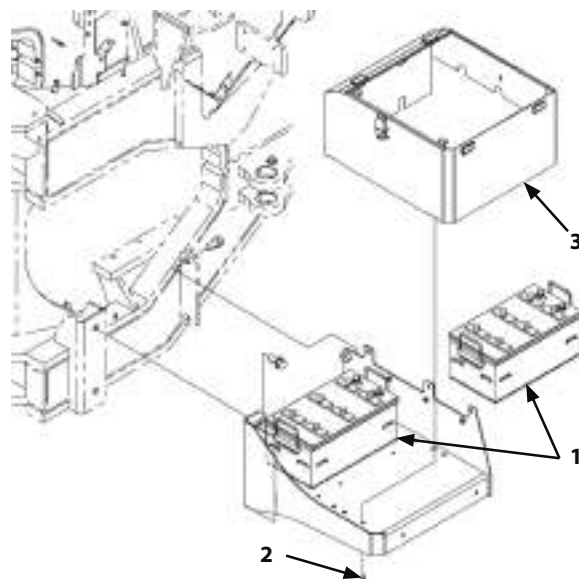
If one battery in a 24-volt system has failed but the other is still good, replace the failed battery with one of the same type. For example, replace a failed maintenance-free battery with a new maintenance-free battery. Different types of batteries may have different rates of charge. This difference could overload one of the batteries and cause it to fail.

 **NOTE:** When replacing batteries (1), remove bolts (2) (5 used) and remove box (3) surrounding the batteries.

Wrench size: 17 mm

Tightening torque: 50 N·m (5.0 kgf·m)

Box (3) weight: 25 kg



115Z7-07-81

2 Check Monitor Functions and All Other Instrument Operation

--- every 10 hours (daily)

Run the engine at low idle speed when checking the instruments.

The monitor indicates alarm, caution and confirmation status in red, orange, and normal operative condition in blue or green respectively.

Check each gauge or meter if its needle is moved with the key switch ON. The needle shall be moved to the blue range when normal and to the red range when abnormal.

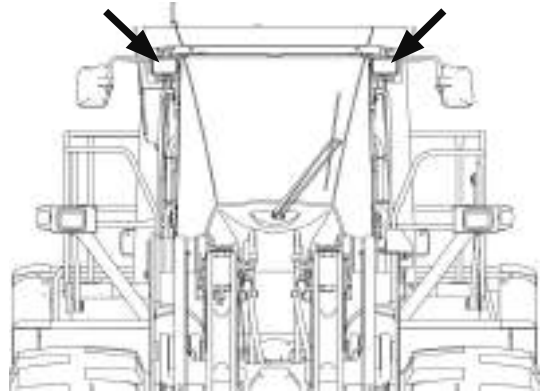
Refer to the "OPERATOR'S STATION" chapter for more information.

MAINTENANCE

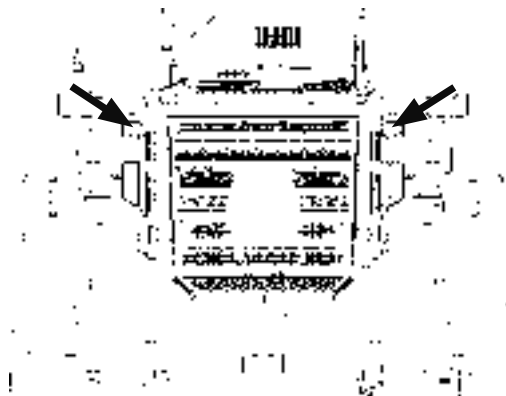
- 3** Check Work Lights
--- every 10 hours (daily)

⚠ CAUTION: If any burned-out light is found,
immediately replace it with a new one.

Visually check all work lights that they normally light and/or
flash from the front and rear sides of the machine.



115Z7_front



115Z7B-1-86-4

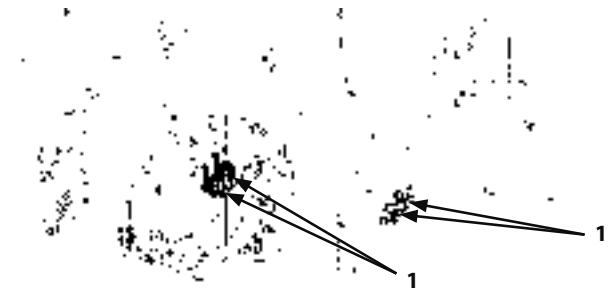
MAINTENANCE

4 Check Horn and Reverse Buzzer

--- every 10 hours (daily)

WARNING: Before checking the horn and/or the reverse buzzer, always apply the parking brake and clear the machine's vicinity of other personnel.

The horn switch button is located at the joystick lever and on the right console. If the machine is equipped with a multi-function joystick lever, the horn switch is located on the multi-function joystick lever. Horn (1) is located on the front frame. Reverse buzzer (2) is located at the right side of the rear grille. Check that reverse buzzer (2) correctly sounds by operating either the forward/reverse lever or the forward/reverse switch to the reverse drive side.



115Z7B-7-84-1



115Z7B-7-84-2

MAINTENANCE

5 Check Electrical Harnesses and Fuses

--- every 50 hours

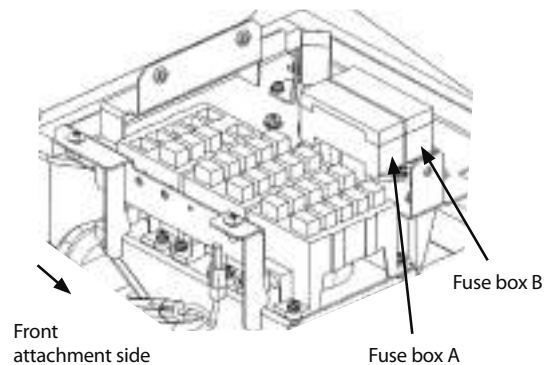
CAUTION: If dirt or dust is adhered on the wirings or relays, it may cause fire on the machine.

Check the electrical harness and terminals of the batteries, starter motor, and alternator for loose connection and/or short circuit (broken shield). Remove dirt or dust if necessary. If any burned mark or an abnormal smell is noticed on a harness, consult Authorized Dealer.

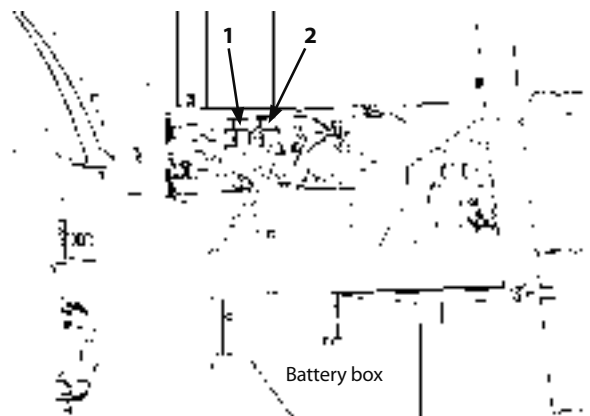
Replace Fuse:

1. If any electrical equipment becomes inoperable, first check the fuses in the fuse boxes (A, B) located in the left console (behind the front control lever) in the operator's station.
2. One spare fuse for each respective fuse capacity is provided in the fuse boxes (A, B).
3. Finally, check slow blow fuses (1) (2) located on the left side of the base machine.

1- 140A x 2
2- 70A



95Z7B-FuseBox

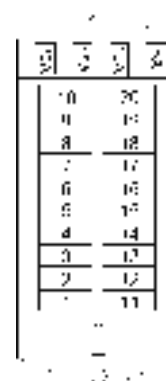


115Z7B-SlowBlow

MAINTENANCE

Fuse Box A

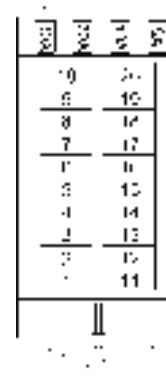
- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 10- Parking solenoid
5 A | 20- Option 4 (Joystick steering)
(5 A) |
| 9- Air conditioner 1
10 A | 19- Option 3 (Accessory)
15 A |
| 8- Stop lamp, Turn signal
5 A | 18- SCR DCU
20 A |
| 7- Back lamp, Back buzzer
5 A | 17- ECM DCU (POWER ON)
10 A |
| 6- Head lamp (left)
5 A | 16- SCR sensor
20 A |
| 5- Working lamp (front)
20 A | 15- Air conditioner 2
20 A |
| 4- Front wiper
15 A | 14- Starter key SW
10 A |
| 3- 24 V cigar lighter
20 A | 13- Seat heater
15 A |
| 2- Head lamp (right)
5 A | 12- Option 2 (Rear view mirror heater)
(20 A) |
| 1- Controller (Sub)
10 A | 11- Radio (USA)
10 A |



90Z7B-FuseBoxA

Fuse Box B

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 10- ECM
30 A | 20- Emergency steering
5 A |
| 9- Controller (Sub)
10 A | 19- High beam
10 A |
| 8- Main controller, DSZ, Monitor,
Load dump relay, GPS, GSM, OPT C/U
10 A | 18- Rear wiper
10 A |
| 7- Flasher unit
10 A | 17- Working lamp (rear)
20 A |
| 6- Horn
10 A | 16- Loader control
5 A |
| 5- Option CAN
5 A | 15- MC solenoid power
10 A |
| 4- Option 1 (Rear view mirror heater)
(15 A) | 14- Parking relay
5 A |
| 3- Cab room lamp
20 A | 13- Power ON
10 A |
| 2- Lighting switch
10 A | 12- Position 2
5 A |
| 1- Radio(JAPAN, EU)
5 A | 11- Position 1
5 A |



90Z7B-FuseBoxB

MAINTENANCE

I. Brake System

1 Check Right and Left Brake Interlocking Performance

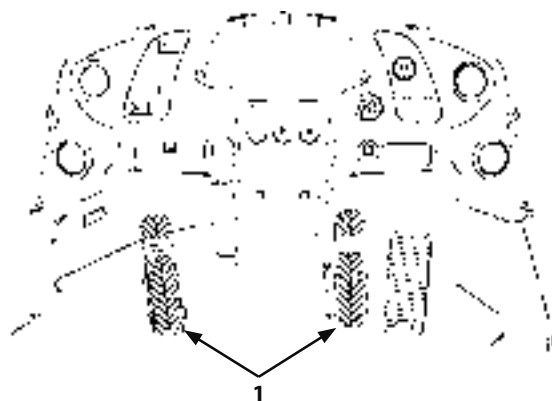
--- every 10 hours (daily)

⚠ WARNING:

- Put up a no admission notice for the range of 100m ahead in the forward machine travel direction. Arrange a safety monitor person.
- Do not allow dust and/or soil to accumulate in vicinity of the brake pedal. The brake may become inoperable.

While stepping on brake pedal (1), check the pedal movement, the brake performance, and the play in the pedal stroke for any abnormality.

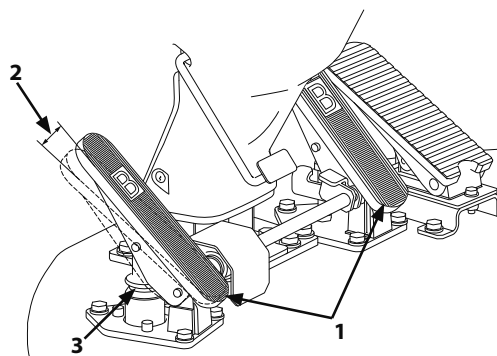
If dust and/or soil accumulates in vicinity of the brake pedal, remove the accumulated dust and/or soil.



115Z7B-1-81-1

Check Brake Performance

1. Turn "OFF" the clutch cut position switch.
2. Firmly step on the left hand brake pedal.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Select the transmission shift lever 2nd and FORWARD.
5. Slowly accelerate the engine to full speed.
6. The machine should not move.



95Z7B-7-86-2

⚠ **CAUTION:** If machine moves when firmly step on right hand brake with transmission in 2nd and FORWARD, there is some problem with service brake. Do not operate until problem has been corrected.

Check Play in Brake Pedal Stroke

Measure the pedal stroke at pedal tip (2) by pressing the pedal with your hand until you feel an intermittent feed back from the pedal.

Correct Play (2) : 4 to 13 mm

If the play is outside the specified range, consult Authorized Dealer.

If abnormal pedal operation and/or performance is noticed, consult Authorized Dealer. Get the machine checked and repaired.

MAINTENANCE

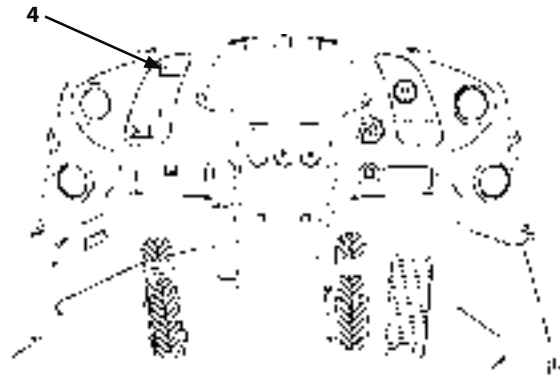
2 Check Parking Brake Force

--- every 10 hours (daily)

⚠ WARNING: Check the machine in a place where no one is present or ahead in the traveling direction.

Keep bystanders away from the machine.

Park the machine with no load applied on a 20 % (11.3°) inclining dry surface slope. The machine must not move with the parking brake switch (4) ON. Should the machine move during inspection, consult Authorized Dealer. Get the brake system checked and repaired.



115Z7B-1-81-1

MAINTENANCE

3

Parking Brake Gear Oil

Check --- every 250 hours

Change --- every 2000 hours

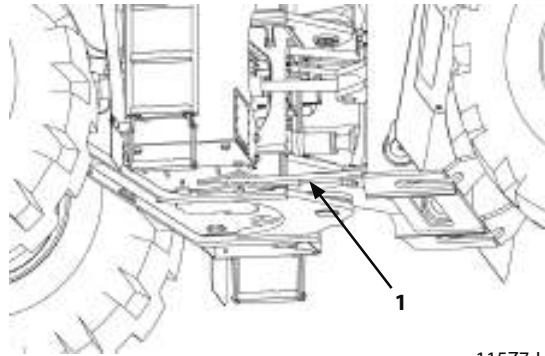
Check Parking Brake Gear Oil



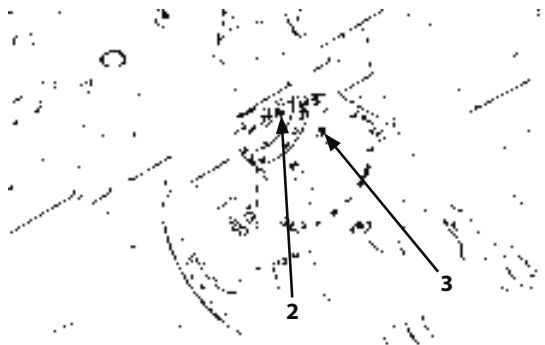
WARNING: Be cautious about the following items.

- Starting repair work immediately after operation may cause burns. Wait for oil temperature to lower.
- Lock the front and rear frame with the articulation lock bar.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar (1) to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Clean the vicinity of oil plugs (2, 3).
4. Remove oil level plugs (2, 3) for oil level check.
5. Fill the oil from plug (2) until oil comes out of plug (3).
6. Install and tighten plugs (2, 3).



115Z7-LOCK



115Z7-7-91-2

MAINTENANCE

Change Parking Brake Gear Oil



WARNING: Be cautious about the following items.

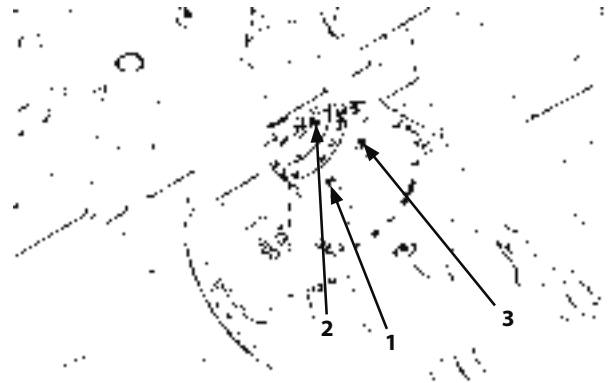
- Starting repair work immediately after operation may cause burns. Wait for oil temperature to lower.
- Lock the front and rear frame with the articulation lock bar.

IMPORTANT: Do not use parking brake gear oils other than those listed in the "Recommended Axle Oil".

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Clean the vicinity around plugs (1, 2, 3) and the oil drain plug holes.
4. Arrange a container of 3 liter capacity to receive the drain oil.
5. Remove drain plug (1) to drain the oil.
6. Remove oil filling port plug (2) and oil level check port plug (3).
7. Securely tighten drain plug (1).
8. Refill the recommended oil through oil filling port (2) until the oil comes out of oil level check port (3).

Parking Brake: 3 liters

9. Install and tighten port plugs (2, 3).



115Z7-7-91-2

MAINTENANCE

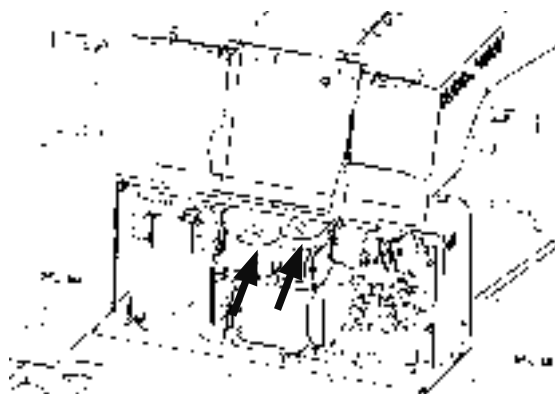
4 Check Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage

--- every 500 hours



WARNING:

- Allow only qualified personnel to handle the accumulator.
- High-pressure nitrogen gas is enclosed in the accumulator. Caution is required to prevent fires from occurring.
- Never strike the accumulator. Keep the accumulator away from sparks and/or flames.
- Do not directly heat the accumulator. Do not weld the accumulator housing.
- Be sure to release pressure before starting to work on the pipe lines.



115Z7B-1-142-2

1. Precheck that alarm function is activated:

Precheck that when the brake pedal is strongly stepped more than 5 strokes with the key switch ON and the engine stopping, the monitor indicators come ON.

2. Precheck that alarm function is deactivated:

Start the engine. Run the engine at middle speed to pressurize the accumulator. When the pressure builds in the accumulated in the accumulator, the alarm buzzer stops sounding and the brake oil pressure indicator goes OFF. At the same time, ensure the brake oil pressure gauge on the monitor screen indicates maximum value.

3. Note how many times the brake pedal is stepped:

Check that the brake pedal can be stepped more than 5 strokes before the monitor indicators come ON with the key switch ON and the engine stopping.

Three points described above must be confirmed as normal. Besides the above points, check the accumulator for gas leakage, looseness, and damage. If any abnormality is found, immediately consult Authorized Dealer.

MAINTENANCE

5 Check Gas Pressure in Accumulator

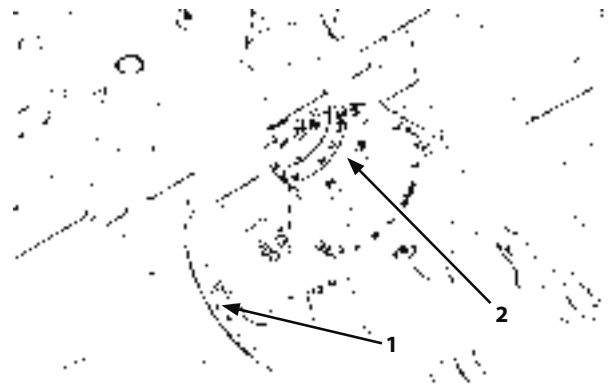
--- every 2000 hours

Check the gas pressure at a regular interval. If the machine is operated with the gas pressure lower than specified value, normal brake operation and/or loading operation may not be achieved, possibly creating very hazardous situations. Ask Authorized Dealer for checking.

6 Check Brake Disks (Service and Parking)

--- every 2000 hours

Service brake (1) is a closed wet type brake.
Parking brake (2) is a closed wet type disk brake. Parking brake (2) is mounted in the front axle.
Consult Authorized Dealer for checking.



115Z7-7-91-2

MAINTENANCE

J. Tire

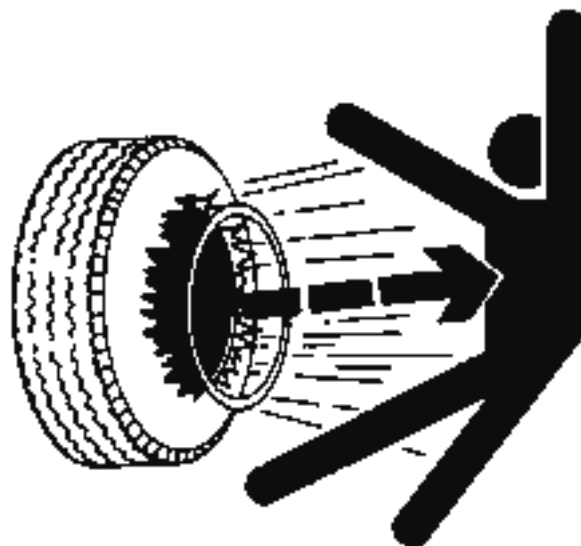
- 1** Check Air Pressure
--- every 10 hours (daily)
Adjustment
--- as necessary

⚠ WARNING:

- Secure the front and rear frames with the articulation lock bar and pins.
- When inflating tires, stand behind the tread and use the self-attaching chuck.
- Avoid welding near tires, which could potentially cause the tires to explode.
- Tires may explode if a tire is smoking such as if the machine catches fire, the tires become abnormally hot, or the air smells of rubber or tire bead burning.

IMPORTANT:

- Always maintain the correct tire pressure.
- Even if only one tread pattern has worn out, replace the tire with a new one. Before operating the machine, check the tires for any breaks, damage or foreign matter.
- When replacing one tire, use a new tire having the same tread pattern and specification as the other tires.



SA-249

Check Air Pressure

1. Measure air pressure when the tires are cool before operating the machine.

Radial tire (standard)	Standard Air pressure	
	Front	Rear
35/65R33	471 to 490 kPa (4.8 to 5.0 kgf/cm ²)	373 to 392 kPa (3.8 to 4.0 kgf/cm ²)

Bias ply tire (optional)	Pattern	Standard Air pressure	
		Front	Rear
35/65-33- 24PR	L4, L5	422 to 441 kPa (4.3 to 4.5 kgf/ cm ²)	324 to 343 kPa (3.3 to 3.5 kgf/ cm ²)
29.5-29- 28PR	L4, L5	520 to 539 kPa (5.3 to 5.5 kgf/ cm ²)	422 to 441 kPa (4.3 to 4.5 kgf/ cm ²)

2. Check tires for any damage and/or excessive wear.

MAINTENANCE

2 Check Tire for Damage --- every 10 hours (daily)

WARNING: If tire has external damage such as scoring, an accident due to puncture or bursting of the tire may occur, possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

Check the external appearance of tires for any damage.

3 Check Wheel Bolt Torque --- every 500 hours (50 hours at first time only)

Be sure to check the wheel bolt torque by turning the bolt in the tightening direction.

Tightening torque: 890 N·m (91 kgf·m)

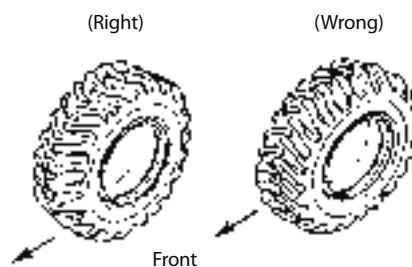
Replace Tire

WARNING: Secure the front and rear frames with the articulation lock bar and pins.

IMPORTANT: Height of the machine may change according to the types of tires to be installed.

Do not change the specifications of the registered machine by using unauthorized tire sizes.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Loosen all wheel bolts one turn.
Note which way the tread pattern is facing.
4. After jacking up the machine, securely support the machine with blocks.
5. Remove the wheel bolts. Replace the tire.
6. With the tire raised off the ground, lightly tighten the wheel bolts in order as illustrated to the right.
7. Lower the machine. Retighten the wheel bolts to specification in the order as illustrated to the right.



M4GB-07-104



M4GB-07-102

MAINTENANCE

Applicable Tire Size

 **NOTE:** Consult Authorized Dealer for tread pattern of optional tires.

The machine may vibrate while driving depending on the tread pattern of tires. This is a sympathetic vibration due to tread pattern, not a malfunction.

Radial tire (standard)

Size	Air pressure kPa (psi)	
	Front	Rear
35/65R33	471 to 490 (68 to 71)	373 to 392 (54 to 57)

Bias ply tire (optional)

Size	Pattern	Air pressure kPa (psi)	
		Front	Rear
35/65-33-24PR	L4, L5	422 to 441 (61 to 64)	324 to 343 (47 to 50)
29.5-29-28PR	L4, L5	520 to 539 (75 to 78)	422 to 441 (61 to 64)

 **NOTE:** Adjust air pressure according to the size and type of tires provided in the table above regardless of the tread pattern.

Adjust tire pressure in conformity with the work mode the machine is engaged in.

Consult Authorized Dealer for more detailed information.

- Driving on Public Roads: ... Standard Pressure
- Loading/excavation on normal ground surface: ... Standard or slightly higher than standard pressure
- Heavy-duty excavation: ... Higher pressure in the standard pressure range
- Operation on soft terrain or sandy territory: ... Slightly lower than standard pressure

MAINTENANCE

Tire Rotation

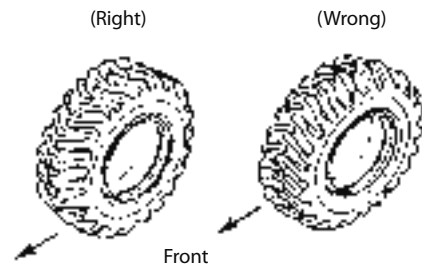
Rotate tires when uneven or abnormal wear is recognized on either front or rear, or right and left tire. Tire rotation is recommended to achieve uniformity of wear on tires or equalization of tire service life.

Rotation Procedure

WARNING: Install tire with no external damage such as score and abnormal wear.

Failure to do so may cause the puncture or the tire to blowout, possibly resulting in personal injury or death since tire load is increased when the machine is loaded or braked during operation.

- Switch tires only between the front and rear positions. Do not switch the tires between diagonal positions.
- Align the tire rotation direction with the tire tread design pattern. Especially traction tread design pattern (optional) will affect not only economy of tire but also safety of operation.



M4GB-07-104

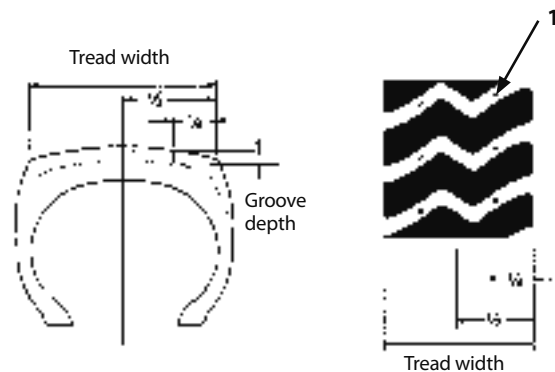
How to Check Wear Amount (Tread Design Groove Depth):

Measure the groove depth at 1/4 tread width position [shown with × mark (1) in the figure].

Use limit of the groove depth shall be approx. 85 % of the new tire groove depth. If extreme uneven wear or exposed rubbing strips are found, replace the tire even before reaching 85 %.

IMPORTANT: If the machine is operated with such tires at either rear or front being extremely worn or different in type, construction, or size, the travel driving system such as axles or transmission will be adversely affected in their performance and/or endurance.

When replacing tires, be sure to use the same tires in type, construction and size to the four wheels. It is recommended to replace tires of the four wheels at the same time.



MNEC-07-122

MAINTENANCE

Removal and Installation of Tire

 **WARNING:** Wheel with tire is a very heavy, making removal and installation of a tire is hazardous and difficult work. In addition, a crane to lift a tire is required when removing or installing the tire to the wheel. Consult Authorized Dealer or a professional tire sales shop for tire removal and installation work.

If jacking up the machine is required, be sure to observe the following points.

- Select dry, solid and flat ground for a work site.
- Work in a group of more than two personnel. One person shall mainly engage in practicing the work and others shall work as assistants and/or ensure safety.
- Do not use the bucket to raise the front wheels.
- Do not raise the machine off the ground higher than necessary.
- When the front (rear) wheels are raised off the ground, wedge wheel stoppers under the rear (front) wheels.
- After the machine is raised off ground, be sure to block the machine using rigid supports. Never leave the machine to be supported only by jacks.
- The rear wheels oscillate. Insert wooden blocks between the axle and the frame to stop oscillation.
- When removing the wheel bolts, lift the wheel with a crane so that the wheel bolt remaining at the top position is finally removed.
- Wheel bolt tightening torque: 890 N·m (90.8 kgf·m)

Tire Wheel

 **WARNING:** When a tire wheel must be removed, ask a professional person to do so.

Allow only an authorized person to inflate a tire after the tire was installed onto the wheel.

Sufficiently remove rust from the wheel. Severe rust may cause the wheel to crack, possibly causing the machine trouble and/or personal accidents.

MAINTENANCE

K. Air Conditioner

1 Clean/Replace Air Conditioner Circulation/Fresh Air Filters

Clean filters

--- every 100 hours (or once a week whichever comes first)

Replace filter

--- after cleaning filters 10 times (or when the filters are severely clogged)

 **NOTE:** If the machine is operated at a dusty job site, clean or replace the filter element earlier than the normal interval.

1. Remove the double filter:

The double filter is installed behind cover (1) on the left rear side of the cab exterior. Open cover (1) with the starter key.

Loosen wing nuts (3) and remove plate (2) with double filter (7).

Remove bolts (5) (4 used), plate (6), and double filter (7) from plate (2).

 **CAUTION:** When using compressed air pressure, wear safety glasses or goggles.

IMPORTANT: If compressed air delivery pressure is high, damage to the filter fins may result. Always use compressed air at the lower pressure than 0.2 MPa (2kgf/cm²). Keep the nozzle more than 500 mm away from the core surface.

2. Clean double filter (7).

Clean double filter (7) using compressed air or by washing with water.

Washing procedure with water is as follows:

- 2.1 Use tap water.
- 2.2 Submerge the filter in water containing a neutral detergent for about 5 minutes
- 2.3 Clean the filter with water again.
- 2.4 Sufficiently dry the filter.

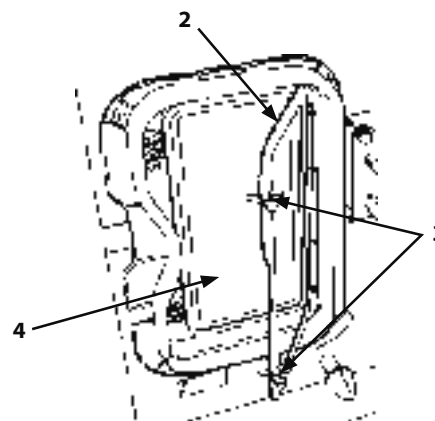
IMPORTANT: Inappropriate installation of the filter may cause dust to enter into the air conditioner, causing malfunction or breakdown of the air conditioner. Before installing the filter element, clean off dust around the mounting area; install the filter element with extra care.

Keep cab doors closed when operating machine.

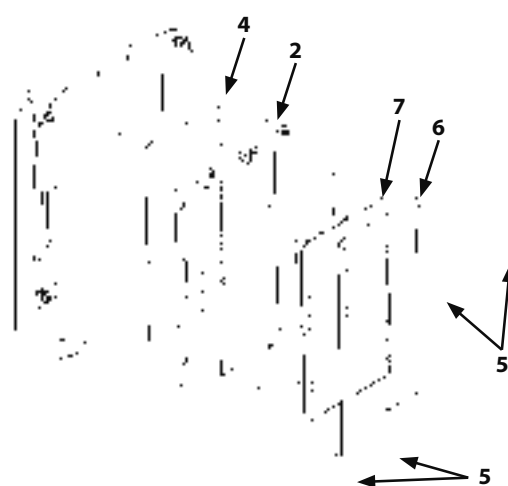
3. Install the cleaned double filter or a new filter by following the filter removal procedure described in step 1 in the reverse order.



115Z7-7-97-1



MNEC-07-043



MNHE-07-048

MAINTENANCE

Clean/Replace Air Conditioner Circulation Air Filters Clean filters

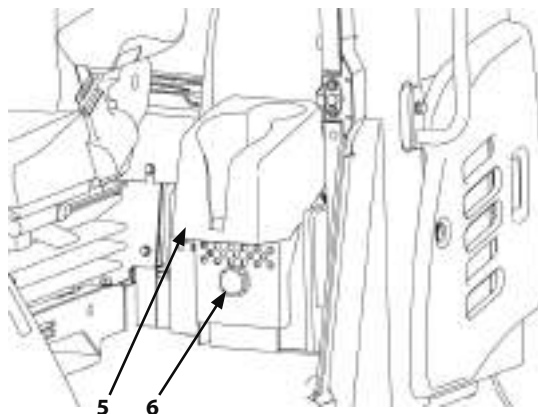
--- every 100 hours (or once a week whichever comes first)

Replace filter

--- after cleaning filters 10 times (or when the filters are severely clogged)

1. Remove the filter:

Remove screw (6) under cup holder (5) and tilt the cup holder forward. Hold handle (7) and pull handle (7) toward you to remove circulation air filter (8).



92Z7-7-90

CAUTION: When using compressed air pressure, wear safety glasses or goggles.

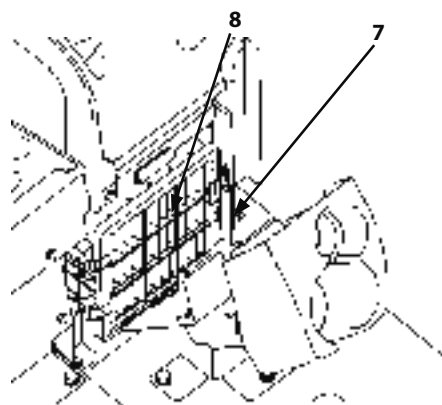
IMPORTANT: If compressed air delivery pressure is high, damage to the filter fins may result. Always use compressed air at the lower pressure than 0.2 MPa (2kgf/cm²). Keep the nozzle away from the core surface more than 500 mm.

2. Clean circulation air filter (8).

Clean circulation air filter (8) using compressed air or by washing with water.

Washing procedure with water is as follows:

- 2.1 Use tap water.
- 2.2 Submerge the filter in water containing a neutral detergent for about 5 minutes
- 2.3 Clean the filter with water again.
- 2.4 Sufficiently dry the filter.



MNEC-07-044

IMPORTANT: Inappropriate installation of the filter may cause dust to enter into the air conditioner, causing malfunction or breakdown of the air conditioner. Before installing the filter element, clean off dust around the mounting area; install the filter element with extra care.

3. Install the cleaned circulation air filter or a new filter by following the filter removal procedure described in step 1 in the reverse order.

MAINTENANCE

2 Check Air Conditioner --- every 6 months

Check the air conditioner switch panel, air conditioner unit, and condenser mounting areas for any abnormality, and check hoses for any damage.



NOTE: When the season to use the air conditioner comes close, check the air conditioner to get it ready to use at all times.

When not required to use the air conditioner for a long period of time, operate the air conditioner in the cooling mode once a week to prevent lack of lubrication.



WARNING: Do not clean the compressor and receiver tank with steam.

The refrigerant gas pressure will increase, possibly causing the hoses to break.

3 Check Air Conditioner Piping --- every 6 months



CAUTION: If any leakage is found, repair or replace the corresponding pipes. Tighten the joint bolts to specification.

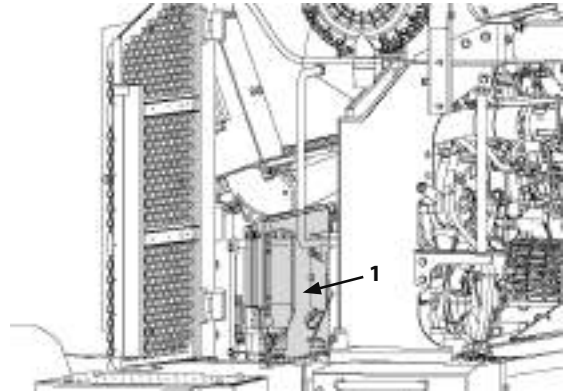
Do not overly tighten piping.

Check the piping for abnormal deformation and/or damage. If a pipe joint is contaminated with oil, refrigerant leakage may be suspected. Check for leakage using a gas leak detector.

MAINTENANCE

4 Check Air Conditioner Condenser --- every 6 months

If condenser (1) is covered with dirt and/or insects, air conditioner cooling performance will be reduced. Remove dirt or stain from fins of condenser (1) using tap water. If the condenser has been severely contaminated, use a soft brush. Do not use a hard brush, which may damage the fins.



115Z7B-7-102-1

5 Check Air Conditioner Compressor Drive Belt --- every 6 months

Check the belt for abnormal deflection and damage. Check drive belt tension by depressing the midpoint shown with ↓ mark in the illustration by using tension gauge.

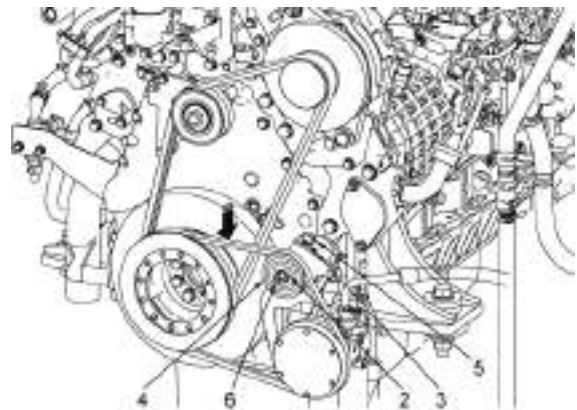
Belt tension: 412 ± 49 N (42 ± 5 kgf)

 **NOTE:** The belt tension should be 588 ± 98 N (60 ± 10 kgf) when the belt is replaced with new one.

Belt Tension Adjustment Procedure

1. Loosen lock nuts (2) (3) of tension pulley (4).
2. Remove plate (5) and move tension pulley (4) to adjust belt tension by turning belt tension adjustment bolt (3).
3. Securely tighten lock nuts (2) (3) and install plate (5).

Tightening torque: 52.5 N·m (5.35 kgf·m)



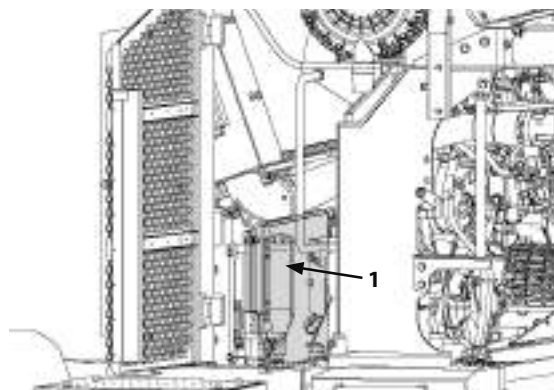
95Z7-7-92-2

MAINTENANCE

6 Check Refrigerant --- every 6 months

Start the engine and run at approximately 1500 min⁻¹ (rpm). Turn the air conditioner switch to ON. Set the blower switch to HI and set the temperature control switch to the coolest position (18 °C on the monitor screen). Operate the air conditioner 2 to 3 minutes. Check if cool air comes out from the vent in the cab.

IMPORTANT: If recovery or refill of refrigerant is required during the machine maintenance (including disposing the machine), contact your refrigerant supplier or Authorized Dealer.

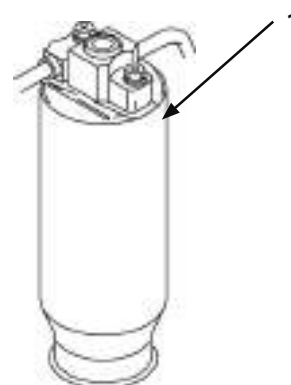


115Z7B-7-102-1

7 Replace Air Conditioner Receiver Dryer --- every 3 years or 6000 hours

IMPORTANT: Do not release refrigerant into the atmosphere as this is illegal. Comply with refrigerant regulations.

Before charging refrigerant, all the refrigerant must be recovered from the system. Consult Authorized Dealer to replace receiver dryer (1) or to charge the refrigerant.



90Z7-OM0144

Type	Refrigerant No.	Quantity kg
HFC	R134a	1.00±0.05

MAINTENANCE

8

Check Compressor and Pulley

--- once a year

Check the compressor and its vicinity for abnormality in operation, oil stain, or refrigerant leakage. Check the pulley for abnormal noise.

Check the belt for abnormal deflection and damage.

Check Compressor:

After operating the air conditioner for 5 to 10 minutes, check temperature at both the high pressure pipe and the low pressure pipe.

Normally, the high pressure pipe must be hot and the low pressure pipe must be cool.



115Z7B-7-103-3

MAINTENANCE

L. Miscellaneous

1 Check Bucket Teeth and Cutting Edge --- every 10 hours (daily)

Check bucket teeth for wear and looseness.

Procedures:

⚠ WARNING: Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal.

Wear goggles or safety glasses, hard hat and face shield.

1. Raise the bucket to an appropriate height with the bucket bottom parallel to the ground. Insert blocks under the bucket to support it. Stop the engine.
2. Remove lock pin and remove bucket teeth from adapter nose using tool.
3. Install new teeth (1) onto adapter (2).
4. Tap lock pin (3) into teeth (1).
5. Remove bolt (4), washer (5) and nut (6). Remove space edge (7) from the bucket.
6. Install space edge (7) to the bucket. If the reverse side of a cutting edge is not worn much, use it again with the face reversed. If both sides are worn out, replace it with a new one.
7. Tighten nuts (6).
Tightening torque
1 1/4-7UNC: 2400 N·m (245 kgf·m)
8. Retighten mounting nuts (6) after a few hours of operation.



MNHG-07-008

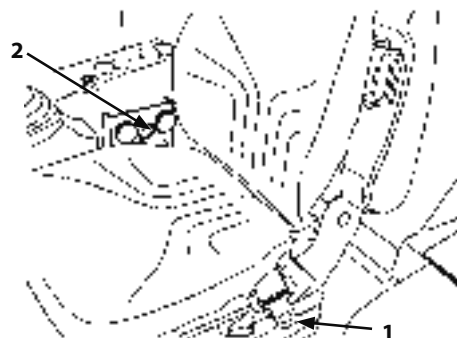
115Z7-7-122-2JA

MAINTENANCE

2 Check and Replace Seat and Seat Belt **Check appearance --- every 10 hours (daily)** **Replace --- every 3 years**

Examine buckle (1), attaching hardware (2) and seat belt web. Replace the seat belt web, buckle, or attaching hardware if they are damaged, or worn. Also check the wind-up condition of the seat belt.

Replace seat belt every 3 years, regardless of appearance. Inspect the seat for large play or damage. Replace it if necessary.



M4GB-07-117

3 Check ROPS cab, Resin Cab Roof, and Roof Mounting Bolts **--- every 10 hours (daily)**

Check the appearance of ROPS (5) for any abnormal damage or deformation.

Check the looseness of mounting bolts (6).

Tightening torque : 1420 N·m (145 kgf·m)



MNHE-07-055

4 Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level **--- every 10 hours (daily)**

IMPORTANT: Keep all dirt, dust and other foreign materials out of the tank.

Use anti-freeze type washer fluid in cold weather.

Check the fluid level. If necessary, add the fluid.

 **NOTE:** The location of the windshield washer fluid tank differs depending on the machine models.



115Z7B-7-112-3

MAINTENANCE

5 Check Play Amount in Joystick Steering Movement

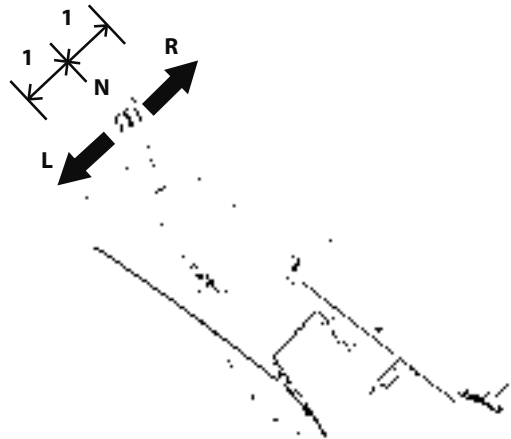
--- every 10 hours (daily)

Check that play (1) in joystick steering movement is correct. In addition, check that the chassis steering stoppers come in contact with the opposing chassis surface stopper when the steering lever is fully moved and that the steering cylinders operate normally.

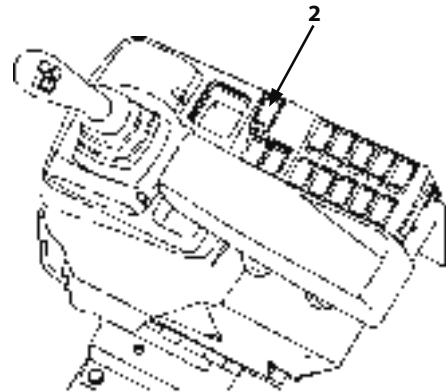
1. Start the engine. Turn the parking brake switch ON.
2. Slightly lift the bucket above the ground. Place control lever lock switch (2) in the lock (L) position.
3. While running the engine at slow speed, slightly and slowly move the joystick steering right and left. Measure the beginning movement distance from the center (neutral) position of steering lever until both right and left steering cylinders start moving (check the movement of the bucket and/or tires).

Appropriate play amount (1): 5~13 mm

 **NOTE:** If too much steering play is found or if the joystick steering lever does not move smoothly, consult Authorized Dealer for checking.



115Z7B-1-91-1



MN HK-01-011

MAINTENANCE

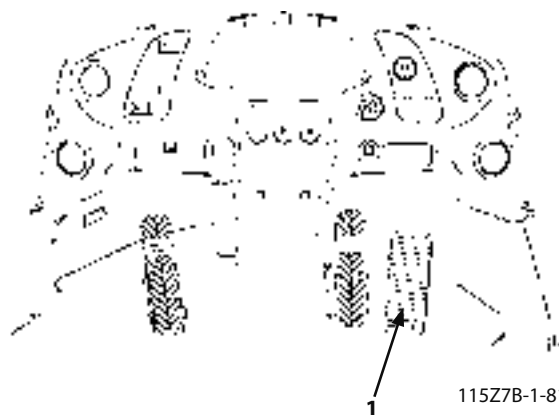
6 Check Accelerator Pedal Operation, and Exhaust Gas Color and Noise

--- every 10 hours (daily)

WARNING: Move the forward/reverse lever to neutral. Apply the parking brake. After horizontally resting the bucket on the ground, set the wheel stoppers.

While slowly stepping on accelerator pedal (1), check that the engine speed smoothly increases. While slowly returning accelerator pedal (1), check that the engine speed smoothly decreases.

If dust and/or soil accumulate in vicinity of accelerator pedal (1), remove them.



115Z7B-1-81-1

Exhaust Gas Color and Noise:

DANGER: Ventilate the shop with fresh air when carrying out warm-up operation indoors. Failure to do so may cause intoxication by exhaust gas, possibly resulting in personal death accident.

IMPORTANT: This machine is equipped with an engine that meets Stage IV emission requirements. Never attempt to modify the inlet and exhaust system.

Exhaust gas color is normally transparent or light blue.

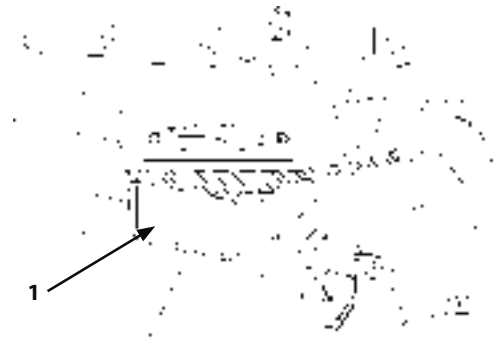
Although exhaust gas color slightly becomes white immediately after the engine is started or quickly accelerated, this symptom is not abnormal.

If the exhaust gas color turns black, white, brown, or gray, check the engine oil level and the fuel supply system for any abnormality. In addition, check that no abnormal noise is heard coming from the engine or the muffler.

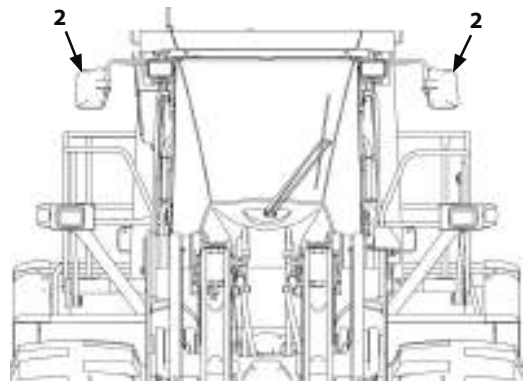
MAINTENANCE

7 Check Rearview Mirror and Inside Rearview Mirror --- every 10 hours (daily)

Check that the inside of rearview mirror (1) and rearview mirror (2) are facing a correct direction. Check inside rearview mirror (1) and rearview mirror (2) for contamination or damage.



Z7_US_radio_1

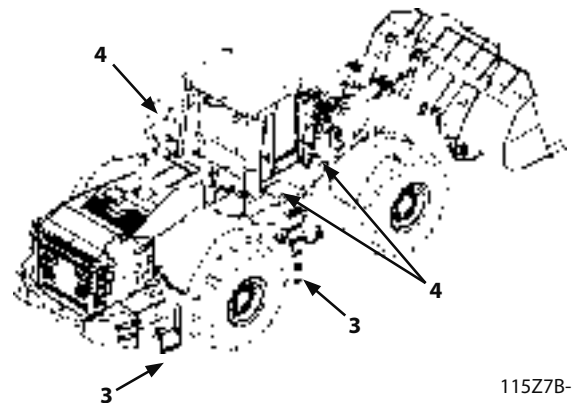


115Z7_front

8 Check Steps and Handrails for Damage and Looseness

--- every 10 hours (daily)

Check steps (3) and handrails (4) for any damage, looseness and contamination. If any slippery matter such as machine lubricants or mud becomes adhered to the steps and/or handrails (4), remove such contaminant. If the steps (3) and/or handrails (4) become damaged or loosened so that getting on and off the machine is difficult, immediately repair or replace.



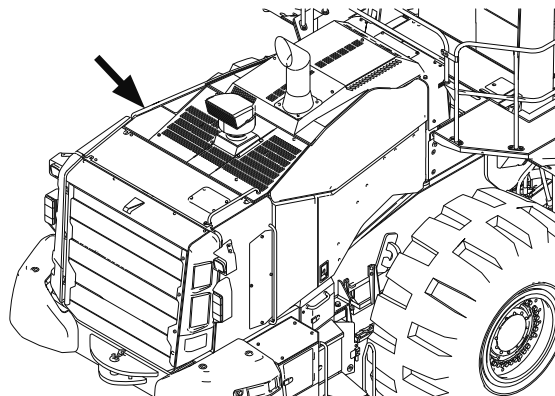
115Z7B-1-1-2

MAINTENANCE

9 Clean Engine Compartment and Hood --- every 10 hours (daily)

CAUTION: Dust or chips accumulated in the engine compartment or around the hood may come in contact with high temperature sections near the engine or hood, possibly causing fires.

Remove the accumulated dust and chips from the hood. Open the side access cover and check if dust and /or chips are accumulated in the engine compartment and/or the areas above the engine. Remove the accumulated chips and/or dust if any.



115Z7B-7-117-1

10 Check Sound Absorbing Mat Around Engine --- every 10 hours (daily)

CAUTION: If the sound absorbing mat in the engine compartment becomes unglued, the mat may come in contact with high temperature sections of the engine, possibly resulting in fires.

Check if the sound absorbing mat around the engine is unglued. If any part of the mat is found unglued, immediately contact Authorized Dealer for repair.

11 Cleaning of Rear View Camera Lens --- every 10 hours (daily)

Oil, dust, moisture band, or others may obscure the image from the camera lens.

If image is not clear, clean the lens by following below procedure.

Gently wipe surface of the camera lens with a damp cloth.

IMPORTANT: Never use organic solvent.

Do not apply excessive force as it may damage the camera.

MAINTENANCE

12 Check and Adjust Valve Clearance

--- every 1000 hours

Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.

13 Check Engine Compression Pressure

--- every 1000 hours (or once a year whichever comes first)

Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.

14 Check and Clean Starter and Alternator

--- every 1000 hours

Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.

15 Retighten Front Axle and Rear Axle Support Mounting Bolts

--- every 2000 hours (50 hours at first time only)

Check front and rear axle support mounting bolts for looseness.

Tightening torques of the front axle and rear axle support mounting bolts

Front Axle Mounting Bolt	Rear Axle Support Mounting Bolt
1420 N·m (145 kgf·m)	721 N·m (73.5 kgf·m)

MAINTENANCE

16 **Check Turbocharger**
--- every 4500 hours

Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.

17 **Check and Clean EGR Valve**
--- every 4500 hours

Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.

18 **Check and Clean EGR Cooler**
--- every 4500 hours

Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.

19 **Check Fuel Injector**
--- every 4500 hours

Consult Authorized Dealer for check and repair.

MAINTENANCE

20 Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts

--- every 250 hours (50 hours at first time only)

Tighten or retighten nuts and bolts used on this machine in accordance with the torque values shown in the following table. Check nuts and bolts for looseness and missing daily before and after operation. If any loose or missing nuts and/or bolts are found, retighten or supply replacement parts. Check tightness after the first 50 hours then every 250 hours.

No.	Locations	Bolt Diameter mm	Quantity	Wrench Size mm	Torque N·m (kgf·m)
1	Front axle mounting bolt	30	12	46	1420 (145)
2	Rear axle support mounting bolt	24	14	36	721 (73.5)
3	Wheel rim mounting bolt	24	124	32	892 (91)
4	Propeller shaft mounting bolt	Bolt A	16	19	※ 140 (14)
		Bolt B	8	22	※ 221 (22.5)
5	Propeller shaft support bearing mounting bolt	20	2	30	※ 417 (42.5)
6	Transmission mounting bolt	Bolt A	8	24	210 (21)
		Bolt B	2	30	550 (56)
		Bolt C	8	30	※ 400 (41)
		Bolt D	2	24	210 (21)
		Bolt E	4	30	※ 550 (56)
7	Torque converter mounting bolt	Bolt A	4	30	550 (56)
		Bolt B	2	24	210 (21)
8	Engine mounting bolt: Bracket	14	8	22	※ 140 (14)
9	Engine mounting bolt: Cushion rubber	20	2	30	550 (56)
10	Muffler filter mounting bolt	Bolt A	8	19	90 (9.0)
		Bolt B	6	24	210 (21)
11	Counterweight mounting bolt	24	8	36	721 (73.5)
12	Top center pin upper flange lock	20	12	30	400 (41)
13	Top center pin lower bushing lock	20	6	30	675 (67.5)
14	Bottom center pin lock	20	1	30	551 (56)
15	Loader front pin lock	Bolt A	18	30	551 (56)
		Bolt B	16	36	700 (70)
16	Steering cylinder pin lock	16	4	24	210 (21)
17	Radiator mounting bolt (Radiator core)	Bolt A	8	24	210 (21)
		Bolt B	4	17	50 (5.0)
18	T/C cooler mounting bolt.	10	2	17	50 (5.0)
19	Cooling unit mounting bolt	Bolt A	4	13	10 to 15 (1 to 1.5)
		Bolt B	4	19	90 (9.0)
		Bolt C	4	19	90 (9.0)
20	Air cooler mounting bolt	12	4	19	90 (9.0)
21	Air conditioner compressor mounting bolt	8	4	13	24.5 to 29.4 (2.5 to 3)
22	Cab cushion rubber	16	4	24	210 (21)
23	Space edge mounting bolt	* 1-1/4-7UNC	21	51	2400 (245)
24	Wear plate mounting bolt	* 7/8-9UNC	8	37	834 (85)
25	Combination valve mounting bolt	10	4	14	50 (5.0)
26	ROPS mounting bolt	30	22	46	1420 (145)

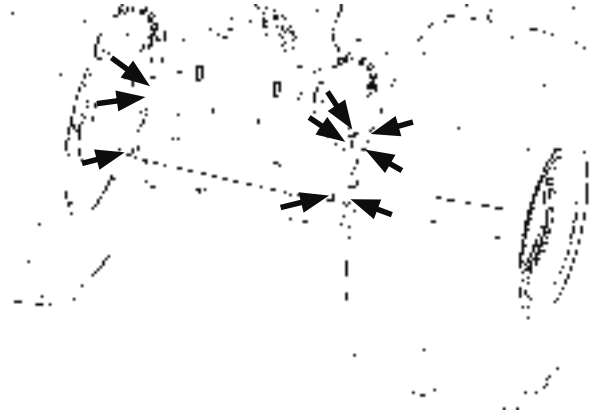
 NOTE: ※ Apply "LOCTITE® 262" to the threads.

Figures with * mark are shown in Inch.

MAINTENANCE

1. Front axle mounting bolt

Bolt dia. mm	30
Quantity	12



MNHE-07-057

2. Rear axle support mounting bolt

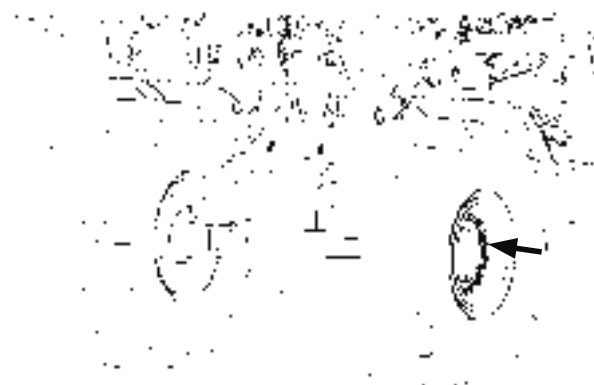
Bolt dia. mm	24
Quantity	14



MNHE-07-025

3. Wheel rim mounting bolt

Bolt dia. mm	24
Quantity	124

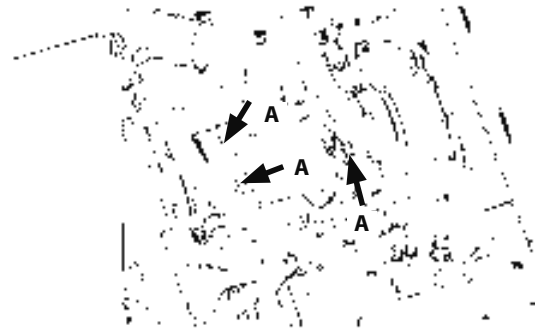


MNHE-07-058

MAINTENANCE

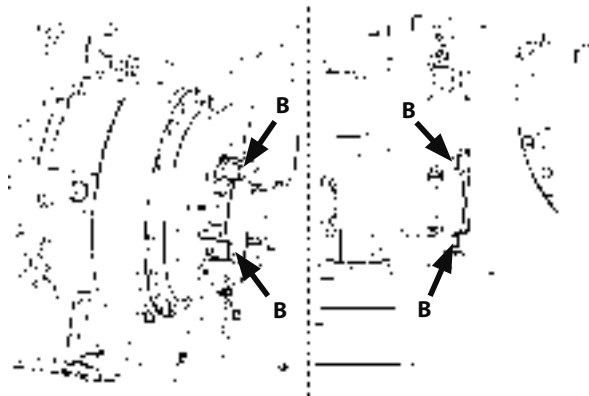
4. Propeller shaft mounting bolt

	A	B
Bolt dia. mm	12	14
Quantity	16	8



Main

MNHE-07-017



Front

115Z7B-7-135-2

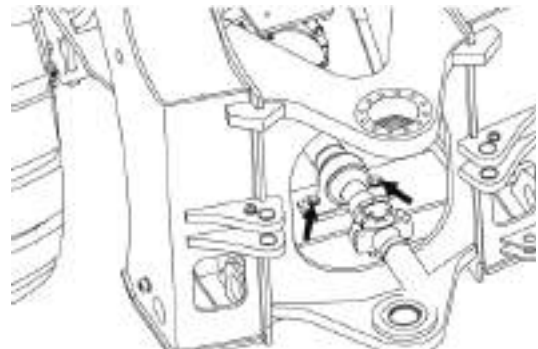


Rear

115Z7B-7-134-2

5. Propeller shaft support bearing mounting bolt

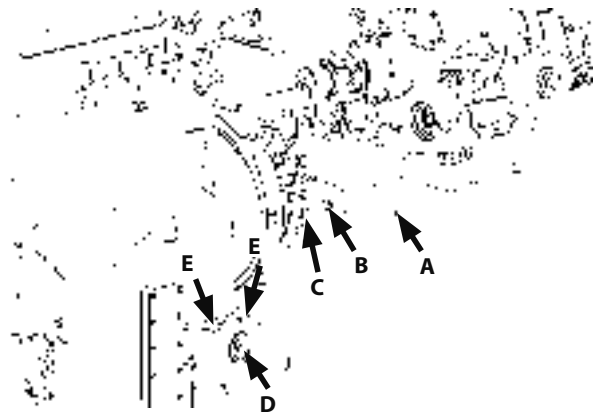
Bolt dia. mm	20
Quantity	2



95Z7-7-106-2

6. Transmission mounting bolt:

	A	B	C	D	E
Bolt dia. mm	16	20	20	16	20
Quantity	8	2	8	2	4



115Z7B-7-135-1

MAINTENANCE

7. Torque converter mounting bolt: Cushion rubber

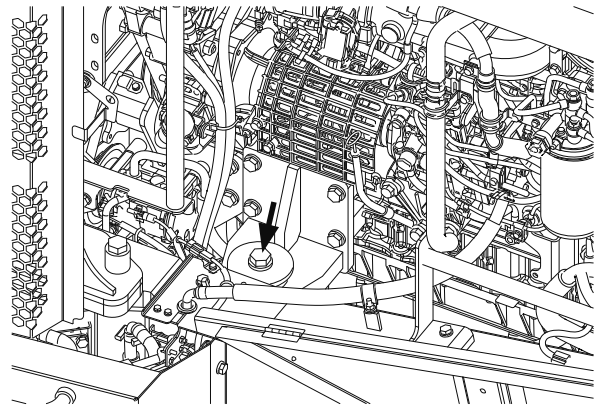
	A	B
Bolt dia. mm	20	16
Quantity	4	2



115Z7B-7-135-1

8. Engine mounting bolt: Bracket

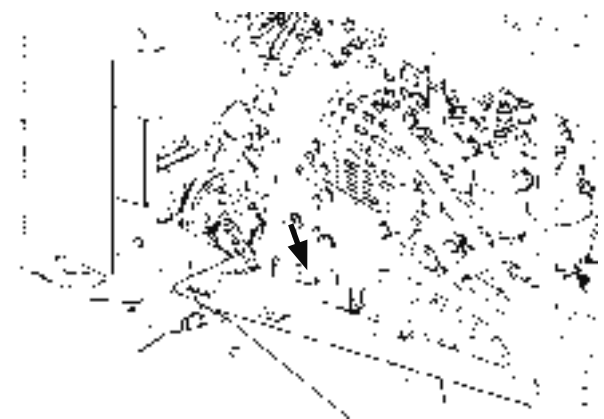
Bolt dia. mm	14
Quantity	8



115Z7B-7-136-1

9. Engine mounting bolt: Cushion rubber

Bolt dia. mm	20
Quantity	2

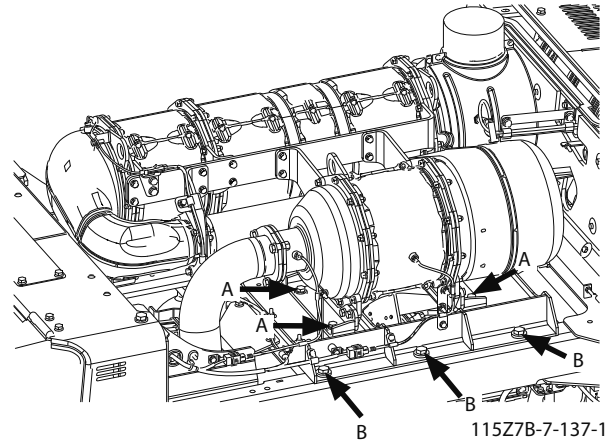


MNHE-07-049

MAINTENANCE

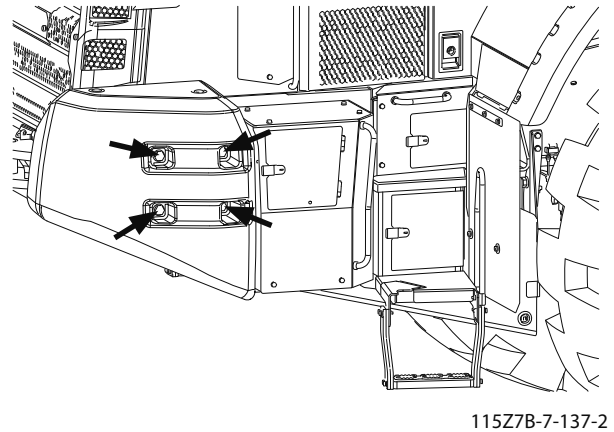
10. Muffler filter mounting bolt

	A	B
Bolt dia. mm	12	16
Quantity	8	6



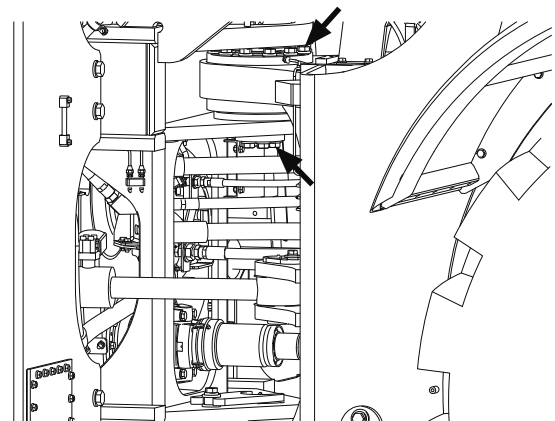
11. Counterweight mounting bolt

Bolt dia. mm	24
Quantity	8



12. Top center pin upper flange lock

Bolt dia. mm	20
Quantity	12



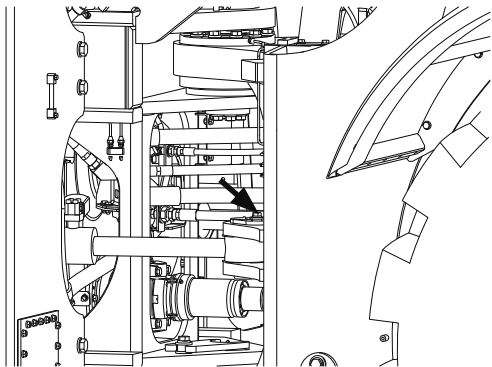
13. Top center pin lower bushing lock

Bolt dia. mm	20
Quantity	6

MAINTENANCE

14. Bottom center pin lock

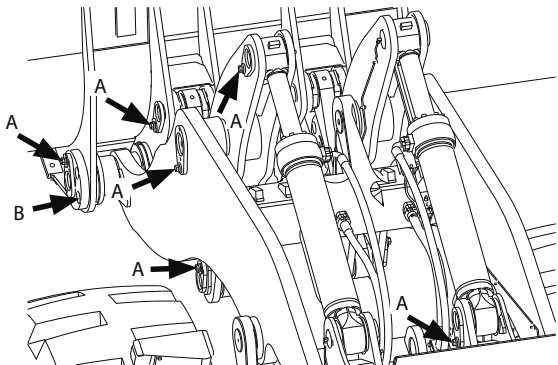
Bolt dia. mm	20
Quantity	1



115Z7B-7-137-3

15. Loader front pin lock

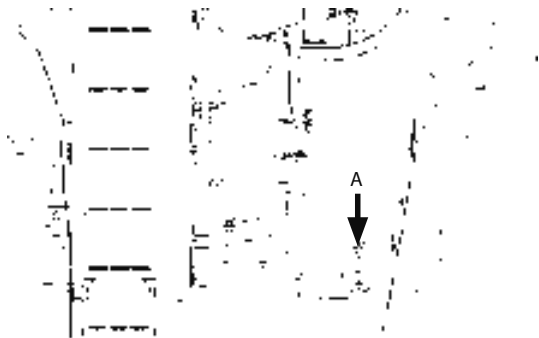
	A	B
Bolt dia. mm	20	24
Quantity	18	16



115Z7B-7-138-1



MNHE-07-011

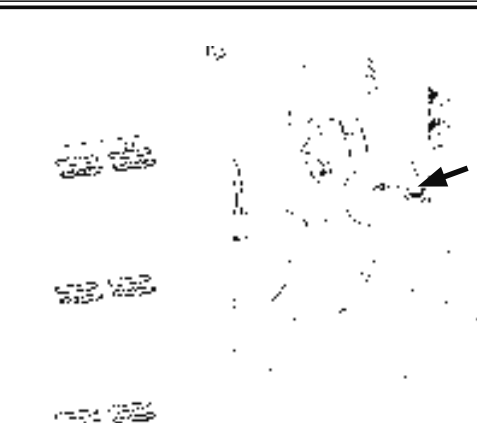


MNHE-07-010

MAINTENANCE

16. Steering cylinder pin lock

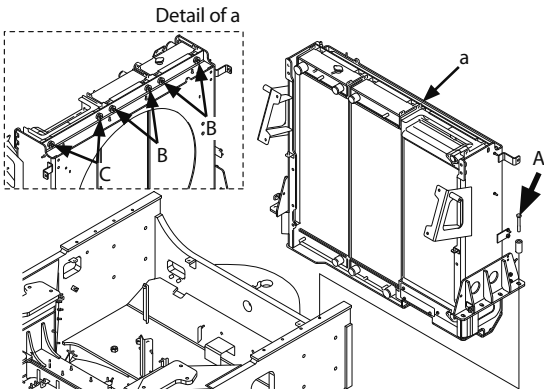
Bolt dia. mm	16
Quantity	4



MNHE-07-014

17. Radiator mounting bolt

	A	B
Bolt dia. mm	16	10
Quantity	8	4



115Z7B-7-139-1

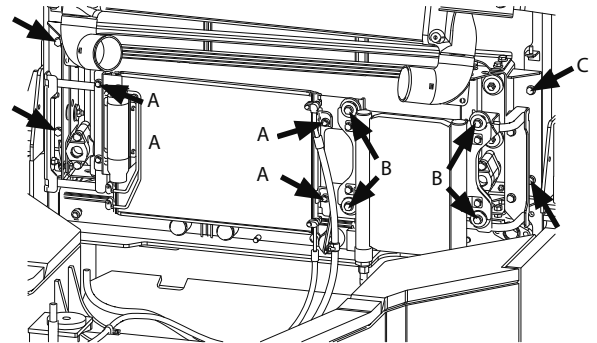
18. T/C cooler mounting bolt

	C
Bolt dia. mm	10
Quantity	2

MAINTENANCE

19. Cooling unit mounting bolt

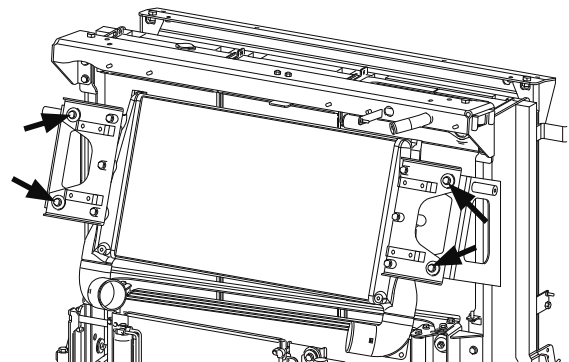
	A	B	C
Bolt dia. mm	8	12	12
Quantity	4	4	4



115Z7B-7-140-1

20. Air cooler mounting bolt

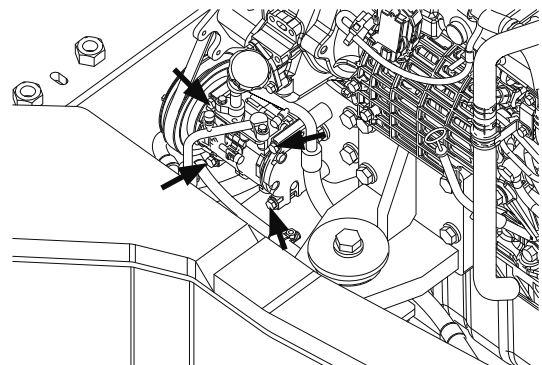
Bolt dia. mm	12
Quantity	4



115Z7B-7-140-2

21. Air conditioner compressor mounting bolt

Bolt dia. mm	8
Quantity	4



115Z7B-7-140-3

22. Cab cushion rubber mounting bolt

Bolt dia. mm	16
Quantity	4

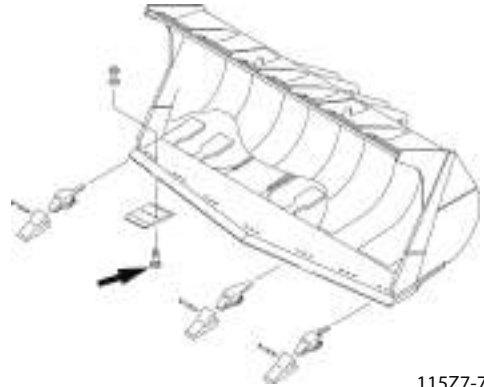


MNHE-07-066

MAINTENANCE

23. Space edge mounting bolt

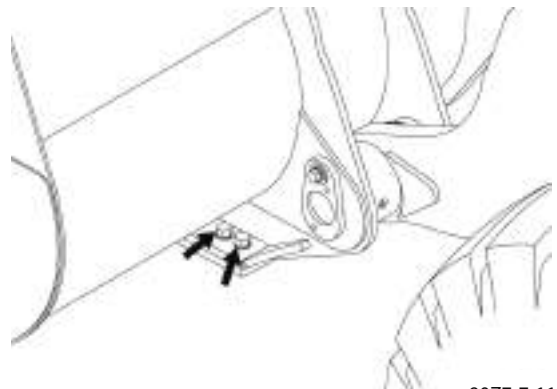
Bolt dia. in	1-1/4-7UNC
Quantity	21



115Z7-7-95-1a

24. Wear plate mounting bolt

Bolt dia. in	7/8-9UNC
Quantity	8



90Z7-7-113-2

25. Combination valve mounting bolt

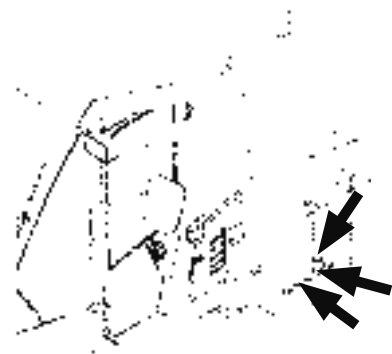
Bolt dia. in	10
Quantity	4



MNHE-07-031

26. ROPS mounting bolt

Bolt diameter	30
Quantity	22



MNHE-07-070

MAINTENANCE

M. Aftertreatment Device

- 1** Check and Clean Aftertreatment Device
--- as required

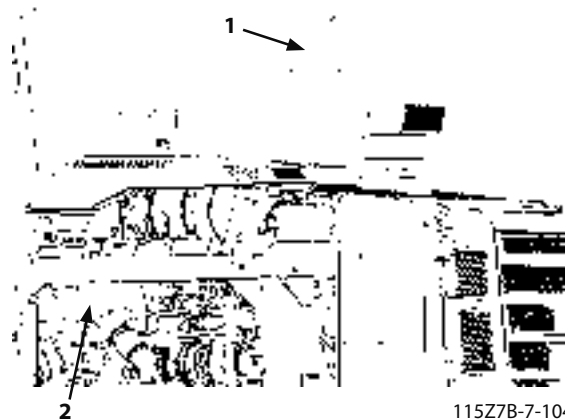
IMPORTANT:

- Check and clean flammable materials on the area around the Aftertreatment device.
- Condensation for dew may blow out from the exhaust outlet of the aftertreatment device and black deposition may be observed; it is not a malfunction.

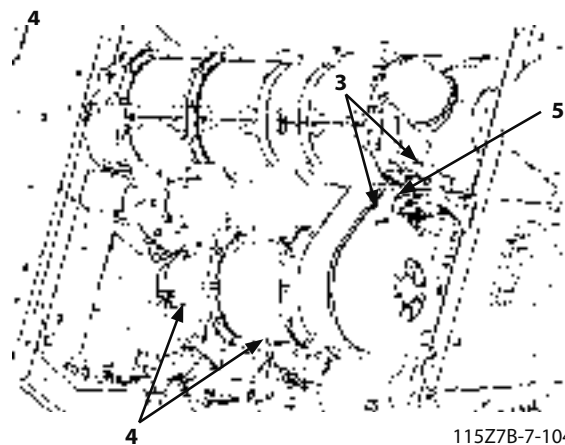
Do not disassemble the base machine support parts and sensors.

When the machine is operated in dusty areas, refer to the page 9-1 "Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions".

1. Open the left side cover.
2. Check exhaust pipe (1) and (2) for cracks.
Check the aftertreatment device units for loose or disconnection.
Check the lagging cover for breaks. Do not remove the lagging cover.
3. Check the connectors and harnesses of NOx sensors (3), temperature sensors (4) and dosing module (5) for abnormality.
4. Close the side cover.



115Z7B-7-104-1



115Z7B-7-104-2

MAINTENANCE

N. Urea SCR System

 **WARNING:** Fill specified DEF/AdBlue® into the DEF/AdBlue® tank.

If improper DEF/AdBlue® is refilled, fire or system failure may result. If improper liquid is refilled in the DEF tank, consult Authorized Dealer for check or repair.

Specified DEF/AdBlue®

Refill DEF/AdBlue® which meets Japanese Industrial Standards (JIS K2247), International Organization for Standardization (ISO 22241) or Deutsche Industrie Normen (DIN 70070). If improper liquid (diesel oil, kerosene or gasoline) is refilled in the DEF/AdBlue® tank, fire or system failure may result. The specified DEF/AdBlue® is colorless and odorless solution (urea 32.5%, water 67.5%) which begins to freeze at -11 °C. Store the DEF in -10 to 40°C environment.

In some cases, specified urea solution is referred to by one or more of these names:

- Aqueous Urea Solution 32
- AUS 32
- NOx Reduction Agent
- Catalyst Solution

 **NOTE:** AdBlue® is produced from suppliers which are licensed by the VDA (Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V).

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is certified by the API (American Petroleum Institute) Diesel Exhaust Fluid Certification Program.

 **CAUTION:**

- DEF/AdBlue® is colorless and harmless solution. It is harmless when contacting with the body, however, it may cause skin to become inflamed depending on the constitution of the individual. Flush DEF/AdBlue® with clean water when it contacts on the skin.
- If you swallow DEF/AdBlue® by mistake, drink 1 or 2 cups of water or milk and seek immediate medical attention.
- If DEF/AdBlue® is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.

MAINTENANCE

IMPORTANT:

- **Use dedicated container recommended by the business entity who is handling DEF/AdBlue® to store DEF/AdBlue®. Do not use general container, a container used for other purpose and contaminated container because the quality of DEF/AdBlue® deteriorates.**
- **The DEF/AdBlue® is non-combustible, however, move DEF/AdBlue® to a safe place when fire occurs.**
- **Wash out spilled DEF/AdBlue® with clean water.**
- **Seal the container and store it in a well ventilated place. If DEF/AdBlue® freezes, the quality does not change just after freezing.**
- **As long as sealed by an airtight stopper, unless water evaporates DEF/AdBlue® will not deteriorate within the guarantee period.**
- **Do not pour waste DEF/AdBlue® and its containers onto the ground, and do not allow waste to flow into rivers and/or lakes. When disposing DEF/AdBlue®, make sure to let authorized industrial waste disposal contractor dispose of it appropriately.**

MAINTENANCE

1 Check DEF/AdBlue® --- every 10 hours (daily)

Park the machine on a level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Check the DEF/AdBlue® level with DEF/AdBlue® gauge (1).

If necessary, stop the engine and add DEF/AdBlue®.

Refill DEF/AdBlue®

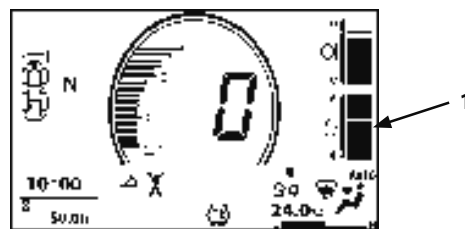
CAUTION:

- Refill DEF/AdBlue® which meets Japanese Industrial Standards (JIS K2247), International Organization for Standardization (ISO 22241) or Deutsche Industrie Normen (DIN 70070) in DEF/AdBlue® tank (2). If low density DEF/AdBlue® is refilled, alarm will be generated, restricting machine operation. Do not dilute DEF/AdBlue® with water.
- Wear safety equipment such as safety glasses or goggles, rubber gloves appropriate to the job. Wash DEF/AdBlue® with clean water when it contacts on the skin. If DEF/AdBlue® is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.

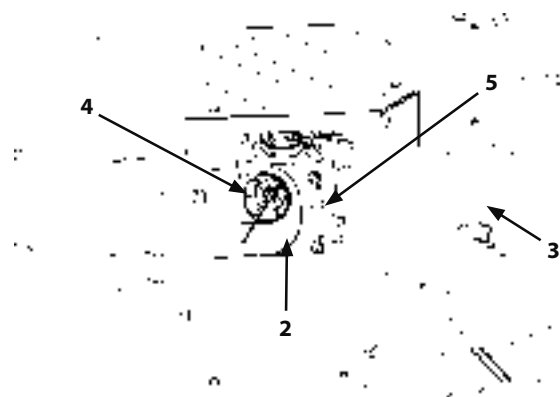
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. DEF/AdBlue® tank (2) is located in the cover at left rear of the machine. Open and secure cover the cover by turning stopper plate (3) downward.
3. Clean dust and mud around the filler port of DEF/AdBlue® tank with clean cloth.
4. Remove cap (4) from DEF/AdBlue® tank (2) and refill DEF/AdBlue®. Be sure to stop refilling before the "FULL" line (5).

IMPORTANT:

- Take care not to allow dust and/or water to enter the DEF/AdBlue® tank when refilling.
- If DEF/AdBlue® is filled above the "FULL" line, the system may be damaged during operation or tank (2) may be broken when frozen.



MNHG-01-103EN



115Z7B-7-106-2

MAINTENANCE

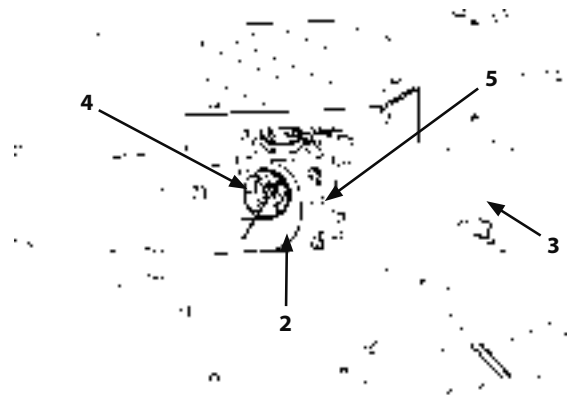
5. Install cap (4) after refilling DEF/AdBlue®. Turn stopper plate (3) to the original position. Close the tank cover.

IMPORTANT:

- **Do not get on top of DEF/AdBlue® tank (2) or sensors and piping on the tank. Failure to do so may damage the machine.**
- **White deposits may be observed when DEF/AdBlue® is dried naturally; it is normal. Wash out DEF deposits with soft water. Never use a high pressure washer.**

NOTE:

- Wipe spilled DEF/AdBlue® and wash spilled area with plenty of water.
- The sound of flowing water may be heard from the tank after the engine stops. It is the sound of returning DEF/AdBlue® from piping to the tank, not a malfunction.
- DEF/AdBlue® will freeze at low temperature, and deteriorate (ammonification) at high temperature. Store DEF/AdBlue® at temperature between -10 and 40°C.
- Use dedicated container (purchased container) to store or carry DEF/AdBlue®. Alternatively use a polyethylene resin tank, or stainless steel tank.



115Z7B-7-106-2

MAINTENANCE

Change DEF/AdBlue®

---As required

CAUTION: Wear safety equipment such as safety glasses or goggles, rubber gloves appropriate to the job. Wash DEF/AdBlue® with clean water when it contacts with the skin. If DEF/AdBlue® is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 15 minutes or longer and get emergency medical attention.

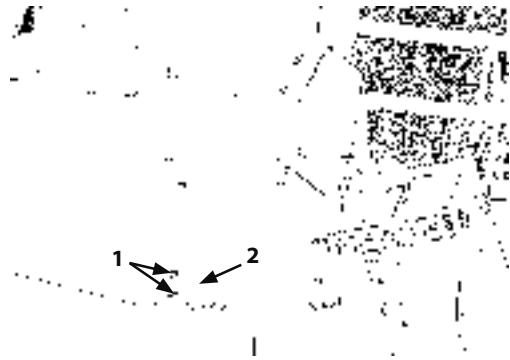
IMPORTANT: When contaminated or deteriorated DEF/AdBlue® is used, malfunction may result. Change DEF/AdBlue® periodically to keep cleanliness in the tank.

1. Remove bolts (1) and washers and remove cover (2).
2. Place a 60 liter or larger capacity container under drain plug (3).
3. Slowly loosen drain plug (3) to drain DEF/AdBlue®.
4. Tighten drain plug (3) after draining DEF/AdBlue®.

Wrench size: 13 mm

Tightening torque: 19.5 ± 4 N·m (2.0 ± 0.4 kgf·m)

5. Fix cover (2) with bolts (1) and washers.



115Z7B-7-108-1



115Z7B-7-108-2

MAINTENANCE

2 Replace DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module Main Filter --- every 4500 hours

A filter (4) is mounted in the DEF/AdBlue® supply module.
Periodically replace filter (4).

CAUTION: Use rubber glove and goggles or safety glasses for protection during operation. Wash DEF/AdBlue® with clean water when it contacts on the skin.

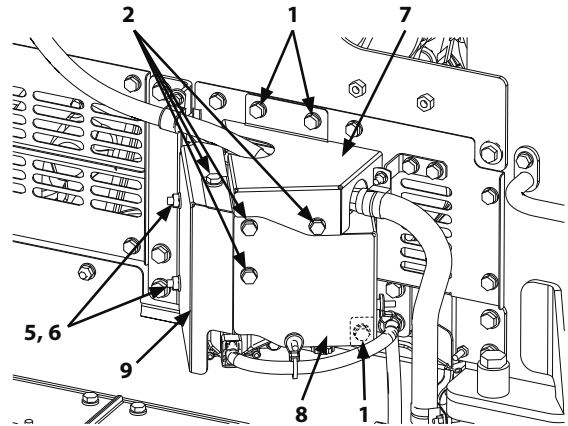
IMPORTANT:

- Take care not to allow dirt and/or water to enter the DEF/AdBlue® tank while replacing filter (4).
- Check for leaks around the mounting position after replacement.
- White deposition may be observed when DEF/AdBlue® is dried naturally; it is normal. Wash out DEF/AdBlue® deposition with clean water. Never use a high pressure washer.
- After stopping the engine, the DEF/AdBlue® pump keeps operating. Wait for 3 minutes or more after turning OFF the key switch until the pump stops running.

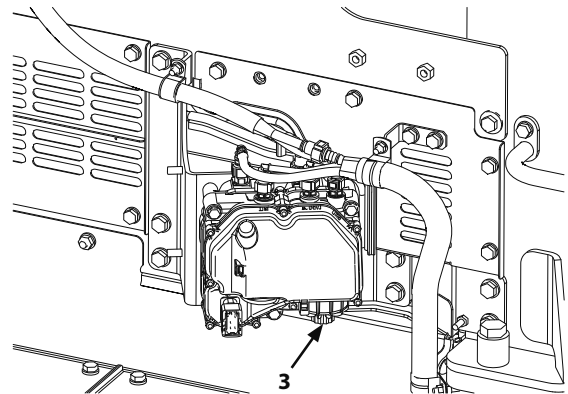
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/ maintenance work.

NOTE: The DEF/AdBlue® supply module is located on the frame left rear of the machine.

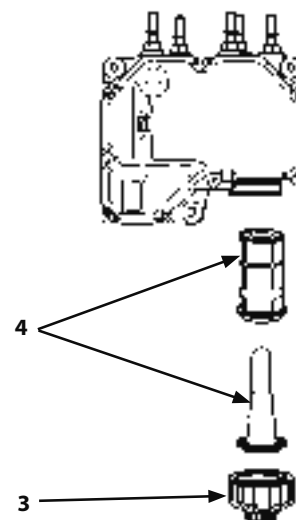
2. Remove bolts (1) (2), washers, nuts (5) (6) and covers (7) (8) (9).
3. Remove cap (3) from the DEF/AdBlue® supply module.
4. Pull out filter (4) inside the supply module. As it is tightly mounted, it can not be pulled by hands. Use tools such as a pliers. Replace filter (4) assembly when replacing filter (4) of DEF/AdBlue® supply module.
5. Install new filter (4), and tighten cap (3) with 20 ± 5 N·m torque.
6. Fix covers (7) (8) (9) with bolts (1) (2), washers and nuts (5) (6).



115Z7B-7-109-1



115Z7B-7-109-2



MDC1-07-044

MAINTENANCE

3 Check Dosing Module

--- every 4500 hours

Contact Authorized Dealer for checking.



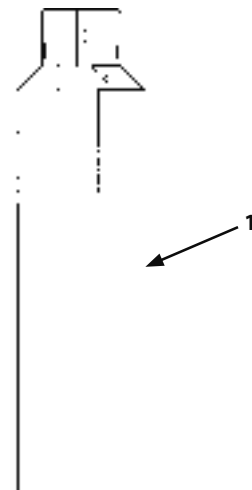
115Z7B-7-104-2

4 Replace DEF/AdBlue® Tank Inlet Filter

--- every 4500 hours, or when DEF/AdBlue® spills out while filling

IMPORTANT: Do not clean or reuse DEF/AdBlue® tank inlet filter (1).

Locate filter (1) inside the DEF/AdBlue® tank.
Replacement of filter (1) is required regularly or if DEF/AdBlue® spills out while pouring it from the tank inlet port. Contact Authorized Dealer for assistance.



MNHK-07-001

MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions

⚠ WARNING:

- **Before operating the machine in a river, check the riverbed conditions in advance.**
- **Avoid driving the machine into a river where the riverbed is steep and deep or the current is strong.**

Operating Conditions	Precautions for Maintenance	
Muddy Soil, Rainy or Snowy Weather	Before Operation	: Check tightness of plugs and all drain cocks.
	After Operation	: Clean the machine and check for cracks and damage. Check for loose or missing bolts and nuts. Lubricate all necessary parts without delay. If the machine should be submerged in water deeper than approximately 450 mm, water may get into the brake device (such as the parking brake), resulting in poor braking performance. Watch out when starting/stopping the machine.
Near the Ocean (or near chemical treatment place)	Before Operation	: Check tightness of plug and all drain cocks.
	After Operation	: Thoroughly clean the machine with fresh water to wash off salt. Service electrical equipment often to prevent corrosion.
Dusty Atmosphere	Air Cleaner	: Clean the element regularly at shorter service intervals.
	Radiator	: Clean the radiator core and every coolers core.
	Fuel System, Urea SCR System	: Clean the filter element and strainer regularly at shorter service intervals.
	Electrical Equipment	: Clean them regularly, in particular, the commutator surface of the alternator and starter.
	Engine, Aftertreatment Device	: Clean earlier than the normal interval to prevent dust from sticking and accumulating. Inhibit regeneration according to the machine operating condition.
Rocky Ground	Chassis	: Check for damage on tires, for loose, cracked, worn, and damaged bolts and nuts.
	Front Attachment	: Standard attachment may be damaged when digging rocky ground. Reinforce the bucket before using it, or use a heavy duty bucket. Consult Authorized Dealer.
Freezing Weather	Fuel	: Use high quality fuel suitable for low temperature. Check the fuel tank breather pipe freezing.
	Lubricant	: Use high quality low viscosity hydraulic oil and engine oil.
	Engine Coolant	: Be sure to use antifreeze.
	Battery	: Fully charge the batteries regularly at shorter service intervals. If not charged fully, electrolyte may freeze.
	Tires and Frames	: Keep tires and frames clean. Park the machine on a hard surface to prevent the tires from freezing to the ground.
	DEF/AdBlue®	: May become frozen but the machine can be operated normally.
When handling old paper and/or industrial waste	Engine compartment	: Remove old paper and/or waste accumulated around the radiator and in the engine compartment, possibly causing overheating or fires of the machine if not removed.
	Air cleaner	: Clean the element at shorter intervals.
	Fuel system	: Clean and replace the elements and the filters at shorter intervals.
	Loader frame	: Remove the accumulated paper and/or waste from the surroundings around the loader frame and the attachment. Failure to do so may cause damage of the machine.
	Radiator	: Wash as frequently as possible to prevent corrosion due to chemical materials.

IMPORTANT: If material to be handled is a substance that causes corrosion such as salt or chemical, consult Authorized Dealer. Special modification or treatment may be needed for the machine. If the machine continues to be used, malfunction may occur due to corrosion.
Consult Authorized Dealer when the machine is operated under special condition(s).

MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Precautions for Maintenance During Cold Weather Season

Before the atmospheric temperature becomes down below -0 °C, practice the following points.

- Water and oil in the machine will freeze.
- Road surfaces will freeze so that tires may slip.

Keeping the above points in mind, follow the advices below:

1. Refill fluids such as water and lubricants prior to operation (except fuel).
2. Mix LLC in the radiator (coolant). When this machine is shipped from the factory, LLC (long life coolant) is supplied. Therefore, this machine can operate normally without any problem.
3. Change the engine oil in the engine crankcase to cold weather type oil.
4. Use fuel (diesel fuel) of an antifreeze type. To prevent condensation of air into dew on the wall in the fuel tank, fully refill the fuel tank with an antifreeze type diesel fuel.
5. If the electrolyte in the battery case freezes, damage to the battery case may result. Maintain the batteries at fully charged condition. After completing work, turn all lights OFF. Perform cooling operation for five minutes.

Or by other way, dismount the batteries and store them in a warm indoor place. When it is possible to measure and adjust the specific gravity of the electrolyte, increase the specific gravity of the electrolyte up to 1.280. Do not increase more than 1.280.

6. Use anti-freeze type washer fluid.

After taking the measures as recommended above, start operation of the machine.

MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

 **DANGER:** Sufficiently ventilate when carrying out warming up operation indoors. Failure to do so may cause intoxication by exhaust gas, possibly resulting in personal death accident.

7. After preheating the engine, start the engine. Sufficiently perform warm-up operation.
8. After warming up the engine, warm up the front attachment system. Slowly operate the control levers to move the cylinders full stroke several times.
9. Road surfaces covered with snow, especially when snow has been compacted, will become frozen. Use tire chains on four wheels.
10. Take anti-freeze measures after completing operation.
 - Cover the keyhole by sticking a tape on.
 - Rubber parts such as wiper may freeze. Keep other parts away from the rubber parts.
 - Remove packed snow from around the undercarriage and inside the machine with a bar or brush.
 - In case it is impossible to store the machine indoors, park the machine on a level dry surface and cover overall the machine with a large machine cover.
 - Keep 80% of tank capacity when storing DEF/AdBlue®. The DEF/AdBlue® tank maybe broken if frozen.

 **NOTE:** DEF/AdBlue® starts freezing at -10°C. Freezing does not affect its performance once thawed.

STORAGE

Storing the Machine

WARNING: If it is unavoidable to perform the lubrication operation indoors, open windows and doors to maintain good air ventilation to prevent asphyxiation. Lubricant property will deteriorate even if the machine is kept stored. Check all lubricants before operating the machine after being stored.

Apply the parking brake while storing.

If the machine is to be stored for more than one month, observe the following precautions so that its function will not be impaired during storage.

PRECAUTION ITEMS FOR LONG TERM STORAGE

Item	Contents of Work
Wash Machine	Sufficiently wash the machine to remove stuck mud and/or dust.
Supply Oil and Grease	Check for low level/contamination of lubricating oil. Refill or change as necessary. Supply grease to greased parts. Apply a thin coat of oil to parts susceptible to rust. (i.e. cylinder rods etc.) Fill up fuel to prevent rust in the fuel tank.
Battery	Remove and fully recharge the battery, then store it. If the machine is equipped with the battery disconnect switch, turn the disconnect switch OFF.
Coolant	Supply a rust preventive agent without fail. If there is a possibility of freezing, also supply an antifreeze solution or fully drain the coolant. In this case, be sure to attach a "No Water in Radiator" sign in the operator's cab. If long-life coolant is used, the above measures are not necessary. Thoroughly wash the radiator by water and then dry it.
DEF/AdBlue®	DEF/AdBlue® may become ammonia when storing it under 40°C for one month or longer. Change DEF/AdBlue® if ammonia odor is observed when opening the tank cap.
Prevention of Dust and Moisture	Store the machine in a relatively dry garage and cover it.
Tools	Inspect and repair, then store.
Lubrication Operation No-load Operation at a Slow Speed for Several Minutes	If the oil films of the parts are broken and parts are rusted, they will be worn abnormally when operated the next time. To prevent this, operate the machine at least once a month to lubricate the parts. At this time, check the coolant and lubrication oil levels. Charge the batteries.

IMPORTANT: If the machine is operated without performing lubrication operation, damage to hydraulic equipment may result due to insufficient lubrication.

NOTE: Lubrication operation means that a series of operations such as drive, and loader front operation are repeated a few times after performing warm-up.

Before operating the loader front attachment and steering wheel, remove rust-prevention oil coated on the hydraulic cylinder rods.

STORAGE

Taking the Machine Out of Storage

 **WARNING:** If it is unavoidable to perform the lubrication operation indoors, open windows and doors to maintain good air ventilation to prevent asphyxiation. Lubricant property will deteriorate even if the machine is kept stored. Check all lubricants before operating the machine after being stored.

Apply the parking brake while storing.

IMPORTANT:

- Lubricants will deteriorate during storage of the machine.
- Thoroughly check lubricants and adequately perform lubrication operation before resuming operation of the machine. Avoid quick operation. Failure to do so may cause damage to the engine, hydraulic equipment, transmission, axle, etc. due to insufficient lubrication.
- If the lubrication operation is not performed for more than three months, start the engine and run the engine at slow idle speed for three minutes. Then carry out lubrication operation for cylinders. If you suddenly started the engine or operated the cylinders without following the procedure above, it may cause damage to the machine such as engine seizure.
- When turning the battery disconnect switch from OFF to ON, preset radio station and the clock may be reset. Set them again.

STORAGE

1. Remove covers.
2. Remove grease from the cylinder rods if coated.
3. Fill the fuel tank. Bleed air from the fuel system. Check all fluid levels.
4. Adjust alternator and fan belt tension.
5. Check the oil level. Add oil as needed.
6. Install the battery.
If the machine is equipped with the battery disconnect switch, turn the disconnect switch ON.
7. Start the engine. Run the engine at half speed for several minutes before full load operation.
8. Repeat the process several times.
9. Stop the engine. Check each device for oil leaks.
10. Replace the fuel filter and engine oil filter with new one as needed. Change engine oil.
11. Check clamps of the suction hoses, air cleaner hoses and radiator hoses. Retighten them as needed.

Before operating the machine, thoroughly perform "Daily Check before Starting the Engine" on page 3-1. Sufficiently perform the warm up operation.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Troubleshooting

If any abnormality is found on the machine, immediately take action to solve it. Find out the cause of the abnormality to prevent the recurrence of malfunction.

If the cause of malfunction is unknown or for inquiry on solution item with mark "*" on the list below, consult Authorized Dealer.

Do NOT attempt to adjust or disassemble hydraulics, electrical and electronic parts.

Engine

Consult Authorized Dealer for the engine troubleshooting.

Engine Auxiliaries

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Batteries will not charge.	Broken battery separator	Replace
	Faulty regulator	* Adjust, Replace
	Faulty ground line	* Repair
	Faulty alternator	* Repair, Replace
Batteries discharge quickly after being charged.	Shorted cable	* Repair, Replace
	Shorted battery separator	* Repair, Replace
	Increased sediment in battery	* Replace
Coolant temperature is too high.	Low coolant level	Refill
	Abnormal fan rotation	* Repair, Adjust
	Damaged rubber hose	* Replace
	Faulty thermostat	* Replace
	Faulty coolant temperature gauge	* Replace
	Faulty radiator cap seal	Replace
	Radiator fin plugged	Clean

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Engine does not Start.

Symptom	Cause	Solution
The starter does not turn.	Reduced battery voltage	Charge the batteries. Replace.
	High resistance in the starter circuit	* Clean and/or retighten the battery terminals and starter terminals
	Faulty key switch	* Replace
	Damaged wire harness	* Repair, Replace
	Faulty battery relay	* Replace
	Blown slow blow fuse link	* Replace
	The forward/reverse selector lever is in either the forward or reverse position.	Return to neutral.
	Faulty starter	* Repair, Replace
	Battery disconnect switch is turned OFF.	Turn the switch ON.
Although the starter turns, the engine does not start.	Use of poor quality fuel, insufficient fuel, lack of fuel	Change fuel. Refill tank with good quality fuel.
	Faulty glow plug	* Replace glow plug
	Air mixed in the fuel supply line	Bleed air
	Faulty injection pump or nozzle	* Repair, Replace
	Reduced compression pressure	* Adjust
Engine speed does not increase.	During fan reversing operation, the F, R, or parking switch was deactivated or the Fan reverse rotation switch was turned OFF.	Rotate the fan in normal direction. Refer to the fan reverse rotation switch on page 1-102.
	DEF/AdBlue® tank is empty.	Supply DEF/AdBlue®.
	The accelerator pedal function is abnormal.	Replace the accelerator pedal or parts.
Although the engine cranks, running speed is low and easy to stall.	Deteriorated engine oil	Change engine oil
	Contaminated injection nozzle	* Replace
	Clogged fuel filter	Replace
	Clogged fuel pre-filter	Replace
	Clogged feed pump strainer	Clean
	Air mixed in the fuel supply line	Bleed air
	Poor fuel quality	Replace

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

Control Lever

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Hard to move	Rusted joint	* Lubricate, Repair
	Worn pusher	* Replace
Does not move smoothly	Worn pusher	* Repair, Replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
Does not return to neutral	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
The lever is tilted in the neutral position due to increase in play	Worn joint	* Repair, Replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
The lever is not held with magnetic detent.	Faulty magnetic solenoid	* Replace
	Faulty sensor	* Replace

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Hydraulic System

After the machine has been kept stored for a long time, air in the oil may be separated and accumulate in the upper section in the cylinder, causing slow response time in operation or reducing cylinder power.

In case these symptoms appear, repeatedly operate all actuators several times.

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Loader front function is inoperable. (Hydraulic pump noise level increases)	Faulty hydraulic pump	* Repair, Replace
	Lack of hydraulic oil	Refill
	Broken suction pipe and/or hose	* Repair, Replace
All actuators have no power.	Malfunction due to worn hydraulic pump	* Replace
	Decrease in set pressure of main relief valve in control valve	* Adjust
	Lack of hydraulic oil	Refill
	Trapped foreign matter in hydraulic oil suction filter	Clean
	Aeration in suction side	Retighten
Only one actuator is inoperable.	Broken control valve spool	* Replace
	Trapped foreign matter in valve spool	* Repair, Replace
	Broken pipe and/or hose	* Repair, Replace
	Loose pipe line joint	Retighten
	Broken O-ring at pipe line joint	* Replace
	Broken actuator	* Repair, Replace
Only one cylinder is inoperable or has no power.	Broken oil seal in cylinder	* Repair, Replace
	Oil leak due to damage to cylinder rod	* Repair, Replace
Oil overheats	Contaminated oil cooler	Clean
	Faulty fan motor and pump	* Repair, Replace
	Abnormal fan rotation	* Repair, Adjust
Oil leak from low pressure hose	Loose clamp	Retighten
	Faulty suction pipe	* Repair, Replace

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Drive Function

Steering System

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Steering is slow to operate.	Faulty hydraulic pump	* Repair, Replace
	Faulty steering device	* Repair, Replace
	Relief valve set pressure reduction	* Adjust
	Faulty steering column	* Repair, Replace
Steering turns in unexpected direction.	Faulty steering device	* Repair, Replace

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

Accelerator Pedal

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Heavy to operate	Rusted joint	* Lubricate, Repair
Accelerator pedal play is excessive.	Worn joint	* Repair, replace

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

Parking Brake

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Parking brake is dragging.	Oil leak due to worn parking brake piston D-ring	* Repair, Replace
	Faulty disk brake	* Repair, Replace
Parking brake does not work properly	Worn or damaged brake spring in brake piston	* Replace
	Faulty disk brake	* Replace
	Seized piston, worn disk	* Repair, Replace

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Service Brake

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Service brake does not work properly	Malfunction of brake valve	* Repair, Replace
	Oil leak from brake line, Air mixing	* Repair, Bleed air
Brake is dragged	Malfunction of brake valve	* Repair, Replace
	Faulty brake pedal	* Repair, Replace
Lack of brake fluid (hydraulic oil)	Oil leak from brake line and/or hose connector	* Retighten or repair
	Oil leak due to brake piston seal (inside axle)	* Repair, Replace

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

Transmission

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Transmission is noisy.	Lack or deterioration of gear oil	Refill, change
	Worn inner parts in transmission	* Repair, Replace
	Broken gear or bearing	* Repair, Replace
Oil overheats	Abnormal fan rotation	* Repair, Adjust

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

Propeller Shaft

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Propeller shaft vibrates.	Bent propeller shaft	* Repair, Replace
	Loosened parts, Loss of balance	* Retighten, Adjust
Propeller shaft is noisy	Excessively worn spline	* Replace
	Worn or seized spider bearing	* Replace
	Loosened parts	Retighten
	Insufficient greasing	Grease

* Consult Authorized Dealer.

Front Axle, Rear Axle

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Front and/or rear axle is noisy	Worn or broken gears	* Replace
	Lack or deterioration of gear oil	Refill, Replace
	Worn bearings, Excess play	* Replace
	Excess play on shaft spline	* Repair, Replace
Front and/or rear axle does not transmit power.	Broken axle	* Replace
	Broken gears	* Replace

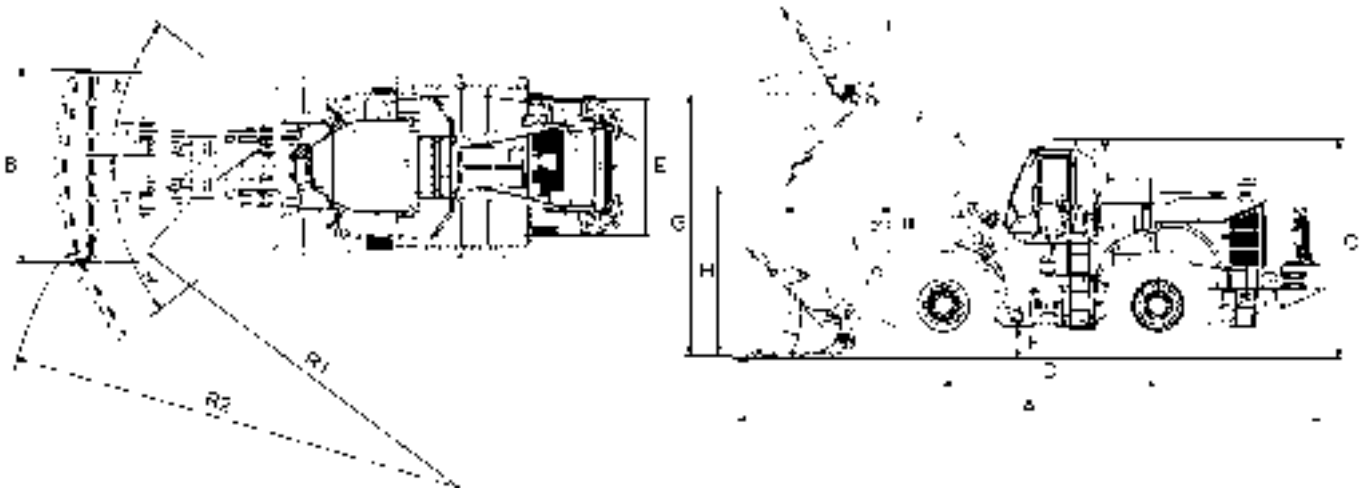
* Consult Authorized Dealer.

Others

If there is a problem with the machine, a noise, excessive vibration, and abnormal smells may occurs.
Always be aware of the machine conditions during operation.

SPECIFICATIONS

Specifications



115Z7B-AX-RVT

Bucket Capacity: heaped	m ³	6.2
Operating Weight	kg	47470
Tipping Load (Full Turn)	kg	27730
Engine		ISUZU 6WG1
A: Overall Length	mm	11320
B: Overall Width (Bucket)	mm	3770
C: Overall Height	mm	4240
D: Wheel Base	mm	4150
E: Tread	mm	2650
F: Ground Clearance	mm	510
G: Bucket Hinge Height	mm	5040
H: Dumping Clearance (45 °)	mm	3290
I: Dumping Reach (45 °)	mm	1990
R1: Minimum Rotation Radius	mm	7540
R2: Minimum Rotation Radius	mm	8870
Travel Speed Forward/Reverse	km/h	35.1/24.6
Transmission Speeds (F/R)	-	4/3
Articulation Angle (Left/Right) deg	(°)	37
Tire Size	-	35/65R33 (L5) ★

 **NOTE:** These specifications are subject to change without notice.

OTHER ATTACHMENTS

Axle Oil Cooler

Axle Oil Cooler (Optional)

MAINTENANCE

	Parts	Qty	Interval (hours)					
			10	100	250	500	1000	2000
1.	Axle Oil	Level check	-					
2.	Axle Oil	Change (Front)	120.5 L					
		Change (Rear)	120 L					
3.	Axle Oil Filter	Replace	2			★		
4.	Clean Axle Oil Cooler Fins	-	As required					

★: Replace the filter every 500 hours or every 3 months whichever comes first.

Axle Oil

Kind of Oil	Gear oil
Application	Axle
Manufacturer	
Hitachi Construction Machinery	*High Gear Oil



NOTE: The machine shipped from factory is filled with gear oil marked with *. Be sure to use the gear oil listed above.

If other oil is used, you may hear abnormal noise, which may lead to damage on the machine.

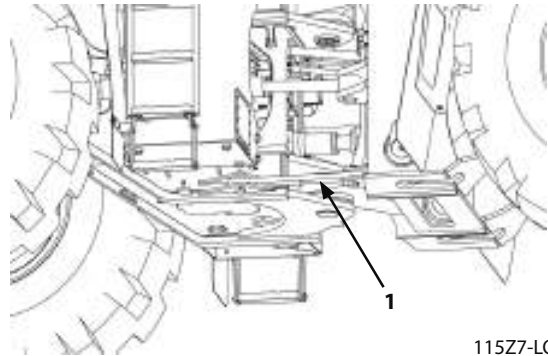
OTHER ATTACHMENTS

Axle Oil Cooler

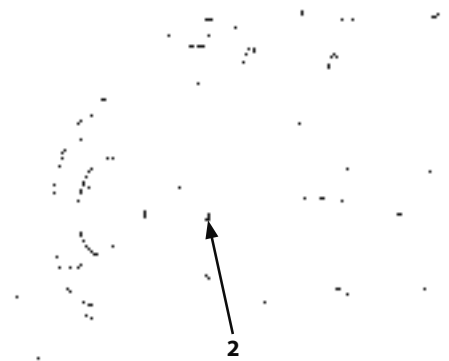
1 Check Axle Oil Level

--- every 250 hours

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work. Run the engine at slow idle speed for several minutes, then stop the engine.
2. Install articulation lock bar (1) to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Clean the vicinity of oil level plug (2).
4. Remove oil level plug (2).
5. If the oil level is lower than plug (2), add the specified oil through level plug (2) hole.

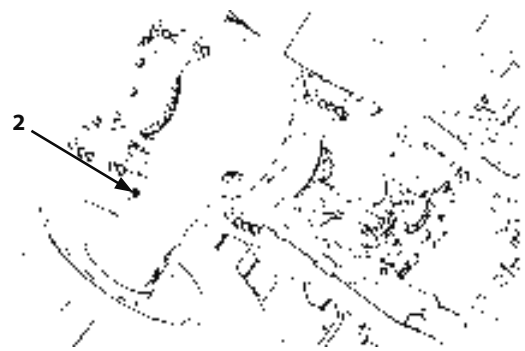


115Z7-LOCK



Front Axle

MNHE-07-024



Rear Axle

MNHE-07-025

OTHER ATTACHMENTS

Axle Oil Cooler

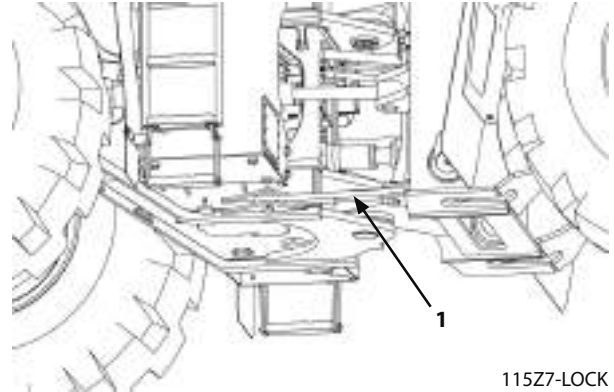
2 Change Axle Oil --- every 2000 hours

WARNING: Take care about the following points.

- Starting repair work immediately after operation may cause burns. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.
- Lock the front and rear frames with the articulation lock bar.

IMPORTANT: Do not use axle oils other than those listed in the "Brand Names of Recommended Axle Oil".

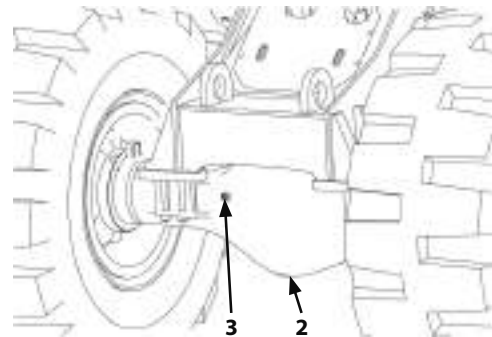
NOTE: Refer to page 7-43 for the details.



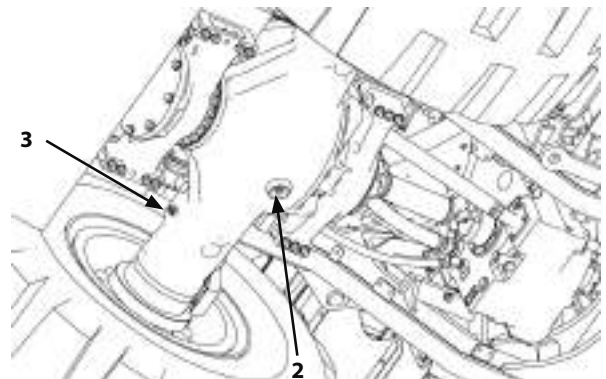
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar (1) to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.
3. Clean the areas around drain plug (2) and oil level plug (3).
4. Arrange a container of 120 liter capacity to receive the drain oil.
5. Remove drain plug (2) to drain the oil.
6. Securely tighten drain plug (2).
7. Refill the specified amount of oil through oil level plug (3) hole.

Front axle : 115 liters

Rear axle : 115 liters



115Z7-7-34-1



115Z7-7-38-3

8. Securely tighten oil level plug (3).
9. Run the engine at slow idle speed for several minutes.
10. Refill the specified amount of axle oil through oil level plug (3) hole.

Front axle : 5.5 liters

Rear axle : 5.0 liters

11. Securely tighten oil level plug (3).
12. Run the engine at slow idle speed for several minutes.
13. Recheck the oil level.

OTHER ATTACHMENTS

Axle Oil Cooler

3

Replace Axle Oil Filter

--- every 500 hours or every 3 month whichever comes first.



WARNING: Take care about the following points.

- Starting repair work immediately after operation may cause burns. Wait for oil to cool before starting work.
- Lock the front and rear frames with the articulation lock bar.

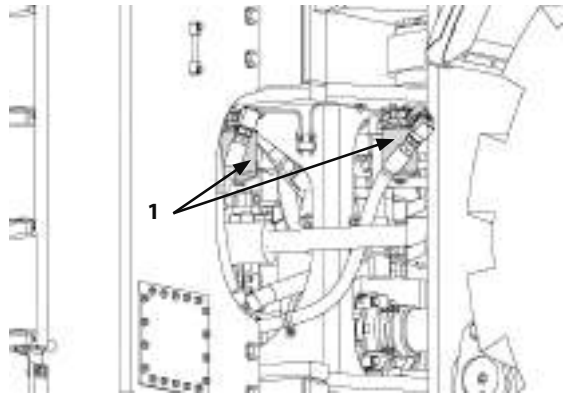
IMPORTANT: Do not use axle oils other than those listed in the "Brand Names of Recommended Axle Oil".

Replace Axle Oil Filter

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work.
2. Install articulation lock bar to the front and rear of the frame by following the procedures described on page 7-10.

IMPORTANT: Be sure to replace two oil filters (1) at the same time.

3. Using a filter wrench, turn the oil filter cartridge counterclockwise to remove it.
4. Clean the filter gasket seating surface.
5. Fill new axle oil in the new cartridge carefully without spilling it. Apply thin film of clean oil on the gasket of cartridge.
6. Turn filter cartridge (1) clockwise by hand until it makes in contact with the gasket. Do not damage the gasket when installing the filter cartridge.
7. Carefully tighten oil filter (1) for 3/4 turn by using a filter wrench. Do not overtighten it.
8. Run the engine at slow idle speed for 5 minutes. Check no oil is leaking from the filter.
9. Check the oil level. (Refer to the descriptions for "Check Axle Oil Level" on page 13-2)



115Z7B-7-38-1

OTHER ATTACHMENTS

Axle Oil Cooler

4

Clean Axle Oil Cooler Fins

--- as required

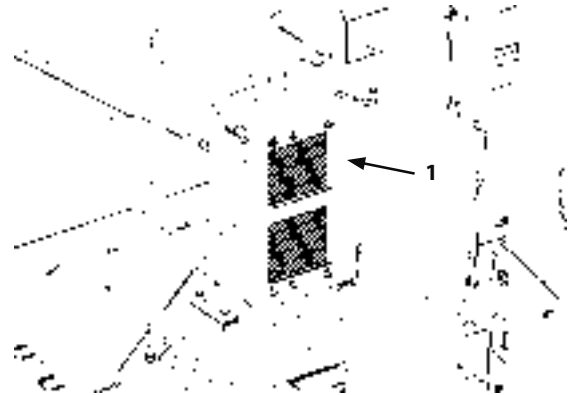
1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-7 for preparation of inspection/maintenance work. Stop the engine.

IMPORTANT: High pressure air or water may damage oil cooler fins.

When used for cleaning purposes, the pressure of compressed air should be at 196 kPa (28 psi) or less. When using high-pressure water, keep the nozzle a distance of at least 500 mm away from the core surface, applying the water jet perpendicular to the core.

Move nozzle from side to side; not up and down.

2. Blow off mud, dirt, or clogging debris from the axle oil cooler (1) fins with compressed air. Use a pressure washer to remove harder debris.
3. Reverse the direction to flush all debris from the oil cooler fins.



115Z7B-7-38-2

INDEX

2nd/3rd Speed Limit Switch.....	1-101	Beware of Exhaust Fumes.....	S-32
A		Bleed Air from the Fuel System	7-71
Accelerator Pedal.....	1-89	Bleed Air from the Hydraulic Circuit	7-51
Acting Time Setting	1-54	Bluetooth® Input.....	1-149, 1-175
Adjust Operator's Seat.....	S-6	Brake Oil Low Pressure Indicator (Red).....	1-13
Adjusting Operator's Seat (Air Suspension Type Seat).....	1-119	Brake Pedal	1-89
Adjustment.....	7-105	Brake System.....	7-99
Adjustment of Bucket Angle Switch.....	5-6	BREAK-IN.....	2-1
Adjustment of Bucket Auto Leveler.....	5-4	Break-in Period for New Machine	2-1
Adjustment of Dual Lift Arm Auto Leveler	5-8	Brightness Adjustment.....	1-42
Aftertreatment Device.....	2, 1-4, 7-133	C	
Aftertreatment Device Manual Regeneration	5-11	Cab Door.....	1-129
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration	1-34	Cab Features.....	1-8
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Inhibited	1-57	Cab Heater Operation.....	1-115
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Status Display	1-34	Caution with an Overhead Obstacle	S-19
Aftertreatment Device Regeneration Switch.....	1-104	Change Axle Oil.....	7-43, 13-3
Air Bleeding by Priming Pump	7-71	Change Coolant	7-86
Air Cleaner	7-81	Change Engine Oil	7-32
Air Conditioner	7-110	Change Hydraulic Oil/Clean Hydraulic Oil Tank	7-50
Air Filter Restriction Indicator (Red).....	1-16	Change Transmission Oil	7-37
Alarm Occurrence Screen.....	1-27	Change Transmission Oil Filter	7-37
Armrest Adjust Handle	1-98	Changing Forward/Reverse Drive Direction.....	4-8
Articulation Stopper (Lock Bar)	S-40	Check Accelerator Pedal Operation, and Exhaust Gas Color and Noise	7-119
Articulation Stopper (Lock Bar)	1-133	Check Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage	7-103
Ash Tray.....	1-110	Check After Starting.....	3-9
AUTO	1-102, 1-105	Check Air Conditioner.....	7-112
Auto Air Conditioner	1-111	Check Air Conditioner Compressor Drive Belt.....	7-113
Auto Brake.....	4-20	Check Air Conditioner Condenser.....	7-113
Auto Shut-Down.....	1-53, 5-9	Check Air Conditioner Piping.....	7-112
Auto Shut-Down: ON/OFF.....	1-53	Check Air Pressure.....	7-105
Automatic Regeneration	1-6	Check and Adjust Valve Clearance	7-122
Automatic regeneration (Auto-regeneration)	1-35	Check and Clean Aftertreatment Device	7-133
Avoid Accidents from Backing Up and Turning	S-16	Check and Clean EGR Cooler	7-123
Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids	S-33	Check and Clean EGR Valve	7-123
Avoid frequent bucket shaking.....	5-15	Check and Clean Starter and Alternator	7-122
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines	S-32	Check and Replace Seat and Seat Belt.....	7-117
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids.....	S-29	Check Around Axle and for Oil Leaks	7-46
Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents	S-15	Check Axle Oil Level	7-41, 13-2
Avoid Operation with Loads on Only One Side.....	5-15	Check Before Starting.....	3-3
Avoid Overloading.....	5-15	Check Brake Disks (Service and Parking)	7-104
Avoid Positioning Bucket or Attachment Over Anyone.....	S-17	Check Bucket Teeth and Cutting Edge	7-116
Avoid Power Lines.....	S-19	Check Compressor and Pulley	7-115
Avoid Rapid Steering Changes and/or Sudden Braking.....	5-15	Check Coolant Level.....	7-83
Avoid Tipping.....	S-17	Check DEF/AdBlue®	7-136
Axle Oil Cooler (Optional).....	13-1	Check Dosing Module	7-140
B		Check Electrical Harnesses and Fuses.....	7-97
Basic Operation.....	1-142, 1-168	Check Engine Compression Pressure.....	7-122
Basic Screen.....	1-21	Check Engine Oil Level	7-31
Batteries.....	7-90	Check Fan Drive Belt.....	7-84
Battery Disconnect Switch.....	1-131	Check Fuel Hoses.....	7-80
Before Operation.....	5-14	Check Fuel Injector	7-123
Beware of Asbestos and Silicon Dust and Other Contamination.....	S-34	Check Fuel Level	7-66
		Check Gas Pressure in Accumulator	7-104
		Check Gas Pressure in Ride Control Accumulator	7-59

INDEX

Check Gas Pressure in Steering Accumulator	7-60	Cool Head/Warm Feet Operation	1-117
Check Horn and Reverse Buzzer	7-96	Coolant.....	7-82
Check Hoses and Lines.....	7-61	Coolant Temperature Gauge	1-17
Check Hydraulic Oil Level.....	7-49	Cooling Operation	1-116
Check Monitor Functions and All Other Instrument Operation.....	7-94	Cooling System	7-82
Check Oil Level (Hub Reduction Device)	7-42	Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures.....	7-1
Check Parking Brake Force.....	7-100	D	
Check Pilot Circuit Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage.....	7-58	Date Adjustment	1-49
Check Play Amount in Joystick Steering Movement.....	7-118	Date and Time.....	1-47
Check Rearview Mirror and Inside Rearview Mirror	7-120	DEF/AdBlue® Level Alarm.....	1-32
Check Refrigerant.....	7-114	DEF/SCR System Alarm.....	1-32
Check Ride Control Accumulator Function, Gas Leakage, Looseness, and Damage.....	7-59	Default Setting	1-20
Check Right and Left Brake Interlocking Performance...	7-99	Defroster Operation	1-117
Check ROPS cab, Resin Cab Roof, and Roof Mounting Bolts	7-117	Dig with Caution.....	S-18
Check Sound Absorbing Mat Around Engine.....	7-121	Digital Radio Unit (Built-in Microphone)	1-140
Check Steps and Handrails for Damage and Looseness	7-120	Digital Radio Unit (External Microphone)	1-166
Check the Hour Meter Regularly.....	7-3	Discharge Warning Indicator (Red)	1-14
Check Tire for Damage	7-106	Display Item Selection.....	1-69
Check Transmission Oil Level	7-36	Display Mode Setting.....	1-51
Check Turbocharger	7-123	Displaying Basic Screen	1-22
Check Water Separator	7-78	Dispose of Waste Properly.....	S-36
Check Wheel Bolt Torque.....	7-106	Door Lock Knob	1-130
Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level.....	7-117	Door Open/Close Lever.....	1-130
Check Work Lights.....	7-95	Dozing	5-22
Cigar Lighter (24 V DC Electrical Outlet)	1-110	Drain Fuel Filter.....	7-69
Clean Axle Oil Cooler Fins.....	13-5	Drain Water and Sediment from Fuel Tank.....	7-68
Clean Engine Compartment and Hood.....	7-121	Drive Machine Safely (Work Site).....	S-13
Clean Fuel Pump Strainer	7-77	Drive on Snow Safely	S-14
Clean Pilot Oil Filter (Brake Circuit)	7-53	Drive Safely	S-12
Clean Pilot Oil Filter (Steering Circuit).....	7-54	Drive Safely with Bucket Loaded	S-14
Clean Radiator and Oil Cooler and Other Cooling System.....	7-89	Drive Speed Change (Manual Shift)	4-8
Clean Suction Filter.....	7-52	Driving the Machine.....	4-1
Clean Suction Strainer	7-37	DSS (Down Shift Switch).....	1-108
Clean Transmission and Torque Converter Air Breathers	7-40	Dual Lift Arm Auto-Leveler	1-39
Clean/Replace Air Conditioner Circulation/ Fresh Air.....	7-110	E	
Cleaning of Rear View Camera Lens	7-121	Electric Power Output.....	1-120
Clearance Light Indicator (Green)	1-18	Electrical System.....	7-90
Clutch Cut Off Brake.....	1-89	Emergency Evacuation Hammer	1-127
Clutch Cut Position Switch.....	1-99, 5-3	Emergency Steering.....	4-10
Coat/Hat Hook.....	1-127	Emergency Steering Operation Check Switch.....	1-104
Cold Weather Warm Up.....	3-13	Emergency Stop and Restart of Operation.....	4-11
Communication Error Indicator (Yellow)	1-14	Emergency Stopping	4-19
COMPONENTS NAME.....	1-1	Engine.....	7-31
Components Name	1-112, 1-119	Engine Oil Low Pressure Indicator (Red)	1-15
Control Lever Lock	5-2	Engine Warning Indicator (Red)	1-15
Control Lever Lock Indicator (Red).....	1-18	Ensure Safety Before Leaving or Standing up from Operator's Seat	S-7
Control Panel.....	1-140, 1-146, 1-166, 1-172	Ensure Safety When Operating on Road Shoulders	5-14
Controller Part Name and Function.....	1-113	Equipment of Head Guard, ROPS, FOPS.....	S-11
		Evacuating in Case of Fire.....	S-31
		Excavation	5-16
		F	
		Fan Reverse Rotation Switch	1-102
		Fasten Your Seat Belt	S-7
		Fastening Machine for Transporting	6-4

INDEX

Feature	1-111	Lifting Machine	6-10
Filters.....	7-110	Lifting Wheel Loader	5-23
FM/AM Radio Operation.....	1-146, 1-172	Light Switch.....	1-92
Follow Safety Instructions.....	S-2	List of Consumable Parts	7-24
For Rapid Cooling.....	1-118	Loading	5-19
Forward/Reverse Switch	1-90	Loading / Unloading on Trailer.....	6-2
Front Console.....	1-9	Loading Control Lever Lock Switch	1-98
Front Console Switches, Pedals, and Joystick Steering... 1-84		Loading Multi-Function Joystick Lever.....	1-96
Front/Rear Wiper Switch	1-94	Lock Frames.....	7-10
Fuel Consumption.....	1-74	Lockup Setting	1-61
Fuel Gauge.....	1-17	Low Steering Oil Pressure Indicator (Red)	1-14
Fuel System.....	7-66	Lower Kickout ON/OFF, Stop Height Setting.....	1-41
Fuse Box.....	1-121		
Fuse Box A.....	1-122, 7-98	M	
Fuse Box B	1-122, 7-98	Mail (Option)	1-44
G		Main Menu.....	1-37
General Precautions for Cab.....	S-5	Main Menu Display Order Change.....	1-71
GETTING ON AND OFF THE MACHINE	1-3	Maintenance	1-76
Grading	5-18	MAINTENANCE	7-1
Greasing.....	7-27	Maintenance Guide	7-14
H		Maintenance Notice	1-76
Handle Chemical Products Safely.....	S-36	MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL	
Handle Fluids Safely—Avoid Fires.....	S-24	CONDITIONS.....	9-1
Handle Starting Aids Safely	S-8	Manual Operation	1-103
Hazard Switch.....	1-85	Manual Regeneration	1-36
Height Kickout ON/OFF, Stop Height Setting	1-40	Miscellaneous.....	7-116
High Beam Indicator (Blue).....	1-18	Monitor Operation.....	1-26
Hold Switch	1-106, 1-109	Monitor Panel	1-12
Hot/Cool Box.....	1-123	Monitoring.....	1-82
How to Use Screens	1-22	Move and Operate Machine Safely.....	S-8
Hydraulic Oil Level Indicator (Red).....	1-13	MOVING MACHINE.....	4-1
Hydraulic System.....	7-47	Multi Function Monitor	1-19
I		N	
INDEX.....	14-1	Name of Components	1-1
Information Menu	1-73	Never Ride Attachment.....	S-6
Inspect Machine	S-4	Never Undercut a High Bank.....	S-18
Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting	3-1	Notes on Aftertreatment Device	S-37
Inspection and Maintenance of Hydraulic Equipment... 7-47		O	
Inspection/Maintenance Access Covers	1-135	Object Handling	S-21
Inspection/Maintenance Side Access Cover.....	7-11	OFF.....	1-102, 1-105
Investigate Job Site Beforehand	S-10	Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance	1-118
J		Operate Only from Operator's Seat	S-9
Joystick Steering.....	1-10, 1-90	OPERATING ENGINE.....	3-1
Joystick Steering Lever	1-90	OPERATING MACHINE.....	5-1
Joystick Steering System ON/OFF	S-41	Operation Condition	1-74
Joystick Steering System Switch.....	1-90	OPERATOR'S STATION	1-4
Jump Starting	S-9	OTHER ATTACHMENTS.....	13-1
K		Outer ROPS/Cab.....	1-124
Keep Riders Off Machine	S-12	Outside Rear View Mirror.....	1-129
Key Switch.....	1-88	Overheat Indicator (Red)	1-15
Kind of Oils.....	7-21	P	
L		Parallel/Tandem Switching Height Setting.....	1-65
LCD Display.....	1-141, 1-167	Park Machine Safely.....	S-22
		Parking	4-18
		Parking Brake Gear Oil	7-101

INDEX

Parking Brake Indicator (Red).....	1-13	Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element	7-75
Parking Brake Switch.....	1-87, 4-7	Replace Hydraulic Tank Oil Filter (Full-Flow Filter).....	7-55
\Perform Truck Loading Safely.....	S-18	Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically.....	S-29
Periodic Replacement of Parts.....	7-13	Retighten Front Axle and Rear Axle Support Mounting Bolts	7-122
Power Mode Selector Switch	1-101	Ride Control Drive Speed Setting.....	1-38
Power Train	7-36	Ride Control Switch	1-105
Practice Safe Maintenance.....	S-25	Right Console.....	1-11
Precautions for After Operation	5-24	Right Console Slide Lever	1-107
Precautions for Communication Terminal.....	S-37	Room Light	1-126
Precautions for Communication Terminal Equipment ...	S-38	Room Rear View Mirror.....	1-129
Precautions for Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).....	S-33	ROPS (Roll Over Protective Structure).....	S-42
Precautions for Driving on Slopes	4-14	Rotary Light Switch.....	1-128
Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper	S-33	S	
Precautions for handling antifreeze	7-82	SAFETY	S-1
Precautions for Lightning.....	S-19	SAFETY SIGNS	S-43
Precautions for Maintenance During Cold Weather Season.....	9-2	Selecting a Trailer	6-1
Precautions for Operations	S-9	Service Air Conditioning System Safely	S-35
Precautions for Traveling	4-12	Service Brake	1-89
Precautions for Welding and Grinding	S-32	Setting Menu	1-46
Precautions to be Taken if Machine Failure Occurs.....	4-15	Setting Procedure	1-57
Preheat Indicator (Yellow).....	1-16	Setting Screens	1-157, 1-180
Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance	7-7	Shift Change Delay Mode Setting	1-59
Prepare for Emergencies.....	S-3	Shift Switch.....	1-91
Prevent Battery Explosions	S-35	SPECIFICATIONS	12-1
Prevent Burns.....	S-28	Starting Engine	3-6
Prevent Fires	S-30	Starting in Cold Weather.....	3-8
Prevent Parts from Flying	S-28	Starting to Move	4-2
Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object	S-20	Stay Clear of Moving Parts	S-27
Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines....	S-11	Steering.....	4-9
Q		Steps.....	1-137
Quick Power Switch	1-107	Stock Piling	5-22
R		Stop	4-16
Rear Grille	1-136, 7-12	Stopping Engine	3-15
\Rear Tray.....	1-120	STORAGE.....	10-1
Rear View Camera Monitor	1-55	Store Attachments Safely	S-22
Rear View Mirror Heater Switch.....	1-128	Storing the Machine.....	10-1
Recognize Safety Information	S-1	Sun Visor	1-127
Recommended Fuel	7-66	Support Machine Properly.....	S-26
Refill DEF/AdBlue®	7-136	Support Maintenance Properly.....	S-27
Refueling	7-67	Switch Operation.....	1-132
Remedy	1-29	T	
Removal and Installation of Tire.....	7-109	Time Adjustment.....	1-47
Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating	S-34	Time Remains and Maintenance Interval	1-78
Removing Snow	5-23	Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage	1-118
Repeated Inhibiting of Aftertreatment Device Cleaning..	1-7	Tire	7-105
Replace Air Breather Element	7-57	Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts	7-124
Replace Air Cleaner Element	7-81	Tool Box	1-137
Replace Air Conditioner Receiver Dryer	7-114	Towing Method.....	6-9
Replace Axle Oil Filter	13-4	Towing Pin	1-134
Replace DEF/AdBlue® Supply Module Main Filter.....	7-139	Traction Control Setting.....	1-63
Replace DEF/AdBlue® Tank Inlet Filter	7-140	Transmission Setting	1-59
Replace Engine Oil Filter	7-34	Transmission Warning Indicator (Red)	1-14
Replace Fuel Main Filter Element	7-73	Transport Safely	S-23

INDEX

TRANSPORTING.....	6-1
Transporting by Road	6-1
Transporting Wheel Loader (Urgent Situation)	6-5
Travel Mode Selector Switch	1-100
Travel on Public Roads Safely	S-15
Tray and Drink Holder	1-123
Troubleshooting	1-80
TROUBLESHOOTING.....	11-1
Turn Signal Indicator (Green)	1-18
Turn Signal Switch.....	1-97

U

Understand Signal Words.....	S-1
Upper Switch Panel	1-128
Urea SCR System.....	7-134
Urea SCR System Malfunction	1-33
USB Device Input.....	1-154
Use Handrails and Steps	S-6
Using Booster Batteries.....	3-10
Using Cigar Lighter	1-110

V

Vandal-Resistant Devices.....	1-138
-------------------------------	-------

W

Warm Up.....	3-12
Warm Up Operation	1-67
Warn Others of Service Work	S-26
Wear Protective Clothing.....	S-3
When Windows Become Fogged.....	1-118
Window Open/Close Levers	1-130
Wiper Operation	1-93
Wiper Switch	1-93
Work Light Indicator (Yellow).....	1-18
Work Light Switch	1-86
Work Mode for Break-in	2-1